



BERKELEY
LIBRARY
UNIVERSITY OF
CALIFORNIA

Godeffroy of Boloyne,

OR

The Siege and Conqueste of Jerusalem

translated by

William Caxton

edited by

Mary Noyes Colvin

EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY

Extra Series, 64

1893

KRAUS REPRINT CO.
Millwood, New York

*Unaltered Reprint produced with the permission of the
Early English Text Society*

KRAUS REPRINT CO.
A U.S. Division of Kraus-Thomson Organization Limited

Printed in Germany

Godeffroy of Boloyne.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. LXIV.

1893.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.

NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.

PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

Godeffroy of Boloyne,

OR

The Siege and Conqueste of Jerusalem,

BY

WILLIAM, ARCHBISHOP OF TYRE.

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH BY

William Caxton,

AND PRINTED BY HIM IN 1481.



EDITED FROM THE COPY IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM, WITH INTRODUCTION,
NOTES, VOCABULARY, AND INDEXES,

BY

MARY NOYES COLVIN, PH.D.

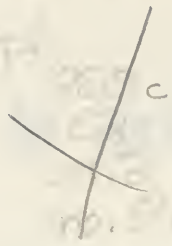
LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
By KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO.,
PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHARING CROSS ROAD.

1893.

1872 1873

1874



1875

1876

Extra Series, LXIV.

R. CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON & BUNGAY.

PR
1119
A2
ser. 2
no. 64
MAIN

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	vii
TEXT	1
NOTES	313
VOCABULARY	317
INDEX OF NAMES	331
INDEX OF PLACES	343

INTRODUCTION.

- I. *Caxton's text, and his original, William of Tyre*, A.D. 1163—1183, p. vii.
 II. *Editions, Manuscripts, and Translations of William of Tyre*, p. xi.
 III. WILLIAM OF TYRE, p. xx.
 IV. *William of Tyre's literary works*, p. xxv.
 V. GODFREY OF BOUILLON, p. xxix.

I.

Godoffroy of Boloynne, or the Siege and Conqueste of Jerusalem, was printed by William Caxton, as he himself informs us, in the Abbey of Westminster, the work being finished on the 20th of November, 1481.

There are ten copies still extant of this edition: British Museum (1), Cambridge (2), Imperial Library, Vienna (1), Hunterian College, Glasgow (1), Baptist College, Bristol (1), and (4) in private libraries. The present edition was printed from the copy in the British Museum, which is described by Blades (*Biography and Typography of Wm. Caxton*, London, 1879), as follows:

"The book is a small in-folio, containing 144 leaves, of which two are blank. Excepting the first two gatherings, the signatures are entirely in Arabic numerals.

"Collation;—A is A 3^a with A¹ blank, b a 2^a b¹ being blank; 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, and 16 are all 4^{ns}, 17 is a 3^a.

"Typographic peculiarities;—There is no title page. A full page has forty lines, which are of even length, and measure $4\frac{3}{4}$ inches without folios or catchwords. Space is left at the commencement of chapters for the insertion of three to seven-line initials.—The volume commences with a blank leaf, after which follows the prologue or preface, the text beginning on A², with a space for a four-line initial, thus, 'The hye, courageous faytes and valyaunt actes of noble, illustrious, and vertuous personnes, etc.', and ending halfway down the recto of the 6th folio, of sig. 17., the verso being blank."

Mr. Blades also states that the book is translated from the French, adding, "the author of the book appears to be unknown." Happily, this last conjecture of Mr. Blades is a mistake, as the author of our text, far from being unknown, is no less a personage than William, Archbishop of Tyre from 1175 to 1184, and Caxton's *Godeffroye of Boloyne* is a translation of the first hundred pages or so of a History of the First Crusade, and the French establishments in the Holy Land, written by William, in the second half of the 12th century.

It is a book which not only was a standard authority through all the Middle Ages, but one which even up to the present time is regarded as reliable in most particulars, and forms the base of all modern histories of this period. The book was written first in Latin, but was soon put into French, from which Caxton translated it into English. His translation is almost a literal one. He turns many of his French constructions into English, without any attempt at Anglicizing them, even transferring a French word bodily when he does not readily find its English equivalent. On the whole, he understands his French, although there are incorrect renderings here and there, owing more to hasty reading, it seems, than to actual ignorance.

The editor of this text, in preparing it for publication, read the English first with a French Manuscript of the 15th century edition, from which without doubt it was translated. Curiously enough, MS. 68 of the Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris, with which it was collated, belonged originally to Louis de Bruges, Seigneur de la Gruythuyse. Blades says of him :

"Among the nobles at the court of Phillip the Good (Duke of Burgundy, in 1419), many emulated the literary taste of their sovereign, but none showed greater judgment and liberality in the formation of his library than Louis de Bruges.

"This nobleman, who had risen by his talents to the highest position, received at his château of Oost-camp, near Bruges, in 1470, Edward IV. of England, when he sought refuge from the Lancastrians, in Flanders, and was afterwards rewarded by the King with the title of Earl of Winchester. His library was scarcely inferior to that of his sovereign, and nearly the whole of its manuscripts were the production of Flemish artists, at Bruges or Ghent. The large size of the volumes, the beauty of the vellum, the elegance of the writing, the artistic merit of the illuminations and ornaments, and the luxury displayed in the bindings are evidences of the interest

taken by the Seigneur de la Gruythuyse in the formation of his library.

“At his death it passed to his son Jean, and was soon after added to the collection, already existing, at the château of Blois, belonging to the kings of France. Great pains were taken to obliterate the armorial bearings, devices, and monograms which showed the former owner of the manuscripts; but these attempts were only partly successful, as about one hundred volumes, now among the most precious treasures of the Bibliothèque Nationale of Paris, still attest that they once belonged to this celebrated collection.”

As Caxton lived for many years in Bruges, as the representative of the English nation, and was on friendly terms with many of the Flemish nobility, there is little doubt that he was well acquainted with the library of Louis de Bruges, and probably had himself spent many an hour over this very volume, which is a magnificent specimen of Flemish handicraft—a large in-folio, with writing like copper-plate, and adorned with many beautiful artistically-executed miniatures in grisaille. But, although as far as execution and binding are concerned, a book worthy of our highest praise, the text itself, which, as may be seen by the headings of the different chapters, is the same as the copy from which Caxton translated, is a very poor one, and the result is that many of Caxton's sentences are faulty, obscure, or thoroughly unintelligible, owing to the faultiness and obscurity of his original. In many cases, the editor of the present text, in order to get at the original meaning, has been obliged to have recourse to vol. ii. of the *Recueil des Croisades*, published by the Academy of Inscriptions and Belles Lettres, in Paris, which contains not only the corrected French text of William's history, but also the Latin original, to which an appeal has been made in doubtful cases.

Some obscurities still remaining have been cleared up by Paulin Paris's recent edition of *William of Tyre*.

For aid in this preface, and in the Index of Places and Names, at the close of the book, the editor is also much indebted to the following authorities:

H. PRUTZ: Studien über Wilhelm von Tyrus, im Neu-Archiv Deutscher Geschichte, Bd. viii.

PAULIN PARIS: La Chanson d'Antioche.

PAULIN PARIS: Guillaume de Tyr. et Ses Continuateurs.

ROERICHT: Zur Geschichte der Ersten Kreuz-Züge.

H. VON SYBEL: Geschichte des Ersten Kreuz-Zuges.

DANSEY: The English Crusaders.

VON HASSELT : *Les Croisés Belges.*

VON REIFFENBERG, in vols. iv. and v. of *Les Chroniques Belges: Le Chevalier au Cygne and Godefroid de Bouillon.*

BARON DE HODY : *Description des Tombeaux de Godefroid de Bouillon.* Bruxelles, 1855.

PIGEONNEAU : *Le Cycle de la Croisade et de la Famille de Bouillon.*

HIST. LITT. DE LA FRANCE, vol. xiv., article by Pastouret on William of Tyre.

BRUNET : *Manual du Libraire.*

D. MARTÈNE ET D. DURAND : *Amplissima Collectio.* Paris, 1724-33.

MURATORI : *Rerum Italicarum Scriptores*, vol. vii.

GUIZOT : *Collection des Memoires sur L'Histoire du France*, vols. xvi.—xviii.

DESCHAMPS : *Dictionnaire de Géographie Ancienne et Moderne.* Paris, 1870.

LA GRAN CONQUISTA DE ULTRA-MAR. Madrid, 1858.

SPRUNER-MENKE : *Hand-Atlas des Mittel-Alters.*

MIGNE : *Patrologiæ Latinæ: Tomus 20 /*

„ „ *Graecæ „ 86.*

„ *Dictionnaire de Géographie Sacrée et Ecclésiastique*, vols. 28—30 of the *Cyclopédie Théologique.*

FREEMAN : *The Historical Geography of Europe.*

FROEBESE : *Gottfried von Bouillon.* *Wissenschaftliche Vorträge*, 14th Series. Berlin, 1879.

TASSO : *Jerusalem Delivered.*

COLLIN DE PLANCY : *Godefroid de Bouillon.* Paris, 1842.

AULT-DUMESNIL : *Dictionnaire des Croisades* in vol. xviii. of Migne's *Nouvelle Encyclopédie Théologique.*

PERE MAIMBOURG : *Hist. des Croisades.* Paris, 1686.

McCLINTOCK AND STRONG : *Cyclopedia of Biblical Theology and Ecclesiastical Literature.*

GASTON PARIS, on *La Gran Conquista, Romania*, No. 68, Oct. 1888 and Oct. 1890.

TICKNOR : *History of Spanish Literature.*

PALGRAVE : *History of Normandy and England.*

ROGIER : *La Noblesse Française aux Croisades.*

RECUEIL DES CROISADES. Tomes i. and ii., published by the Academy of Inscriptions and Belles Lettres. Paris, 1844.

II. Editions, MSS., and Translations of Wm. of Tyre. xi

MAS-LATRIE: *Chronique d'Ernoul et de Bernard le Tresorier*. Collection de la Société de L'Histoire de France, vol. iii.

RIANT: *Catalogue des Manuscrits de L'Eracles*. Archives de L'Orient Latin, vol. i. Paris, 1881.

CHEVALLIER: *Repertoire des Sources historiques du Moyen-Age*. Paris, 1877-1886.

T. FULLER: *History of the Holy War*, ed. 1840.

MRS. W. BUSK: *Mediæval Popes, Emperors and Kings*. 4 vols., 1854-6.

II. DIFFERENT EDITIONS, MANUSCRIPTS, AND TRANSLATIONS
OF WILLIAM OF TYRE.

The original history was written, as has been already mentioned, in Latin. It was composed in Palestine, between the years 1163 and 1183, and consisted of twenty-two completed books, divided into chapters, and of one chapter of a twenty-third book. The work was evidently either left unfinished, or mutilated after William's death, as he tells us expressly in his preface that he has divided his work into twenty-three books, each of which is in turn divided into chapters. "Distinximus autem volumem universam in libros xxiii, eorumque singulos certis designavimus capitulis, quo lectori facilius quicquid de articulis historiæ sibi viderit necessarium occurrat." The theory that portions of the history were destroyed after William's death, is a very plausible one, when we reflect that these closing chapters, if closing chapters there were, must have contained the record of events which did not present his political opponents in a very favourable light, so that they would have had every reason for suppressing them.

The book commences with a brief general account of the situation of affairs before and at the time of the first crusade. Then follows a detailed account of that great movement, particular stress being laid on the part taken therein by the French and Flemish chivalry, and especially by Godfrey of Bouillon. The ninth book treats of the taking of Jerusalem by the Crusaders, and of the choice of Godfrey as king, closing with his sudden and unfortunate death. The other thirteen books contain the history of Palestine under French rule, down to the time of William's own death, which is supposed to have taken place in 1184.

His preface, written after he had nearly completed his work, tells us of its aim and scope:—

“Narrationis seriem ordinavimus exordium, sumentes ab exitu virorum fortium, et Deo amabilem principum qui, a regnis occidentalibus, vocante Domino egressi, terram promissionis et pene universam Syriane in manu forti sibi vendicaverunt, et inde usque ad regnum domini Balduini quarti, qui in ordine regum computato domino duce Godefrido qui primus regnum obtinuit, locum habuit septimum, per annos LXXXIV, cum multa diligentia protraximus historiam.”

This history had, in the course of time, several different continuators. The first of these was one Ernoul, member of a noble family of Giblet, a town of Palestine, on the coast north of Beirut. Ernoul, who must have been a well-grown youth at the time of William's death, served as a young squire under Balian d'Ybelin, who had been made Lord Lieutenant of the kingdom of Jerusalem, after the capture of king Guy of Lusignan in 1187. Young Ernoul followed his master through all the vicissitudes of this critical period, and assisted in the defence of Jerusalem when besieged by Saladin, a few months later. Years after,—after he had become one of the most able and learned jurists in the High Court of Cyprus,—Ernoul of Giblet wrote, in the French language, an account of the events in which he had taken part, his intention being to give the world a truthful narration of the conquest of Jerusalem, and of the irreparable loss of the Holy Cross.

Ernoul's story stops with the year 1228. Here, however, an unknown pen takes it up, and, after some condensation of the previous matter, brings it down to about 1231. This last writer narrates especially the events of the Crusade of Frederic II. of Germany, ending with the capture of St. Jean d'Acre.

At about this same time, in France, one Bernard, called the treasurer, *Bernardus Thesaurius*, supposed to have belonged to the monastery of St. Pierre in Corbie, wrote a history of affairs in the East, ending also with the year 1231. Corbie is a little town in France, east of Amiens. Here existed formerly a magnificent abbey of Benedictines of great wealth and antiquity, said to have been founded by Queen Bathilde in 662. The history of this abbey has been written by a Benedictine of Picardy, but nothing has been learnt of Bernard, except the fact that the office of treasurer has existed there since the 13th century.

Already, before the continuation of the unknown author was finished, or Bernard's account was written, the Latin original of *William of Tyre* was known in France, where it received, without a doubt, the title with which it has come down to us, viz., *Historia*

Rerum in Partibus Transmarinis Gestarum; and certainly by 1225, if not before, it was translated into French.

Now we have, as we see, three or four different historians, all handling the same subject, but at different epochs. What more natural than that they should be arranged chronologically; and by the omission of prefaces, and by judicious condensation, be made into one compact whole. This is exactly what was done by some one, perhaps by Bernard himself, who, after he had written his account of affairs in the *Orient*, as an independent composition, may have conceived the idea of combining it with William's and Ernoul's histories. Be this as it may, the compilation closes with Bernard's work, which ends thus: *Explicit liber; ceste conte de la terre d'Outremer, fist faire li tresoriers Bernars de St. Pierre de Corbie en la carnation.* Mello C.C. XXXII.

Naturally, for centuries, and even down to the modern critical examination of the book, Bernard was regarded as the real author of the whole work. His compilation was the history, par-excellence, of the Crusades and the Holy Land through all the Middle Ages. Strangely enough, although the compiler left Bernard's name at the close of the book, he forgot to give it any title at the beginning; and as a result of this forgetfulness, each editor, or even copyist, felt himself privileged to bestow upon the book what seemed to him a suitable appellation, so no one text probably in the whole history of literature has had so many different names. The most common and curious of all them is that of the *Roman d'Eracles*, a title given by some rubricator, because the first line begins, "*Les anciennies ystoires dient que Eracles en fut moult bon Chrestien, et gouverneur de l'empire de Romme,*" William having introduced his history by recalling the fact of the conquest of Jerusalem by the Persians, and their deliverance by the Emperor Heraclius, in 629. Other more appropriate titles are: *Le Livre des Passages d'Outre Mer*; *Le Livre de l'Acquisition et de la Perte de la Terre Sainte*; *Les Chroniques d'Outre Mer*; *Livres des Voyages à la Terre Sainte*; *Histoires du Passage de Godefroy de Bouillon*, or simply, *Le Livre du Conquête*.

Ernoul and Bernard form what M. Mas-Latrie,—who first disentangled the intricate relations of the different editions of *William of Tyre* to each other,—calls the "first epoch" of his continuators.

A few years later than Bernard, in 1248, St. Louis of France "put on the cross," and departed for the Holy Land; the attention

of the Christian world was again drawn towards the East, and new deeds of valour called for a new chronicler. Another continuation was composed in the French language, taking the narrative up where Bernard left it, and bringing it down to the year 1261. This continuation has been published in the French Academy edition of the continuators of William of Tyre, under the title, *Continuation d'après le Manuscrit de Rothelin*.

Soon after this appeared what may be called the third series of continuators. This third series is not a direct continuation of the second series. It does not take up the narrative where that left it, in 1261, but attaches itself to Ernoul and Bernard, that is, to the first class of continuators, and closes with the year 1275. This third continuation, according to the best judges, is the work of two hands, and was written entirely in the East. The first half is supposed to have been the composition of a knight of Cyprus or Syria, and contains the history of the kingdoms of Cyprus and Jerusalem, united during the minority of King Henry III. of Lusignan; the latter half, which narrates the events transpiring between 1248 and 1275, seems to have been written by a monk, as it is more scholarly in style and character.

The fourth and last group of continuators are only copies of the second series (that closing in 1261), to which has been added an account of the taking of St. Jean d'Acre, and of events subsequent to 1288, so that, in this edition, there is a gap in the history, from 1261 to 1288.

Most of these different series exist only in manuscript, there being several copies of each known. M. Riant, in *Les Archives de l'Orient Latin*, gives the following summary of the manuscripts of William of Tyre and his continuators, suppressing very justly M. Mas-Latrie's last class, which (as he observes) differs from the others only by the addition of matter that is really foreign to the rest of the work.

- I. Class. Translation of *William of Tyre*; eleven MSS., two of which are now lost.
- II. Class. In three subdivisions, and containing thirteen MSS.:
 - a. *Ernoul* to 1228, five MSS.;
 - b. *Estoires d'Oultr Mer, et de la Naissance Saladin*, three MSS.;
 - c. *Bernard le Tresorier* to 1231, five MSS.
- III. Class. *William of Tyre* translated, and continued down to 1231, twenty-two MSS.

IV. Class (Rothelin). *William of Tyre* translated and continued down to 1261. (This is the Academy edition.) Sixteen MSS.

V. Class. *William of Tyre* translated and continued down to 1275. This has been published by the Academy, and by Dom Martène and Guizot, eleven MSS.

An excellent description of many of these manuscripts is given in vol. ii. of the *Recueil des Croisades*, published by the French Academy of Inscriptions and Belles Lettres.

Taking into consideration the extreme popularity of William of Tyre's history in France, as attested by the large number of manuscripts still existing, it is strange that more translations into other languages have not been found. Of those known, but one seems to have been in any sense a popular book, namely, that into Spanish, which is known under the title of *La Gran Conquista de Ultra Mar*. This is a vast compilation, of which M. Gaston Paris has commenced to give us the first satisfactory analysis in the *Romania*, No. 68, Oct. 1888. *La Gran Conquista* takes as its basis the history of William of Tyre, inserting at appropriate intervals other French compositions treating of the Crusades or of Godfrey of Bouillon, such as *La Chanson d'Antioch*, *La Chanson de Jerusalem*, *Le Chevallier au Cygne*, the poem of *Les Chétifs*, also the romans of *Berthe*, of *Mainet*, of *Flore and Blanchfleur*. It is an immense work, filling a volume of 659 pages of two columns each, of a quarto edition. The date of this compilation is uncertain. The prologue of the first printed edition, that of 1503, states that it was made at the suggestion and under the auspices of Alphonso X. of Castile, who reigned from 1252 to 1284. The epilogue of a manuscript of the 15th century attributes it to Alphonso XI., who died in 1350, while the epilogue of the oldest manuscript known, that of the 14th century, gives the merit of the undertaking to the son of Alphonso X., Sancho IV., who died in 1295. M. Paris remarks that this latter date is probably the correct one,—the first being too remote, and the second too recent, to be accepted. Both of the epilogues mentioned state that the kings of whom they speak caused the book to be translated from the French into Castilian.

There is no doubt that the Spanish translator possessed a copy of William of Tyre with the third series of continuators, namely, that bringing it down to 1275, as *La Gran Conquista* follows that edition closely, with additions (according to M. Paris) from a source still

unknown. M. Paris also conjectures that the French MS. at the disposal of the arranger of the book may have been a defective one, as the translation breaks off abruptly in the middle of a sentence, leaving the narration at the beginning of the year 1271. Ticknor, in a note on *La Gran Conquista*, in his *History of Spanish Literature*, says that its closing chapters (those giving an account of Conrad of Hohenstaufen, and the assassination of Henry, grandson of Henry III. of England, at Viterbo) were added by the Spanish arranger; but a comparison with the original shows that these details were all literally and exactly translated from the French.

Of *La Gran Conquista* three manuscripts are known: two in the National Library at Madrid, and one in the Royal Library. The first printed edition was that of Hans Giessen, Salamanca 1503, in folio. A later edition is that of Madrid 1858, in 8vo.

We have one *English* translation, that made by William Caxton, printed for the first time in 1481, and reprinted in the present volume.

Caxton made his translation from the same edition as *La Gran Conquista*, viz. that ending with the year 1275.

Riant in his enumeration of the versions of Eracles, mentions a second English translation contained in manuscript, Reg. 18. B. 26, of the British Museum, and entitled *The History of the Holy Ware*. This manuscript is a paper one, in folio, containing 256 leaves, and written about the middle of the 16th century, apparently late in the reign of Henry VIII., instead of in the 15th century, as Riant gives it, on the authority of the old Royal Catalogue, by Casley, which is wrong.

This *History of the Holy Ware* is a compilation containing: I. An account of Robert, Duke of Normandy, of his visit to the Holy Land, and of his son William, afterwards the Conqueror of England. II. A narration of the events of the First Crusade, taken, according to the author, from the book of the *Conquest of Jerusalem*, and from the book of the *Nine Worthies* in French. III. An account of the adventures of Richard, Cœur de Lion, in the Third Crusade. IV. A narration of the prowesses of Prince Edward, son of Henry III., and of the events of the Ninth Crusade. V. A "Treatie" translated from the French of a certain Frère Hayton, treating of the different countries of the East, and of their great rulers and heroes. The book ends with directions for making the

journey to the Holy Land, and rules for the behaviour of pilgrims en route.

Part II. of this compilation is supposed by Riant to be a direct translation of the compiler from one of the numerous French editions of William of Tyre. On investigation, however, it proves to be only a condensation of Caxton's translation.

The first chapters consist of a genealogy and biography of Godfrey of Bouillon, taken without doubt, as its author says, from the "IX boke of the IX worthies in french." After this introduction, the history of the First Crusade is taken up, at the departure of Gautier Sans Avoir for the Holy Land, and continued down to the death of Godfrey. The close of this book, at the same point where Caxton ends his translation, together with the fact that all of Caxton's mistakes in translation and in proper names are found in it, is pretty conclusive proof that our unknown arranger did not trouble himself to go back to the French for his materials, but availed himself of Caxton's translation. The matter is very materially abridged, the condensations being made with great ability and discretion by omitting the long rhetorical speeches, and giving their substance in brief. Many minor and unimportant details are also judiciously omitted; the wording is in general exactly that of Caxton.

The fifth part of this compilation, that translated from Frère Haiton, was published in 1526 by Pynson, but the first, third, and fourth seem never to have been printed.

As to the translations into German, it is not easy to decide from the brief descriptions given, whether those mentioned by bibliographers are really translations of *William of Tyre*, or of the poems of *Godfrey of Bouillon*, and the *Chévalier au Cygne*, which were extremely popular in the 13th and 14th centuries, and were rendered into a prose form, which caused them to resemble not a little the genuine history, and to be often confounded with it.

Brunet, in his *Manuel du Libraire*, under the heading "Godefroy de Bouillon," and M. Reiffenberg (Int. to *Le Chevalier au Cygne*) mention several German and Flemish translations of the romance of *Godefroid de Bouillon*. The oldest of these Brunet describes as follows:

"It was printed at Augsburg in 1482, with this title 'Hienach folgt ein warhaft und bewerte historie wie die turche uñ andre geschlecht der ungleubigen die cristeltichen Kirche,' etc.; on the back of the last leaf is printed 'Dise warhaftige history hat gedrucht

hanns Bämler zu Augsperg, und volendet au Mäntag vor Jeorg, Anno Te JM Lxxxij jare ze' (1482)."

The book is a Gothic in-folio. It contains 47 half-page woodcuts. This book is mentioned by Zapf, *History of Printing in Augsburg*, I., p. 65, No. 21, under the title of *Historie von der Kreuz Fahrt*. It was reprinted at Augsburg in 1502 by Lucas Zeizenmeier under the following title: *Herzog Godfried wie er wider die Turgen und hayden gestritten*.

No reliable analysis of the contents of these books seems ever to have been made; but the Bibliothèque Nationale of Paris, according to M. Brunet, possesses a Flemish translation of this same work printed at Harlem in 1486, and reprinted in Antwerp in 1510 and 1511. This Flemish copy, however, on the authority of M. Pigeonneau (*Le Cycle de la Croisade et de la Famille de Bouillon*), who has examined it, is not at all a copy of either the poem of *Le Chevalier au Cygne* or of *Godefroid de Bouillon*, or of both combined, but is a translation of *William of Tyre*; so the conclusion is that the Augsburg German editions must also be translations of William's history. Pigeonneau gives the following description of the Flemish book: "It is a small in-quarto, without title, date and name of editor, printed in Gothic characters and ornamented (like the Augsburg edition of 1482) with 47 wood cuts. It commences with these words, '*Hier beghient prologhe van der Scoene historien Hertoghe Godewort van Boloen.*'"

In Italy the first translation into the popular language that I have been able to find, with the limited means of research at my disposal, is that by Lorenza di Firenze, which bears the date of 1347, and the following title, "Il Libro del Passagio di Terra Sancta, et e traslato di francescho in fiorentino, per Lorenzo di Firenze cittadino." This manuscript is to be found in the Laurentian Library in Florence, is written on vellum, is in folio, and is translated from the second class of William of Tyre's editions. Its designation is Phet. LXI, No. 44. In 1562, at Venice, an Italian translation was printed by Guiseppe Horolloggi, entitled, "Historia della guerra sacra de Gerusalemme della terra promissione, et de tutti la Soria ricuperata da christiani da Guglielmo arcevesco di Tiro, tradotta da Guiseppe Horolloggi, Venetia 1562." Guizot in *La Collection des Memoires sur l'Histoire de France*, vol. xvi, p. 14, mentions a third Italian translation made by one Thomas Baglioni, in 1610, and also published in Venice.

The most curious thing about the history of our book is its re-translation into Latin, at an early date, showing that the French translation must have been considered the original composition, and that the Latin original was comparatively unknown. In 1725, Muratori published a collection of Italian historians, entitled *Rerum Italicarum Scriptores*. Among these historians he included Francisco Pipino, a monk of Bologna, who lived in the first half of the 14th century, and wrote in Latin a history of the First Crusade and the events which transpired in the Holy Land between the years 1095 and 1230. His book is introduced by the following statement: "Here commences the history of the Conquest of the Holy Land, which the author has translated from French into Latin." He closes thus: "All these things, about the life and deeds of King John, are taken from the history of Bernard the Treasurer." Pipino translated, as can easily be seen, from a manuscript of the third class, that containing the continuation of Ernoul and Bernard, which he, like everybody else, regarded as the work of Bernard alone.

Riant, in his list of the versions of Eracles, also cites two other Latin re-translations, both-anonymous: one in the University Library at Leyden (Voss 110). This is a paper folio of the 16th century, and is supposed to be a copy of an old MS. written in Italy. The second is at Utrecht, No. 285 of the City Library, a manuscript of the 15th century, although this latter piece of information seems to be regarded as doubtful by M. Riant.

We have also very good evidence that a Latin re-translation was made in England as early as the first half of the 13th century. Ralph, prior at this time of the monastery of Coggeshall in Essex, wrote a history of the Holy Land, which he calls *Chronicon Terræ Sanctæ*, describing especially the siege of Jerusalem by Saladin, at which he himself had been present. In order to excuse the lack of details in regard to many previous events in the history of the European establishments in Palestine, Ralph refers his readers to a Latin history treating of these events, and lately translated from the French by the prior of the Holy Trinity in London, a book which could hardly fail to be one of the earlier editions of *William of Tyre*.

Since the invention of printing, there have been many excellent editions of *William of Tyre*, both in Latin and French. It was published for the first time in Latin in 1549, in Bâle, in folio, by Phillibert Poyssenot of Dôle. Henri Panteleon issued a new edition

in the same city in 1564, adding a continuation, also in Latin, written by one John Herold, a learned German of the 16th century, and a native of Hochstädt, in Suabia. Herold narrates the history of the Holy Land from 1185, bringing it down as late as the year 1527. The earliest French edition printed was that published in Paris in 1575, in folio, under the title "Histoire de la guerre Sainte dite proprement La Franciade orientale, faite latine par Guillaume archevesque de Tyr, et traduit en François par Gabr. du Préau." In 1611 Bongars published a collection of Latin writers on the Crusades, under the title *Gesta Dei per Francos*, 2 vol. in folio, in which he included *William of Tyre*. Between 1724 and 1733, Dom Martène and Dom Durand, benedictines of St. Maur, men of great learning and research, published a second collection of Latin authors on the Crusades, entitled *Amplissima Collectio*, in 9 vols., folio. The fifth volume of this collection contains the Latin version of *William of Tyre*.

Other more modern editions of importance are those of Migne, *Patrologiæ Latine Cursus*, vol. 201, and Guizot, vols. 16—18 of the *Collection des Memoires sur l'Histoire de France*, Paris 1823—25. The *Académie des Inscriptions et Belles Lettres* commenced in the first half of this century a collection of texts relating to the Crusades, entitled *Recueil des Croisades*: vols. I and II, which appeared in 1844, contain not only the Latin, but the corresponding French text of *William of Tyre*. The latest edition in the French language, and without a doubt the most accurate and scholarly that has yet appeared, is that of Paulin Paris, Paris 1879, which contains, however, simply the history as written by William, without any of the various continuations.

III. WILLIAM OF TYRE.

Of William of Tyre, second archbishop of the name, but little is known, except what can be gathered from his own writings. He was born about 1130, without a doubt in Palestine, which, in the prologue to his history, he calls his beloved birth-place, *Natalis soli magis tracti dulcedine*. He was probably of French descent, as shown by his familiarity with French ways and customs, people and events, although Paulin Paris hazards the supposition that he was an Italian, as he speaks of being called to Rome on one occasion, not only by public business, but also by private affairs.

As to his rank, authorities differ; Prutz (*Neues Archiv der Geschichte*, etc., vol. viii. p. 93), stating that he was from a middle-class family. Prutz bases his conclusion on a Cartulary of the Church of the Holy Sepulchre, of the year 1175, in which the name of a certain Radolphus, brother of the archbishop, William of Tyre, occurs, as belonging to a family not of noble rank. On the other hand, Pastouret (*Hist. Litt. de la France*, vol. xiv., p. 588) affirms, on the authority of one Etienne of Lusignan, author of a history of Cyprus, that William of Tyre was related to some of the leading nobles of the kingdom of Jerusalem. However this may be, it is certain that he was brought up in or near Jerusalem, with which he was thoroughly acquainted. Every part of the city is known to him intimately, not only as it was in his day, but as it had been in the past. In mentioning Jerusalem, he always calls it "regio nostra," and when speaking of anything in connection with that city or its inhabitants, he says "we," "ours," to distinguish it from the Principality of Antioch or the Counties of Tripolis and Edessa. On this subject we have also the authority of the unknown continuator of William, who tells us (Book XXIII., chap. 10): "The archbishop of Tyre was called William, and was born in Jerusalem."

As to the exact date of his birth it is difficult to decide, although both French and German savants have spent much time in investigating this point. We can only judge approximately by incidental remarks that William makes about fresh events in his life. He certainly studied, as a young man, for a time at least, in Europe. He says of himself that he was studying "trans mare" at the time of the divorce of Amalric, king of Jerusalem, from Agnes of Courtenay, daughter of Joscelin II., Count of Edessa in 1162 (Book XIX., chap. 4):

"Quaesivimus sane nos postea diligentur, tamquam circa talia curiosi quoto consanguinitas gradu se contingent, qui non de scholis redieramus, sed trans mare, circa liberalium artium adhuc detinebantur studia, quando Hierosolymis haec facta sunt."

Just where he was studying is only to be conjectured. Pastouret imagines in Paris, while other authorities remark that he seems very well acquainted with Rome; and the supposition has even been advanced that his studies may have been prosecuted at Constantinople, which theory would account for his thorough knowledge of the Greek language, and also for his acquaintance with Byzantine politics and dignitaries. Wherever he received his education, it was

most certainly unusually thorough and extensive, embracing a range of studies which only a man brought into constant contact with both the Occidental and Oriental civilization and literature would pursue at this epoch.

That he was an excellent Latinist is shown, not only by his fine style, which compares favourably with any other composition that the Middle Ages produced, but by his extended acquaintance with classical Latin literature, citations and references being found in his history from nearly all the best-known Latin authors, such as Ovid, Virgil, Horace, Lucan, Juvenal, Statius, Terence, Cicero, Livy, and Sallust. Of his proficiency in the Greek language there is no doubt. He says himself that he spoke it (Book XIII., chaps. 1 and 2), and the fact that he was sent on more than one diplomatic mission to Constantinople confirms his own statement. He also spoke and read Arabic with ease. In speaking of his *History of the Arab Princes*, he tells us that he followed mainly Arabian authorities. His explanation of Arabic terms also shows his familiarity with the language.

A young priest of his learning and abilities did not have to wait long for preferment, and in 1163, which must have been immediately after his return from his Western studies, we find him figuring as a Canon of the church in Tyre. Although not living in Jerusalem, William evidently soon became a special favourite with the king, Amalric I., at whose request he was made an archdeacon on the 1st of September, 1167. The little kingdom of Jerusalem was at this time agitated by the plan that Amalric had conceived of subjugating Egypt. For many years a civil war had been waged in that country headed by two rival viziers. As each party was threatened with defeat, it had applied in turn to the Turks or to the Latins for aid, so that Amalric had had an excellent opportunity for obtaining a thorough knowledge both of the wealth and of the weakness of his neighbours. Induced partly by cupidity, and partly by fear of the Turks,—who under the brave Nouredin were becoming more powerful every day,—Amalric decided that the time had come for a serious invasion of Egypt, and, to this end, he sent an embassy to Constantinople to ask for assistance from the Emperor Manuel, whose niece he had lately married. William, the newly-made archdeacon, accompanied this embassy, which was composed of Greeks and Latins. He remained in Constantinople, presumably on business for the king, until October 1168, when he returned to Tyre and to his church duties. His relations to his archbishop seem, however, not

to have been very agreeable, and in a few months, early in 1169, we find him starting for Rome, partly, as he expressly states, on private business, and partly to get out of the way of his unfriendly superior. Towards the close of this same year he returned to Palestine, but not to Tyre, as Amalric offered him the tutorship of his nine-year-old son, afterwards known as Baldwin IV. or Baldwin the Lepèr. From this time on, William lived in Jerusalem, and seems to have grown daily in favour with the king, already well-disposed towards him.

That William was a kind and able instructor is not to be doubted by any one who reads the accounts that he gives of his royal charge. The most interesting is that of Book XXI., chap. 1 :—

“The child made great progress in his studies, and more and more gave us reason to centre our hopes upon him. He had a fine figure, and was more skilful in riding and controlling a horse than any of his ancestors had been. He had a good memory, and was fond of conversing. He was economical, and remembered a kindness done to him as well as an injury. He resembled his father, not only in face but in form, and in his walk, and the sound of his voice. His mind was quick, but his tongue was slow. Like his father, also, he was fond of hearing interesting stories told, and was always ready to follow good advice.”

The boy seems in return to have conceived a deep attachment for the wise and learned prelate.

In 1173 Amalric died, and Baldwin succeeded to the throne, at the age of 13. The future did not promise tranquillity or happiness to the young king, who was even then afflicted with an incurable and loathsome malady. The political situation of Jerusalem, always one of danger, was at this time more precarious than ever. Weakened by the fruitless attempts of Amalric to conquer Egypt, it was now torn by internal dissensions, as the more powerful barons contended among themselves for the supremacy, foreseeing the speedy death of the sick boy. Amidst this confusion the fortunes of William throve steadily. He was immediately appointed Chancellor of the Kingdom, as he tells us, Book XXI., chap. 5, “*ut esset qui regiarum epistolarum curam habent.*” Very soon after, in 1174, Bishop Radulphus of Bethlehem died, and William was installed in the vacant bishopric. At about the same time he must have been made archdeacon of the church in Nazareth, as the records show him in possession of this dignity in December 1174. The very next year, his old enemy, Frederic Archbishop of Tyre, died, and William was named as his successor. For the next three years we find William occupied with his double

duties as Chancellor and as Archbishop, keeping an attentive eye on the political condition of his land,—which we know from his own words was a constant and ever-increasing source of anxiety to him,—and at the same time defending firmly the rights of his pupil against all encroachments. In September 1178 he went with the dignitaries of the Holy Land to Rome, to the third Council held in St. John Lateran. There he was deputed to draw up a report of the Council, of the number of persons present, of its proceedings, and its decisions. He remained in Rome until September 1179, when he started for home, stopping on the way several months at the court of Manuel, Emperor of Constantinople, on political business, and arriving in Tyre the 6th of July, 1180. On his return, William found his native land in greater need than ever of wise counsels and energetic action, and from this time on he occupied himself much more with statesmanship than with ecclesiastical matters. The rapidly increasing power of Saladin was a source of the greatest apprehension to the feeble little Latin kingdom, and none saw more clearly than William, the dangers that threatened them, or strove more untiringly to prepare for the struggle which was inevitably to come. Although his home was ostensibly in Tyre, he spent all of his time in Jerusalem with the young king.

Late in the year 1182 came the news of Saladin's approach at the head of a powerful army. After ravaging Galilee, Saladin commenced the siege of Beirut. Baldwin, accompanied by William, hastened to Tyre, where a fleet was fitted out to be sent to the rescue of the threatened city. The two, pupil and master, celebrated Christmas at Tyre, and then returned in January 1183 to Jerusalem.

This is the last positive record by himself that we have of William of Tyre. The last chapter of his history mentions the incidents of the spring and summer of this year, without any specific information as to his own movements. Of the date of his death, nothing certain is known. Ernoul, in his continuation, gives the following account of it.—In 1180, Amalric, patriarch of Jerusalem, died. The question of his successor was one of great importance, as the position of spiritual director of the Holy City, and that of guardian of the Holy Sepulchre, was regarded by the whole Christian world as one of the most honourable that the Church had in its gift. Sybilla, mother of the infant Baldwin V., favoured Heraclius of Caesarea, a man of fine personal appearance: “*Beau clerc étoit,*” says Ernoul, “*et pour sa beauté l’ama la mère le roi.*” His habits, however,

were dissolute, and William opposed him energetically, not only on the ground of his personal unfitness for this lofty position, but also because of a prophecy that the Holy Cross which had been brought back to Jerusalem under a Heraclius, should be taken away again under a Heraclius.

Heraclius, notwithstanding, received the patriarchate. William, convinced of the evils that would result from this unworthy choice at such a critical time, decided to appeal to Rome, and hastened hither to prevent if possible its confirmation. Here he died suddenly, killed, it was supposed, by poison administered by a physician sent after him for that purpose by Heraclius. As the quaint old French of the 13th century has it, "Quand Eracle sut qu'il ala à Rome, dist a un sien fisicien qu'il alast après, et quil l'empoissonast; et cil si fist; si fu mort."

IV. WILLIAM OF TYRE'S LITERARY WORKS.

The literary productions of William of Tyre, of which we have to-day any knowledge, are three in number.

I. The already mentioned Report of the Third Lateran Council, held in Rome in 1179. In his 21st Book, chap. 26, William refers to this Report thus: "If any one would like to know the statutes of this Council, the names, the number, and the titles of the bishops who were present, let him read the account that we wrote of it, at the request of the holy fathers who were there present, which we have caused to be deposited in the archives of the holy church at Tyre, among other books that we have placed there."

II. A History of the Arabian Princes, from the time of Mahomet up to the year 1184. This book which was entitled *De Gestis Orientalium Principum*, or *De Orientalibus Principibus et eorum Actibus*, is now unfortunately lost, but in the prologue to his History of the First Crusade, William speaks of having written it, and says that he was urged to undertake it by King Amalric, who procured for him the Arabian books that he used as authorities, especially the history of Seith, patriarch of Alexandria, which he followed mainly.

"Cujus etiam rogatu ipso Arabica exemplaria menestrante alium historiam, a tempore seductoris Mahumeth usque in hunc annum, qui est nobis ad incarnatione Domini M.C.LXXXIV, per Annos quingentos septuaginta decurrentem conscripsimus, auctorem maxime secuti virum venerabilem Seith, filium Patrici, Alexandrinum patriarchum."

He also mentions this same work in several other places, namely, Book I. chap. 3, Book XIX. chapters 15 and 21.

This "venerabilem Seith" is, according to the best authorities, Said Ibn Batrik, born in Egypt in 879. He was a celebrated physician, and was for many years Patriarch of Alexandria. His book was written in Arabic, and contained a history of the world, from the time of Adam, up to the year 326 of the Hegira, that is, up to 937 A.D. The Arabic word Said or Seith, meaning "the fortunate one," was transformed into Eutychius, in Greek; and the same history was published in a Latin and Arabic edition, at Oxford, in the 17th century, by one Poccoke, under the title *S. Eutychii Patriarchi Alexandrini Annales Lat. et Arab.*, ed. Poccoke, Oxon. 1658.

III. William's third work was his History of the First Crusade and of the Establishments founded in the East by the Crusaders, or, as the title runs—*Historia rerum in partibus transmarinis Gestarum*. This is really the great work of his life, and the work on which his literary fame rests. Soon after his return from his Eastern studies, in 1163, he conceived the plan of writing a truthful and unbiassed history of Latin affairs in the East. King Amalric encouraged him also in this literary undertaking, and volunteered to assist him in every way possible. The first eleven books were finished, the internal evidence shows us, before the summer of 1173: book fourteen, after William was made Archbishop; and the first chapter of the unfinished twenty-third book must have been written in the last year of his life. According to these data, the book occupied him for twenty years.

When we consider William of Tyre's merits as a historian critically, and compare him with other writers of the same period, it is not difficult to see that he far surpasses them all, and that his work is, in fact, the first *history*, in the modern sense of the word, and the best, that the Middle Ages have to show us. The list of authors who have treated of the same subject is a long one, but none are at all worthy to be compared with William, either in learning, ability, style, or arrangement of materials. We have, first, the narratives of those men who were themselves eye-witnesses of the events they record—diffuse, ill-arranged chronicles, generally written from a partisan standpoint, to celebrate the prowess and doughty deeds either of one great noble or hero, or of one nation or section of a nation. Under this head may be ranked Raymond of Agiles, who accompanied

the Count of Toulouse on the First Crusade. Naturally, his liege lord and the hot-headed superstitious Provençals have the leading places in his account of things. Then comes an anonymous writer, attached probably to Bohemond, Prince of Tarentum, whose adventures and prowess he narrates at length. Foucher of Chartres is the next in order, with his chronicle, which he calls *Gesta Peregrinantium Francorum*. Foucher started for the Holy Land in the suite of Robert of Normandy and Steven of Blois, but soon left them for Baldwin, the brother of Godfrey of Boulogne, whom he followed to Edessa, so that his narrative recounts the deeds and conquests of the North Frenchmen and Flemish.

In many instances these accounts disagree totally, and the aim of their authors seems to be, not so much to give a fair, dispassionate, accurate statement of what happened, as to make everything as marvellous and wonderful as possible. As to the historians who were not eye-witnesses—of whom Albert of Aix (Albertus Aquensis) is a fair sample—they seem to have copied all the others, without even noticing the incongruities in the narrations that they were combining, or without having the least idea of regarding their sources with any critical attention.

William's idea of the manner in which a history should be written was very different from this. In the first place, the scope of his work was much greater, including not only an account of the First Crusade, but of almost a century of French rule in the Orient. Instead of plunging *in medias res*, he went systematically to work, and gave, in the first place, a clear, well-arranged description of the state of things in the East, previous to the First Crusade, with a logical analysis of the causes leading up to that great movement. As to his sources, William states in his Preface, that Books I. to XV. are based on oral communications of old people, on letters and other reliable documents. He also states further, that he has used no previous authorities: "In hoc véro nullam aut Græcam, aut Arabicam habentes præducem scripturam, solis traditionibus instructi, exceptis paucis quæ ipsi oculata fide conspeximus narrationis seriem ordinavimus."

Notwithstanding this elaborate disclaimer, it is certain that William was acquainted with all previous histories of the Crusades. Von Sybel, the learned German historian of the First Crusade, has amused himself by comparing William's history with those of Albert of Aix, Foucher of Chartres, Raymond of Agiles, and Tudebodus, and has clearly demonstrated that William followed sometimes one,

sometimes another of these authorities for the first half, at least, of his work. But this much must be said for him, that he followed with discrimination, always selecting the author who, in his judgment, would be most likely to have gotten the correct account of an event, and always suppressing whatever, to his mind, savoured of exaggeration, or appealed too strongly to the credulity or superstition of his time—in a word, he weighed carefully his authorities, and strove to be painstaking, critical, and impartial.

When it came to the later period of his history—to that of his own time—he was equally exacting in respect of the testimony of eye-witnesses, always, if possible, getting more than one account of an event or a transaction. His historical and geographical data are especially accurate and good. He also seems to have some idea of the philosophy of history, and tries to bring out clearly the relations of cause and effect in his narration of events. His style is excellent. Although using the Latin of the Middle Ages, it was founded on the best Latin models, with which, as we have already seen, he was thoroughly familiar. His matter is well arranged, and his sentences clear. His great fault is a certain striving after rhetorical effect. He is fond of stately, well-sounding sentences, and fine phrases, which he employs with effect in his descriptions of battles and sieges. The merits of a style of this kind are seen but dimly through the medium of 15th-century English, especially when we consider, that, often owing to mistranslation, or to paleographic errors, the long sentences which were so sonorous in Latin, have suffered a *reductio ad absurdum*, and have lost not only their pristine literary grace, but even their original meanings. Still, notwithstanding these drawbacks, no one can read Caxton's *Godeffroye of Boloigne*, translation of a translation as it is, without feeling the vigour, sincerity, and culture of its far-away author, whose character the learned Thomas Fuller long ago so admirably summed up, in the Preface to his *Holy War* :

“ He was a pious man, and an excellent scholar, skilled in all the learned Oriental tongues, besides the Dutch and French, his native tongue—a moderate and faithful writer : treasurer he was of all the money contributed to the *Holy War*, chancellor of his kingdom, employed in several embassies in the West ; present at the Lateran Council, the acts whereof he did record ; cardinal he might have been, but he refused it ; in a word, unhappy only that he lived in that age, though that age was happy that he lived in it.”

V. GODFREY OF BOUILLON.

Godfrey of Bouillon is to us of the 19th century a very shadowy personage, known chiefly as one of the leading characters in Tasso's *Jerusalem Delivered*, and it would certainly not occur to us, were we called upon to name the world's greatest heroes, to place him high up in the list.

As the dispassionate modern judge reads the histories of the First Crusade, it seems to him that there are half a dozen other princes at least who deserve as much consideration and admiration as Godfrey: the clever scheming Bohemond, the chivalrous Tancred, the impetuous Count of Toulouse, and even Godfrey's own brother, the sensible and energetic Baldwin, all, according to the records, seem to have done as good service; all seem to have played as important a part, and to have distinguished themselves as much as Godfrey of Bouillon. But it is very evident that William of Tyre does not think so, nor does Caxton, nor any of the preceding or subsequent historians of the Crusades.

Young, chivalrous, and sincerely religious, Godfrey of Bouillon seems from the very beginning of the First Crusade to have aroused the popular admiration, and to have been singled out from among his peers to become the subject of tradition, legend and poetry. In fact, by common consent he was regarded as the central figure of the Crusades; and there is no doubt that Caxton only voices the general opinion of his time when he "stalls" him in "thynde stalle of the moost worthy of Cristen men," and ranks him as the world's greatest hero since Arthur and Charlemagne. Of course, as is the case with all great men who live in an uneducated and uncivilized age, a series of traditions and legends soon grew up around his name. Even less than a hundred years after his death, at the time that William of Tyre wrote his history, these traditions and legends were widely spread. Over some of them the discriminating William shakes his head, in particular, wisely refusing to credit the story of the swan, which strangely enough, after having been brought from the East by Oriental story-tellers, had attached itself to the family of Bouillon. Of this very legend, William says, "*Praeterinus denique studiose licet id verum fuisse plurimorum, astruat narratio cygni fabulam, unde vulgo dicitur, sementivam eis fuisse originem, eo quod a vero videatur deficere talis assertio.*"

Other traditions, equally false but more probable and natural, he accepts, and bravely incorporates in the interesting little sketch which he gives us of the life of Godfrey, in the ninth book of his history, when narrating the circumstances of the choice of the first king of Jerusalem. Indeed, late investigations have shown that much of the biography of Godfrey of Bouillon which has been regarded as authentic, is either without any foundation in fact, or has been obtained from unreliable sources. In the few pages following, I give a brief account of what is really known of the life of Godfrey of Bouillon. This account, although containing information regarding our hero's early life—from outside sources—yet on the whole follows William of Tyre, and fulfils the double purpose of giving a brief biography of Godfrey of Bouillon, and, at the same time, a short *résumé* of Caxton's book, from the point where Godfrey puts on the cross, to start for the Holy Land.

Godfrey of Bouillon—or “Bolojne,” as Caxton incorrectly calls him—was the second son of Eustache, count of Boulogne-sur-Mer, and Ida, sister of the hump-backed Godfrey, duke of Lower Lorraine. William, following the authority of William of Malmesbury, makes Godfrey the eldest son of his parents, but Ordericus Vitalis and other contemporary historians state that he was the second son. In the life of his mother Ida (*Acta Sanctorum*, ad XIII April, p. 141), we find also that Godfrey is given as her second son. He was of most distinguished birth and lineage, as both his father and his mother traced their descent back to Charlemagne. Eustache and Ida had two other sons; one older, named after his father, Eustache, succeeded to the estates and title of Count of Boulogne; another, younger, named Baldwin, became king of Jerusalem after Godfrey's death. William of Tyre assigns to Ida a fourth son, named William, who remains at home with his mother, while his three brothers are fighting in the Holy Land, but no reliable authority for the truth of this statement has ever been found. Ida had no daughter, although tradition designates a sister of Godfrey of Bouillon as the unfortunate and ill-used wife of Henry IV. of Germany.

The year of Godfrey's birth is not positively known, but its most probable date is 1060. His birth-place is equally uncertain, some authorities stating that he was born in Baisy, Brabant, thus making him a German subject both by birth and adoption. Most of the later historians and biographers have, however, decided in favour of Boulogne-sur-Mer, in France, his father's ancestral home. Here the

three boys were very carefully reared by their pious and intelligent mother, whose teachings seem to have had a life-long influence over them all.

Godfrey, who at an early age was adopted by his childless uncle Godfrey, duke of Lower Lorraine, spent much of his childhood in Brabant, and at the age of seventeen succeeded to the March of Antwerp and all his uncle's allodial possessions. Among these was the family castle of Bouillon, from which he took his title, which curiously enough Caxton has altered into "Boloyn," confounding it evidently with that of his father and brother in France. The early manhood of Godfrey, up to the call for the First Crusade, as narrated by enthusiastic biographers, and repeated to a certain extent by William of Tyre, represents him already as a brilliant, irresistible hero. According to these traditions, Godfrey appears at the court of the Emperor of Germany, surrounded by glittering retainers. Henry, impressed by the stately manner and beautiful person of the youthful hero, inquires "Who is this noble-looking knight?" and kisses him when he learns his name, twice on the chin and cheek. Then follows a series of knightly deeds. Godfrey succours the poor orphan, protects the friendless, and fights a duel for part of his heritage unjustly claimed by a relative. He is chosen from all the German nobles to carry the banner of his emperor against Rudolph of Suabia, and kills this same Rudolph on the field of battle. Then comes the famous journey to Rome, where Henry besieges the Pope, and Godfrey, after wonderful deeds of valour, is the first to enter the city. Here, tradition says, heated by battle, he drank too freely of wine, and was in consequence seized with a fever, which lasted until he put on the cross for the First Crusade, when he immediately became well. William of Malmesbury, who relates the story, states that Godfrey had no return of his malady during all the exposures of the First Crusade, until Jerusalem was taken, and a Christian government thoroughly established; then, his mission on earth being fulfilled, God permitted his fever to seize him again so violently, that in a few days he died of it. All of these stories except the last are plausible, and probable enough, but we do not find authorities to confirm them. Godfrey's life up to the time of the First Crusade—as nearly as can be gathered from documents and authentic records—was that of an ordinary young knight of good family. He was courageous and upright, and occupied himself chiefly in protecting his possessions from powerful and greedy neighbours, and in attend-

GODFREY.

c

ing to his own affairs. His chief care seems to have been to advance to the best of his ability his own worldly interests; and there seems to have been very little manifestation of religious enthusiasm, or indeed of those heroic qualities which were soon to develop him into a world-renowned hero, and obtain for him honours which the world esteemed as among the greatest that could be conferred upon mortal man. This much is really known of him. He had a quarrel with Count Theodore of Flammes, whom he took prisoner, and kept in durance vile for the rest of his life. When only seventeen, he was besieged in the Castle of Bouillon, just after his uncle's death, by Albert count of Namur, and by the Bishop of Verdun. Against this combined attack Godfrey defended his fortress with skill and energy. The lords of Bouillon up to 1076 were also counts of Verdun, but after this time, Bishop Theoderic wished to have the title and the property bestowed upon Albert of Namur. Godfrey naturally opposed this intention, and not only protected himself and thwarted their purpose, but laid waste the diocese of the Bishop, and harassed him and his ally in every possible way. That Godfrey did go to Rome, to aid the Emperor against the Pope, seems definitely established, and as a reward for his services, in 1089, Henry bestowed upon him the duchy of Lower Lorraine, which had been refused him after the death of his uncle.

When the call for the First Crusade came in 1095, from Urban II, at the council of Clermont, Godfrey decided at once to go, and set about his preparations with such energy that he was the first of the great princes ready to start, although his retinue was one of the largest, for under his standard were ranged 10,000 horsemen and 80,000 infantry. At this time, it is certain that he had no idea of devoting his life to the conquest of Jerusalem, and no intention of expatriating himself for ever. He sold his castles of Stenay and Monzon to the Bishop of Verdun, with whom he seems to have been on good terms again; he also mortgaged the Seignory of Bouillon to the Bishop of Liege, but on the express condition that he himself, or three of his nearest heirs especially named, might buy the property back within fourteen years. The price fixed was 1300 silver marks, and three gold marks. This price is given by Gilles d'Arval. Ordericus Vitalis says that he received 7000 marks of silver for them, while Albert d'Aix makes it only 1500. The bishop had a great deal of difficulty in raising this large sum of money, and even went so far as to despoil the shrine of St. Lambert, the altar, the

pulpit, and the sacerdotal vestments, of their gold and precious stones, besides taking everything valuable that he could lay his hands on in the convents and monasteries of his diocese.

The fact that Godfrey made a series of unusually rich donations to different churches and religious houses between the years 1090 and 1096 is well authenticated. In 1090 the records show that he restored to the Abbey of Gorze, in the diocese of Metz, the church of St. Dagobert at Stenay. In 1096 he gave many large gifts to this same church in concert with his brother Baldwin. In 1094, in concert with his mother and brothers, he presented the church of Baisy to the monastery of St. Pierre at Bouillon. He also founded at Antwerp the chapter of St. Michel, transferred later to the church of Notre Dame. In 1096 he assigned five manors to the monastery of Afflighem, situated near Genappe; and the same year the family, as a whole, gave the church of Genappe, with all its revenues, to the same monastery. Godfrey also gave the castle of Falkenstein to the church of Notre Dame at Verdun, and presented the chapter of St. Jervais, at Maestricht, with an estate that he possessed on the Meuse.

Godfrey's worldly and religious affairs thus being all put in order, as we see, he finished his preparations and started for the Holy Land in August 1096, with his brothers Eustache and Baldwin. As for the oft-repeated statement that Godfrey was the officially appointed leader of the First Crusade, there is no truth in it. The Papal Legate, Bishop Adhemar of Puy, was the only person to whom any authority had in any sense been officially delegated; but there was no one particular leader of this great movement in the strict sense of the word; each great prince prepared his own outfit, and gathered his army, and set out, when and how it best pleased him. If Godfrey has always been considered the central figure of the First Crusade, it is owing not to his political position, but to his moral influence and personal character, probably because it was instinctively felt that he, more than any other of the great princes, was in sympathy with the tendencies and motives that called it into being.

Godfrey's journey to Constantinople, which city Adhemar had chosen as the rendezvous of all the princes, was not an easy one. He found all the countries through which he had to pass excited and unfriendly, owing to the outrages which had been perpetrated upon their inhabitants by the undisciplined bands of common people that had preceded him. Following the Danube, he arrived peacefully

enough at the boundaries of Hungary. Here however he encountered great difficulties, so that it took him the whole month of September to traverse that country. The first part of November he crossed Bulgaria, and finally reached Nissa, where he received friendly messages from the Greek emperor Alexis, which he accepted in good faith. When he came to Phillipopolis, however, he learned that Hugh of Vermandois, brother of the king of France, who had preceded him to Constantinople by another route, instead of being treated by the Greeks with the consideration due to his lofty rank, was held a prisoner by the Emperor. Indignant at this treatment, Godfrey—who had scrupulously refrained from molesting the inhabitants of the countries through which he passed—immediately gave his men licence to pillage the land. This summary proceeding soon brought the Emperor to his senses, and he begged Hugh's pardon for his imprisonment, and agreed to set him free as soon as the French army should arrive in front of Constantinople. Not being able to obtain his ends by force, the crafty Alexis then changed his tactics, and by flattery and gifts soon persuaded Hugh, who was a vain young prince, to take the oath of allegiance to him—hoping to induce all the other barons and princes to follow this example. Godfrey was the next to arrive; but on being summoned to swear fealty and obedience to the Emperor, he utterly refused to do so, exclaiming reproachfully to Hugh, who came to him a second time to persuade him to take this step, "What! you, a king's son, have become a slave also!" But as the winter wore on, and Alexis showed himself so unfriendly, Godfrey began to fear that, unless this concession were made, they might be long delayed in their undertaking, or indeed be hindered altogether from going on to Jerusalem. Albert of Aix, who gives a fuller report of these negotiations than William of Tyre, states that finally Godfrey consented to become Alexis' liege man, rather than bring about an open rupture with him, saying that he had not left home to overturn Christian kingdoms, but to get the Emperor's help in carrying Christian weapons against Jerusalem. This matter being settled the barons and princes decided to leave Constantinople, and to continue on their holy journey. The first city of importance beyond Constantinople on Mussulman territory was Nicaea, the capital of Bithynia, then under the rule of Solyman's son David, surnamed Kilidge-Arslan, or the Sword of the Spirit. This town, although strongly fortified, the Crusaders resolved to besiege. Godfrey fought valiantly, and performed wonderful deeds

of valour, but he was not successful as the director of this siege. Nothing was really accomplished before Nicaea until Bohemond, Prince of Tarentum, arrived. He infused new life and energy into everything, and soon forced Kilidge-Arslan to surrender.

In accordance with the oath that they had sworn at Constantinople, the Crusaders handed the city over to Alexis, on the 27th of June, 1097. Having rested themselves thoroughly, they set off again for Syria by way of Phrygia, Cilicia, and the passes of the Taurus. Very unwisely the army divided, the main body, under Godfrey, Raymond of Toulouse, Adhemar, and Hugh of Vermandois, crossing the plain of Dorylaeum, while a smaller force, commanded by the Duke of Normandy, Bohemond, and Tancred, turned off to the left. Kilidge-Arslan, after his flight from Nicaea, nothing daunted by his defeat, had collected an army of about 200,000 men, and had returned, hoping to retrieve his misfortunes. As soon as he learned of the division of the army of his opponents, he determined to attack the smaller body. A terrible slaughter ensued. The Saracens were on the point of gaining a complete victory, when the main army came up to the rescue, preceded by Godfrey and fifty knights, who had been too impatient to wait for their slower-moving companions. In a moment the situation was changed. The Saracens were thoroughly routed, and fled in every direction, leaving their tents and a rich booty to the victors.

The Crusaders continued their route after their victory, through an arid and desolate country, suffering incredible tortures from hunger, thirst, and heat; and it was not until they arrived in Armenia that relief was obtained. Here Baldwin left the main body of the army in order to besiege Edessa, which seemed to him too tempting a piece of booty to be left behind, while Godfrey and the other princes marched towards Antioch in Syria, which great and powerful city they realized must be taken before they could go on to Jerusalem.

Bagi Sijan, a Seljouicide prince, was at this time Emir of Antioch. For several years the whole Mahommedan world had been convulsed by internal religious dissensions. The two parties, whose heads resided respectively in Egypt and Bagdad, were struggling for the mastery in Palestine. Bagi Sijan,—or Baghistan, as he is called in French and English Chronicles,—who sympathized with the Fatimides or Egyptian faction, was absent from Antioch as the Crusaders approached, having gone with the princes of Aleppo and Jerusalem

against Emessa, which was occupied by the opposite faction. On hearing the news of the Christians' arrival, he speedily returned to Antioch, and realizing his danger, sent for aid in all directions, including even those foes against whom but the day before he had been arrayed in arms.

The Crusaders, after some debate, decided to attempt the siege of Antioch immediately, and took up their position around its walls, notwithstanding the fact that they had not enough men to invest them entirely. This was a siege in which, strange to say, the besiegers suffered infinitely more than the besieged. Antioch was well provisioned, while the country round about had been so thoroughly pillaged and laid waste, that it was with extreme difficulty that the Christians could obtain the necessities of life. Added to this was the discomfort of a rainy season, so long continued that their very tents rotted over their heads. As a natural consequence of this state of things, a frightful epidemic broke out, which reduced their numbers with startling rapidity, and enfeebled and discouraged those who were left alive. It was not until spring returned, and better weather came, that anything like energy showed itself among the besiegers.

In all this trouble Godfrey bore himself like a Christian hero, suffering patiently with the others, and signaling himself by deeds of valour and courage. One of his exhibitions of strength and bravery is reported in more than one of the old chronicles. A fleet of Genoese and Pisans having anchored in the port of St. Simon, the Crusaders, in all haste and joy, sent a body of men to receive the provisions and news that they brought, and to escort back to Antioch the sailors and carpenters who were to assist them in constructing besieging engines. As the little body of men returned, it was attacked and routed by a party of Saracens, who were lying in wait for them. Godfrey, hearing of the engagement, hastened to the spot with a large detachment of men. Bagi Sijan, who was standing on one of the towers of Antioch, rejoicing over the defeat of the Christians, seeing his own men, in turn, in danger, sent a party out from the town to their assistance. The *mêlée* became general, and the fighting desperate on both sides. The Christian princes smote prodigious blows, and performed wonderful deeds of valour. Robert of Normandy split the head of one of his opponents to the shoulder with a single stroke, but Godfrey surpassed even that. A huge Saracen engaged with him, and shivered his shield with the first blow.

Godfrey, rising in his stirrups, calmly cut his adversary in two across the middle with one stroke, so that the upper half of the man fell to the ground, leaving the lower half still sitting on the horse.

Thus for months the Crusaders invested Antioch, and at the end of this time would have been no nearer accomplishing their purpose than at the beginning, had not one Emir Feirus, as William of Tyre calls him, a renegade Armenian of wealth and influence in Antioch, turned traitor, and delivered the city into their hands, on condition that Bohemond of Tarentum should be its prince and ruler. Once inside the walls, the Christians, infuriated by the long resistance, and exasperated by their own sufferings, slaughtered the greater part of the inhabitants, young and old indiscriminately, as many as six thousand perishing in a single night. But Godfrey and the other princes had but a short time to exult over their success. It will be remembered that Bagi-Sijan at the commencement of the siege sent to all the great Mahomedan princes for aid. To his appeal they did not turn a deaf ear; and only three days after the Christians entered Antioch, on the 6th of June, Kerboga, prince of Mosul, presented himself before its gates, with an army estimated variously at from 300,000 to 600,000 men, and the besiegers became in turn the besieged. On the horrors of that siege it is difficult to dwell. It is enough to say, that after being shut up three weeks in a city stripped of provisions and stores of every kind, the Crusaders, rendered desperate by famine and misery, marched out against Kerboga and his army—headed by Godfrey and Tancred, and their fellow peers—decided to die by the sword rather than by disease and hunger. Inspired by their necessities, and uplifted by their religious faith, the weak and enfeebled men fought as only desperate men can fight, and were rewarded by complete victory. They remained masters of the field, while the vast army of Kerboga was scattered to the four winds of heaven. This battle was the end of any effective opposition to the onward march of the Crusaders; but the hardships that they had endured seemed for the time to have quenched the ardour of the leaders of the army, for it was not until late in the following winter, after the repeated solicitations of the common people, that the princes and great barons could be persuaded to leave their private expeditions against adjacent cities, and start on their way towards Jerusalem. Godfrey, Eustache, and Robert of Flanders did not get under way until spring.

Their route lay along the sea now, through such a beautiful and fertile country, that notwithstanding the murmurs of the common people, who were impatient to reach their journey's end, the leaders could not resist the temptation to stop and lay siege to some of the wealthy towns near by. Godfrey besieged Gibel, while Raymond of Toulouse attacked Archas. In this way some time was consumed, so that it was not until the end of May that the forces were all united again, this time, however, with a firm determination to let nothing hinder them from proceeding directly to Jerusalem.

Sickness and war had made terrible havoc among their number, so that of the hundreds of thousands who had started on this undertaking, scarce fifty thousand were now left. The excitement was tremendous as they approached the Holy City. The last night, many of the men, unable to restrain their impatience, marched the whole night through, and at daybreak, June 10th, 1099, saw the walls and towers of Jerusalem rise up before them. Never before or since, in the history of the world, probably, has a scene of such intense emotion, on so large a scale, been seen, or have such transports of joy and reverence been witnessed. Strong, stalwart men, who had endured untold suffering and privations to behold this sight, sobbed aloud; some cast themselves upon their knees in prayer; others kissed the earth on which they stood, in an ecstasy of rejoicing.

The very next day energetic preparations were made for the assault of the city. To each of the princes was assigned a portion of the walls, to invest. Godfrey, with his brother Eustache and his cousin Baldwin du Bourg, occupied the north-west side, between the gate of Damascus and the gate of Jaffa, which included the spot most precious to them all, the inclosure of Mount Calvary. The Saracens—well provisioned, and thoroughly prepared for a long siege—had not only stripped the country around of everything eatable, but had filled up all the wells and cisterns for a long distance, so that in a few days the besiegers suffered both from hunger and thirst. Nothing daunted, they continued their siege with all the fire of religious enthusiasts; and recognizing the fact that their unaided strength could not accomplish their purpose, they set themselves systematically and patiently about building the necessary engines for making a decisive attack. For weeks they laboured untiringly, until at length everything that the military science of the time could devise, with the limited means and material at their disposal, was

ready. On Thursday, July the 14th, the assault was commenced. For two days the conflict was terrible; both sides fought with the energy of desperation, until late on Friday afternoon, when the two brothers Lethold and Engelbert of Tournai, followed by Godfrey of Bouillon, set foot upon the walls of Jerusalem. In an incredibly short space of time Godfrey and his men were down in the city, and the gates were thrown open. The Crusaders massacred their enemies without mercy, and blood ran in torrents to their knees in the street.

But Godfrey, with his deep religious sentiment, felt that prayer rather than bloodshed befitted their first hours in Jerusalem, and set the example to the others by withdrawing from the carnage, and going barefooted, clad simply in a clean linen garment, to the sepulchre of our Lord, to return thanks that He had thus allowed them to accomplish their pilgrimage and fulfil their vows. Godfrey was followed by all; weapons and bloody garments were laid aside, and barefooted, with heads reverently uncovered, all marched to the Church of the Resurrection, weeping tears of joy, praying and singing songs of penitence and rejoicing.

The victory now obtained was complete, but there was no time to sit idly, or even to rest after their long labours. The city was cleared of its dead; and after that, the first care of the Crusaders was to organize a Christian government, and above all to choose a fitting ruler, a man capable of leading them in war, and of controlling and guiding them in peace. After due deliberation and careful inquiry into the character and ability of each of the great barons, on July 23rd they elected Godfrey of Bouillon king of Jerusalem, and would have proceeded immediately to crown him, had not that pious and reverential prince unconditionally refused the honour. Their leader and duke he was willing to be, "but God forbid," said he, "that I should be crowned with a crown of gold, where my Saviour bore a crown of thorns." At least, this is the report of the deliberations and their result, as given by William of Tyre, who followed Albert of Aix. According to Raymond of Agiles, the crown was first offered to Raymond of Toulouse, who refused it in the words here attributed to Godfrey. Other authorities state that the crown was also offered to Robert of Normandy, who in turn refused it, and that then the choice fell upon Godfrey of Bouillon. Whether this be true or not, it is certain that the choice once made, all were unanimously pleased and contented with it; the common people, especially, regarded it as

the result of an inspiration from heaven. Little opportunity was offered for festivities in honour of the new king, as an Egyptian army, 300,000 strong, under the Emir Afdal, was advancing against them. So confident of victory were the Moslems, that they were even bringing with them, it was reported, ropes or chains with which to bind their prisoners. At the moment that Godfrey took command of the little army of the Crusaders, the enemy were already traversing Gaza, the ancient land of the Philistines. He sent immediately for Tancred and Eustache, who were away in Naplouse, and prepared to go out against the foe, as he saw that to allow themselves to be besieged in Jerusalem would only repeat the horrors of Antioch. At first, Robert of Normandy and Raymond of Toulouse refused to join the outgoing troops, but soon, seeing the imminent danger that threatened them, yielded, and united with the others. The two armies met near Askalon, Godfrey at the head of scarce 20,000 men. But such was their enthusiasm and bravery that nothing could withstand them, and the vast army of Afdal was gloriously routed. This battle firmly established the Latins in Palestine; and the great princes, feeling that they had fulfilled their vows, started one after another for home, leaving Godfrey with a few thousand men to solve the difficult problem of governing, protecting, and increasing his newly-founded domain.

Of the events of Godfrey's reign there is but little to say. He ruled wisely, strengthening himself in every possible way, and making good laws both for the governing and the governed. He died after one short year of kingship on July 18, 1100, and was buried on Mount Calvary, near the Saviour whom, in life, he had striven with reverence and single-heartedness to serve. Tradition gives us more than one version of the cause of his death. One authority tells us that he died from eating some poisoned fruit, presented by the neighbouring Emir of Caesarea; another states that he was poisoned by Dagobert, the new bishop of Jerusalem; but neither of these two stories seems to be any more reliable than the quartan-fever legend already mentioned.

Thus perished, in the flower of his age, the man who above all others was the leading figure in the great religious movements of the 11th and 12th centuries.

Caxton's reasons for presenting the English-speaking and reading world with a translation of William of Tyre's history, he gives us in his simple preface. He wishes to arouse his countrymen to a

renewed interest in the Holy Land, and above all to make them familiar with the noble deeds and "hye courageous faytes" of Godfrey of Bouillon. As Godfrey disappears from the pages of William's history at this point, so Caxton abruptly ends his translation, without other comment than the date when the work was finished. It may be wondered that Caxton makes no mention of William of Tyre, either in his preface, or at the close of the book; but there is no reason to believe that he, any more than the other editors and translators, knew who the real author of the work was, the identity of these editions and translations with the Latin text of William of Tyre, being a discovery which it was reserved for modern scholars to make.

GODFREY OF BULLOGNE,

OR

THE SIEGE AND CONQUESTE OF JHERUSALEM.

CAXTON, 1481. THE PROLOGUE.

He hye couragious faytes / And valyaunt actes of noble, Illus-
 t t rous and vertuous personnes, ben digne to be recounted / put
 in memorye / and wreton, to thende that ther may be gyuen
 4 to them name Inmortal, by souerayn laude and preysyng,
 And also for to moeue and tenflawme the hertes of the Redars
 and hierers, for teschewe and fle werkes vycious, dishonnest and
 vytuperable / And for tempryse and accomplysshe enterpryses
 8 honnestes, and werkes of gloryous meryte, to lyue in remembraunce
 perpetuel / ffor as it is so, that thystoryagraphes haue wreton many
 a noble hystorye, as wel in metre as in prose, By whiche thactes
 & noble fayttes of thauncyent conquerours ben had in remem-
 12 braunce, and remayne in grete, large / and aourned volumes / and
 so shal abyde in perpetuel memorye, to thentente that gloryous
 Prynces and hye men of noble and vertuose courage, shold take
 ensample tempryse werkys leeful and honneste / Fyrst, for goddes
 16 quarell / in mayntenyng oure¹ fayth and the libertees of holy chirche,
 For the recuperacion of the holy land, whiche our blessyd lord
 Ihesu Criste hath halowed by his blessyd presence humayne / and
 by shedyng therin for oure redempcion his precious blood ; ffor the
 20 releef of suche cristen men as there dwelle in grete myserye and
 thraldomm, And also for the defence of theyr Royammes, Loudes,
 Enherytages / and subgettes. And for thyse causes tendeuoyre
 theym in theyr noble persones / with alle theyr puysances and
 24 power, tadresse and remyse theym in theyr auncyent Fraunchyses
 and lyberte / Acordyng to that we fynde wreton in holy scripture
 of many noble historyes, which were here ouer long to rtherce.
 But in especial of thre noble and mooste worthy of alle other, that
 28 is to wytte, fyrst of duc Iosue, that noble prynce / whiche ladde and

Noble deeds
 should be
 held in
 memory,
 to influence
 readers to
 avoid evil
 works.

Princes and
 high men
 should pat-
 tern after
 them,

to recover the
 Holy Land,

to defend
 their king-
 doms.

Many noble
 histories are
 written in
 Holy Scrip-
 tures.

Of Iosue,

¹ *Orig.* onre.

conduyted the Childeren of Israhel, the chosen people of God, oute
 of deserte in to the londe of promysson, the Londe flowynge Mylke
 and hony. Socondly, of Dauyde the Kyng and holy Prophete /
 Whome God chaas after his herte, And achyeynt many grete 4
 Bataylles, gouernyng the sayde chosen people of God by the space of
 forty yeris / And the thyrd of the Noble Iudas Machabeus; how
 he deffended the sayde people in fyghtyng many and merueyllous
 bataylles, for veray zeele and loue of his lawe, and mayntenyng of 8
 the same vnto the deth, ffor which causes a-forsayd, the names of
 thyes thre abyde perpetuel, for thre of the moste beste and Nobleste
 of the Iewys / And in the nombre of ¹the moost digne and moost
 worthy / 12
 a Nd by cause valyaunce and prowesse is remembryd emong the
 gentyles & payn[e]mes, as emong thebrewes, I fynde wreton of
 the incredible, chenalous prowesse of the noble and valyaunt Hector
 of troye, whos excellent actes wryten / Ouyde, Homer, Virgyle, 16
 Dares, Dyctes and other dyuerse, and eche better than other, re-
 herchyng his noble vertues / strengthe and humanyte / Socondly, of
 Alysandre the grete kyng of Macedone, which domyned and had
 to hym obeyssaunt the vnyuersal world; And the thyrde, the noble 20
 Julyus Cezar, Emperour of Rome, whos noble actes ben wreton by
 poetes, as lucan / stace and other / And dayly remembryde as newe
 and ffreshe as he yet lyuyeth / whiche thre ben sette as for the moost
 worthy emong the gentyles and paynems. 24
 n Ow lete vs thenne remembre what hystories ben wreton of
 Cristen men, of whom ther be many wreton. But in especial,
 as for the best and worthyest, I fynde fyrst the glorious / most
 excellent in his tyme / and fyrst founder of the rounde table / Kyng 28
 Arthur, kyng of the brytons, that tyme regnyng in this Royamme /
 of whos retenue were many noble Kynges, Prynces / lordes and
 knyghtes, of which the noblest were knyghtes of the round table,
 of whos actes and histories there be large volumes, and bookes grete 32
 plente and many / O blessyd lord, whan I remembre the grete and
 many volumes of seynt graal / ghalehot, & launcelotte de lake /
 Gawayn, perceual / Lyonel / and tristran, and many other, of whom
 were ouer longe to reherce / and also to me vnknown! But 36
 thystorye of the sayd Arthur is so glorious and shynyng, that he is
 stalled in the fyrst place of the mooste noble / beste and worthyest
 of the cristen men. Socondly, of Charlemayn, the grete Emperour²

of David the King,

of the noble Julius Mac-
cabeus.

In profane
history is
found re-
corded the
prowess of
Hector of
Troy,

of Alexander,

of Julius Cezar, Emperour
of Rome.

Of Christian
heroes,
the first and
best is
Arthur, King
of the Britons.

He is stalled
in the first
place.

Charle-
magne, the

¹ leaf 1, back.

² *Orig.* Emperour.

- of Allemayne, and kyng of ffrance / whos noble actes and conquestes ben wreton in large volumes with the noble faytes and actes of his douze pieres, that is to saye, Rowland and olyuer / with the
 4 other / whos name and renomme abydeth also perpetuel, and is stalled in the second place emonge the most worthy of Cristen men.
- Of alle thyse historyes afor reherced, the bookes and volumes ben had in latyn, ffrenssh and Englysshe, and other langage.
- 8 t Henne as for the thyrd of the Cristen prynces, taken, reputed and renommed for to be egal emong thyse worthy & best that euer were, I mene the noble Godefroy of Boloyn / whiche ¹now but late, not yet four C. yere syth he flowred, and was stalled in
 12 the thyrde stalle of the moost worthy of Cristen men, whos hystorye is made and wreton in Latyn and ffrenssh in large and grete volumes / And as not knowen emonge vs here / whiche ben adiacent and neyghbours to the place of his natyute / whos noble hystorye I
 16 late fonde in a booke of ffrenssh, al alonge of his noble actes, valyaunces, prowesses / and accomplysshement of his hye empryses / In whiche I fynde very causes, as me semeth, moche semblable and lyke vnto suche as we haue nowe dayly tofore vs, By the mes-
 20 creautes and turkes emprysed / ayenst Cristendom. And yet moche more nowe than were in his dayes / ffor in his dayes the turkes had conquerd vpon Cristendom but vnto the braas of seynt George by Constantynople, And had no foote on this syde the sayd
 24 Braas. But at this daye it is so that they haue comen ouer and gotten that Imperial Cyte, Constantynople afsayd / and many Royamme and countre / to the grete dommage and hurte of alle Cristendom; To the resistence of whom, as yet, fewe Cristen prynces
 28 haue put them in deuoyr. Thenne I retorne agayn vnto the conqueste at suche tyme as they were come to the sayd Braas, that by the dylygent sollicitude of a pour heremyte / the sayd Godeffroy of Boloyn, and other dyuerse prynces / lordes and comyn peple,
 32 auowed the croysyng and empryse to warre agayn the mescreautes, And to recouere the holy Cyte of Iherusalem; whiche afterward they ahyeuyd, and conquerd fro the sayd braas vnto the holy lande, and recouerd the holy cyte of Iherusalem / as in this sayd book,² al
 36 alonge and playnly shal appere. In whiche cyte the sayd Godeffroy was elect and chosen for his vertue / prowesse / and blessyd disposicion, to be kyng of the sayd Iherusalem, and the londe therabout.

great Em-
 peror of Alle-
 mayne and
 King of
 Fraunce, is
 second.

All these his-
 tories are to
 be had in
 Latin,
 French, and
 other lan-
 guages.

The third is
 Godfrey of
 Bologne,

His history is
 in Latin and
 French, but
 not yet known
 in English.

The Turks
 to-day have
 made greater
 encroach-
 ments upon
 Christendom
 than in the
 time of
 Godfrey.

The First
 Crusade un-
 dertaken at
 the sollicita-
 tion of a poor
 hermit.

¹ leaf 2.

² *Orig.* book.

This history is no fable,

considering the late encroachments of the Turke.

All Christians should unite against them,

and follow the example of Godfrey of Bologne.

I translate this book from the French, to encourage men to undertake the recovery of Jerusalem.

I hope especially to induce King Edward to interest himself in the matter.

t Henne I, thus vysytyng^t this noble hystorye / whiche is no fable ne fayned^t thyng, But alle that is therin trewe / Consideryng^e also the grete puyssaunce of the Turke, grete enemye of oure Cristen fayth, destroyar of Cristen blood, and vsurpar of 4 certayn Empyres, and many Cristen Royammes and countrees, And now late this sayd yere hath assaylled the Cyte and castel in the Isle of rhodes, where valyantly he hath be resisted; but yet not withstondyng he hath approachod more ner, & hath taken the Cyte 8 of Ydronte in puylle, By whiche he hath goten an entre to entre in to the Royamme of Naples; And fro thens, withoute he be resisted, vnto Rome & ytalye / to whos resistance I beseche ¹almighty God^t to prouyde, yf it be his wylle: Thenne me semeth it necessary 12 and expedyent for alle cristen prynces to make peas / amyte and allyaunce eche with other, and prouyde by theyr wysedommes the resistance agayn hym for the defense of our fayth and moder / holy chirch / & also for the recuperacion of the holy londe & holy Cyte 16 of Iherusalem / In whiche our blessyd^t sauour, Ihesu Crist, redemed vs with his precious blood, And to doo as this noble prynce Godeffroy of boloyne dyde, with other noble and hie prynces in his companye. Thenne for thexhortacion² of alle Cristen prynces / 20 Lordes / Barons / Knyghtes / Gentilmen / Marchanntes / and all the comyn peple of this noble Royamme, walys & yrlond, I haue emprysed to translate this book of the conquest of Iherusalem out of ffrenssh in to our maternal tongue, to thentente tencourage them 24 by the redyng and heeryng of the merueyllous historyes herin comprysed, and of the holy myracles shewyd that euery man in his partye endeouyre theym vnto the resistance afore sayd, And recuperacion of the sayd holy londe. & for as moche as I knowe 28 no Cristen kyng better prouyd^t in Armes, and for whom god^t hath shewed more grace / And in alle his empryses glorious, vaynyquysshour, happy and eurous / than is our naturel / lawful / and souerayn lord and moost cristen kyng / (1) Edward, by the grace of 32 god, kyng of englond and of ffrance, and lord of Yrlond / vnder the shadowe of whos noble protection / I haue achyeued this symple translacion / that he of his moost noble grace wold^t adresse, styre, or commaunde somme noble Capytayn of his subgettes to empryse this 36 warre agayn the sayd turke & hethen peple, to whiche I can thynke that euery man wyll put hand^t to in theyr propre persones /

¹ leaf 2, back.

² *Orig.* thexhortaciou.

(1) The Clarendon figures in brackets refer to the Notes at the end of the text.

and in theyr meuable goodes / Thenne to hym, my moost drad
 naturel and souerayn lord, I adresse this symple and rude booke,
 besechyng his moost bounteous and haboundaunt grace to receyue
 4 it of me, his indigne and humble subgette, William Caxton, And
 to pardonne me so presумыnge; besechyng almyghty god that this
 sayd booke may encourage, moeue, and enflamme the hertes of
 somme noble men, that by the same the mescreauntes maye be
 8 resisted and putte to rebuke, Cristen fayth encreaced and enhauced,
 and the holy lande, with the blessyd cyte of Iherusalem, recouerd,
 and may come agayn in to cristen mens hondes. Thenne I exhorte
 alle noble men of hie courage to see this booke, and here it redde;
 12 by which ye shal see what wayes were taken, what noble prowesses
 and valyaunces were acheynyd by the noble compa¹nyes, & especial
 by the said noble prynce godeffroy of boloyne, duc of Loreyne / by
 whiche he deseruyd the name of one of the moost worthy that euer
 16 were, and ys staled in the thyr^d stalle of the Cristen conquerours /
 And in the nynthe of the mooste worthy / where his name and
 renomme shal remayne and abyde perpetuel / And for to deserue
 the tenthe place, I besече almyghty God to graunte and ottroye to
 20 our sayd souerayn lord, or to one of his noble progenye / I meane my
 lord Prynce / and my lord Rychard, duc² of yorke and norfolke,(2)
 to whom I humbly besече / at theyr leyzer and playsyr, to see &
 here redde this symple booke, by which they may be encouraged to
 24 deserue lawde and honour, and that their name and renomme may
 encrease and remayne perpetuel / And after this lyf short and tran-
 sytorye / All we may atteyne to come to the euerlastyng lyf in
 heuen, where is ioye and reste withoute ende. Amen.

I address this
 simple and
 rude booke to
 my sovereign
 lord,

besechyng
 God that it
 may influence
 those who
 read it.

I exhort all
 men to read
 this booke,
 in order to
 learn the
 route taken
 by Godfrey
 of Bologne
 and his com-
 panions.

I beseech my
 lord Prince,
 and my lord
 Richard, the
 Duke of
 York and
 Norfolk,
 to read this
 simple booke.

28 t Henne for to knowe the content of this booke, ye shal playnly see by
 the table folowyng / wherof euery chapytre³ treateth al alonge.

The fyrst chapytre treateth how Eracles conquerd Perse, And slewe Cosdroe]
 and brought in to Iherusalem the veray Crosse / Capitulo primo. [p. 18,
 32 How the puyssaunt Cosdroe wasted thempyre of rome, for tauenge the deth of
 themperour Mauryce, fader to his wyf / ca^o. ij. [p. 20]
 How this puyssaunt kyng entred in to Iherusalem / and demaunded dyly-
 gently of the temple / and reedefyed it, and assigned grete reuenues to
 36 entretiene it / capitulo iij^o. [p. 21]
 How Charlemayne by his lyberalyte gate, for the prouffyt of cristen peple in
 hethenesse, thamyte of hethen prynces. capitulo iij. [p. 22]

¹ leaf 3.

² *Orig. dnc.*

³ *Orig. chapytre.*

Of the noyse that soured emonge the hethen peple discordeynge in theyr lawe / And how they of egypte yssued ^d oute of theyr londe, and of the euylls and harmes that they dyde..	capitulo v. [p. 23]
How thafflyction / Iniuryes, and tormentes of cristen men, grewe in the tyme of Calyphe hetham.	capitulo vi. [p. 24]
How at the requeste of themperour of constantynople the cristen men obteyned licence to bylde agayn the chirche of the holy sepulcre.	Capitulo vij. [p. 26] 8
Of the turkes, fro whens they cam, And ^d how they grewe in to ¹ grete puyssaunce, & dyde chose theym a kyng for to mayntene their warrys.	Capitulo viij. [p. 28]
Of thorryble synnes regnyng thezne in Cristiente / as wel in thyse partyes as 12 in the partyes /	capitulo ix. [p. 31]
Of a bataylle that themperour Romayn of Constantynople had ayenst a prynce of thoryent named belphet /	capitulo x. [p. 32]
Of many maner tormentes / that the Cristen peple suffred for their synnes in 16 that tyme.	capitulo xi. [p. 35]
How after they had ben .iiij C / lxxx yere in the seruage of the hethen men, our lord pourueyed remedye for his cristen peple.	ca. xii. [p. 36]
How Peter theremyte enterprysed the more hardly his viage, by the reuelacion or vysyon that he sawe in his sleep /	ca. xiiij ^o . [p. 39]
Of the persecucions of the chirche in that tyme / And how the pope Vrban was put out of the see of Rome by the Bysshop of Rauenne.	Capitulo xiiij. [p. 40] 24
Of a general counseyl that the pope Vrban ordeyne ^d , for the reformation of holy chirche and thamendement of the people.	ca / xv. [p. 42]
How many noble and hye men / and other moyen peple of the royanume of ffrance crossyd theym for to goo ouer see /	ca. xvj. [p. 43] 28
The names of noble men that enterpryse ^d this pylgremage / as wel on this syde the see as beyonde the montaynes / ²	ca. xvij. [p. 45]
Of thauentures that a Rowte of Cristen men in this vyage, of whom one gaultier without knowleche was capitayn /	ca. xvij. [p. 47] 32
How Peter theremyte was chyef and Capitayn of a grete hooste, in this vyage toward the holy londe.	capitulo xix. [p. 49]
How somme of thoost of Peter theremyte vnwytyng hym / sette fyre in the subarbys of Nyz at theyr departyng /	capitulo xx. [p. 50] 36
How Peter theremyte was aduertysed of al this, and of the harme that ensiewed /	Capitulo xxi. [p. 51]

¹ leaf 3, back.² *Orig.* montaxnes.

- How theemperour of constantynople, beyng¹ aduertysed of thies oultrages, sente his messagers to Peter theremyte / capitulo xxij. [p. 54]
- 4 Of the mayntenynge of thoost of Peter theremyte, And how thre M / duchemen toke a castel by assault / and slewe alle theym that were therein with the swerd. capitulo xxiiij°. [p. 55]
- How Solyman, lord of that countre, reprised and toke agayn the castel, and slewe alle the duche men that were therein / ca°. xxiiij. [p. 56]
- 8 How our men armed theym for tauenge the duche men, And of a recountre that they had agaynst Solyman. ca°. xxv. [p. 57]
- How Peter theremyte, beyng in Constantynople, was aduertysed of this disconfytur / And saued thre thousand cristen men beyng¹ in grete daunger. capitulo xxvj. [p. 58]
- 12 How a preest named Godechan made hymself Capytayn of / xv thousand duche men in this vyage, And of theyr oultrages. Capitulo xxvij. [p. 59]
- 16 How two C thousand Cristen men afoote, & thre thousand on horsbak, withoute Capytayn, assembled in this pylgremage, And of theyr mayntene / capitulo xxviij. [p. 61]
- How this peple began to destroye the londe of the kyng of hongrye by cause he wold not graunte them leue to passe / capitulo xxix. [p. 63]
- 20 How the duc godeffroy of Bolyne beyng with a grete hoost cam vnto hongrye, and sente his messagers to the kyng to demande passage. capitulo xxx. [p. 64]
- 24 How the messagers of duc godeffroy declared theyr message vnto the kynge of hongrye / and therupon his answer. ca°. xxxj. [p. 65]
- How the sayd kynge sente for to fetch the duc Godeffroye, And how he wente, & of the deuyses that they had to gydre / ca°. xxxij. [p. 68]
- 28 How the duc Godeffroy sente his messagers to theemperour of constantynople,² to thende that he shold delyuer to hym huon le mayne and other that he helde in pryson. capitulo xxxiiij. [p. 69]
- How duc Godeffroy constrayned theemperour by force to rendre & delyuer his prysoners. capitulo xxxiiiij. [p. 71]
- 32 The grete despyte that theemperour toke that duc godeffroy refused to goo in to Constantynople vnto hym / capitulo xxxv. [p. 72]
- Of the descripcion of the Cyte of Constantynople, And of many countrees and londes therabout. capitulo xxxvi. [p. 73]
- 36 How our peple brente theyr lodgys, and toke theyr harnoys / and of an assault that the grekes made on them. capitulo xxxviij. [p. 74]

¹ leaf 4.² *Orig.* constantynople.

- How after our peple began to destroye the contre / And of a message fro
 Buymont vnto duc godeffroy. And the auswere of the duc vpon the
 same agayn. capitulo xxxviii. [p. 76]
- How themperour appeased the duc Godeffroy / and sente for hym / and of 4
 thonour that he dyde to hym / capitulo xxxix. [p. 77]
- Of the yeftes that themperour made to duc Godeffroye, to the barons, and to
 the gentilmen of his hooste. capitulo xl. [p. 78]
- How buymont was made Capitayn of a greet hooste, And the names of 8
 many nobles of thooste, & of theyr maytene. ca°. xlj. [p. 79]
- Messagers and lettres fro themperour to buymont, And the conteneue of the
 same, as foloweth / capitulo xliij. [p. 81]
- How Buymont approched constantynople, and was sente for to come to the 12
 emperour, And how by the prayer of duc Godeffroye ¹he wente toward
 hym / capitulo xliij. [p. 82]
- How therle Robert of fflauidres with his hoost approchyd Constantinople,
 And how themperour sente for hym / And of theyr deuyses to gydre. 16
 capitulo xliiij. [p. 83]
- Of the mayntyene of thoost whiche therle of tholouse and the bisshop of
 Pny brought ouer see. capitulo xlv. [p. 84]
- Ambassadours of themperour to the sayd erle and Bysshop, and of the 20
 conteneue of his lettres / and of the daunger wherin the sayd bisshop
 was. ca°. xlvj. [p. 86]
- How therle of tholouse, beyng with themperour, wold not doo homage
 to hym, And of the despyte that themperour dyde / 24
 ca°. / xlvij. [p. 87]
- How themperour, for tauenge hym and therle, made his conestables tenbusshe
 them, and assaylle thoost of therle. capitulo xlviij. [p. 88]
- How at thynstaunte prayer of the barons of thooste, therle made homage to 28
 themperour, which thenne gaf grete yeftes to hym and his /
 capitulo xlix. [p. 90]
- How duc Robert of Normandye / and other here named, approched Con-
 stantynople, and made homage to themperour / ca°. L. [p. 91] 32
- How themperour sente, for to destroye our cristen men, one his seruaunt,
 faynyng to be a trewe conduytour and guyde. ca°. Lj. [p. 92]
- Of the situacion of Nycene / And how our peple approched therto, merueyl-
 lyng of the place, and of the strengthe / capitulo / Lij. [p. 93] 36
- How the puyssaunt turke Solyman with a grete hooste aduysed tyme and
 houre to assaylle and smyte on our peple, for to reyse the siege /
 capitulo Liiij. [p. 94]

¹ leaf 4, back.

- How Solyman, beynge¹ in the montaynes, sente his messagers to them of the toun,² And³ of the comferte that he gaf to theym.
Capitulo Liiij. [p. 95]
- 4 How the messagers of Solyman were taken by our men / And⁴ by them was knowen the couyne of the sayd Solyman. ca°. Lv. [p. 96]
- How a grete batayll of Solyman cam and⁵ smote on our peple / And of thende of the sekarmuche / capitulo Lvj. [p. 97]
- 8 How our barons were lodged in the sayd siege / of their mayntene, & how enery day they enforced them thassaylle the toun / ca°. Lvij. [p. 98]
- How our barons made castellys of tree and approuched the toun, And how they within brake one of theym / and⁶ slewe them that were therin / capitulo Lvij. [p. 99]
- 12 Of the counseyl that our men toke for tassiege the toun by water, for to con-strayne them not for to entre ne yssue / capitulo Lix. [p. 100]
- How, after the cyte was assieged by water and by londe, our men³ assaylle it; And of a shotte that duc godeffroy dyde shote. ca°. Lx. [p. 101]
- 16 How, after many assaultes, oure men beynge in counseyl / A lombard cam to them / whiche offred to make an engyne that shold destroye the toun / capitulo Lxi. [p. 103]
- 20 How after / that this engyne was so wel wrought, the wyf of Solyman, with tweyne of her childeren, wente out of the toun, & were taken by our men. capitulo Lxij. [p. 104]
- How themperour⁴ sente grete barons for to receyue the toun / after that our
- 24 peple had acerteined hym that they wold yelde it / Capitulo Lxiiij. [p. 106]
- How our hoost⁵ departed on theyr iourneye. And⁶ how somme departed fro theyr felawship / And how solyman determyned tassaille them / capitulo Lxiiij. [p. 107]
- 28 Of the bataylle that Solyman had⁷ ayenst somme of oure peple that were departed fro theyr felawship folylly / capitulo Lxv. [p. 108]
- Of the dylygence that duc godeffroy made whan he was aduertysed herof /
- 32 and how Solyman was discourfyted, and⁸ his lygnage taken. capitulo Lxvj. [p. 109]
- How the fourth day after this vycторыe, our peple went forth on theyr waye, And⁹ of the grete mesease of the hooste the same daye.
- 36 Capitulo Lxvij. [p. 111]
- How somme of the grete barons of thoste / after to haue approuched Anthyoche the lasse / departed¹⁰ for to goo vytaylle them / Capitulo Lxviij. [p. 112]

¹ *Orig.* montaynes. ² *Orig.* tonn. ³ leaf 5.
⁴ *Orig.* themperour. ⁵ *Orig.* hoost.

- Here recounted thystorye of somme aduentures / that thenne fylle in thoost
of Cristen men / capitulo Lxix. [p. 114]
- How Tancre, that was departed fro thoost / assieged Tarse / and toke it by
certayn couenaunt. ca°. Lxx. [p. 115] 4
- How bawdwyn, broder¹ of Godeffroy, sechyng his aduentures, sawe Tancre
and his peple tofore Tarse, and adressyd hym to theym.
Capitulo Lxxj. [p. 116]
- Of thenuye that Bawdwyn and his peple had, to see the baner of Tancre on 8
the walle of the toun. And how Tancre departed.
Capitulo Lxxij. [p. 116]
- How a lytil after, Tancre cam to the Cyte of anamystre / whiche the turkes
helde, and toke it by assault. capitulo Lxxiiij. [p. 118] 12
- How Bawdwyn entred in to Tharse / And how thre honder^t pylgryms were
slyan of the turkes afore the same toun / Capitulo Lxxiiiij. [p. 118]
- How the peple of bawdwyn knewe the departyng of the turkes, ²And of
the slaughter of the cristen men. capitulo Lxxv. [p. 120] 16
- How the sayd Bawdwyn returned to the grete hoost / And how Tancre
mayntened hym moche wel in conqueryng countrees.
Capitulo Lxxvj. [p. 122]
- How bawdwyn conquer^t a grete contre vpon the turkes, by the counseyl of a 26
knyght Ermyne, named Pancrace / ca°. Lxxvij. [p. 123]
- How they of Rages sente their messagers to bawdwyn, prayeng hym that he
wold come to theym. capitulo Lxxviiij. [p. 124]
- How this duc that was at Rages varied^t for to holde this / that he had 24
promysed to bawdwyn / capitulo Lxxix. [p. 126]
- How bawdwyn wente tassaylle famosette, a Cyte nygh to rages.
Capitulo Lxxx. [p. 127]
- How they of the toun of rages slewe theyr duc, And chaas bawdwyn for to 28
be theyr lord. capitulo lxxxj. [p. 128]
- How bawdwyn wente and assieged the toun of Sororge, nygh to Rages, and
toke it / and of his ordenaunces. capitulo lxxxij. [p. 129]
- How the grete hoost cam to fore Marese, and how the turkes that were within 32
fledde / And how our peple payned them to conquere countrees /
capitulo lxxxiiij. [p. 130]
- How it was commaunded vnto alle the barons to come to thoost, for to goo
vnto Anthyoche, And of somme recountrees that they had in the waye / 36
capitulo Lxxxiiij. [p. 132]
- How Anthyoche by succession of tyme / had dynerse names. And of the
noblesse of auneynte. capitulo Lxxxv. [p. 134]

¹ *Orig.* kroder.² leaf 5. back.

	Of the situacion of Anthyoche.	Lxxxvj.	[p. 135]
	Who was thenne lord of anthyoche / and by what maner he was comen vnto this seynorye.	capitulo Lxxxvij.	[p. 136]
4	Diuerse oppynions of our men tofore they had assieged anthyoche. And how they acorded alle for tassiege it.	capitulo Lxxxviii.	[p. 137]
	How, after the situacion of the toun, eche of the hye barons of thoost were lodged at the sayd siege /	capitulo Lxxxix.	[p. 139]
8	How our peple assembled in counseyl for to fynde the moyen for to sende for vytaylor, and of a brydge that they made.	ca°. Lxxxx.	[p. 140]
	How our peple stopped a yate without forth / And of a castel of tree that they made.	capitulo Lxxxj.	[p. 141]
12	How oure peple were in grete meschyef, for as moche as they of the toun yssued / & entred in & out with grete rowtes. ¹	ca°. Lxxxij.	[p. 142]
	Of the famyne and mortalyte of thost, after that they had be at the sayd siege the space of two monethis /	capitulo Lxxxiiij.	[p. 144]
16	How our peple ordeyned grete Rowtes for to goo for vytalle, ² & to reteyne the peple whiche fledde for hongre.	capitulo lxxxiiij.	[p. 145]
	How buymont and therle of fflaundres mayntened theym, beyng in fourage of theyr recountrees / and of the gayn that they made.	capitulo Lxxxv.	[p. 146]
20	How a grete Rowte of Cristen men were in this tyme slayn by the turkes bytwe ³ Fynemye and terme /	capitulo Lxxxvj.	[p. 147]
	How the vntrewe greke latyus departed fraudelously fro thoost, And other moo by the ensample of hym /	capitulo Lxxxvij.	[p. 148]
24	How the prelates of thoost counseyllid to doo penaunce for tappese god, & of thordenauces that were made teschewe synne. ⁴	Lxxxviiij.	[p. 149]
	How buymont fonde a subtil remedye, for to delyuer and purge thoost of tespyes of the turkes /	capitulo Lxxxix.	[p. 150]
28	How the Calyphe of Egypte sente his messagers with grete yeftes vnto our hoost.	capitulo C.	[p. 152]
	How Ancean, lord of Anthyoche / and the barons, sente vnto the turkes theyr neighbours for to demaunde socours.	ca° Cj.	[p. 153]
32	How oure peple knewe the couyne of the turkes. Of thembusshe that they made, & of theyr vycторыe & gayn that they had /	ca°. Cij.	[p. 154]
	How the turkes of Anthyoche sprang out, and assaylled the lodgyes of our peple /	capitulo Ciiij.	[p. 155]
36	Of a castel that oure men made / Of somme pylgryms that arryued atte porte / And how they were disconfyted by a busschement of turkis.	capitulo Ciiij.	[p. 156]

¹ *Orig.* rowtes.

² leaf 6.

³ *Orig.* bytwene.

⁴ *Orig.* synne.

- Of a bataylle where our men auenged them of the turkes / And of a stroke
that duc godeffroy gaf in this bataylle. ca°. Cv. [p. 159]
- How the cristen men thankeð our lord of this vycторыe, And made a castel in
their mahommerye / where they founde grete gayne. 4
Capitulo Cvj. [p. 162]
- Of a fortresse that Tancre made ouer the ryuer, And how he deffended it
valyauntly. capitulo Cvij. [p. 163]
- How thenne the turkes of the toun¹ began to haue mesease and sorowe, and
our peple ease. capitulo Cvij. [p. 165]
- How therle estieuen of chartrys and of bloys fledde fro thooste shamefully.
capitulo Cix. [p. 166]
- How a Cristen man, Emyrferyus, whiche was in Anthyoche, acqueynted hym 12
with buymont. capitulo Cx. [p. 167]
- Of som deuises that the said emirferius sent to buymont,² & in what maner
he acorded to delyuer hym the toun / capitulo Cxj. [p. 169]
- How buymont discouerid this thyng to duc godeffroy, to huon le mayne, to 16
the duc of normandye, & to therle of flaundes. ca°. Cxij. [p. 170]
- ³Of the grete socours that the soudan⁴ of Perse had sente to them of An-
thyoche, And corbagat assieged Rages / capitulo Cxiiij. [p. 171]
- How oure men aduertysed of the grete hooste of corbagat, sente somme of 20
theyr knyghtes for to esteme them. And what they reported of that
they had seen. capitulo Cxiiij. [p. 172]
- Of the counseyl that oure peple toke for to ordeyne theyr nedes, whan they
sawe the comyng of this right grete hoost. cap°. Cxv. [p. 173] 24
- How after that buymont had declared his fayt to alle thoost / they acorded
that the toun shold be his, sauf therle of thoulouse / ca°. Cxv. [p. 174]
- How they of Anthyoche had fere of treson, And how they assembled in coun-
seil, & of that which emirferius deposed therat. ca°. Cxvij. [p. 176] 28
- Of the meschyef that the turkes made euery day to the cristen men that were
in Anthyoche enhabytyng with them / ca°. Cxviiij. [p. 177]
- Of the dylygence that buymont⁵ made in this werke. And emyrferius slewe
his broder, & delyuerd the toun to the cristen men. ca°. Cxix. [p. 179] 32
- Of the mayntene of the cristen men in this pryse, And of thaffraye of the
turkes of the toun. capitulo Cxx. [p. 181]
- How Ancean, lord of Anthyoche, fledde by a posterne oute of the toun / and
he was recountred and put to deth. capitulo Cxxj. [p. 183] 36
- How, after that our men had made grete slaughter of theyr enemyes, our men
helde counseyl for to take the dongeon / thenne beyng seased of the
turkes. capitulo Cxxij. [p. 184]

¹ Orig. tonn. ² Orig. bnymont. ³ leaf 6, back. ⁴ Orig. soudaner. ⁵ Orig. buymont.

- How, whyles that thoost garnysshyd the toun, Somme of thoost corbagat cam rennyng to fore it. capitulo Cxxiiij. [p. 185]
- 4 How, the thyrd day after the getyng and pryse of Anthyoche, corbagat with his hoost arryued to fore it. capitulo Cxxiiij. [p. 186]
- How after that / the duc was within the barres of the toun / many of his men slayn, the turkes entred in to the toun. ca°. Cxxv. [p. 188]
- 8 How oure cristen men, that a lytil tofore had assieged the toun / were now assieged in the same. capitulo Cxxvj. [p. 189]
- How corbagat dyde do assaylle a fortresse which therle of fflaundes kepte without the gate, & of that ensiewed. capitulo Cxxvij. [p. 191]
- 12 Of the grete famyne and mesease that our men suffred in the cyte of Anthyoche, beyng assieged on alle sydes by the said corbagat. capitulo Cxxviij. [p. 192]
- How the turkes, felyng that oure men were in suche mescheyf of hongre, enforced them for tassaylle the cyte / capitulo Cxxix. [p. 193]
- 16 How corbagat sente his men of armes, for to slee the maronnars that were at the parte ; wherof our men had a grete losse. capitulo Cxxx. [p. 194]
- How guyllem de grateuylle and his felaws fugytyfs cam in to ¹ Alexandryee the lasse. Capitulo Cxxxj. [p. 195]
- 20 How therle of chartres / discouraged temperour of constantynople, that he shold not goo & socoure our peple in anthioche. ca°. Cxxxij. [p. 196]
- How, by the warnynges of the sayd Erle / temperour, whiche wold haue goon & socoured our men, returned shortly. ca°. Cxxxiiij. [p. 198]
- 24 How our peple in Anthyoche, beyng aduertysed herof, were alle discouraged / And Corbagat enhaunced in pryde. ca°. Cxxxiiij. [p. 199]
- How the spere was founden that Ihesus was prehyd² on the crosse with / & of the comfort that our pilgrims toke therby. ca°. Cxxxv. [p. 200]
- 28 How peter theremyte was sent by our men vnto Corbagat, the wordes that he sayde / and answeere of the sayd corbagat. ca°. Cxxxvj. [p. 202]
- How the sayd Peter returned in to the toun / and wold openly haue³ sayd his message / and of the subtyl counseyl of the duc / whiche wold not suffre it / capitulo Cxxxvij. [p. 204]
- How tofore, er our men departed, they made redy theyr bataylles right wel in poynt / And of the nombre of them / ca°. Cxxxviij. [p. 205]
- How Corbagat was aduertysed of thysuyng of our peple / and sente archers 36 for to deffende the brydge / And how they were disconfyted / capitulo Cxxxix. [p. 207]
- How oure men reioysed them of a dewe descendyng fro heuen / & of theyr mayntene in approuchyng the turkes / capitulo Cxl. [p. 208]

¹ leaf 7.² sic : = pricked.³ Orig. hane.

How Corbagat ordeyned his bataylles / and how the two hoostes marched to gydre in bataylle.	capitulo Cxlj. [p. 209]
Of the fleynge of corbagat, and ¹ of somme turkes gadred to gydre and agayn discomfyted by our men /	capitulo Cxlij. [p. 211] 4
How our peple returned fro the chaas / and wente to the pyllage. And of the grete rychesses that they fonde /	capitulo Cxliij. [p. 213]
Of the fayr ordenaunces that oure people made in the chirches of anthyoche / & in other townes by / after this victorie /	ca°. Cxliiij. [p. 215] 8
How our peple sente ambassadours to themperour of constantinople, for to somone hym for to come socoure them as he had promised /	capitulo Cxlv. [p. 216]
How the pylgryms of thoost desired to goo vnto Iherusalem, for teshewe the 12 mortalyte and tacomplysshe theyr vowe /	ca°. Cxlvj. [p. 218]
The dylygence that due Godeffroye made for to socoure a turke, to whom he had promised to helpe hym. And how he reysed the siege, beyng tofore his castel.	capitulo Cxlvij. [p. 219] 16
Of somme pylgryms goyng fro Anthyoche toward the due godeffroye, that were distressyd by the turkes / And rescowed by the due /	Capitulo Cxlvij. [p. 220]
² How the due alway enforced hym to augmente cristiente, and of somme 20 fortresses by hym beten and destroyed.	ca°. Cxlix. [p. 221]
How the knyghtes of Rages wold haue bytrayed Bawdwyn theyr lord, And how he was therof aduertysed /	ca°. CL. [p. 222]
How therle bawdwyn was in daunger of deth, by the treson of a turk named 24 balac.	ca°. CLj. [p. 223]
How therle of tholouse ³ toke the eyte of albane / and therin constituted a bisshop /	ca°. CLij. [p. 225]
How oure peple retorned in to Anthyoche / and toke counseyl for to goo to 28 Iherusalem / and of this that foloweth.	ca°. CLiij. [p. 226]
How the due godeffroy wold goo to Rages to vysyte his brother, er he began his way to Iherusalem, And of somme of his aduen[tu]res.	capitulo CLiij. [p. 228] 32
How, after the eyte of albane ⁴ was conquerd, a grete debate aroos bytwene therle of tholouse and buymont /	ca°. CLv. [p. 228]
How, at the request of the comyn peple, therle of tholouse ordeyned day for to conduyte them.	Ca°. CLvj. [p. 230] 36
How therle of tholouse auengyd hym of somme turkes Robbouris which robbed his hoost.	Capitulo CLvij. [p. 231]

¹ *Orig.* aud.² leaf 7. back.³ *Orig.* tholouse.⁴ *Orig.* albare.

- How therle of tholouse approchyd with his hoost vnto Archys / And of the
situation of the same. Ca°. CLviiij. [p. 233]
- Of a toun named tortnose, whiche Raymont toke with a Rowte of pylgryms /
4 And of the departyng of the other Barons. Capitulo CLix. [p. 234]
- How the duc assieged Gibelet / and of a trayson by whiche he left his siege.
Capitulo CLx. [p. 235]
- How thoost murmured of the spere founden in Anthyoche, And of the grete
8 myracle that happed in the presence of alle thooste.
Capitulo CLxj. [p. 237]
- Of thambassade of Egypte comen with oure men in to thooste of pylgryms /
and of the reuerence that was don to them. ca°. CLxij. [p. 239]
- 12 Of an embassade fro themperour of constantynople comen to our pylgryms, &
of thanswer to the sayd Ambassiate / capitulo CLxiiij. [p. 240]
- How the comyn peple complayned them of this, that they wente not hastely
to Iherusalem / capitulo CLxiiij. [p. 242]
- 16 Of the grete dylygence that our men made for tapproche to Iherusalem, And
of thalyannces of somme Turkes made vnto them.
Capitulo CLxv. [p. 243]
- How the Cristen men of Bethlehem receyued moche wel Tanere & his rowte /
20 & sette his¹ baner in the chirche of our lady / ca Clxvj. [p. 245]
- ²Of thardaut desire that the peple had to see Iherusalem, and how thoost
approched, and was lodged by ordenaunce. capitulo Clxvij. [p. 246]
- Of the situacion of Iherusalem, and of the descripcion, and also of many other
24 cytees, townes, and countrees therabout. Capitulo / CLxviij. [p. 248]
- How Iherusalem hath had many names, after dyuerse lordes therin regnyng /
And yet of the situacion wel at longe / Capitulo CLxix. [p. 250]
- Here thystorye deuyseth of many merueyllous cdefyces conteyned in the same
28 cyte of Iherusalem / & who made them. capitulo / Clxx. [p. 251]
- How the turkes of Iherusalem, whan they knewe the comyng of oure hooste,
stopped the pyttes and fontaynes of the toun /
Capitulo CLxxj. [p. 253]
- 32 Of the nombre of them of thoost / of them of Iherusalem, and how our men
lodged them in the siege to fore Iherusalem. capitulo CLxxij. [p. 254]
- How our men began tassaylle Iherusalem, And of the grete dylygence that
they dyde to make engyns for to take it / ca° / CLxxiiij. [p. 256]
- 36 How our peple were in grete meschyf atte sayd siege / And how the turkes
deserted them / by cause they myght yssue and entre in and out of the
toun. capitulo CLxxiiij. [p. 257]

¹ *Uig.* hit.² leaf 8.

- How the turkes enforced them to make merueyllous engyns ayenst oures, and
of the mescheyf don to the cristen men dwellyng in the toun.
capitulo CLxxv. [p. 258]
- In this tyme arryued¹ a ship of genewys atte porte of halappe, And how 4
theyr messagers cam in to thoost, and of theyr request /
Capitulo CLxxvj. [p. 259]
- How alle the pylgryms, euerich after his estate / payned them to make
thengyns for thassault. capitulo CLxxvij. [p. 261] 8
- Of the fayr processions that oure pylgryms made / to thende that god shold
gyue to theym vycторыe / And how they pardonned eche other theyr
male talentes and euyll wylles / capitulo / CLxxviii. [p. 262]
- How oure men sodenly transported in the nyght theyr engyns vnto that 12
other parte of the toun for tassaylle on that syde.
Capitulo CLxxix. [p. 263]
- How, the daye folowyng, oure peple made a merueyllous assault, & how the
turkes defended them subtylly & wel. capitulo CLxxx. [p. 265] 16
- The nyght departed the sayd assault, our peple withdrewе them / And how
they watche theyr engynes / and the turkes the toun /
Capitulo Clxxxj. [p. 266]
- How oure peple returned agayn on the morn to thassault² / And³ of the 20
sorceryes that they wold haue charmed one of our engyns.
capitulo CLxxxij. [p. 267]
- Of the dispar of our peple at the sayd assault, And how they were recoun-
forted by a knyght vnknowen⁴ and euydent myrales. 24
capitulo CLxxxiii. [p. 268]
- How therle of tholouse assaylled vygorously toward the south, And of
thardlaunt desire that eche man had to doo wel /
capitulo CLxxxiiij. [p. 270] 28
- Of the pryse and takyng of Iherusalem / and how duc godeffroy entred fyrst
on the walles / and who folowed. capitulo CLxxxv. [p. 271]
- Of the mayntenyng of our peple entred in to the toun toward the northeest,
and therle of tholouse, herof al ignoraunt, assaylled alwey. 32
capitulo CLxxxvi. [p. 272]
- * How xM turkes were slayn in the temple, and of the grete tresour that
Tanere fonde in the temple / capitulo CLxxxvij. [p. 274]
- Of the ordenaunces that the cristen men made tofore they vnarmed them 36
after that the toun was taken. capitulo CLxxxviii. [p. 275]
- How the cristen men, that had charged theyr message for theyr delyueraunce
to peter theremyte, knewe hym. ca°. CLxxxix. [p. 277]

¹ *Orig.* arryued.² thassault.³ leaf 8, back.⁴ *Orig.* vuknowen.

- How they clensyd the toun of the dede bodyes. Of many other ordenaunces /
 And how the dongeon was yolden to therle of thoulouse.
 capitulo CLxxxx. [p. 278]
- 4 How the hye barons of thoost assembled for to chose a kyng of Iherusalem,
 And thoppynon of the clerye vpon the same.
 Capitulo CLxxxxj. [p. 279]
- 8 How the duc godeffroy was chosen kyng of Iherusalem, And how he was
 presented to our lord in his chirche of the holy sepulere /
 capitulo CLxxxxij. [p. 281]
- How duc godeffroy after his election requyred therle of thoulouse that he shold
 delyuer to hym the tour dauyd. ca°. CLxxxxij. [p. 282]
- 12 Of a patriarke electe and chosen in Iherusalem. And how there was founden
 a part of the veray crosse. capitulo CLxxxxiiij. [p. 283]
- How duc godeffroy payned hym to amende the Royamme: of his good con-
 dicions and statutes. capitulo CLxxxv. [p. 284]
- 16 Of the sayng of the countesse of boloyne, moder of the sayd duc, that she
 sayd of her iij oldest sones was verefyed / ca°. CLxxxvj. [p. 286]
- Of the wagyng of a bataylle which was bytwene duc godeffroy and an hye
 baron of almayne / capitulo C : Lxxxvij. [p. 287]
- 20 Of a fayr fayte of armes, which that the duc¹ dide in a bataill that themperour
 of Almayne had ayenst them of saxone. ca°. Clxxxviiij.² [p. 288]
- ³How the valyaunt duc godeffroy augmented holy chirche / and he wold
 neuer bere crowne / capitulo CLxxxix. [p. 290]
- 24 How the turkes of Arabe and of Egypte made their somnace for to come in
 to Sury tassaylle our cristen men. capitulo CC. [p. 291]
- How the crysten men, whan they knewe thyse tydynges, cryed to god for
 mercy & for to haue vycorye. capitulo CCj. [p. 293]
- 28 How oure men assembled and ordeyned theyr bataylles for to fyghte ayenst
 the turkes. And how the turkes were disconfyted.
 capitulo CCij. [p. 294]
- How somme of oure barons wolde retorne home / after that they had don
 32 theyr pylgremage / capitulo CCiiij. [p. 296]
- How buymont and bawdwyn acerteined of the conquest of Iherusalem wold
 accomplysse theyr pylgremage / ca°. CCiiij. [p. 298]
- How our cristen men chosen a very patriark in Iherusalem / And assigned to
 36 hym rentes / capitulo CCv. [p. 300]
- How by thatyement of somme men a grete debate sourded bytwene the duc
 & the patriark of Iherusalem. ca°. CCvj. [p. 301]

¹ *Orig. dnc.*

² *Orig. clxxxvij.*

³ leaf 9.

Here recounteth thistorye, how the fourth part of Iherusalem cam vnto the
 patriarke of the same / capitulo CCvij. [p. 302]
 Of the same mater. ca°. CCvij. [p. 304]
 How due godeffroy, for taugmente cristiente assyged¹ one of the townes of the 4
 turkes / capitulo CCix. [p. 305]
 How the turkes brought presentes to the due Godeffroye at the sayd siege /
 and of theyr deuyses to gydre / capitulo CCx. [p. 307]
 How buymont was taken in goyng to meletene, whiche cyte the lord of the 8
 toun wold¹ haue yolden to hym. capitulo CCxj. [p. 308]
 How the due godeffroy assembled his peple and¹ entred in to Arabye. And
 of the gayn that he made of two grete strokes, that he smote on two
 camellis, And of his deth. capitulo CCxij. [p. 309] 12

Here endeth the table of the content and¹ chapytres nombre¹ of this
 present book, entitled the siege and¹ conqueste of Iherusalem by cristen men.

¹ leaf 10.
 Beginning
 of the book
 Eracles,
 also called
 Godfrey of
 Bologne,
 treating of
 the conquest
 of the Holy
 Land
 by Godfrey of
 Bologne.

¹ Here begynneth the boke Intituled¹ Eracles / and also Godfrey
 of Bolyne / the whiche speketh of the Conquest of the holy londe 16
 of Iherusalem / conteyning diuerse warres and noble faytes of
 Armes made in the same Royamme / and in the contrees adiacent,
 And also many meruayllous werkes happed¹ and fallen, as wel on
 this syde / as in the partyes this tyme duryng¹ / And how the 20
 valyant due Godefrey of Bolyne conquer¹ with swerd the sayd
 Royamme / And was kynge there /

The ffirst chapitre treateth how Eracles conquerd
 Perse and slewe Cosdroe / and brought in to 24
 Iherusalem the very crosse / capitulo primo /

Eracles was
 Emperor of
 Rome.

He Auncyent hystoriese saye that Eracles was a good¹ crysten
 man, and gouernour of thempyre of Rome / But in his tyme
 Machomet had ben, whiche was messenger of the deuil, And 28
 t made the peple to vnderstonde / that he was a prophete sente
 from our lorde / In the tyme of Eracles was the fals lawe of
 machomet sownen and sprad abrode in many partyes of thoryent /
 and namely in Arabye / in so moche ²that the prynces of the 32
 londes yet wold not gyue faith to his secte that he prechid and
 taught, whiche is cursed and enyl / but he constrayned them by
 force and by swerd to, & alle their subgetts to obeye to his com-
 mandemens, and to byleue in his lawe² / Whan Eracles had 36

Mahomed-
 anism was
 widely spread
 in his time.

²⁻² Caxton seems to have misunderstood his French here entirely. It
 was the princes themselves who "constrayned their subjets by force and by

- conquerd Perse, and slayn cosdroe, which was a puissaunt kynge, he brought agayn to Iherusalem the very Crosse(3) / whiche they had ladde in to perse / And abode and dwellyd in the londe of Surrye /
- 4 And dide do ordeyne and chose a patriarke, a moche wise man named Modeste / By whos counseil he dyde do make agayn the chirches / and habylled the holy places / and clensed them that the tyraunt Cosdroe(4) of Perse had smeton down and destroyed,
- 8 Eracles sette grete entente & made grete costes for to repayre them / And whiles he entended ther aboute / homar, the sone of captap, whiche was a prynce of Arabe, the thirde after machomet / cam in to this contree named palestyne, with so grete nombre of peple that
- 12 alle the londe was couerèd with them / and had thenne taken by force a moche stronge Cyte of that londe named Iadre / ffrom thens he drewe hym toward damaske / and assieged¹ the cyte, and by strengthe toke hyt / ffor he had so grete a nombre of peple that
- 16 nothyng myght resiste hym / themperour heracles, which yet dwellyd in a parte of this londe named Cylyce, herde tydynges of this peple / And sente good espyes & trewe, in whiche he trusted, for to see and serche their couine /² ffor he desyreèd moche to hane
- 20 a doo with thise peple on the felde, and fyghte and chase them out of the londes and cytees² whiche obeyed to Cristente & to thempyre of Rome. But whan his messagers cam, he had by them knowleche certaynly that he had not peple yowhe to fyhte ayenst them / ffor
- 24 they were so fyers & so orguyllous of the grete nombre of peple that they had / that they thought / nothyng myght resiste them / And ther vpon heracles had deliberacion, and counseilled with his peple / that it shold be lest dishonour to departe and retorne in to
- 28 his contre / than suffre his peple to be destroyed, & myght not amende it / Thus thenne, he departed out of Surrye, by cause the kynge of Arabe & his peple were of so grete power & so proude / as they that fonde alle the contre habandoned³ to them / ffor in a
- 32 short tyme they had conquered alle the contre of Surrye vnto Egypte / One thyng that was to fore happended in this contree,

Eracles conquered Cosdroe, king of Persia, and brought the true cross back to Jerusalem.

Homar, son of Captap, prince of Arabia, invades Palestine.

Eracles sends his spies to ascertain the character of the invaders.

Eracles decides not to fight with them, but to withdraw from Syria.

The Arabs conquer all Syria.

sword to obey." Fr. *que li princes des terres ne se tenoient mie à ce que l'en enseignast et amonestast à croire celle male aventure, envois contreignoient par force et par espée touz leur songiez à obcir au commandement Mahomet*, viz. as the princes of the land were not satisfied with teaching and admonishing, etc. ¹ leaf 10. back.

²⁻² Caxton has translated very freely Fr. *Car il desirois moult à sçavoir s'il peust cele gent attendre en champ ou ruser euz et chacier des terres et des citiés.* ³ Orig. habandoned.

They did
this the more
easily, be-
cause of the
damage done
previously by
Cosdroe.

whiche heelp moche them of Arabe tenerece their power, ffor
cosdroe the puissannt kynge of perse, of whom I haue spoken to
fore / had ben with grete puissaunce in Surye / and had destroyed
the Cytees and castels / brent townes & chirches, and slayn grete 4
partye of the peple / and the remeunnt had brought in to Captynyte /
And toke the cyte of Iherusalem with force, and slewe within the
tounn xxxvj. M. men / And bare away with hym the veray crosse
that our lord Ihesu Cryste suffred deth on for vs, And ladde with 8
hym the patriarke of Iherusalem named (5) Acharye,¹ and brought
hym with hym with the other Caytyfs /

Here recounteth thistorye how that the puissaunt
kynge Cosdroe wastyd the Empyre of Rome, for 12
tauenge the deth of themperour Maurice / fader
of his wyf / capitulo ij^o

Maurice was
an Emperour
of Rome,

Now I shal telle yow why he had so doon / lyke as I sayde /
n he was a ryght myghty kynge / now had ther be an emperour 16
at Rome, named Mauryee, whiche as we fynde was moche
acquyented with seint gregorie, And was his gossib, ffor ²the sayk
seynt Gregorye had cristenyd to hym a daughter named Marie /
This Maurice gaf her in Maryage to this Cosdroe / And ther by was 20
a grete frenship bytwene them / & grete alyauce bytwene them of
perse and the Romayns as longe as themperour lyued / in suche
wise / that for the loue of his wyf & the Romayns, whiche were
Cristen / This Emperour made Cosdroe to be baptised. But after 24

who gave
his daughter
Marie in
marriage to
Cosdroe, king
of Persia.

When Mau-
rice was slain
by Foca,

it befylle that foca slewe in treson this Emperour Maurice / And
was Emperour in his place, and was called ffoca cesar / whan
cosdroe herd herof he had merveyllous grete sorow, grete desdayne /
grete orguyel, & grete hate ayenst the peple of the Romayns, by 28
cause that he whiche had slayn theyr lorde vntrewly / and was yet
blody of the blood of the emperour, they had chosen to be their
lord, and had gyuen to hym thempire / ffor this cause he entended
to his power to hurte and destroye al thempire of Rome / And for 32
this cause, for tauenge the deth of the fader of his wyf / whiche
ofte enticed hym therto / he entred in to the londe of Surye, whiche
thenne was subget to thempire of Rome, and wasted & destroyed
it / lyke as I haue said to fore / and voyded almost alle the peple 36
that was therein / ffor whiche cause This kynge homar aforsaid, &

Cosdroe was
very angry
with the
Romans.

To avenge
his wife's
father he
wasted and
destroyed
Syria, which
was a Roman
province.

¹ Lat. *Zacharias.*

² leaf 11.

his peple of Arabe, that fonde this londe so voyde, myght the better
doo theyr wylls with alle /

Homar found
Jerusalem
deserted and
destroyed.

How this puissaunt kynge entred in to Iherusalem /
4 and demaunded dylygently of the Temple, and
reedyfied it, and assigned grete reuenues therto
for tentretene¹ it. capitulo iij^o.

8 w Han they cam in the holy cyte of Iherusalem, they fonde it
destroyed^e and^e deserte / sauf a fewe cristen men whiche dwellyd
there, and were suffred that they shold lyue as Cristen men, and
make agayn their chirches, and^e that they shold^e haue a patriarke.

In the while that this myghty prynce duellid^e in Iherusalem, he
12 began tenquyre moche ententify² of the peple of the tounn, &
pryncipally of the patriarke whiche was named^e Sophonye / & had
ben chosen after modeste, whiche was deed, of whom I haue spoken
to fore, In what place the temple of our lord^e had³ be whan Titus

Homar in-
quired where
the temple
was.

16 the prynce deffeted^e and destroyed al the cyte / he shewid to hym
the very certayn place, & the fondamentes, & a parte of the
muraylles whiche were thenze yet apperyng / he made anon to be
sought & to be brouht to hym, without longe taryeng, grete nombre

20 of masons & of carpenters / & dide do be sette stones of marble &
of other manere, & alle thynges necessarye therto he dide do
assemble as moche as shold nede / And deuised the maner and
ordynance of the mesure⁴ / and of the dyspences for to make the

He assembled
material,
and caused it
to be rebuilt.

24 temple / And^e, as he was a noble prynce of hie affaire & noble / he
brought anon to ende this that he had emprise^e, in suche wise that
the temple was reedefyed in suche forme and estate as it yet
apeereth / this saide prynce hym self assygned grete rentes &

28 reuenues ffor euer more, for to sustene and repayre alle that shold^e
be nedeful to thedyfices and other necessites of the temple / and for
the seruyng^e of the lyght / day and nyght, by the handes of them
that he commysed^e to kepe the temple / Ther is in the same temple,

He assigned
reuenues to
sustain it for
euer.

32 within and without, ⁵letters of golde⁵ in the langage of Arabe,

¹ Fr. *entretenir*, i. e. support. ² Orig. euentify. ³ leaf 11, back.

⁴ Fr. *merrain*, building material, not *measure*.

⁵⁻⁵ The French has *lettres faites d'or musique*, i. e. letters made of gold mosaic-work. Caxton probably misunderstood the word *musique*, and simply left it out. The Latin gives, *Erstant porro in eodem templi aedificio intus et extra ex opere musaico Arabicè idiomatis litterarum retustissima monumenta quae illius temporis esse creduntur.*

whiche deuysed as we suppose / who was he that reedefyed the temple / and what tyme / And how moche it costeto reblyde it /

How Charlemayne by his lyberalite gate for the prouffyt of cristen peple in hethenes / thamytte 4 of hethen prynces / capitulo iiij.

Jerusalem was vnder the power of heathen nations four hundred and thirty-four years.

Hus it happed that this holy cyte of Iherusalem, for the synnes of the peple, was in seruage and ¹in daunger¹ of hethen peple longe tyme / That is to wete cccxxxiiij yere con- 8 tynuelly / but not allway in one manere / They were one tyme better, & another tyme wese / lyke as the lordes chaunged, whiche were of dyuerse maners & condicions / but neuertheles thise peple were alway in subiection / It happed that one grete lorde of this 12 saide lawe had nyghe in his seignorye alle the londe of thoryent,

The Prince Aaron ressit ruled all the Eastern nations except India.

sauf only ynde / This prynce² was named Aaron, (6) & his surname ressit / This man was of so grete cortosye / of so grete largesse / of so hye vygour / and of so grete affaires in alle good maners, that yet 16 the paynems speke of hym / lyke as they doo in ffrance of Charlemayn / they were bothe in one tyme, this aaron & this charlemain. ³And therefore, in their tyme, the cristen peple in Iherusalem were in better poynt / than thei had euer be to fore 20 vnder any of the hethen peple / ffor Charlemayn the good Emperour,⁴

This Aaron lived at the same time as Charlemagne. The Christians of Jerusalem were well treated by him.

whiche so moche traualled and suffryd for our lorde / and so moche enhanced the fayth of Ihesu Criste, to thende that the Cristiente in Surye myght be the better and more debonairly cherysshed and 24 entreated, Pouchassed so longe that he had the loue and acqeyntaunce⁵ of the said Aaron, by messages that wente and cam /

Aaron loved and honored Charlemagne above all other princes.

Wherof this Aaron had moche grete Ioye / And aboue alle the prynces of the world he louid and honoured themperour Charle- 28 mayne, and the Cristen peple that were vnder hym / And alle the holy places that were vnder his power / he wolde that they shold be entretiened, mayntened and wel aourned, lyke as Charlemayne had desyred and sente to hym worde / Wherof it semed that our 32 peple beyng there / Were more vnder the power of Charlemayne than vnder the power of the hethen men / Whan he myght fynde the messagers of Charlemayn / he charged and⁶ laded them alle with richesses of thoryent / With clothes of sylke, with spyces / 36

He rewarded richly Charlemagne's ambassadors.

¹⁻¹ Fr. *en dangier*, in the power of. ² *Orig.* pryuce. ³ leaf 12.

⁴ *Orig.* Emperour. ⁵ *Orig.* acqeyntaunce. ⁶ *Orig.* aud.

Ieweles of golde of dyuerse facions / And with ryche precious stones, whiche he sente to his frende Charlemayn / And largely he gaf and rewarded the messagers / And emonge al other thinges, He
 4 sente into ffrance an Olyphant; This debonayrte pourchased the good Charlemayn for the Crysten men that were in captiuyte vnder the said Aaron / And in lyke wyse the said Aaron, for the loue that he bare to Carlemayn, pourchased for other Cristen men that
 8 were in al hethenes vnder dyuerse lordes, as in egypte, And in Aufrique / That is to seye in Alexandrye / And in Cartage / ffor he sente grete yeftes and¹ moche good² to sustene the power of Cristen men,² & sente grete presentes vnto theyr lordes & maistres mys-
 12 creauntes, & amyable letters / In suche wise, that he pourchased their loue and acqueyntaunce / by whiche they conteyned them more debonairly vn to cristiens that were in theyr subiection; thus dyde the hye prynce charlemayn vnto the hethen lordes, that were
 16 fer fro hym / ffor it is to be bileuid / that yf he had ben nyghe to them, that he wold haue essayed for to haue delyuerd in another maner the peple of our lord, lyke as he dyde ryght gloriously in many places /

He even sent an elephant to France.

This Aaron also procured better treatment for the Christians in other heathen countries.

If Charlemagne had lived nearer these heathens he would have succoured the Christians more effectually.

20³ Of the noyse that sourded emonge the hethen men discordyng in theyr lawe / and how they of egypte yssued out of theyr londe, and of the euyllis that they dyde. capitulo v°

24 N this season, it happed that a grete debate sourded bytwene
 i the mescreauntes of Egypte / and the mescreauntes of Perse / ffor eueryche partye of this peple wold haue the seignourye vpon the other / The Rote of this grete hate and enuye sourded and
 28 aroos of that whyche discorded / and yet dyscorde of certayn poyntes of theyr lawe / in suche wise that they haue dyuerse names / ffor they that holde the lawe of perse haue the name in theyr langage soun⁴ / And they of the lawe of Egypte be named siha. And they
 32 be not so ferre fro the very crysten lawe / as ben the other / It happed that they of Egypte yssued out of theyr londe, and conquered alle the londes vnto Antyoche / And emonge the other cytees that were taken / The holy cyte of Iherusalem cam vnder theyr power

Great religious disputes arose among the unbelievers,

so that the Egyptians issued out of their country and conquered Jerusalem.

¹ *Orig.* aud.

²⁻² Fr. *à soutenir les poures chrestiens*. Caxton has here mistaken "poures," poor, for "*povoir*," power.

³ leaf 12, back.

⁴ Fr. *Soun*, Lat. *Sonni*.

and seignourye /. The peple that were there in captiuyte¹ were resonably wel entreated / tyl it happed by the suffraunce of god that his peple shold be chastised / and that was by a desloyal and cruel lord and calypho of Egypte, whiche was named hecam / he⁴ passed in malyce and cruelte alle his predecessours in suche wyse² that the peple of his lawe helde them as wode men of pryde / of rage / and of falsched² / Emonge the other tyrannyes, he commanded to caste down to the ground the chyrche of the sepulcre of our⁸ lorde Ihesu Cryste / whiche had ben³ made⁴ first of Constantyne thempereour / by a noble Patryarke of Iherusalem named Maxyme / and after reedefyed by modest that other patriarke / In the tyme of heracles, of whom we haue spoken to fore, he sente to them a fals¹² caliphe, one his bayly, whiche was lord of Rames, and named hyart.⁵ (7) This dyde the commandement of his lord, and caste it down to grounde / In this tyme was patriarke of this chyrche a right valyaunt man named Oreste / and was vncler vnto this vntrew¹⁶ kyng of Egypte, broder of his moder / And this was the reson why he was so cruel ayenste Crystiente / ffor the heethen men sayde that he shold neuer be ferme in theyr lawe / by cause he had a crysten moder / And for to take away this suspecion he destroyed this²⁰ holy chirche of the ho'y sepulcre / whiche was the fontayne and begynnyng of our very creauce /

Heccam, Caliph of Egypt, surpassed in cruelty all of his predecessors.

He cast down the church of the Holy Sepulchre.

Orestes was the patriarch of this church.

How thaffliccyon, iniuries and tormentes of crysten men grewe in the tyme of Calypho hetam. 24
capitulo vj^o

Ro thenne forthon began thestate of our peple at Iherusalem f to be more greuous and more sorowful than it was wonte to be / ffor they toke grete displaysir at theyr herte for the²⁸ chirche of the resurrexion of our lorde, whiche they sawe so destroyed emonge them / And on that other syde they were charged ouer sorowfully wyth tributes, taskes and tayllages, ayenst the custome and preuyleges graunted to them of hethen prynces /³² And also, they were deffended to make ony festes on the dayes of theyr hye festes / but thenne they were compellyd to trauaylle by

Heccam imposed great tributes upon the Christians of Jerusalem.

They were obliged to work on their fast days.

¹ *Orig.* captiuyte.

²⁻² *Fr. que les gens de la loi le tenoient aussi comme forsené d'orgeuil et de raige*, i. e. even the people of his own religion considered him crazy with pride and anger. ³ leaf 13.

⁴ *Fr. "refait, premierement."* Constantine did not make, but *remade* the church. ⁵ The ed. of P. Paris, Paris 1879, gives Hiarot.

force and angrē / or they were commanded not to yssue out of
 their howses ne dores / but holde them cloos wythin / to thende
 that they shold^d make no semblaunce of feste wythin them / And^d
 4 yet also they myght not be therin in peces ne assured^d / but they
 caste at them by the wyndows grete stones, donge, dyrte, and foul
 ordure / And^d yf it happed^d somtyme a Crysten man to saye a light
 worde that dyspleasēd^d ony of the hethen men / Anon he shold be
 8 taken like a murderer, and brought to pryson, and shold lose
 therfore his fyste or fote / or he was brought to the gybet / And^d
 alle the good that he had^d / was brought in to the handes of the
 Calyphe / Somtyme they wolde take the chylde of the crysten
 12 peple / bothe sones and^d doughtres, in to theyr owne howses / and
 made them mescreauntes ayenst theyr wylle / And^d somtyme by
 betyngē / and^d another wyth lyes and^d flaterye made many yonge
 folke to renye our fayth / And^d thus they dyde to our¹ peple moche
 16 shame and^d grief / But notwythstondyng¹ / good^d crysten men lefte
 not / but admonestēd^d and comforted^d the peple to suffre al this with
 2^a a good^d herte and veri penitence for the faith of Ihesu Criste, and
 promysed them for thise shames / the Loye / thonour and^d the
 20 glorye of heuen, whiche euer shal endure / The good Cristen peple
 spack so to gydre / that they enforced^d them to holde, And^d kepe
 their cristen fayth the more surely / By cause they dyde them so
 moche harm And^d reproof. It sholde be ouer longe a thinge to
 24 recounte to you / Alle the meseases & the myschiefs that the peple
 of our lord^d endured^d that tyme. But I shal shew yow one exampel,
 to thende that by the same ye vnderstonde the³ more of other /
 One of the hethen men, ouermoche malicious and vntrewe, whiche
 28 hated^d of ouermoche cruel hate the cristen men, he aduised^d and^d
 thoughte an a day how he myght bryngē them to deth. He sawe
 wel that alle the cyte helde the temple in moche grete honour &
 reuerence, whiche was reedefyed, & the laye peple named it / the
 32 temple dominus / & that they whiche had the charge to kepe it dide
 al their payne to kepe it cleen & nette / now ther was a place to
 fore the temple, whiche was named thaitre⁴ of the temple / Whiche
 they wolde kepe as clene / as cristen men kepe their chirches and^d
 36 aultres / And^d this vntreu man, that I haue said^d yow of to fore,

They could
not even
remain in
peace in
their homes.

Heavy
penalties
were inflicted
for the
slightest
offences.

Their chil-
dren were
forced to
renounce the
Christian
faith.
But, notwith-
standing,
good Chris-
tians en-
couraged
each other
to endure all
these things.

A malicious
heathen
devised a
plan to
destroy all
the Chris-
tians.
The temple
was regarded
with great
reverence by
both Chris-
tians and Mo-
hammedans.

¹ *Orig.* onr. ² leaf 13, back. ³ Fr. "*Plusieurs des autres.*"

⁴ Fr. *aitre*, i. e. the Cathedral yard, or the square before the Cathedral. The word evidently puzzled Caxton, so that he transferred it bodily, instead of trying to find its English equivalent.

This malicious man
nforesaid placed a dead
dog in the open place
before the temple.

The heathen
men all
declared that
it had been
done by some
Christian,
and clamored
for their
death.

A young man
devised the
deliverance
of the Chris-
tians, by
taking the
deed upon
himself.

He had his
head smitten
oil.

Toke by nyght, in suche wise that no man sawe it / a dede hounde
al roten and stynkyng, and brought it in to the same aitre to fore
the temple / On the morn, whan they of the toun¹ cam to the
temple, they fonde this dogge / Thenne sourded and aroos / a crye / 4
a noyse, and a clamour so grete thurgh alle the toun / That ther
was nothinge spoken of but of this hounde. They assembled / and
put out of doubte / that this was not doon ne caste there but by the
Cristyens / Alle the hethen men Accorded to this poynt that alle 8
the cristen peple shold be put to deth with the swerd / ²And there
were theyr swerdes drawn redy out / And they also that sholde
smyte of their heedes.² Emonge the crysten men was a yonge man
of a moche grete herte and of grete pyte / And spak to the peple, 12
and said to them / “ffair lordes, trouthe it is / That I am not
culpable in this thinge, ne none of yow, as I byleue certaynly / But
it shold be ouermoche grete dommage yf we alle shold deye thus,
ffor by this shold alle the Cristendomme be quenched in this londe / 16
Wherfore I haue thought in my self / how I shal delyuer yow alle,
by thayde of our lord / Two thynges I ³desyre of you, for the loue
of god / That one is that ye praye for my sowle in your orisons /
That other is that ye deporte⁴ and honoure my poure lygnage / ffor 20
I will take this thinge on me / and saye that I allone haue doon
this fayt, whiche they put on vs alle” / they that doubted the deth
had grete Ioye whan they herd this / and promysed to hym their
orisons, and thonoure of his lygnage / In this maner that they of 24
his lygnage enermore on palmsonday shal bere tholyue, whiche
signyfyeth Ihesu Criste whan he cam in to Iherusalem / Thus this
man cam to fore the Iustice / And said to them that the other
Cristen men were nothyng culpable in this fayt / and sayde that he 28
hym self had doon the dede / whan they herde this / they delyuerd
alle the other / And he only had his heed smeton of /

How at the requeste of Themperour of Constanty-
noble the cristen men obteyned lycence to bylde 32
agayn the chirche of the holy sepulere.

capitulo .vij^o

¹ Orig. tonn.

²⁻² Caxton is so hampered here, by his corrupt French text, that he does not make a very intelligible translation. The text of A. shows us the sense of the passage—“*Et ja estoient pres les espées traites de cel qui leur devoient à touz les testes tranchiez.*”

³ leaf 14.

⁴ Fr. *deportez*, protect, take care of.

s Uche diseases¹ suffred the peple of our lord in this tyme ; but
 Ihesu cryste, that wel can sette remedies in thinges merueilleous
 & out of ordre / recomforte them after, ffor this vntrewe
 4 prynee of egipte, hetam, deyde / and his sone, named daher, regned
 after hym / This daher renewed the alyaunces with themperour of
 constantynoble, ²whiche was a Romain, and named Eliopolitans² /
 he prayde ³the said daher, whom he moche louyd,³ that he wold
 8 suffre that the Cristen men myght reedefye the chirehe of the holy
 sepulere, whiche his fader had do beten downn / he graunteð it for
 the loue of themperour / It was not longe after that this emperour
 deyde / and after hym regned Constantyn, whiche had to surname
 12 Monomaques / whiche is to saye in grece as a man fyghtyng allone /
 The poure cristen that were in Iherusalem had lycence for to make
 agayn their chirches / but they had not the power, for their
 pouerte / And herupon they had a counseyl that they wold sende
 16 to themperour / and requyre hym for goddes sake that he wold
 helpe and socour of his Almesse, for the reedefyng of this holy
 werke / Ther was in the toun of Iherusalem a good man named
 Iohan ⁴Cariantes, born in Constantynople, & had ben a grete
 20 gentilman of the contre as of his lignage / But yet was he more
 gentil of herte & good maners / This man was comen on pylgremage
 to the holy sepulere, and had lefte alle the hobauce and thonour
 of the world / & had taken thabyte of relygion / ffor to folowe our
 24 lord Ihesu Criste in pouerte⁵ in the place / where he suffred pouerte
 & messeage for vs / This said Iohan was prayd of alle the cristen
 peple there, that he wolde entrepryse this message for to go to
 the themperour, for the loue of god and of them / he dyde it with a
 28 good wyll, and departed, and ⁶cam in to Constantynoble, and spak
 to themperour / and dide alle that he was requyred / ffor themperour
 graunteð that he wolde make alle the dispences⁷ that shold be
 nedeful to the byldyng of this holy chirche / and wolde reedefye it
 32 at his owen coste / This Iohan was moche Ioyous whan he had so
 wel accomplissyð his message / and toke leue of themperour, and
 cam agayn in to Iherusalem / Whan he had said to the peple the
 good tydinges that he brought / they made grete Ioye, And many

Herecam,
 Prince of
 Egypt, diel.
 Daher, his
 son, reigned
 after him.

The Chris-
 tianus had
 permission
 to rebuild
 their church,
 but no
 money.

They sent to
 beg aid of the
 Emperor of
 Constanti-
 nople.

The Emperor
 agreed to
 bear all the
 expense of
 rebuilding
 the church.

¹ Fr. "*mesaises*" should not, in this case, be translated "*diseases*," but *calamities, miseries*.

²⁻² Caxton has here misunderstood his text. The French has, "*qui avoit nom Romain, et estoit nommé en sournom Elyopolitanes.*"

³⁻³ Fr. *celui Daher qui moult l'aimoit.*

⁴ leaf 14, back.

⁵ *Orig.* pouerty.

⁶ *Orig.* aud.

⁷ *Orig.* dispeuces.

The Christians wept for joy at this news.

wepte grete teeres for pyte / by cause they thoughte that our lord wolde not al way forgete them / whan he had doo to them suche comforte / In this tyme was patriarke in Iherusalem an holy man named nycesores¹ / Themperour held ryght wel his promesse, ffor 4 he sente without taryeng grete partyr of his tresour / and dide do make the chyche of the holy sepulcre moche hye in thestate and manere that it is yet / And was ful made the yere of thincarnacion of our lord a M xlviij, And had ben xxxvij yere destroyed. This 8 was ryght the yere to fore that our peple recouer^d the cyte / Whan the Cristen men there had made agayn the chirche / they were moche Ioyous, and were also therein well comforted of all theyr meseseas and repreneas that they suffred, wherof they had grete 12 plente / not only in Iherusalem / But also in alle the cytees aboute / as in bethleem / And in the cyte where Amos the prophete was born, named Tecua / As ofte as the Caliphe sente in to the lande a newe bayly / so ofte were sette on them new tributes & taillages, 16 whiche they myght not well paye / & yf they payed not, anon they menaced them for to caste down their chirches to the ground, & saide they had of their lord commandement so to doo: thus in this sorow were the cristen peple / one while vnder them of egipte / 20 another tyme vnder them of Perse / but this was not but yet a begynning to them, as whan they cam vnder the power of the ²turques / ffor the turques conquerd the Royame of perse / and also of Egypte. Thus the holy cyte fylle in to their demayne / whiche 24 demened it so cruelly & tormented it so cruelly / that it semed to the peple of our lord that they had be in fraunchise and in grete reste vnder them of Egypte and of perse. Thus helde the turkes them there viij yere / 28

The church was completed in the year 1048.

The Christians now feel repaid for all they have suffered.

They had suffered greatly under the Egyptians and the Persians,

but that was as nothing compared to their treatment by the Turks.

Of the turkes; fro wens they cam / and how they grewe in to grete puisaunce, and dide chese them a kynge for to mayntene their warres.

capitulo viij^o 32

It seems best to give some account of the Turks.

or as moche as we haue spoken of the turkes / & shal ofte speke of them in this book / me semeth good that I saye to yow fro wens this peple cam first / & wherby they had so grete power / The turke & turkemans cam out of a lynage, Rote, & 36

¹ Fr. *Nycesores*, Lat. *Nycephorus*.

² leaf 15.

of a contre¹ toward the Eest whiche is in surye,¹ And were a peple
 moche rude & without ordynauce / ne had no contreye, ne no
 certayn dwellyng² place / But went all aboute fro londe to londe /
 4 & sought pastures for their beestis / ne neuer duellid in castel ne
 townn / And whan they wolde mene from one place to another /
 thenne wente euery lynage by hym self / And they made in euery
 kyured or lynage a prince whiche was theyr Iusticer: by thise
 8 prynces, all their mesfeates and trespeaces were redressyd and
 amendid / And they obeyed, and dide that he or they commanded /
 They caryed with them alle theyr thynges, sernautes, menages,
 houshold, thier Oxen, kyen, sheep, and other beestis. In this
 12 thyng was alle theyr rychesse / They laboured no londe by eeryng
 ne sowyng / ne they coude neyther bye ne selle / ffor they had no
 moneye; but their beestes, their chese and Mylke, changed thei, for
 to haue other thinges that they neded. Whan they had ben in
 16 one place, and had nede to goo in to another, they sente the wisest
 of their peple vnto the princes of the contre / And they made
 couenautes for them for to dwelle in their wodes & pastures for
 the tribute that they shold paye lyke as they shold accorde / Now it
 20 happed that a grete partye of this peple departed fro the other / and
 entred in to the londe of perse / & fonde this londe moche plenty-
 vus of pastures / and ryght good of suche as they neded / And gaf
 to the kyng the trybute that they were accorded fore / And dwellyd
 24 there I can not telle how longe / This peple began to growe and
 multeplye² in suche wise that³ there were of them a meruayllous
 grete nombre / in so moche that the kyng, and they of the contre
 self began to haue grete doubte of them and fere / leste they myght
 28 doo harme by the power that ouermoche grewe and encreced; here
 vpon they had a counseyl emonge them / that they wold dryue and
 chasse them by force out of theyr londe / But after, they chaunged
 theyr counseyl / and semed better / that they shold charge them
 32 with suche tributes that they myght not suffre / And thenne they
 shold departe⁴ by their owne agreement⁴ lyke as they were come /
 Thus they dyde / But they suffred longe thise greues / til atte
 laste, whan they myght nomore suffre / thei counseyllid emong
 36 them self that they wold nomore paye to the kyng. whan the
 kyng herde this / he dide do crye thurgh alle his Royamme / that

They came from the East, and were a rude and untrained people.

Every tribe lived by itself, and chose out of its number a prince to administer justice.

All their wealth was in herds.

They had no money, but exchanged their products for what they needed.

A large body of Turks wandered into Persia,

and lived there a long time,

until they increased so that the Persians began to fear them.

Heavy tributes were imposed upon them.

1-1 Fr. "*vers bisse quand l'en est en Surie*," i. e. north of Syria.

² *Orig.* multeplye.

³ leaf 15, back.

⁴⁻⁴ Fr. "*par ennui, et de leur gré*."

At last they were ordered to leave the country.

As the Turks came together to depart, they first realized their number and power.

They decided to choose a king to rule them.

One Selduc was chosen by lot.

His first commandment was that all should return into Persia

they shold yssue out of it by a certayn day that was named to them / And that they shold passe the flood named cotar, whiche is vtterist part of the Royamme of perse on that other syde / And whan they were departed, and on the playn, they sawe them self ouer, & apperceyned that they were so grete plente of peple that no londe myght suffyse¹ them / ne withstonde them yf they helde hem to gydre ; ffor to fore, whan they dwellid in perse / they dwellid fer a sondre, in suche wise that they knewe not their power / But now whan they sawe that they were so many, they had meruailous grete desdayne of that they had suffred, and the pryde & griuousnes of one prince. They take counseyl emonge them, and sawe that no peple myght resiste them / but myght conquere alle londes ther aboute / But one thyng destroubled them / and that was / they had no kynge on them / And thenne they dyde in this manere / They fonde emonge them an hondred lignages / of whiche euerich had his meyne / And euery lignage brought forth an Arowe marked in suche wise that the Arowe of eche lignage myght be knowen / and whan alle thise Arowes were brought to gydre / They called a lytil chylde / and commanded hym to take vp suche one as he wolde / ffor they had acorded emonge them / that of the lignage, that the Arowe shold be taken vp by the chylde / they shold chese them a kynge / The chylde toke vp one of a lignage that after was called Selduces / Now they knewe that of this lignage they muste chese a kynge / And they toke an hondred of the most prudent & wise men that they coude fynde in al the lignage / And commanded that eche of them shold brynge an arowe / wheron his name shold be wreton / And after they called the chylde / and bad hym take vp one of the Arowes / And concluded emonge them / that he shold be kynge / of whom he toke vp the arowe / he toke vp one / on whiche was wreton Selduc / This Selduc was a moche goodly man / and gretely honoured in his lignage / he was grete and stronge, a good knyght and wel proued / and semed wel to be a good man and of hye werkes / They chees alle this man for to be theyr kynge, as they had promyse / And dyde to hym homage and feaute by oth, and obeyed hym, and honoured hym, lyke as is don to a new kynge / This kynge, for the first of his commandmentis, commanded and made do crye ouer all, on payne of lesyng of theyr lyues, they shold repasse & goo ouer agayn the flood of

¹ The French gives "*souffrir*," endure, which Caxton has evidently mistaken for "*suffire*," to suffice.

² leaf 16.

Cobar, and retorne agayn in to perse, ffor they wold no lengre be
 in danger for to seche place and stede where they myght dwelle /
 but wolde that they shold conquere this londe and¹ other / and
 4 reteyne them in theyr seignourye / lyke as he sayd² and³ commanded,
 it was don / ffor the peple conquerd in a short space by force of
 armes, not only the Royame of Perse / but alle Arabe and other
 contrees of thoryent / and toke them by strengthe, and⁴ reteyned
 8 them vnder theyr power / And thus it happed⁵ that this peple that
 tofore had be so rude / and lyued so out of rule as beestis / after
 gate in lasse than fourty yere so grete seignouryes, as ye now here /
 And mounted in so grete pryde / that they wolde no more haue the
 12 name lyke as the other had⁶ / ¹wherfore they were called turkes /
 The other that wold⁷ not leue theyr maner of luyngge were alleway
 named, and yet ben, Turquemans / Thise peple, whan they had
 conquerd this contre of thoryent / they wold entre in to the
 16 Royamme of Egypte / ffor they were of moche grete puissaunce /
 And⁸ descended⁹ in to Surrye / and¹⁰ conquered¹¹ the contre / And¹²
 emonge the other cytees, they toke the holy cyte of Iherusalem, And¹³
 suche peple as they fonde there they demened¹⁴ right euyl, and¹⁵
 20 tormentid¹⁶ and¹⁷ greued¹⁸ them more more than they had¹⁹ ben tofore / lyke
 as I haue sayd to you to fore /

to conquer
the land.

They con-
quered not
only Persia,
but Arabia
and other
lands of the
East.

They would
no longer
be called
Turcomans,
but took
the name of
Turk.

They de-
scended into
Syria,
and took the
holy city of
Jerusalem.

Of thorryble synnes regnyng thenne in crystiante, as
 wel in thise partyes / as in tho partyes.

24 capitulo ix^o

E haue herd how this peple that were crysten were demened¹,
 y in this contre of thoryent / Now ye may here how the
 crystiente ²is contened³ and ruled⁴ in other partyes of the
 28 world / knowe ye for certayn, that this tyme were founden but⁵
 fewe / that had the drede of our lord in theyr herte / Alle right
 wysnesse / alle trouthe / alle pyte were faylled / The fayth of
 Ihesu cryste was ⁶as it had be quenched / and⁷ of charyte men spack
 32 not / debates / discordes / and warres were nyhe oueral / in suche
 wyse, that it semed⁸ / that thende of the world was nyghe / by the
 signes that our lord⁹ sayth in the gospell / ffor pestylences and
 famynes were grete on therthe / ferdfulnes of heuen, trembling of
 36 thierthe in many places, and many other thinges there were that

But few
people in the
world at this
time had the
fear of the
Lord in their
hearts.

The end of
the world
seemed nigh.

¹ Caxton omits here "*dont ilz vindrent.*"

² Fr. *se contenoit*, i. e. conducted itself.

³ *Orig.* but.

⁴ leaf 16, back.

The princes
oppressed
their own
subjects,

and even
despoiled the
churches.

Monks and
priests were
maltreated.

Sin and vice
flourished
unrebuked.

Every one
seemed to
evert himself
to serve the
devil.

ought to fere the hertes of men, to drawe them fro euyl / & to
brynge to them the remembraunce of our lord / But they were as
deef and blynde of heeryng and of seeyng¹ / this that was nedeful to
them for to saue theyr sowles / The prynces and the barons brente 4
and destroyed^d the contrees of theyr neyghbours / yf ony man had
saued ony thyng in theyr kepyng / theyr owne lordes toke them,
and put them in prison and in greuous tormentis, for to take fro
them suche as they had^d / in suche wyse that the chyldren of them 8
that had ben riche men / men myght see them goo fro dore to
dore, for to begge and gete theyr brede / and somme deye for
hungre and mesease / ¹As to the chirches ne Religyouses, they kept
not theyr priuyleges ne none other fraunchyses / but were taken fro 12
them alle¹ that mocht be founden, as wel meobles, rentes, and
other thynges / ye the crosses, chalyces, & the sensours, they toke
fro the chirches / and molte them for to selle / yf ony fledde to the
chirche for to warante and saue hym / he was taken & drawn out 16
vylaynously, as out of a tauerne or an other place / To Monkes and
clerkes were doon wronges, and all the shames they myght / Ther
was no iustyce / but on them that trespaced^d not ne forfayted
nothyng / The contrees were ful of theues & of murdriers / In 20
cytees ne in good townes was noman sure / There regned custom-
ably dronkenschap / lecherye / playeng at dyse & robberyes / ther
was no mariage kepte / ne lignage / And also as of euyl lyf were
the clerkes or werse / as the other / The bysshops ne the other 24
prelates durst not reprehende ne chastyse none for theyr euyl
werkes / The Rentes of holy chirehe they gaf ne payd none / but²
solde the benefices / And fynably I saye yow, that alle euyl werkes
had surprysed^d alle crystiente / in suche wyse, that it semed^d that 28
eueryche dyde payne for to serue the deuyll /

Of a bataylle that themperour Romayne of Constanty-
nople had ayenst a puissaunt prynce of thoryent
named Belphet. ca. x^o 32

o Wr lorde, that by his pyte chastyseth in this world for to spare
in that other / and can wel bete his children that he loueth,

¹⁻¹ Fr. "As yglises n'as religyous ne gardoient nul privilege, ne nul franchise einz leur tollient," etc. Caxton seems here to have translated the French *as* (à les) by the English *as*. It should read—They protected none of the privileges or franchises of the church, or of the religious orders, but took away, etc. ² *Orig. bnt.*

¹for to saue them, suffred a grete flawe² to come in to the contre,
 for to chastyse the peple / ffor in this tyme, whan themperour
 Romayn was lord in constantynoble / yssued out of the partys of
 4 thoryent a puissant hethen prynce named Belphet, whiche brought
 with hym so grete plente of peple out of perse & surye, that they
 couerd alle the contre / & the multitude was so grete that it myght
 not wel be nombred / they brought with them cartes / Charyottes /
 8 horses, camels / beuffes / kyen / & other smale beestys, so grete
 plente / that vnnethe it myght be bylenyde / & with this grete
 apparayl / This grete force & strengthe he brought in to thempire
 of constantinoble / & began to take & waste alle that he fonde / &
 12 where as they fonde fortresses / cytees or castellis, they toke it al
 with assault / ffor nothyng myght resiste them, but that they smote
 alle down to therthe / alle the peple hool³ fledde to fore hym / this
 tydynges cam to themperour that this grete lord had supprised &
 16 taken alle his contre / anon without taryeng, he sente alle about in
 thempire, & dyde thenne somone alle his hoost, & assembled as
 moche peple as he coude gete / & as moche good as he myght fine
 for this werke that was so grete / whan his peple were comen, he
 20 yssued with as many men of armes and of warre as he myght haue /
 & drewe to that parte where this belphet cam / he fonde hym to
 sone, as he that was ferre entred in to the londe / whan they knewe
 that eche of them was so nygh other / they ordeyned theyr bataylles
 24 for to fyghte / & assembled so cruelly & of so grete angre / as peple
 that had eche to other grete hate. The hethen foughte for tenhaunce
 theyr lawe, & for tencrece theyr power / & the cristen men defended
 theyr fayth & the lawe of Ihesu criste, & to saue and kepe theyr
 28 liues & franchyses, & theyr wyues / childeren, & theyr contree /
 The bataylle was moche grete & cruelle, moche peple slayn, & blode
 shadde here & there. Atte laste the grekes myght not suffre the
 faytes⁴ ne the grete plente of the mescreauns / and fledde as dis-
 32 comfyted so fowle that none returned agayn, but⁵ ranne away with-
 oute ordonaunce, eueryche where he myght best saue hym; they
 that folowed them⁶ dyde alle that they wolde.⁶ They slewe many,
 & toke grete plente a lyue, And emonge alle other, Themperour was

At this time
came from
the East a
Prince named
Belphet.

He began to
devastate the
Empire of
Constanti-
nople.

The Emperour
marched out
against him.

The battle
was fierce,
and many
were slain.
Finally the
Greeks fled.

Their Em-
perour was
taken
prisoner.

¹ leaf 17.

² Fr. *fléau*, scourge.

³ Fr. *entièrement*, entirely, i. e. to a man.

⁴ Fr. *fais*. Caxton has evidently confounded this word, which means burden, weight, force, with *fait*, feat.

⁵ *Orig.* bnt.

⁶⁻⁶ Fr. "*en faisoit presque leurs volontés*," i. e. had pretty nearly their own way with them.

taken hym self / whan tydinges cam in to the contre that the batayl
 was loste, and^d themperour taken / ther was grete sorowe of alle
 tholde men, wyues / & childeren that had not ben there / belphēt,
 this prynce of myscreauntes, seeyng^r that he had thus playn 4
 victorye of the cristen men, mounted & aroos in to grete pryde /
 ffor he thought wel that he shold fynde no barre that shold lette
 hym to doo his wille in ¹thempyre. whan he was lodged, & his hoost
 aboute hym / he commanded themperour to be brought to fore hym, 8
 which had be taken in the bataylle / & he sette his foote vpon the
 necke of themperour / & this dyde he ofte, & whan he shold^d
 mounte vpon horsbak or descende / in shame and despite of the
 fayth of our lord and^d of the cristen peple. Whan he had thus a 12
 whyle shamed, reuyled, & despyted themperour, He lete hym goo,
 & delyuerd hym & som of his barons / that had be prisoners / &
 whan themperour was come agayn in to constantynoble / ²the
 barons of the londe reputed^d hym as ouermoch dishonoured^d / as he 16
 that had shamefully conduyted^d the bataille,² & toke hym & raced
 out his eyen, & lete hym vse his lif in sorowe & shame. This
 prynce belphēt began to take alle the londe, in suche wyse, that in
 a lytil whyle he conquerd fro the³ lystes of surye, vnto the see 20
 called the braas of seynt george / which is wel xxx iourneyes of
 lengthe / & x of brede / & in som place xv, & whan he cam to the
 braas / he wold haue passed^d in to constantinoble / whiche is on
 that other side of that litil see / but he myght not finde shippis 24
 ynough / Thus the cristen peple of that londe, for theyr synnes⁴
 were vnder this cruell peple / emong the other, the noble and hie
 cyte where saynt peter was,⁵ & made fyrst as chyef of cristente /
 that is, antioche, was taken in the ende, and subgette vnto the 28
 turkes / thus had this belphēt in his seynorye & demayne the
 londes named celessurye / the two cilices / pamphylee / lyce,
 lycayne / cappadoce, galace / Bethyne, & a parte of the lasse asye /
 all these countrees ar moch fertile & ful of peple / this hethen 32
 peple began to bete down the chirches & greue the cristen peple, as

Belphēt
 treated him
 shamefully.

After a time
 he set him
 free.

Belphēt con-
 quered all
 the land as
 far as Con-
 stantinople,

including
 Antioch.

The Turks
 began to
 maltreat the
 Christians.

¹ leaf 17, back.

²⁻² Caxton's translation is here incorrect. "Les barons de la terre tinrent à trop grant deshonneur se celui qui ainsi honteusement les avoit conduitz (var. avoit este menéz), demoroit plus seur dedans le povoir et la haultesce de l'empire." ³ Fr. *Laliche*, i. e. the town of Laodicea. ⁴ *Orig.* syunes.

⁵ It is hard to understand whether Caxton means here that *Saint Peter* was "made chyef of Cristente," or the city of Antioch. The Latin original has—"Inter quos nobis et eximia provinciarum multarum moderatrix et princeps civitas principis apostolorum sedes prima capta est."

it plesyd them / ffor so grete affraye & drede was in the hertes of
 the cristen peple / that they alle fledde vj iourneyes fro the said
 belphet / this was a thyng that greuyd merueylously the holy cyte
 4 of Iherusalem & the peple of the countré / ffor whyles themperour
 of constantynoble was in good pees & in his grete power / many
 grete socours, grete comfort of ryche yettes & of large almesses cam
 vnto the peple of surye, and also fro the londe of antioche. But
 8 thenne they had loste alle, & had none hope that euer ony ayde ne
 socours shold come to them / wherfor they supposed euer to be in
 seruage & captiuite without ony ransom.

Jerusalem especially suffered by this change of masters.

Of many maners of tormens that the cristen peple
 12 suffred for theyr synnes / in that time /

The Christians suffered all these torments on account of their sins.

capitulo xi^o

w Hyles that this tyme was so peryllous for the seynorye of
 thyse hethen men / cam oftymes in pylgremages the grekes
 16 and the latyns in to Iherusalem / ffor to praye oure lord & crye
 hym mercy / that he wold not forgete thus his peple. yet many
 cam theder in grete perylle, ffor alle the countrees by whiche they
 shold passe were ful² of theyr enemyes / and ofte they were robbed
 20 and slayn / And whan they myght escape and come to the holy
 cyte / they myght not entre therin. But eche persone muste paye
 a besaunt for trybute, wherof happed ofte that they that were
 despoyled, had not wherof they myght paye this tribute / &
 24 myght not entre in to the town / And for this they suffred Colde /
 hungre / and grete mesease / And many deyde. And herof the
 Cristen men of the toun were moche greued / For they susteyned
 them that lyued / And muste burye them that were dede / and
 28 seche such thyng as was nedeful to them self & other / ³They that
 myght entre in the town were yet more greued³ / ffor som were
 murdred in the holy places of the cyte secretly / & was doon to
 them moche shame & reproof openly. Ther was fylthe caste in
 32 their visage / & other spytte in the myddes of theyr visage / & som
 men bette them / wherfore the cristen men of the toun, that had
 som acqueyntaunces with the hethen men, conduyted and ladde
 them⁴ to theyr pylgremages, for to kepe them to theyr power.

The Greeke and Latins made pilgrimages often to Jerusalem.

Each pilgrim had to pay a besant to enter the Holy City.

The pilgrims suffered all sorts of shame from the heathen.

¹ leaf 18.

² *Orig.* ful.

³⁻³ Caxton has misunderstood his French, which reads "*Ceux qui pouoient entrer dans la ville les greuoient encore plus,*" that is, gave them (the Christians of Jerusalem) even more trouble. ⁴ *i. e.* the pilgrims.

There were in the cyte of them of Malfe, which is a cyte of puyell, which had a chirche in Iherusalem named saynte marye de la latyne,(8) whereby was an hospital of poure peple, where as was a chappel that was named saynt Iohan Eleymont / This saynt Iohan 4 was a patriarke of Allexandrye / Thabbot of the chirche of our lady had in his cure & in his pourueyance this hospital, & purchassed alle that was nedeful for them. There were receuyd alle the pour pylgryms whiche had not wherof to lyue / And this hows was of 8 moche grete charyte / Thus were the cristen peple in grete disease¹ in the toun / But there was nothyng that displesyd them, as whan they had made theyr deuotions atte holy places in the toun, with grete traueylles & grete costes, And whan they were in the seruyse 12 of our lord / the hethen mescreauntes cam in with grete noyse & crye, and satte vpon the aulters / threwe doun the chalyces / brake the lampes / & the tapres / & yet for more to angre the cristen peple / they toke ofte the patriarke, which was thezne, by the 16 berde, and by the heer / And threwe hym doun to the grounde, & defowled hym vnder theyr feet, of whiche alle cristen had grete sorowe & moche pyte / In thise sorowes and meseases were the cristen men in the londe of Surye, as I haue sayd you to fore, 20 CCCC four score & ten yere / and alwey cryed vnto our lord for ²mercy with syghes & teeres / & prayde hym deuoutly that he wold not alle forgete them / But the good lord, that after the tempeste & derke weder can wel brynge clerenes and fayr season, behelde this 24 peple in pyte / And sente to them comforte and delyuerance of the tormentes in whiche they had longe ben.

There was a hospital for them near St. Mary de la Latyne.

They were insulted even in the holy places.

The Christians of Syria endured this slavery for 490 years.

The Lord at last heard their prayers, and delivered them.

How aftir they³ had ben four CCCC lxxxx yere in seruage of the hethen peple / our lord pourueyed 28 remedye for his cristen peple / capitulo xij.

i Haue wel said to you byfore / that out of many londes cam pilgryms in to Iherusalem / emong alle other ther was one which was of the royame of ffrance, born in the bisshopprych of 32 Amyens, That is to wete / one named peter, whiche had ben an heremyte in a wode / And therfor he was called peter theremyte / this was a litil man of body, & as a persone had in despite, & lytil 36 preyed by semblaunt / But he was of a merueyllous grete herte /

Peter the Hermit came to Jerusalem.

He was small of stature, but great of heart.

¹ Fr. "*mesaise*," here means *discomfort, misery*.

² leaf 18, back.

³ *Orig. the.*

of moche clere engyne / and good vnderstondyng / and spak right
 wel / whan he cam to the gate of Iherusalem / he payd the trybute
 of a besaunt & entred in to the cyte / and was lodged in a good
 4 cristen mans hows / This petre¹ alwey enquiryed² & demaunded³ He made
many
Inquiries.
 moche of his hoost / of the gouernaunce & estate of the cyte / And
 how the cristen men conteyned them vnder the hethen men / And
 how they lord demened & gouerned them / his hoost, whiche had His host told
him the
story of their
sufferinge.
 8 longe³ ben in the towno / tolde to hym alle the maner playnly of
 the tymes passyð, And how the cristente had be defowled / And
 the holy places dishonoured / whiche was sorouful to here / And he
 hym self, which a good while had be in the toun for to doo his
 12 pylgremage / sawe wel & perceuyed a grete partye of the caitynes /
 in which the cristen men were / he herd saye that the patriarke was
 a good wyse man, deuote & religyous, which was named symeon / (9)
 Peter thought that he wolde goo & speke with hym / & demande of Peter took
counsel with
the Patriarke
as to what
should be
done.
 16 hym the estate of the chirches, of the clergy, & of the peple / he
 cam to hym, & dyde so as he thought, And asked of hym alle these
 thynges / The patriarke apperceuyed wel by his wordes and his
 countinaunce / that he was a man that dredde god / & right wyse
 20 and vnderstondyng / And began to telle to hym by layser / alle the
 meseases of the cristen peple. whan peter herde these sorowes
 of the mouthe of this good man, whom he byleuyd wel, coude⁴
 not absteyne hym fro grete syghes / & wepyng many teeres for
 24 pyte / & ofte demanded of the patriarke yf ther were ony conseil &
 remedye for this werke / & the holy & deuote patriarke⁵ answered
 hym : (10) "we haue made many orysonis & prayers vnto oure lord
 god for to receyue vs in to his mercy and grace. But we apperceyue
 28 wel / that our synnes be not yet purged / ffor we ben certaynly in
 the culpe and blame, whan oure lord, whiche is so rightwys,
 holdeth vs yet in the payne. But the renomme of the contrees by The Chris-
tians of
France only
can deliver
them,
 yonde the montaynes is moche grete here, that the peple there, and
 32 specially of them of ffrance, ben good cristen peple, and moche
 stedfaste in the fayth. And therfor oure lord holdeth them at this
 day in moche grete peas and in hye puissaunce⁶ / yf they wolde
 praye our lord that he wolde haue pyte on vs / or⁷ that they toke
 36 counseyll⁷ for to socoure vs / we haue certaynly hope that our lord

¹ After "*Peter*" Caxton has omitted *Comme il estoit saige et enquerant*,
 "as he was a sensible and inquiring man." ² *Orig.* enquiryed.

³ *Orig.* louge.

⁴ Coude = our, "he could."

⁵ leaf 19.

⁶ *Orig.* puissaunce.

⁷⁻⁷ Fr. *ou qu'ilz prinssent conseil*, "or if they would take counsel."

shold helpe vs by them for taccomplysshe oure werke. ffor ye see
 wel that the grekes and themperour of Constantinoble, whiche ben
 our neyghbours and as kynnesmen, maye not helpe ne counseyle vs /
 ffor they them self ben as who sayth destroyed / And haue no 4
 power to defende theyr owne lande" / Whan peter herd this / he
 answerd in this maner / "fayr fader, ¹trouthe it is that ye haue
 sayd / ffor of that londe am I.¹ And god be thanked / the fayth of
 oure lord is moche better holden there and kepte / than it is in any 8
 other londes that I haue ben in, syth that I departed on my Iourneye
 fro my contre / ²And I byleue certainly that [if they knew] of the
 mesease and seruage in whiche these hethen mysbyleuyd³ peple
 holde you Inne,² / that, by the playsyre of almyghty god, by theyr 12
 good wylles, they shold fynde counseyl and ayde in this your grete
 nede & werke / wherfor I counseyl you one thyng, yf it be aggre-
 able to you & seme good / that is, that ye sende your lettres vnto
 oure holy fader the pope, and to the chirche of rome, vnto the 16
 kynges, prynces & barons of the occident & weste parte / In which
 late them wete playnly³ how it is with you / & that ye crye to
 them for mercy / that they wolde socoure you for the loue of god
 & for his fayth in suche maner, that they myght haue honoure in 20
 this world & sauacion of their soules in that other / & for that ye
 be pour peple / ye haue no nede to make grete dispencis / yf ye
 thynke I be sufficiaunt for so grete a message / ffor the loue of
 Ihesu Criste & remyssyon of my synnes,⁴ I shal entreprise⁵ this 24
 vyage, and offre my self to take so moche traueyl for you / And I
 promyse truly to you that I shal late them haue knowleche / how it
 is with you / yf god sende me grace to come thydre" / whan the
 patriarke herd this / he had moche grete ioye / he sente anon for 28
 the moost saddest & wysest men of the cristen peple, & for the
 clerkes & laye men / & sayde & shewde to them the bounte and the
 seruyse that this good man offryd to ⁶them / They were right glad /
 And thanked hym moche / Thenne anon, withoute taryenge / they 32
 made theyr wrytynges and sealed them with theyr seales / and
 delyuerd them to peter theremyte /

for the Greeks
have not
power
enough.

Peter is of
the same
opinion,

and advises
him to send
letters to the
Pope.

He offers to
carry the
messages
himself.

The Patri-
arch accepts
this offer with
joy.

1-1 Fr. *vray est, ce que vous avez dit de la terre dont je suy*, "that is true, what you have said of the land from which I come."

2-2 Caxton's obscurity is here due to his bad French text, which omits one of the important verbs in the sentence. A. gives the correct reading, "*Je crois certainement que s'il saroient la mesaise et li seruage qu que cist mescreant voz tiennent*," etc.

³ Orig. playully.

⁴ Orig. synues.

⁵ Orig. euterprise.

⁶ leaf 19, back.

How the said peter theremyte entreprised the more
hardly his vyage, by thapparicion or vision
that he sawe in his sleep / ca xiii^o

- 4 t Ruly our lord god is swete / pyteous / and mercyful / ffor he
wylle not suffre to perysshe / ne to be loste / them that haue
in hym ferme and stedfast hope / And whan the men lacke helpe / The Lord
giveth aid to
those who
trust in Him.
- 8 this werke / for fro whens cometh that this pour man / whiche was
lytil & despysed persone, very and brused of so grete Iourneye and
waye / that durste enterprise so grete a dede and werke / how
myght he wene that our lord wolde accomplysse so grete a werke
- 12 by hym / as for to dilyure his peple fro the myserye and caytyfnes
that they had ben in, nygh fyue C yere / But this hardynesse cam
to hym of the grete charyte that he had in hym / And the fayth
wrought in hym for the loue that he had to his bretheren / In thise Peter's
courage, the
result of his
great faith.
- 16 dayes happed a thyng / that moche lyft vp his herte to poursue
his enterprise / ffor this good man, whan he had taken this message
and charge therof / he wente moche ofter than he was woonte to
doo to the holy places in the cyte, and cam on an euentide to the
- 20 chirche of the holy sepulchre, and made there his prayers deuoutly,
with grete plente of teeris / Aftir this he sleepte vpon the pamente,
& hym semed that our saueour Ihesu Criste cam to fore hym / The Lord
appeared to
Peter in a
vision,
and charged
him to ac-
complish
speedily what
he had under-
taken.
- 1 and charged hym self to doo this message¹ / And said to hym,
24 "petre, aryse vp hastely / and goo surely thedyr as thou hast
entreprised / ffor I shal be with the / It is now tyme from hens
forth / that my holy Cyte be clesed / and that my peple be
socoured" / Petre awoke in this poynt, And was fro than forthon
- 28 more abandouned vnto the waye, and also sure, as his Iourneye and
message had be doon / he entermed² and appoynted his departyng
for to doo his erande / And had leue and benediction of the
patriarke / he descended doun to the see³ / and fonde there a shyp
- 32 of marchauntes that wolde passe in to puylle / he entred in to the Peter starts
for Rome
immediately.
ship / the which had good wynde, & in shorte tyme arryued at bar /

¹⁻¹ Fr. *et lui enchargoit ce message mesmes*. Caxton translates *mesmes* as belonging to *lui*, instead of to *message*. It should read, "and charged him with this *same* message." Lat. "Et eandem in iunxisse legationem."

² Caxton's original gives "*enterina son departement pour faire son chemin*," i. e. "prepared to depart on his journey." Another version gives "*atorna son virre*." Caxton read "*enterina*" as *enterma*, an easy, paleographic mistake, and then made "*entermed*" of it in English. Lat. "ad redeundum accinctus."

³ *Orig. see.*

peter yssued out, & wente by londe to rome. he fonde in the contre the pope vrbā / and salewed hym in the name of the ¹Patriarke and of the cristen peple of Surye, and delyuerd to hym theyr lettres / & sayde to hym by mouthe, moche truli & wysely, ⁴ the grete sorowes, the miseryes and vyletees that the cristen suffred thenne in the holy londe / as he that was expert therof / and coude wel saye to hym the trouthe.

He delivers his letters to Pope Urban.

Of the persecucions of the chirche in that tyme, and ⁸ how the pope Urban was putte oute of the sec of Rome by the bysshop of Rauenne / ca^o. xiiij.

Harry, Emperor of Gerinany, has a quarrel with Pope Gregory VII.

ⁱ N this tyme, Harry themperour of Allemayne, had a grete debate ayenst the pope Gregory the seuenth, to fore this ¹² Urban / and the discorde aroos for the rynges and the croses² of the bisshoppes that were dede in thempyre / For suche a customme had ronne a grete whyle there, that whan the prelates were deed / the rynges and croses of them were brought to theemperour / And ¹⁶ he gaf them to his clerkes and his chapylayns, or whom he wolde /

The Emperor encroaches on the prerogatives of the Church.

and sente to the chyrcches, and bad them that they shoulde holde them for theyr bisshops and archebisshops without other election & other proef, by whiche holy chirche was adommaged sore / For he ²⁰ sente ofte personnes / that were not propice therto / The pope gregorie sawe that this customme was ayenst the right and lawe wreton, and also ayenst reason / and prayd hym amyably to leue this for the lone of god, of holy chirche, and for sauacion of his ²⁴ sowle / ffor it apperteyned nothyng to hym / Themperour wold not leue this for the pope / wherfor the pope cursed hym / herof themperour had so grete despite & so grete³ desdayne / that incontinent⁴

The Pope endeavours to settle the matter peaceably.

The Emperor declares war.

he began to warre ayenst the chyrcche of rome / & ayenst the pope ²⁸ he made to rise an aduersarye / Tharchiebisshop of rauenne, whiche was named Gilbert, ⁽¹¹⁾ & was wel lettred & moche riche / This bisshop trustd ouermoche in thayde of themperour / And in the plente of his rychesse / And he cam to rome / and deposd and put out the ³² pope of his see by fauour & force / And becam so fel, and of so grete pryde that he had, that he forgate his wytte & reson that he ought to haue by his clerye / And sette hym self in the see / And made hym to be holden for pope, as he that wel wende to haue ben ³⁶

He deposes Gregory, and puts Gilbert of Ravenna in his place.

¹ leaf 20.

² Fr. *croces*, crosier, or bishop's staff.

³ *Orig. gtete.*

⁴ *Orig. incoutenent.*

- it / I-haue said you to fore, that at that tyme / Cristen peple were
 in gret paryll thurghout alle the world / & that the comandemens
 of the gospel were moche forgoten / and of holy chyrche / And men
 4 ranne faste and haboundantly to the werkes of the deuyl & to alle
 synnes / & whan this discorde and Seysme was so grete / Thenne
 alle trouthe was ¹goon & the fayth of our saucour was lyke as it
 had ben alle perysshed / The bysshoppes, the abbottes, and the
 8 prouostes² were beten & sette in prison / ³And alle theyr thynges
 were taken away fro them, namely by them that helde of them-
 perour⁴ ³ / In this debate was done alle the shames and repreues to
 the pope / Thenne the holy fader sawe that he was not obeyed as
 12 he shold be / and that he was in paryl of his lyf / And he went in
 to puyll / by the helpe and counseyl of Robert guichart / whiche
 thezme was lord of the contre / This Robert dyde vnto our holy
 fader / and to his peple, as moche of honour, of servyse, and bounte
 16 as they wold take, and yet more / at laste our⁵ holy fader wente
 hym in to salerne / & becam seke, and⁶ laye down & there deyde /
 & was there buryed / The Cardynals that were there Chose another,
 whiche was named viator⁷ / whiche endured but one moneth or
 20 there aboutes : After hym, they choos this vrbane that I spack of to
 fore / This vrbane sawe that themperour was yet in his malice & his
 angre / & durst not ⁸abandone to hym, ne put hym in his power,⁸
 but helde hym in the forteresses of some barons, that for goddes
 24 sake reteyned hym in grete doubte / whiles he was in this poynt⁹ /
 peter theremyte cam to hym / and brought to hym the message fro
 the Crysten men in the holy londe / our holy fader the pope
 knewe moche wel / the bounte / the wytte / and the religion that
 28 was in this peter / And / ansuerd to hym moche swetly, and sayde
 that he shold goo hastily speke to the princes and barons of the
 royaume of ffrance of this werke / for yf he myght escape sauely fro
 the handes of themperour, he hym self had Intencion to passe the
 32 montaynes, and drawe hym toward the parties for to helpe the
 better to this wherke / yf it were possible / Thenne peter was right

The state of
Christianity
at this time
very deplor-
able.

The digni-
taries of the
Church are
maltreated
and insulted.

The Pope
flees to
Robert
Guichart for
protection.

Here he dies.

A Pope
Victor is
chosen.

After him
Urban is
elected.

He receives
Peter favour-
ably, and
advises him
to preach the
Crusade in
France.

¹ leaf 20, back.

² Fr. *procoires*, priests, not provosts.

³⁻³ Fr. "*Un mettoient autres evesques et autres abes en leurs leus no-
mement à ceuls qui se tenoient devers l'empereur.*" Lat. "*Quicumque
imperator in hac sua perversitate non erant consentientes.*"

⁴ *Orig.* themperonr.

⁵ *Orig.* onr.

⁶ *Orig.* aud.

⁷ Caxton here follows his French original, which is corrupt. The Latin and the better French translations give *Victor*.

⁸⁻⁸ Fr. *s'abandonner, à son pooir*, "trust himself in his hands."

⁹ *Orig.* poyut.

Peter preaches the Crusade with such power that the people weep tears of pity.

Like John the Baptist before Christ, so Peter prepares for the coming of Pope Urban.

glad of this good^d answe^re of our holy fader / and^d passed^d lombardye and^d the montaynes,¹ and^d cam in to ffrance / And^d began diligently to gete² the barons, like as he was sent expressly to them, and^d tolde to eche of them the shames and^d disconvenyences³ that the hethen⁴ 4 peple dyde to the Crysten folke in the holy londe / And the same he said^d to the mene peple / for he assembled^d them oftymes, and^d tolde to them the sorouful state of the londe & Cyte of *Iherusalem* / in suche wyse that he made them to wepe many a teere / And at 8 euery tyme he made some fruyt by his sayeng and exhortyng the peple to gyue socours to the holy lande / And like wise, as saynt Iohan baptyste preched to fore, to make the way to fore Ihesu cryste / so in the same wyse this Peter brought tydynges to fore 12 the comyng of our holy fader / wherfore he hym self, whan he ⁴cam, was the bätter herd^d and byleuid^d / and the more dyde in this werke /

Of a general counseyl that the pope vrbⁿ ordeyned for the reformation of holy chirche & thamende- 16 ment of the peple / cap^o. xv^o.

In 1095, Henry reigned in Germany, and Philip in France.

i N the yere of thyncarnacion of our lord M. lxxxxv. regned^d the fourth harry, kyng of almayn and^d emperour of Rome / the xviii yere of his regne / and^d the xii of his Empire, and In francc 20 regned^d thenne philipe, the sone of harry / Thenne sawe our holy fader the pope vrbⁿ, that the world^d was moche empeyre^d and torne^d to evyl / and helde a counseyl ther vpon of the prelates of ytalye at playsance / where he made establisshemens by their coun- 24 seyl, for tamende the maners of the Clergye and^d of the laye peple / After he knewe wel that he was not sure in the power of themperour, and^d passed^d the montaynes and cam in to the royaume of francc / he fonde the peple euyl endoctryned^d and ouermoche en- 28 clyned^d to synne // Charite faylled^d / and^d warres and^d discordes were emonge the riche men / And thought that it was nede to doo his power & myght for tamende Cristiente / he ordeyned a generall counseyl of alle the prelates that were bytwene the montaynes⁵ and^d 32 the see of Englande / this counseyl was sette fyrst at ⁶Clony / Another tyme at puy nostre⁷ dame⁶ / And^d the thirde tyme at Clerc-

The Pope goes into France.

He orders a Council at Cluny;

a second Council at Puy Nostre Dame;

¹ *Orig.* montaynee.

² Fr. *querir*, search out.

³ Fr. *disconvenances*, insults, not *disconveniences*, as Caxton evidently read it.

⁴ leaf 21.

⁵ *Orig.* montaynes.

⁶⁻⁶ Other editions give *Verzelai*, Lat. *et univ^{er}s^{is} transalpinarum partibus apud Vigilicam*.

⁷ Fr. *Puy Nostre Dame*.

mont, in auergne / This was in the moneth of Nouembre / There were many Archebissshops / bissshops / abbotes / and grete prelates and persones of holi chirche of thise parties. Ther were by the
 4 general counseyl many commandements¹ gyuen for tamende clerkes & layetee² / for teshewe synnes / and³ recouere good maners / There was holy chirche al reformed, of whiche it had grete nede / Emonge alle other, Peter theremyte was there, whiche forgate not
 8 the werke that he was charged with / but admonested the prelates eche pryuatly by hym self, & prayde the comune peple openly moche wel and wysely / Thenne toke our holy fader the wordes, and shewed generally to alle the counseyl / what grete shame it was
 12 to alle the cristen men, of our faith / that was so nyghe destroyed & faylled in the place where it began / and it myght be grete fere and drede whan it faylled at the heed & welle / that the ryvers shold not endure / that were rennyng thurgh the world / And⁴ saide
 16 moche wel, that alle the very Crysten peple shold take herof grete despite of thus desherytet by their defaulte / and his contre delyuere to his enemyes / And promysed that yf they wolde take
 3 vpon this pylgremage, he wolde chaunge theyr penaunce in to this
 20 werke. And yf they deyde in this waye, confessid and repentaunt,⁴ he wolde take it on his fayth, that they incontinent shold goo in to the Ioye of heuen. On that other syde, as long as they were in the seruyse of our lord, they were in the warde and kepyng of holy
 24 chirche, bothe they and theyr thynges, in suche wyse, that they that dyde to them ony damage, shold be acursed, & alle this commanded he to be kept of alle the prelates that were atte counseyl. This doon, he gaf euery man leue, and commanded [that he] shold
 28 preche this pylgremage and pardon. And tolde to them that alle men shold trauaylle to gyue and make longe trewes and pees of the warres, for taccomplysse the better this pylgremage, and to performe it.

a third at Cleremont.

Peter addresses this last Council.

The Pope himself then preached with great vigour,

promising remittance of sins to all who put on the Cross.

He commands all priests and prelates to preach the Crusade.

32 How many noble and hye men, and other of the Royame of fraunse, crossed them for to goo ouer see. ca.^o xvj.^o

o Wr lord gaf his grace vnto our holy fader the pope in vtterying
 36 of the word of god, which was said in suche wyse, that it was

¹ *Orig.* conmandements. ² *Orig.* layefee. ³ leaf 21, back.

⁴ *Orig.* repeutaunt.

The preach-
ing of the
Pope success-
ful.

It is a difficult
thing for a
man to leave
his wife and
children;

but by so
doing he
saves his
soul.

All the great
barons of
France
undertake
this work
vigorously.

Many join to
save their
souls.

Many go for
more worldly
reasons.

Men need
this hard
penance.

fyxed and roted in the hertes of them that herde hym, and not only
of them that were présent, but of alle other that it was recorded
and told vnto, ffor the bisshops wente in to theyr countrees and
preched to theyr people like as it was to them commanded. ¹How 4
be it that it was a strange thyng,¹ and right greuous for a man to leue
his contree, his wyf, his childeren / and lygnage, And leue them
that he loueth by nature. But whan one thyuketh what reward
he shal haue of our lord so to doo, thenne he geteth a feruent lone 8
in hym self for the charyte of our lord, and² leueth the naturel lone
of his flesh, for to saue his sowle / and this myght wel be perceyued
and seen, ffor the peple of the Royame of ffrance, and the grete
barons, and other lasse that were enclyned to synnes and acustomed 12
to doo ylle, as I haue said to fore, aftir they herde this prechyng,
entreprysed so vygorously the werke of our lord, and auowed them
to ward this pylgremage, as ye shal here, ffor it semed that euery
man ought to entreprise tauenge the wronge and shame that the 16
hethen dyde to our lord, and to his peple, in the londe of Iheru-
salem. Ye shold haue seen the husbonde departe fro his wyf, And
the faders fro the childeren, and the childeren fro the fadres. And
it semed that euery man wolde departe fro that he louyd best in 20
this world,³ for to wynne the Loye of that other / Ther was so grete
affraye, and so grete a meuyng thurgh alle the londe, that vnneth
ye shold haue founde an hows / but that som had enterprised
this ⁴viage / I saye not that alle that wente were wyse and of pure 24
entencion toward our lord / ffor som monkes wente out of theyr
cloystres without leue of theyr abbotes or pryours / and the recluses
wente out of the places where they had ben closed in / and wente
forth with the other / Som wente forth for loue of theyr frendes, to 28
bere them felawship / Other wente forth for bobaunce, lest they
shold be reputed for enyl and not good / And som there were that
wolde withdrawe them for theyr creancers, and haue respite of theyr
dettes / But how that it was theyr entencions within theyr hertes, 32
it semyd good for the grete enterpryse that they shewed outward /
And it was of grete nede that this pylgremage was chosen at that
tyme / ffor there were in the world so many synnes that they with-
drewed the peple / fro our⁵ lord / And it was well behoueful that 36
god shold sende to them som addressement,⁶ by whiche they myght

¹⁻¹ Fr. *Bien savez, que forte chose*, "Be assured that it is a hard thing," etc.

² *Orig. aud.* ³ *Orig. wrold.* ⁴ leaf 22. ⁵ *Orig. onr.*

⁶ Fr. *adriement*, according to Cotgrave, a directing or setting in the nearest course.

come to heuen / and that he gaf them som traueylle, as it were a
 purgatorye to fore theyr deth / At this counseyl auowed presently
 this pylgremage, the goodk bisshop of Puy named Aymart / whiche
 4 aftirward was legate in the same hoost / and conteyned hym moche
 wysely and truly / Also, the bisshop of Orenge, whiche¹ was an holy
 man and relygyous, auowed there the same viage / And ynowhe of
 other whiche were not at that counseyl that enterprised the same
 8 vowe / Our holy fader had commanded / and made the bisshops to
 holde it / that alle they that wolde auowe this pylgremage shold
 sette the signe of the crosse on their right sholdre / ffor thonoure of
 hym that bare the torment of the crosse vpon his sholders for to
 12 saue vs / and taccomplysse this that oure lord sayth in the gospell /
 “Who that wil lyue aftir me / renye² hym self and take the crosse
 and folowe me” / wel forsaketh he hym self, that leueth / that the
 flesh loueth / for sauynge of his sowle / whan one of the grete barons
 16 was crosse³ so on his sholdre in a contre, alle the peple of the
 contre that were also crosse⁴ cam to hym, and chees hym for
 theyr captayne, and made to hym feaulte for to haue his ayde
 and warantise in the waye of the sayd pylgremage /

Among the great men were Adhemar, Bishop of Puy, and the Bishop of Orange.

Each Crusader is to wear a red cross.

20 The names of noble men that enterprised this pylgremage, as wel on this side as beyonde the montaynes / capitulo xvij^o

i N the royaume of fraunce and of Allemayne, ³hughe, the
 24 yonger brother of the kyng of fraunce^{4 3} / Robert, therle of
 flaundes⁵ / Robert, Duc⁶ of Normandye, Sone to kyng William
 of ⁷Englond / Stephen, therle of chartres and of bloys, which was
 fader to erle thybauld the olde, whiche lyeth at laigny / Raymond,
 28 therle of tholouse / and many knyghtes of that londe / The valyant
 man Godefroy of buyllon, Duc of lorayne, with his two bretheren,
 Bawdwyn and eustace / And one theyr cosyn, Bawdwyn, sone to
 the counte huon de Retel / Therle garnyer de gres / Bawdwyn, the
 32 erle of henawde / Ysoart, the erle of ye / Rembout, therle of
 Orenge / William, therle of forests / Steuen, therle of Aubmalle /
 Rotrout, the erle of Perche / Hughe, the erle of saynt pol / & many

In France, the following great men are the leaders: Hugh the Great, Robert of Flanders, Robert of Normandy, Raymond of Toulouse,

Godfrey of Boloigne, and his two brothers.

¹ *Orig.* whi he.

² Fr. *renie*, “let him deny himself.”

³⁻³ Fr. “*Hue le maine, frere au roy France*,” Hugh the great, not “Hugh the younger brother.”

Lat. *Hugo Magnus*.

⁴ *Orig.* fraunce.

⁵ *Orig.* flaundes.

⁶ *Orig.* Duc.

⁷ leaf 22, back.

barons and knyghtes that were not counted¹ / As raoul de baugenel / Euerard du puisat / Guy de garlande, which was steward of fraunce / Thomas de fierre, Guy de possesse, Giles de chaumont / Girard cherisy / Rogier de barnyle / Henry dansique² / Centon of 4 beart / Guillem amanaix, Gaste the bediers, Guillem de montpellyer / and Gyrard de Roussilon / ye may wel knowe that with this peple were croysseð moche grete plente of knyghtes and other, with grete nombre of comune peple / whiche peter theremyte gadreð 8 in the Royamme of fraunce and in thempyre of Allemaygne. And by yonde the montayns men croysseð them also / Buymount the prynce of Tarente, whiche was soon to Robart guychart, that was Duc of puylle, and Tancre his neuwe, his sustres sone, and many other grete 12 barons of this londe that were not so renommed ne knowen as thise were. There was grete Appareyllemens, and³ araye that was made for this pylgremage. The grete men had enterprised, that assone as the wynter was passed they wold putte them on this pylgremage. 16 The mene peple, the knyghtes, the barons, and other, aftir they were acqueynted that one with that other / sente to eche other lettres and messages for taccorde to goo to gydre / and apoynted the tyme of departyng, and of the waye that they sholde holde / 20 And whan Marche was come, ye sholde haue seen horses arrayed, with sommyers, palfroyes, and stedes / tentes and pauyllons, and to make armures.⁴ 5 ye maye wel knowe⁶ that there was moche to doo of many thynges,⁵ ffor the barons were acorded that they shold 24 not goo alle to gydre, ffor no contre myght suffyse ne fynde that which shold be nedeful for them / ffor whiche cause alle the hoostes neuyr assembled (as ye shal here) tyl they cam vnto⁷ the cyte of Nycene. The mene peple charged them self not moche with tentes 28 ne Armures, ffor they myght not bere it. And therfor euery man garnysshid hym aftir that he was, with moneye and goodes, as moche as he supposed shold be nedeful for hym. Whan the daye of departyng⁸ cam, ther were grete sorowes, grete wepynges, and 32 grete cryes at departyng of the pylgryms / ffor there were but fewe howses but of them som wente / And suche howsholders ther were / that they wente alle, and caryed theyr wyues, and⁹ bare theyr childrenen with them / It was a merueyllous thyng to see this 36

Wm. of
Montpelier,
Girard of
Roussilon.

In Italy
Bohemond,
Prince of
Tarentum,
and his
nephew
Tancred.

The barons
decide not
to go all
together.

Every man
provides his
own arms and
provisions.

The day of
departure
was a sad
one.

¹ *Orig.* counted. ² *Fr. Henry d'Asque. Lat. de Ascha.* ³ *Orig.* aud.

⁴ *Fr. "faire-armures chargier."* Caxton neglected to translate "chargier."

⁵⁻⁵ *Fr. "Bien y porre savoir qu'il sembloit commencement de tres grant chose."* Caxton has certainly translated very freely here.

⁶ *Orig.* kuowe. ⁷ *Orig.* vuto. ⁸ leaf 23. ⁹ *Orig.* aud.

meuynges / ffor it had not byfore be acustomed to see suche
thynges in fraunce / ne neuer byfore was crosse born ne taken for
pylgremage.

4 Of thauentures that a Rowte of Cristen men had in
this viage / Of whome one Gaultyer withoute
knowleche / was Captayne / capitulo xviii^o

t He yere of thyncarnacion of our lord .M. foure score xvj /
8 the eght daye of Marche cam a gentilman, a knyght right noble,
named Gaultier,⁽¹²⁾ without knowleche¹ to his surname. with
hym cam a merueyllous² grete plente of folke a foot, ffor ther were
but fewe men a hors bak in this rowte / they passed in allemayne,
12 and drewe hem toward hongrye / The Royamme of hongrye was
alle enuyronned with grete waters, and large mershes, and depe
lakes, in suche wyse that none myght entre ne yssue but by
certayne places and strait entrees that ben as yates of the londe.
16 In hongerye was thenne a kynge, a moche valyauut man named
Colemant / And was a very good cristen man / He knewe that
Gaultier cam by londe with grete peple / and had therof moche
grete Ioye / and helde wel with the pylgremage that he had enter-
20 prised / he receyued them debonayrly in his londe, and commanded
thurgh his royame that they shold haue alle maner vytaylle, good
sheep,³ and alle that they nede⁴ / The pylgryms passed alle hongrye
in good peas, tyl they cam to the ende, where they fowde a water
24 whiche was named Marce / This was the bounde of hongerye toward
thoryent. they passed this water in good peas, and entred in to
bongrye.⁴ And withoute knowyng of this Gaulteer, some of his
peple abode ouer the water / And cam to a castel named Malleuylle,
28 for to by vitaylles, of the whiche they had nede / The hongres⁵ by
cause⁶ that alle the hoost was passed, sauf they which were but a
fewe, ranne vpon them / And bette them / And dyde to them ouer-
moche shame. They passed the water, and cam to gaultier / and
32 shewde to hym playnly how they had ben demened without for-

The 8th of
March, 1096,
Walter the
Pennyless
passed into
Germany.

Hungary is
a difficult
country to
enter.

King Cole-
mant receives
Walter
kindly.

They reached
the confines
of Hungary.

A few who
stayed behind
were badly
treated by the
Hungarians.

¹ Some of the French texts give "*Gantier sans Savoir*," which Caxton follows; others have the more correct, "*Gantier sans Avoir*," i. e. Walter the Pennyless. Lat. *Galterus cognomento "Sans Arcir."*

² *Orig.* merueyllons.

³ Fr. *à bon marché*, i. e. at low prices: "*good cheap*" seems to have been the ordinary translation, see p. 48; *liht cheip* is another form for the same expression. See *Ancru Rinle*, l. 398, and *Townley Mysteries*, 102.

⁴ Bougrye, Bulgaria.

⁵ Bougres, Bulgarians.

⁶ *Orig.* cause.

The Duke of
Bellegrave
will not sell
them provisions.

The Duke of
Bellegrave
will not sell
them provisions.

A conflict
ensues.

Walter sees
that his men
are to blame.

He sets out
for a city
called
Stralice.

They are well
received here.

and given a
safe conduct
to Constanti-
nople.

Here the
Emperor
receives
Walter
kindly.

faytte: They had moche grete despite, and moche sorowe herof. And had passed the ¹water agayn, yf they had not so grete peryl and so grete distourbyng. And thought they wold goo theyr waye, and leue for tauenge this thyng / So long they wente tyl they cam 4 to belle graue, whiche is the first Cyte of bougrye² on this syde. Gaultier sente to the duc of the town, and requyred hym that he wolde late them ther by vytaylles / he wold not suffre ony to be sold to them. Thoost had grete disease³ for lak of vytaylle / and 8 myght not lenger kepe them, but that a grete parte of them wente a fowragyng for to gete vytaylles for them, and for theyr beestys / They founde grete plente of beestes in the contre / whiche they toke and brought to theyr lodgynges / whan they of the contre herd this, 12 they armed them, and assembled grete peple of the countree, and ran vpon them where they droef their proyes, and fought with them / and toke the beestes fro them / and many of them they slewe, and hunted the other away. the nombre wel of Cxl of oure⁴ men, shytte them 16 in a monasterye for to kepe them there sauf / but the bongres cam there aboute / and sette fyer on the chirche, and brente alle / Gaultier sawe that he ledde with hym many folysssh peple, whiche he coude not rule ne sette alle in ordenaunce, And withdrewe hym fro them, 20 and toke them that wold be ruled and obeye hym, and wente in to forestes of bougrye,⁵ which ben large and long, and began to passe the moost wysely and styllle that he myght / tyl he cam to a cyte named stralyce / and is a contre named danemarche⁶ the moyen / 24 There fonde he a good man that was duke of the londe / whan this duke knewe what they were and whyther they wente / he receyued them moche debonayrly, and made them to haue vytaylles and other thynges good cheep. And dyde to them bountes and seruyses 28 ynogh for the oultrage that was doon to them at belgraue. And dyde redresse and yelde agayne to them as moche as he myght recouere / and aboue alle this / he delyuerd to them good conduyte and sewr tyl they cam to constantynoble / whan they were come to 32 constantinoble, themperour sente for gaultier. he cam vnto hym, and sayde to hym thocccasion of his viage, and that he wolde abyde there, peter theremyte, by the commandemt of whom he had brought thyse pylgryms / whan themperour herde this / he receyued hym 36

¹ leaf 23, back.

² Lat. "Bulgarorum et fines alligat ad locum deveniens qui dicatur Belgravia." ³ Fr. *souffreté*, lack, scarcity. ⁴ *Orig.* onre.

⁵ Bougrye, Bulgaria.

⁶ Fr. Danemarche la Maienne. Lat. Dacia Mediterranea.

moche wel and swetly / and assygned to hym a fayr place without
the town / where as he lodged hym with his felawship, and com-
manded that they shold haue vytaylle and alle other necessaryes
4 good chepe / and ther soiourned they a whyle.

How Pieter the heremyte was chyef of a grete hoost in
this ¹viage toward the holy londe. capitulo xix.^o [1 leaf 24]

i t was not longe aftir that peter theremite cam fro his contre / Peter the
8 with grete plente of peple, vnto the nombre of xl / M / he cam Hermit sets
in to lorayne, and passed francone / bauyere, osterych² / and drewe out with
hym toward hungrye. Peter sente his messagers to the kyng of 40,000 men.
hongrye, to thende that he myght passe his Royamme, he sente
12 hym worde that he shold haue good leue yf they wold goo in peas
without medlynges³ and outrages / They answerd that they were
pylgrims of our lord / and had no talente for to trouble the pees /
Thus entred they the royaume of hongrye / and passed by the
16 lande without ony debate. vytaylles and other thynges had they
ynough good cheepe / At thende they cam to the castel of whichè I
spak to fore / named maleuyll: There herd they saye / what was
doon to them of the retenue of Gaultier, and the grete outrage doon
20 to them without cause / and sawe yet the armes and despoyllis of
theyr felawes that had be robbed there hange yet on the walles /

Oure pylgrims that sawe this were alle as they had ben out of
theyr wytte, and ran to armes / and ⁴began euery man to do wel.⁴
24 they toke the toun by force, and smote of the heedes of alle them
that were within, sauf a fewe which ran in to the water and were
drowned. ther were founde of them that were deed wel a four M /
and of peters meyne were slayn an C / whan this was don the hoost
28 fonde there grete plente of vytaylles / and abode wel v dayes in that
place / The duc of "Bougrie," which was named Incita,⁵ vnderstode
how thise pilgrims had venged their felaws ayenst them of male-
uyll / and doubted for as moche as he had defended the vytaylles to
32 our peple / and that he had slayn many of them. And hym semed
that bellegraue was not strong ynough / therfor he lefte the town /
and wente in to a strenger castel / Thus alle they of the cyte yssued
with their goodes / and drewe them to the depe forestes / Peter

² ? orig. ofteryeh.³ Fr. *Meslés*.⁴⁻⁵ Fr. "*s'entre commencèrent à semondre et à amonester à bien faire.*"
Caxton, misled by the recurrence of the preposition *à*, skipped a line in his
translation.⁶ Fr. B. Vicetel. A. Vitira. Lat. Nichita.

whyles he laye yet at maleuyllle, herd saye that the kyng of hongrye had herd of the deth of his peple / wherof he was moche angry / and that he somoned and assembled alle his power for tauenge his men that had be slayn / And doubted herof / And was 4
 no merueyille / wherfore he made tassemble alle the shippes that myght be founden atte ryue of the see to hym / and made his peple to departe moche hastely his cartes and charyottes / and the beestes they had merueyllous grete praye, and lad away grete rychesses fro 8
 the castel of maleuyllle, that they had there taken whan they were passed ouer in to bongrye. ¹they cam to fore bellegraue / and fonde the cyte alle voyde, ffor they were alle fled / Aftir they wente eght grete iourneyes by many grete forestes tyl they cam to fore a cyte 12
 named Nyze / This town fonde they moche stronge, and wel wallyd with grete towres and stronge / And within was grete garnyson, and the beste men of warre of alle the londe, and grete plente of armours aud vytaylle / Peter the heremyte and his hoost fonde a 16
 brygge of stone by whiche they passed a water rennyng² nyghe to the cyte / they passed the brygge and lodged them bytwene the water and the towne, And by cause they had not mete³ ynough / Peter sente his messages vnto the lord of the toun / and prayd hym 20
 fayr for hym and for his peple that were cristen / and pylgryms that wente in the seruyse of our lord / that they myght bye vytaylles of the toun at resonable prys / Thenze the lord sende worde to peter that he wold not suffre / that they shold entre in to 24
 the toun / But, and yf he wold gyue hym good ostages / that his peple shold doo no harme ne oultrage to the peple and marcheantes of the toun that shold come for to selle them vytaylle / he shold sende to them ynough at resonable prys. whan Peter and his peple 28
 herd this they were glad ynough. They delyuered good ostages / and anon they of the toun cam out with grete plente of vytayl and other thynges necessarye in the hoost /

Peter is in turn afraid of the duke, and leaves Hungary.

[1. fr. 24, bk.]

They arrive at the city of Nyze.

Peter asks that provisions be sold to them at a reasonable rate.

They have to give hostages to keep the peace.

How some of the oost of peter thermyte vnwetyng 32
 hym sette fyre in the subarbes of Nyz at theyr
 departyng / cap^o. xx^o

m oche was this nyght, the hoost of the pylgryms, refresshyd of alle thynges that they had nede / ffor they had ben long fro 36
 ony good toun. And they of the cyte were to them moche debonair

² *Orig.* rennyug.

³ *Fr.* viandes, food, victuals.

and resonable. On the morne they demanded theyr ostages / And they were delyuerd gladly / And forth they wente in peas. But now ye shal here how the deuyl doth grete payne for to empreshe
 4 and lette good werkes / In this companye had ben the euen a fore a stryf to one of the marchauntes of the town / and som of the oost / whan the hoost was departed, the duchemen assembled to the nombre of an hunderd,¹ and for vengeance of the stryf / they
 8 sawe vij myllenes, whiche stode at brygge nyghe the town / and² sette them a fyre, and brente them anone / this was not ynough, but there was a litil borough without the cyte / and they sette that a fyre also, and brende hit to ashes / and syth wente theyr way
 12 aftir they³ felawship, whiche knewe nothyng herof / Of this thyng the lord of the town, whiche had the euen to fore shewde to them grete debonaynte was gretely meuyd, for he sawe that they rendrid euyl for god / and was half out of his wytte for angre /
 16 ⁴This felonnye that this fewe dyde was *acyted* alle the hoost,⁴ whiche was euyl and pyte. he made anon arme alle the town, and yssued on horsbak and on fote / hym self cam to fore / and prayde, and moche desyred his peple for to venge vpon thyse false rowters,
 20 and theuys the oultrage that they had don. whan they approched the hoost / they fonde fyrst thise⁵ thre malefactours whiche had not yet ouertaken theyr felaws / And ronne on them, and smote of their heeles / it had thezne be ynough, but⁶ they were not con-
 24 tent,⁷ but smote in the aftirst parte of thoost whiche doubted nothyng / they fonde charyottes / sommyers / males, seruauntes, wymmen, and² children / whiche myght not goo so faste as the other / They slewe many, and somme they ouerthrewe, and ladde
 28 away the cariage. And thus returned in to theyr cyte without hurte, and alle bloody of the bloode of the pylgrims.

In the morning they go their way quietly,

except a hundred Dutchmen, who set fire to a little town near by.

[³ leaf 25]

The duke punishes the pilgrims.

He overtakes the Dutchmen, and smites off their heads.

He also attacks the rear of the main body of pilgrims.

How Peter theremyte was aduertysed of alle this.

And of the harme that ensiewed. capitulo xxj^o

32 p Eter was goyng with the grete companye⁸ whan a messenger cam to hym rydyng, & told to hym of this aduerture that was

Peter is informed of this.

¹ Orig. huuerd.

² Orig. aud.

¹⁻⁴ Fr. "*et la felonie que peu des gens lui avoient faicte, mist sus à tout l'ost.*"

⁵ Fr. *Tiois*: these Dutchmen; Caxton probably mistook *Tiois* for *trois*, and translated accordingly.

⁶ Orig. but.

⁷ Orig. coutent.

⁸ Fr. *companye de l'ost*, with the main body of the army. After "*l'ost*" is omitted "*qui mot ne scaroit de cecy.*"

fallen in the taylle of thoost. Peter sente anon to them that were to fore, that they shold retourne agayn the way that they were comyn vnto the cyte of nyz / In this retourne they fonde thynges ynowgh that displeyd them, ffor they fonde their felawes byheded, 4
 lyeng by the waye / they had grete sorowe herof / One fonde his fader deed / Another his brother or his sone, and another his wyf or his doughter / there were many disconuenyentes.¹ Peter, whiche had his entencion pure vnto oure² lord / entented not, but tappese 8
 the malyce, and leye doun the discorde whiche was sourded emong the peple / he sente som wyse and prudent men to the lord and to the moost hye men of the cyte, for to demaunde by what occasion they had don this euil and crueltees ayenst the peple of our lord / 12
 They answerd that this was by the defaulte of the pylgryms / and that they had fyrst doon grete outrage to brenne theyr mylnes and³
 burghe. whan Peter and the wyse men that were with hym herd this / They thought wel that it was no place ne tyme to venge 16
⁴theyr shames, And therfor tornd the mater vnto peas and acorde / for to recouvre the praye, the prysonners and caryage whiche they had ledde away fro thoost / ffor there were of the mene peple whiche wold not be ruled, and wold not suffre them of the towne to 20
 haue pees with vs / but wolde auenge⁵ by force the outrage that they had doon / Peter felte this thyng, And apperceyued anone the euylle that sourded / And sente of the wysest and grettest of his companye⁶ to make the pees / his peple wold not haue pees. 24
 He made a crye on payne of deth, in his name and the name of the barons / that noman be so hardy to breke the pees that was made. And this he charged vpon their pylgremages, theyr feaulte, and on thobedyence that they had promysed hym / And whan they of the 28
 hoost herd this / they⁷ remeuyd not / But folyssh peple wente forth and made grete noyse, and wold not obeye. The messagers that were in the toun for taccorde this that was don, sawe that the noyse grewe more and more, and returned to theyr felawshipp 32
 withoute any conclusion or doying that they had enterprised / and dyde theyr best to seece the debate / but⁸ they had no power, ffor there were moo than a thousand pylgryms, whiche noman myght

He sends to the Duke for an explanation.

When Peter hears the reason, he sees that his own men were to blame.

His followers will not go on without revenge.

They break off the negotiations.

¹ Fr. *disconuenues*.

² *Orig.* onre.

³ *Orig.* aud.

⁵ *Orig.* aneuage.

⁶ *Orig.* compauee.

⁷ Caxton's original is here corrupt. A. gives the correct reading, "*si ne le crurent pas*," they did not believe it, instead of "*they remeuyd not*," which is in direct contradiction with the next sentence.

⁸ *Orig.* bnt.

holde ne reteyne / But that they wold goo armed to the toun. Out
of the toun yssued as many or moo ayenst them, ther began the
bataylle and the medle grete and thyk, and began to slee eche other
4 largely / Peter ne his route meuyd not / but¹ byhelde the bataylle.
They of the toun that were on the walles and at wyndowes sawe
that theyr peple had the werse, and apperceyued that the grete
power of thoost² entermeted not of this warre, and² thought that
8 they wold not helpe them / And³ opened theyr yates and yssued
oute by grete rowtes alle armed, and smote in the bataylle / And
founde of our peple aboute a / V / C. vpon the brygge / ⁴And
addressyd to them and slewe them alle, sauf somme that were caste
12 in the water / And alle were perysshed. whan the grete hoost
aperceyued theyr peple thus euyl demened, they myght suffre it
no lenger, but wente to Armes / and smote in to the bataylle / one
aftir another, lyke as they myght be armed. the peple that had
16 bygonne this debate were discomfyted fyrst / And began to flee so
fast that nothyng myght tarye them / They began to bete them on
horsbak, that cam for to helpe them / by whiche the good men were
discomfyted / And they of the Cyte that were nygh to theyr
20 retrayt, began to chase them moche straytly, and to slee them / At
last, whan oure peple were withdrawen / they returned⁵ by the
⁶caryage and harnoys / And caryed alle, and ledde it with them. [6 leaf 26]
And toke wymmen and childeren that myght not flee, and putte
24 them in prison. There were wel slayn and lost of the peple of the
hoost / X / M / and the bongres⁷ wan alle the harnoys of thoost /
There was a cart loste that longed to peter theremyte, alle ful of
Rychesse, whiche had ben youen to hym in ffrance to socoure⁸ 10,000 pil-
grims are
slain, and
many women
and children
taken
prisoners.

28 and sustene the necessarytees of the hoost / they that myght escape
fro this discomfiture, drewe them in to the forestes / and hydde them
in the depe valeyes in the nyght / And on the morn they began to
calle eche other / and to whystle,⁹ and sowne trumpes and busynes
32 in the woodes. And thus began to reassemble, and gadred them
to gydre on a territorie.¹⁰ Those who
are left begin
to assemble.

¹ *Orig. bnt.*²⁻² *Fr. "ne s'entremetoit de cele guerre."*³ *Orig. Aud.*⁴ *Fr. "et s'adrecierent à eulx."*⁵ *Orig. retorued.* ⁷ Bougres, Bulgarians. ⁸ *Orig. soconre.*⁹ *Fr. huchier*, to call in a loud voice, not "to whistle."¹⁰ *Fr. tertre*, a small hill. The word *territoire*, with which Caxton translates *tertre*, seems to be peculiar to him.

How Themperour of Constantynoble, beyng aduertised of these outrages, sente his messagers to peter theremyte¹ / ca° xxiij°

After four days 4000 are collected, who continue their way.

a T The fourth daye were nyghe alle assembled aboute peter, 4
And they were about a four thousand. they were in moche grete meschyef, as they that had lost theyr frendes and theyr peple, and almost alle theyr harnoyes / not withstondyng² they lefte not, but wente forth on the waye² that they had enterprised, with grete 8
mesease and payne for lak of vytaylle. And as they were in this

They meet the messengers of the Greek Emperor;

poynnt, They sawe come ayenst them the messagers of themperour of constantynoble,³ whiche spak to peter / And anon he dyde assemble the heye men and Capytaynes of the hoost for to here the message 12
that they brought. And aftir they sayd in this manere / "ffayr

who inform them of the evil reports that they hear of their conduct.

syrs, moche euyl tydynges and renomme is comen of you to our lord themperour / ffor it is tolde to hym that ye goo by the countree of his empyre with force, and robbe the peple of suche as they 16
haue, breke his townes, and slee his peple / and doo alle the outrages and wronges that ye may / the good chere / bounte, and alle the seruyse that is doon to you auaylleth nothyng, ne may adoulce ne aswage your hertes / Therefore he commandeth you that 20

The Emperor orders them to march straight to Constantinople.

ye abyde in none of his cytees more than thre dayes / But goo your waye strayt forth to constantynoble / ffor he hath commanded vs to goo with you / and that we do bryng to you on the waye vytayll good cheep ynowe." (13) whan these good men herd this, 24
that themperour had don to them this bounte / they had grete ioye / and excused them of these bataylles and fyghtyng, and shewd openly what the bongres had doon withoute theyr offence or culpe

[4 lf. 26, bk.]

by force and grete outrage. ⁴The messagers dyrected them on the 28

There they join Walter and his men.

way tyl they cam to constantynoble / They fonde there gaultyer sans sauoyr / and his peple, that taryed for them / And thenne they wente alle to gydre⁵ / And lodged them in the place that was assygned to them / And there eche tolde to other of theyr mys- 32
aurentures :⁶ Themperour sente for peter. And he wente to hym / He sawe in the towne many thynges / ⁷palaysses, many rychesses /

¹ *Orig.* therempte.

²⁻² *Fr. mais ne laisserent mie pour ce quilz ne se meissent en la roye,* but this did not hinder them from starting on the journey, etc.

³ *Orig.* constantynuoble.

⁶ *Orig.* ggdre.

⁶ *Fr. mesauentures,* misfortunes.

⁷⁻⁷ (next p.) *Fr. et en ce palais maintes richesses et maintes merveilles.*

and marueylles⁷ / But he was a man of grete herte and courage, and
 abasshyd of nothyng / Themperour demanded of hym of thestate
 of his peple, and of other barons of thoccyent / that were thus
 4 meuyd to this pylgremage. Peter answerd hym moche wel of alle
 thynges / And said that they were pour peple, and were come to
 fore / But the prynces and hye men cam aftir with moch grete
 peple / which wold not long tarye / themperour and his barons of
 8 the palays sawe alle that peter was so lytil. And so wel / so wysely /
 so fayr and so wel appoynt of alle thynges, answerd that they
 merueyllled ouer¹ moche / and alowed and preysed hym moche.
 Themperour gaf to hym grete yeftes / And receyued hym in his
 12 grace / And syth he lete hym retorne to his peple. There rested
 the oost of the pylgryms wel at ease and in peas / And a whyle
 aftir shippes were made redy by the commaundement of themperour,
 And they passed the see named the braas of seynt george, And
 16 cam in to the lond named bythyne / This is the fyrst partye of
 Asye / vpon the see / And they lodged them in a place called
 Cinintot.²

The Emperour
 asks many
 questions of
 Peter.

He gives
 great gifts to
 Peter.

The Crusad-
 ers pass the
 Bras of St.
 George.

Of the mayntenynge of the hoost of peter theremyte /
 20 And how thre thousand duchemen toke a castel
 by assault / and slewe alle that were therin with
 the swerde / capitulo xxiiij^o

t His was in the marches of theyr enemyes / there was the
 24 hoost about two monethes, And euery day they fonde fresshe
 vytaylles to selle good cheep, wherof they were wel at ease, ³so
 moch that it coude not wel be suffred longe / They began to meue,³
 and made routes for to goo en fourage in the contrey / Ther wente
 28 wel somtyme .X. M / or more, maulgre the barons, that were
 capytayns in the hoost. Neuerthelesse⁴ Peter commanded and
 sente lettres to them, that they shold abyde, and not remeue fro the
 oost / to pylle tyl the grete Prynces were comen. On a daye it
 32 happed that Pieter passed the braas / And cam in to Constanty-
 noble⁵ for to speke for vytaylles / that began to waxe dere / ⁶The
 mene peple sawe that Peter was not there, And were the more
 hardy. they assembled, and were of a companye wel eght thousand

They are well
 supplied with
 provisions.

Peter forbids
 them to
 forage and
 pillage.

[^o leaf 27]

¹ *Orig. oner.*

² *Fr. Civitot.*

³⁻³ "*Tant que li peuple qui à peine peut souffrir grant aise longuement
 se commença à es mouvoir,*" etc.

⁴ *Orig. neuethelesse.*

⁵ *Orig. Coustantyuoble.*

Notwith-
standing,
they go on a
foraging ex-
pedition near
Nycene.

a fote, and thre honderd a horsback. they made theyr bataylles,
and wente alle in ordenaunce toward the cyte of nycene, ayenst the
wille and deffence of alle the grete men of thoost / when they cam
nyghe to this grete cyte, They smote in to the townes about it, and 4
toke merueyllous many beestes, grete and smale, And brought
moche grete gayne / And returned sauflly withoute hurte home agayn
in to the oost with grete ioye and feste. The duchemen, whiche 8
ben a peple rude and hardy, sawe this glorye and this gayne that
they had wonne / and had grete enuye therat / and were meuid
with couetyse of good, and to haue worship / relyed them to gydre
alle of that tongue vnto the nombre of thre thousand a foote / and
wente strayte toward Nycene / There was a / Castel at foote of an 12
hulle, nygh vnto Nycene, at leste Foure myle of. These Duchemen
cam theder and began tassaylle the castel moche strongly / they
within defended them to theyr power as long as they myght, but it
auaylled not / ffor the castel was taken by force / And the duchemen 16
entred therin / And alle them that they fonde within, men, wymmen,
and chylderen, they slewe without mercy / They fonde ther in
vytaylor ynowgh, and other thynges / and sawe that the place was
moche fayr and delectable / and garnysshed it, and sayde that they 20
wolde it holde tyl the grete prynces, whome they abode and taryed
for, were comen /

3000 Dutch-
men take a
castle.

How Solyman, lord of that contre, reprysed and toke
agayn the castel, and slewe alle the duchemen 24
that where therin. ca.° xxiiij.°

s Olyman, (14) whiche was lord of this contre and gouernoure,¹
had herd longe to fore / that the cristen peple were meuyd of
the Royamme of ffrance for to goo in to the londe of surye / And 28
that they addressed them for to passe by his londe / Therefore he had
ben in thoryent, fro whens he was come / and had brought grete
plente of knyghtes and other peple / by whom he entended to kepe
his londe / And greue his enemyes / that shold passe there by / he 32
was thenne drawn toward our peple, and with his folkes was in
the montaynes and woodes / He herde how thys duchemen had
taken his castel and slayn his men / and cam the moost hasty wyse
he myghte and assyged the castel / and toke it without taryeng² / 36
and he smote of the ³heedes of alle them that he fonde / The

Solyman pre-
pares to de-
fend his land.

He retakes
his castle,
and beheads
all the Dutch-
men.
[³ ff. 27, bk.]

¹ *Orig.* goneruoure.

² *Orig.* taryeug.

tydynges cam in to the hoost that Solyman had slayn alle the
 duchemen and theyr felaws / They had moche sorow / and ther
 arros a grete crye and grete wepyng in the lodgys / The peple
 4 afote toke herof grete despite emonge them / And began to speke
 hrewdly / And said that the barons of the oost ought not to suffre
 his. But that they shold renne a horsbak and auenge blood of
 theyr bretheren,¹ that so nygh was shed¹ / The grete men of thoost,
 8 that knewe more of warre and of other thynges / than the mene
 peple, wold haue holden them in peas / And sayde this may wel be
 yet amended / And also themperour counceyllid / And it was
 trouthe / that they shold abyde the comyng of the grete barons,
 12 whiche shold not longe tarye / The peple and the folyssh folke were
 not content with thyse wordes / But they had a Capytayne named
 godefrey bureau, whiche brought them in suche reuerye² and
 murmur that they spake largely and rudely ayenst the knyghtes /
 16 And sayde alle clerly that they were vntrewe and euyl, and that
 they lete not to auenge this by wysedom / but for grete cowardyse /

The pilgrims
lament their
loss, and are
bent on
revenge.

The wisser
ones wish to
await the
comyng of the
great barons.

But the
people are
obstinate.

How oure men armed them for tauenge the duche-
 men, and of a recountour that they had ayenst
 20 Solyman / ca^o. xxv^o.

i T happeth oftyme that the werse counseyl ouercometh the
 better / And it is no meruaylle, ffor there ben more foolles than
 wysemen. Thyse mene peple, and without reson, meuyd them so
 24 moche and cryed that the barons and other men that were with
 hem ran to armes, an horsbak³ and on foote. There were wel /
 XXV / M. on foote / and / V / C / a horsbak, alle wel arrayed /
 They made theyr bataylles / and wente forth in ordenaunce toward
 28 the montaynes by the woodes strait toward Nycene / They were
 not departed thre myle whan Solyman, whiche had moche peple
 with hym, apperceyued⁴ them : ffor he cam alle couerd and secretlye
 in the wode / ffor to make an assaylle / in the oost of the pylgryms /
 32 But whan he herd the noyse and thaffraye in the foreste, he wyst
 wel that thei were the cristen men that cam ayenst hym, and
 suffred them to passe. he hym self with alle his peple drewe hym
 incontinent oute of the wode in to the playn where as they shold

Often bad
counsel pre-
vails over
good.

25,000 foot-
men and 500
horse start
for Nycene.

¹⁻¹ Fr. "*qui ainsi pres d'eulx estoit espandu,*" viz. "*which was thus shed so near them.*"

² Fr. *enrederie*, rage, fury, obstinacy.

³ Orig. borsbak.

⁴ Orig. apperceyned.

passe / whan oure peple were yssued, they sewed them sodenly /
 they toke none hede of hym, and anon with their felowship ran
 vpon our men with their speres ¹and swerdes for tauenge theyr
 bretheren. The hethen men sawe on that other syde that certaynly 4
 they wold fyghte / and that euery man dyd his beste / receyued
 them moch fiersly / the bataylle began moche cruelle / and many
 were dede on bothe sydes: and the bataylle dured longe / But
 solyman had moche more peple on horsbacke, whom the pylgryms 8
 a fote myght not lenger suffre / But began to flee without
 ordenaunce / and were discomfytet / The turkes folowed them
 aftir, sleeing alle them that they myght atteyne, tyl they cam to
 theyr lodgyng / There were slayn Gaultier sans sauoyr / Reynald 12
 de broyes and ffoucher dorleans, whiche were good and valyaunt
 knyghtes / and almost alle were slayn and brought in to prison /
 ffor of / XXV / M men / and fyue honderd men on horsbak, coude
 not be founden thre to gydre / But that they were taken or slayn / 16

[1 leaf 28]

A fierce con-
test ensues.The Turks
are victori-
ous.

How peter theremyte beyng in constantynoble was
 aduertysed of this discomfyture / and saued thre
 thousand cristen men, beyng in grete daunger.

capitulo xxvj^o 20Solyman
attacks the
Christian
camp.

t His vycторыe brought Solyman in in grete pryde, and in grete
 sewrte he smote in to the lodgis of the Cristen men / where as
 wer lefte thauncyent peple, men, wymmen, clerkes, and monkes,
 whom he put alle to deth / he fonde maydens and smale childeren, 24
 whiche he ledde with hym, for to be euer aftir in seruage. On that
 one side of the tentes nyghe vnto the see / was an old fortresse for-
 leten and beten down, in whiche no man dwelled, nether was fonde
 therin dore ne wyndowe / Theder fledde of the pylgryms aboute a 28
 thre thousand, one aftir another for to kepe theyr lyuess / They
 stopped thentrees the best wyse they myght with grete tymbre and
 trees, and with grete stones / The turkes knewe therof / and cam
 and began tassaylle it on alle sides moche anguysshously / They 32
 defended them the best wey they myghte, ffor they had grete nede.
 whyles they were thus assaylled / a messenger wente hastely to peter
 theremyte, which was in constantynoble, as is said to you to fore.
 This message said to hym that alle his men were perysshid / sauf 36
 a lytil remenaunt, whiche were at grete meschief in an old hows
 asyged, whiche were in moche grete daunger / yf they had not

3000 of the
Crusaders
flee to an old
fortress.The Turks
assail them.Word is sent
to Peter in
Constantin-
ople of these
reverses.

hasty socoure. Peter was moche abasshed / And had meruayl-
 lously grete sorowe / Neuerthelesse, anon he ranne to themperour,
 and fyld down at his feet, and prayd hym for goddes sake and ¹for
 4 the sauacion of his sowle, that he wold sende socoure to this poure
 people that were in so grete peryll / that yf he hasted not / they
 shold be alle deed / Themperour that moche louyd peter sente anon
 his messagers theder / and commaunded the turkes that essaylled
 8 them / shold leue thassault / and departe thens / They wente aweye
 anon whan they had herde the commandement of themperour, But²
 they ledde with them prisonners ynowe / horses, mules / and other
 beestes / tentes / pauyllons, and gounes. and wyth alle they
 12 retourned in to nycene / here ye maye here how so moche peple
 was loste / by the folye of the moyen peple / whiche wold not
 haue ne endure the gouernaunce of the wyse men aboute them.
 Here may men wel see that it is grete peryl to truste to the bataylle
 16 or warre of them / that knowe not of it /

[1 f. 28, bk.]

Peter begs
the Emperour
for help.The Emperour
orders the
Turks to
withdraw.All these dis-
asters were
caused by the
folly of the
common
people.

How a preest named godechan made hym self cap-
 tain of / xl / M / duchemen in this viage, and
 of theyr oultrages / ca^o xxvij^o.

20 s Yth that Pieter was passed in to bythme as I haue said / it
 was not longe aftir that a priest named Godechan³ had prechyd
 in duchelonde / lyke as peter theremyte had doon in ffrance. And
 cam with his peple for to goo in this pylgremage, ffor he had wel
 24 assembled⁴ / xl / M / of duchemen. They entred alle in to the
 londe of hongrye / ffor the kyng had comaunded that they shold be
 receyued debonayrly, by cause it were his neyghbours, and that⁵
 they shold vytaylle and other necessarytes⁶ at prys resonable. ⁷They
 28 that fonde the londe right good began to abyde there alle the
 wynter⁷ / and for the ease that they had they began to wexe prowd
 In suche wyse that they toke away the vytaylles and other thynges,
 and ledde away the beestes oute of the feeldes / they toke wyues /
 32 bete theyr husbondes and slewe them / and for noman wold they

Godechan,
with 40,000
Dutchmen,
starts for the
Holy Land.They remain
in Hungary
all winter.They rob and
kill and
insult the
Hungarians.² Orig. Bnt.³ Lat. *Godescalcus*.⁴ Fr. *et* Lat. XV m, instead of XL M.⁵ Caxton has omitted the verb in this clause. Fr. "*l'en leur rendoit viandes*," etc.⁶ Orig. *uecessytus*.⁷⁻⁷ Caxton here translates *s'enyrcer*, i. e. *to become intoxicated*, by "*to pass the winter*," evidently mistaking it for a derivation of *yrer*, winter. Fr. "*ceuz que trouvoient la terre moult bonne, se commencerent à enyrcer*," etc.

The King of Hungary loses his patience,

and proceeds against the Dutchmen.

[leaf 29]

They are determined to defend themselves unto death.

The king has recourse to stratagem.

He sends false messengers to Godcchan,

who tell him that the king does not think them all guilty,

leue this oultrages / The kyng of the londe herde the tydynges of
 this peple, and was moche displaysyd, and was moche sory there-
 fore / And myght not wyth his honour no lenger suffre it, lest it
 shold torne to ouermoche hurte of his londe and of his subgettes. 4
 And dyde do assemble moche peple on horsbak, and on fote for
 tauenge on thise duchemen. he began to poursyewe them so ferre,
 that he fonde them right in the mydle of his royame by a castel
 named bellgraue / the kyng had seen and also herd of thoultrages 8
 that they had doon in his londe whyles he siewed aftir them / The
 duchmen knewe that the kyng cam vpon them and was nyghe.
 1^{and} they knewe wel that they had not ben wel gouerned toward
 hym / But had doon many ylle tornes and wronges in his londe, 12
 wherfor they had not deseruyd his grace and his loue²: Neuirtheles
 they ran to armes, and sayde that they wolde defende them fro the
 hongers / and wold neuer deye for nought / but erst wold they selle
 theyr lyf moche dere / whan the kyng and the hongers sawe this, 16
 they thought that this peple were moche stronge and³ hardy / and
 there as alle dispayred / And sawe that he myght not ouercome
 them without grete losse of his peple in that maner / and lefte the
 force of bataylle / and toke hym to subtilite and falshed / as peple 20
 that is ful of barate deceyte and trycherye. The kyng and the
 hongers⁴ sente message to godechan and to the grete men of the
 companye for to deceyue them by fayre wordes of peas / and sayd
 to them in this manere : 24

“ Ouer grete complaynte and moche fowle renomme is comen to
 the kyng of you, fayr syres / whiche hath sente vs hether / ffor as
 he hath herd saye / ye haue not had to none of youre hoostes no
 fayth ne trouthe, But haue taken fro them that they hadde, and 28
 haue beten And slayn them / ye haue taken their daughters and
 wyues, and doo suche oultrages to them as it ought not to be sayd.
 The marcheantes and other peple that ye fynde by the wayes, be
 not sure, and goo not quyt fro you, but be robbed and pyled / Of 32
 whiche thynges the kyng hath grete clamours aftir him / Neuir-
 theles the kyng knoweth wel / that ye be not alle in this defaulte.
 but ther ben emong you many⁵ good men and wyse to whom this
 folye moche displaysyth / And the oultrage of the malefactours 36
 whiche haue so angred the kyng and his peple / Therfor the kyng
 wil not put the defaulte of one partye vpon alle / ne it is not right

² *Orig.* lone.

³ *Orig.* aud.

⁴ *Orig.* hougers.

⁵ *Orig.* maury.

that the trewe pylgryms shold bye¹ the trespas of the bad / and
 he doubteth to take vengeance on you alle / wherfore we counseyle
 you that ye appese the kynge in this maner / And we promyse
 4 you in good fayth that ye shal neuer haue damage / Offre, and
 putte² your bodyes / your armes, and alle your thynges in his
 wylle and in his mercy, without makyng of ony appoyntement
 with hym / for yf ye wil not so doo ye see wel, ye haue not the
 8 pusaunce ayenst hym / for ye be in the myddle of his royaume,
 Aud may not escape hym." Godechan and the grete men of his
 hoost to whom this oultrages moche displeysd. and the folyes of
 the mene peple trusted wel in the wordes that they had brought to
 12 them, And had grete hope in the hyenes and mercy of the kyng.
 They called the peple / counseyled³ and prayde them that they
 wolde rendre theyr harnoys / and put them in the mercy of the
 kyng / they wold not doo it, and sayde ther shold neuer come good
 16 to them to put them under so vntrew peple. Neuertheles, atte
 laste they dyde by the counseyl and wylle of the wyse men. Their
 harnoys, and alle that they hadde they delyuerd atte commande-
 ment of the kynge, whan they supposed thereby to haue goten
 20 theyr lyf / They ran to the deth / ⁴ffor the hongers assaylled them
 anon in the mydle of them alle armed / And of this poynt toke
 none hede / they began to slee⁴ and smyte of heedes without de-
 mandyng who was good ne who was euyl. They slewe so many
 24 that they waded in the blood vnto the half legge / it was sorowe
 and pyte to see theyr bodyes of so fayr peple slayne in the stretes,
 wayes and feeldes / som happed tescape that wente emong the
 other, and returned in to theyr contre, and tolde this mescheyf and
 28 trayson / by whiche they taught alle the pylgryms that they fonde
 that they shold not truste to the peple of hongrye /

and that the
 good ought
 not to suffer
 with the bad;

that they
 would better
 throw them-
 selves on the
 mercy of the
 king.

If not, they
 will all be
 destroyed.

[³ If. 29, bk.]

The pilgrims
 agree to give
 themselves
 up to the
 king, expect-
 ing mercy;

but the
 Hungarians
 slaughter
 them all, un-
 armed, with-
 out pity.

How / C.C / M. cristen men a foote and thre. M. a
 horsbak withoute⁵ captayn assembled in this
 32 pylgremage / and of theyr mayntene /

capitulo xxviiij^o

¹ Fr. *comparent*, pay for, *i. e.* to be punished for. ² *Orig.* *pnnte*.

⁴⁻⁴ Fr. "*quar li Hongre saillirent el milieu de cels qui de ce ne se gardoient et les commencierent à ocir.*" Caxton's translation is very obscure here: as can be seen from the Freuch, it was the Crusaders who were off their guard.

⁵ *Orig.* *withonte*.

Another
company of
pilgrims
starts with-
out a captain,

who slay all
the Jews that
they meet,

especially in
Cologne and
Mayence.

[² leaf 30]

They were
not allowed
to enter
Hungary,
which was
defended by
a strong
fortress on
the Danube.

There were
200,000 foot-
men and 3000
horsemen in
this com-
pany.

They begged
to be allowed
to send mes-
sengers to
the King of
Hungary.

i N a litil tyme aftir this grete occisyon that I haue said to fore
assembled moche grete peple a foote without capytayne. Neuc-
theles ther were among them hie men and good knyghtes, But¹ the
comune peple obeyed them not / ne byleuyd them of nothyng / 4
There was emonge them Thomas de fere, clerembault of vendueyl /
Guillem Carpenter. And the counte herman / These peple that
were a foote dyde many ylles and oultrages by the waye / And ther
arrose emong them a madnesse and a rage of whiche they coude not 8
kepe them fro sleying of alle the Iewes in alle the wayes and townes
by whiche they passed / They slewe merucyllous grete nombre at
Coleyne, at Magonce / and in other places(15) / In these partyes as
they wente was an erle, a right noble lord named Emycon / whan 12
he sawe this peple / he put hym self in theyr companye for to goo
with them in this pylgremage / he chastysed not ne blamed the
mysruled peple / but entysed them to doo euyl tornes / They passed
by francone and by baupere so ferre that they drewe in te hongrye, 16
and cam in to a toun named meeszebors. wel supposed they to
haue passed in to hongrye withoute ony gaynsayeng / but whan
they cam to the brygge / it was deffended them and ²closed. There
was a fortresse whiche was closed on that one syde with the ryuer 20
of the dunoe / and on that other syde with the ryuer named lintans /
The remenaunt was enuyronned with a depe mareys / within the
fortresse was grete plente of peple wel armed, wherfore it was not
lyght for to passe that toun by force / ffor the kyng of hongrye 24
had wel vnderstande of the comyng of this peple / whiche were
withoute faylle wel / CC / M / on fote. And on horsbak were
nomoo but thre thousand / And doubted moche that they whan
they were entred in to his londe, wolde auenge thoccision³ that was 28
doon by falsehed and trayson vpon the peple of godechan, ffor the
rumoure and speche was moche yet of that fowle and vylanous
fayte thurgh out al the londe / They that sawe that they myght not
passe in to the londe, prayd them of the fortresse that they wold 32
suffre them to sende messagers to the kyng of hongrye, for to requyre
his grace that they myght passe in good peas / and they wold lodge
them ther whylest in tho places that were ful of pastures to fore the
paas.

¹ *Orig.* Bnt.

³ *Fr.* *occision*, slaughter.

How this peple began to destroye the londe of the
kyng, by cause he wold not graunte to them leue
for to passe / ca^o. xxix^o.

- 4 a Lytil whyle taryed they that wente to the kyng / but returned
anon / ffor they myght not spede of such thynges as they
demanded. The kyng answerd that for yeste ne for prayer shold
they entre in to his londe / whan they of the oost, grete and smale,
8 herd this / they were moche angry / ffor they had traunaylled and
despended moche good to come thedyr / ¹And now they had loost
their waye¹ / They concluded emong them that they shold brenne
and destroye the contreye of the kyng / as moche as was on this
12 syde the mareys / They sette fyer on townes, and toke the men,
and destroyed alle the contrey whyles they dyde thus / the peple of
the fortresse cam out,² and with other peple of the kynges to the
nombre of / vii / C / what³ of knyghtes and other peple wel
16 armed, and passed by shippis er euer the pilgrims⁴ knewe of it ony
word, and they sette them for to deffende the pylgryms at a paas
that they shold not entre. whan the pylgryms sawe this / they ran
vygorously vpon them in suche wyse, that er they myght saue them
20 self they were slayn alle / sauf a fewe of them that withdrewen them
in to the mareys / and hydde them in the reed / whan thyse pyl-
gryms thus had the victorye / they mounted in moche grete
hardynes / and said that by force they wold ⁵take the fortresse of
24 hongrye / and withoute leue they wold passe thurgh the londe.
Thenne they began to somonne and recomforte⁶ every man to doo
wel / ⁷They toke poles and made scaffholdes moche grete plente⁷ /
whiche they sette to the walles / And monnted vp couerl with
28 theyr sheldes and targes, and assaylled it moche hardely many
pyked with pykoys, and myned the walles with grete force that
⁸thentre semed al redy for to entree,⁸ they that were within were
nyghe deed for despayer, ffor they defended slowly as men affrayed
32 in their hertes, ffor they supposed anon to be slayn / and sodenly
cam a fere and a drede vpon the hertes of the pylgryms that wened

The king
would not
allow them to
pass.

The Crusad-
ers desolated
the whole
country in
revenge.

They conquer
the Hunga-
rians.

[⁵ If. 30, bk.]

The Crusad-
ers then
assail the
fortress,

but are not
successful.

1-1 Fr. *or avoient leur voye perdu*. A good example of Caxton's literal translations, the meaning being, "now they had had their journey for nothing." ² *Orig. ont.* ³ Fr. "*tant chevalier que sergenz.*"

⁴ *Orig. pligrims.*

⁶ Fr. *entreenferter.*

⁷⁻⁷ Fr. *Ponz et eschieles firent à moult grant plenté*. They made a great number of scaffolds and ladders. Lat. *pontibus fabricatis.*

⁸⁻⁸ *entre* should read *entrée* and vice versa.

The Hungarians are much astonished at the unexpected flight of the Crusaders.

The great sins of the Crusaders make them cowardly.

They were obliged to take a round about way.

This was a lesson to those who came after, to go more peaceably.

anon to be slayn / And neuer was knowen wherfore it was, and anon fyl donn fro the scaffoldes / and taryed not / but fledde sodeynly / and none wyste why they fledde. The hongers whan they sawe this / myght wyth grete peyne hyleue it, that this was 4 trouthe / ffor they sawe no rayson why. Neuertheles, whan they apperceuyd they descended down / and began to folowe the chaas in ¹suche wyse that them next to fore them were almost alle taken and slayn.¹ In this auenture was fonden none other reson / sauf 8 that the peple was so ful of synne / that they had not deseryd the loue of our lord / ne thonoure of the world / And therfor theyre synnes² acowarded them in suche wyse that they myght not doo ne accomplysse this grete werke / whiche they had nyghe ahyeued. 12 The erle Emycon cam agayn in to his contre with grete nombre of peple disconfyted / The other barons of ffrance that I fore haue named wente in to lombardye, and so in to puylle / There had they knowleche that somme of the grete barons were passed in to duras, 16 and fro thens in to grece / They wente aftir and folowyd them. In this manere were the peple of ffrance disperpled and of the contrees ther by / The waye of hongrye was moche more straye and ner yf they myght haue goon it / ³And had not be destrowbled by 20 theyr folye³ / But the other that cam aftir peyned them moche for to goo more wysely and more in peas.

How the duc godefroy of boloyne beyng with a grete hoost cam vnto hongrye, sente his messagers to 24 the kyng for to demande passage /
capitulo xxx°

Godfrey of Boulogne started the 15th of August, 1096.

[* leaf 31]

c Omen was the moneth of anguste, in the yere of thyncarnacion of our lord / M / lxxxxvj / the xv / day of the same moneth, 28 The valyaunt godefroy of buyllon, duc of loraygne, assembled them ⁴that shold be his felawes in this iourneye / And cam fro his contrey with so grete apparayllement as it apperteyned to his estate / with hym Bawldwyn his brother / Bawldwyn, the Erle of 32

¹⁻¹ Fr. "*telement que ceux qui ung pou devant estoient presque mors on prins occioient ores les autres.*" Caxton has not at all understood his French here. He seems to have mistaken *deuant* for a preposition, and to have translated the rest of the sentence accordingly.

² *Orig. synues.*

³⁻³ Fr. "*si ceux qui avant estoient allés ne l'eussent si destourbé par leur folie,*" if those who had gone in advance had not by their folly closed it.

henawde / Hüge, the Erle of seynt pol / Euerard his sone, which
 was a moche valyaunt¹ yonge man. Garnyer the Erle, surnamed of
 grees / Bernard, the Erle of Toul / Pieter his brother / Bauwdwyn
 4 de bors, cosynto the duc / Henry dasque / godefroy his brother,
 And many other good knyghtes with them / These men were so
 good frendes emonge² them, and so wyse men, that in no wyse they
 wold departe that one fro that other / they cam alle hool with their
 8 thynges in to Osteryche the / xx. daye of septembre vnto a town
 which is named tayllenboreh, there renneth a ryuer named lyntans,
 and departed thempyre of allemaygne fro the royamme of hongrye /
 whan they wére comen theder, they had herē by the waye enyl
 12 tydynges of the grete mesauentures, that Godechan and his peple
 had in hongrye / They assembled and toke counseyl emonge them /
 how they myght passe this contre in peas / They alle acorde³ that
 they shold sende messagers & lettres vnto the kyng of hongrye
 16 for to demande first / by what reason theyr felaws, the pylgryms
 whiche were theyr bretheren were thus perysshed in his power and
 his londe / Afir this they encharged the messagers that they shold
 entre with hym in to comunicacion,³ that they myght passe his
 20 Royamme seurlly and in peas / And that herin they put them in
 deuoyr and payne / ffor this waye was for them moche shorte / and
 more couenable yf they myght haue it / than for to passe by see /
 In this message wente godefroy dasque, brother of henry, by cause
 24 he had long to fore ben acueynted with the kyng of hongrye /
 with hym they sente other wyse men / They wente so⁴ fer that
 they fonde the kyng, And saled hym in the name of hem that
 sente them, And delyuerd their lettres of credence / And afir sayd
 28 to hym thus wordes.

They arrived
in Austria
the 20th of
September.

They sent
messengers
to the King
of Hungary.

Godfrey had
charge of the
embassy.

They saluted
the king and
delivered
their mes-
sage.

How the messagers of the duc godefroy declared their
 message vnto the kyng of hongrye / And ther
 vpon his answeere / ca^o xxxj^o:

32 "t He wyse man & noble Godefroy, Due of loraïne, And the
 other prynces that with hym come in pylgremage / haue sente
 vs now vnto you, And by you wolde knowe by what occasion the
 other pylgryms, whom they helde for felaws and bretheren / haue
 36 so cruelly be slayn and smeton in peeces in your power / Wel they

They asked
the king why
he had slain
their fellow-
pilgrims.

¹ Orig. valyaunt.

² Orig. emouge.

³ Orig. coñecacion.

⁴ Orig. fo.

knowe and sende you¹ worde that they haue ben so slayn, ffor
 [2 It. 31, bk.]² they haue fonden many of them that ben escaped / Moche they
 They marvel that good Christianse could so destroy those who had left their homes to enhance the faith of Christ. They wish to know if it were the fault of the pilgrims.
 meruaylle how ye and your peple, which ben cristen as ye saye /
 haue thus destroyed the good companye, whiche for to enhaunse the 4
 fayth of Ihesu Crist ben departed out of theyr contre / in suche
 wyse that the most mortal enemyes that they haue, had not don
 verse / They desire moche to knowe yf it were by the defaulte of
 the pylgryms ; ffor yf ye haue doon it by Iustyce, or in deffendyng 8
 you and your londes / or other wyse that they wold enforce and
 take ony thyng away yf it were so / The duc and his felaws wold
 take it more lightly / But yf it be doo without their trespaas, or for
 hate that ye had to them / and thus murdred them, they that sente 12
 vs hether, lete you wete by vs that they haue lefte theyr owne
 countreyes for tauenge the wronges and the outrages that haue ben
 don to the peple of oure lord / And yf they finde that ye haue so
 doo / they be not in wylle to passe ferther, tyl they haue to theyr 16
 power auenged the deth of the pylgryms of our lord." And herwith
 godefroy, that accounted to the kyng, made an ende of his wordes.

The king, surrounded by his barons, answers:
 "It pleaseth me, Godfrey, that thou art come, and I am glad to have you hear my excuse."

We received Peter and his men kindly.

They repaid us with ingratitude.

The kyng was in his palays, where he had grete plente of
 barons of his Royamme and of other peple, thenne answerd and 20
 sayde : "Godefroy, it plesyth me moche that ye be come in to this
 contrey for to speke to me / It is a moche good thyng for me for
 two causes / that one is that ye be of myn acqueyntaunce and my
 frende longe syth / And we shal afferme and renewe our loues and 24
 our acqueyntaunces in this youre comyng. That other cause is that
 I knowe you to be a man wyse, resonable, & of good wille / and
 am moche ioyous of this that ye shal here my excusacion / trouthe
 it is that we haue the name of the cristiente / it were & shold be 28
 moche fayr to vs yf we had the werkes / But³ they that ben passed
 tofore with peter theremyte and with godechan, haue not the
 werkes of pylgryms ne of cristen men / ffor we receyuyd peter
 theremyte & his peple in oure londes and in our⁴ towynes with 32
 grete debonayrte, And departed with them oure vytaylles : and
 other thynges we gaf to them / But they, lyke as the serpent that
 prycketh or styngeth hym that kepeth hym warme in his bosomme /
 hath guerdonned & rewarded vs for our good dedes / for in 36
 thende of the royaume of hongrye / whan they ought to thanke vs
 and rendre graces to god & to theyr frendes / They toke by force
 one of oure best castellis / And put to deth alle that were therin,

¹ Orig. you.

³ Orig. But.

⁴ Orig. onr.

and caryed the beestys with them / they toke alle the maydens of
the town lyke rowters & theues. The company of godechan cam
after them / they abode not ¹to forfaytte til the ende of our [leaf 32]
4 Royamme / but assone as they were entred and passed the yates of The company
of (godechan
did even
worse.
hongrye, they began to make alle thoultrages they myghte / They
brente the townes, slewe the men / enforced the wymmen / and
bare away alle thynges / they dyde so moche, that for theyr
8 trespaces were wel worthy to haue hate of god & of the world /
we that be here in the place & in the dygnyte / by whiche we
ought to kepe the peple / as long as it shal please god / and our
barons that haue sworn the feaulte of the Royalme, myght not wel
12 endure² thus to destroye our peple and our contrey, but haue put
to the hand by force in vs defendyng / The thyrde companye cam
: also with folke a foote / we doubted the noyse and debate in suche The third
company we
would not
allow to enter
our land."
wyse / that we wold not suffre them entre in to our londe ne come
16 emonge vs / Our lord, that Ingeth alle the wordes & knoweth alle
thyng, wote wel that it is thus, and that I haue lyed to you no
worde. Now we praye you that ye excuse vs oueraal where ye shal
here speke of it" / whan he had said this, he sente the messagers
20 in to theyr Innes / where they had moche grete honour and grete
feste / The kyng toke counseyl of his barons / and ordeyned his
owne messagers, whiche he sente to the duc godefroy and³ to the
prynces that cam. He had spoken ynowgh to godefroy dasque /
24 and made hym grete chere / and gaf to hym and his felawshippe
yestes / And⁴ aftir toke leue of him and⁵ retorned al to gydre with
the messagers / whan they were comen to fore the duc godefroy /
one of them sayd the message in this manere: "The kyng of
28 hongrye saleweth you, my lordes / And sendeth yow worde that he
knoweth certaynly by renomme that ye be a man of moche hie
lygnage, puyssaunt⁶ of peple, wyse and trewe of herte, prudent and
valyaunt of body / in suche wyse that your prouesse is born in to
32 many londes / ffor thyse thynges our lord the kyng, whiche neuer
sawe yow, preyseth and loueth yow moche in his herte / And hath
moche grete desire to doo you honoure / These pylgryms that ben
with you / And that haue enterprysed so hie a pylgremage he begging God-
frey and his
valiant com-
panions to
visit him.
36 preyseth moche / and desyareth moche to see them, and to worshipppe,
and to haue theyr acqueyntaunce: ffor he holdeth hym self ewrous
and gracious that our lord hath sette hym in such a poynt, that he

² *Orig.* eudure.³ *Orig.* and.⁴ *Orig.* Aud.⁵ *Orig.* aud.⁶ *Orig.* puyssaunt.

may doo seruyse and bounte to one so valyaunt¹ a man. Therefore vnto you, fayr lord, and to the hye men of your companye he prayeth, requyreth and demandeth for a synguler² yefte, that it wold plese you³ to come see hym at one his castel named Ciperon / 4
 He begs them to come to his castle of Ciperon.

* If. 32, bk. J ⁴How the said kyng sente for to fetch the duc godefroye / And how he wente / and of the deuyses that they had to gydre / cap^o xxxij

w Han the duc and his barons had herd the messenger thus speke, he drewe them a parte and toke counseyl / They acorde^d wel that the duc shold goo. he sente for suche companye as he wold haue / And wente forth with thre honderd horse, withoute moo, on his way / hit was not long but he cam to aperon / he passed the brygge / and fonde the kyng, whiche made to hym grete ioye and moche honour. And long they spak to gydre / And the kyng excused hym of the deth of the pylgryms / vnto the duc / lyke as he had doon to the messagers / At thende the kyng cam so to poynt that they were appeased goodly / The kyng acorde^d to hym the passage thurgh his royaume / yf he wold sette hym suche hoostages as he shold chese for to kepe the pees / Alle this was graunte^d / And he demanded in hostage Bawdwyn, brother of the sayd duc, his wyf and her maygne / they were delyuered to hym gladly. Thus entred they with alle theyr people in to the lond of hongrye / The kyng helde to them wel his couenauntes / ffor he dyde doo crye in alle the townes as they shold passe / and also thereby that they shold selle to them vytaylles good cheep / and⁵ that noman shold meue to them no debate / The duc commanded also and made to be cryed, that none on payne of his lyf were so hardy to take ony thyng fro the lond ne fro no man / ne for to doo no wronge, but holde them for felawes and bretheren / Thus it happed that they passed alle hongrye without ony maner stryf or noyse. The kyng rode alwey nyghe to thooste, on the lyfte syde / ledyng his hoostages with hym, redy for tappese yf ony noyse arros / Atte laste they cam to malleuyll, wherof ye haue herd to fore, whiche stondesth on the ryuer of the dunoe / There they taryed tyl alle the hoost were

The duke goes with 300 horsemen to visit the king.

The king accords them safe passage through his land.

But demands Baldwin and his wife as hostages.

They arrive safely at Malleville, on the Danube.

¹ *Orig.* valyaaut

² *Orig.* singler : Fr. *singulier don*, as a special favor.

³ *Orig.* yon.

⁵ *Orig.* aud.

passed by shippes / wherof were but fewe / But to fore he had don sette ouer / a thousand men wel armed for to kepe the arruyng on that other syde. whan the hoost of the comyn peple were passed,⁴ the kyng cam to the duc and to the barons, and brought the hostages¹ that were delyuerd to hym¹ / he made to them moche ioye and honour at departyng,² and gaf to euerych grete yestes and ryche. Aftir he toke leue, and retorned home ageyn / The duc⁸ and the barons passed ouer with their peple / and cam to bellegraue, a cyte of bougrye, of whiche we haue spoken to fore / And there they lodged³ them / After they passed thurgh the wodes / til they cam to the cyte of nyz, and after to stralyce /

When the pilgrims had all crossed the river, the king returned their hostages.

[³ leaf 33]

12 How the duc godeffroye sente his messagers to themperour of constantinoble, to thende that he shold delyuer huon le mayne and other, that he helde in prison. cap^o. xxxiiij^o.

16 h Ere may be knowen the euyl disposicion and deceyte of the grekes / ffor syth themperours latyns faylled in constantynople / and thempyre cam vnto the grekes / of whom the fyrst was nycofores.⁴ Anon the barbaryns that were aboute them, the blacz and the comans,⁵ they of bougrye,⁶ whiche ben toward the eest,⁶ surprised and toke thyse londes that were so good, plentiuuous / and delytable / And conqerud alle fro the dunoe vnto constantynople, And on that other parte vnto the see Adryane / ⁷There is⁸ a cyte in lombardye, nygh to the londe of the marquys,⁸ named Adre / & is right a litil cyte / But by cause it is nyghe the see of venyse and of Ancone, hath this see the name of the see Adryane in wrytyng.⁷ This see goth right nygh constantynoble / vnto a / 28 xxx / myle. This euyl peple of thempyre of constantynoble had wel wonne⁹ vpon the grekes / xxx. journeyes of lengthe, And x of

The Blacz, Comans and Bulgarians had conquered all the land, from the Danube to Constantynople.

There is a city in Lombardy called Adre.

From this city the Adriatic sea takes its name.

¹⁻¹ Fr. *quil leur rendit*. Caxton has here exactly reversed the meaning of his French text.

² *Orig.* departyug.

⁴ Lat. *Nycephorus*.

⁵ These two nations inserted by the French translators. They are not in the Latin original.

⁶⁻⁶ Fr. *qui leur sont devers bise*,—towards the North; Lat. *septentrionalis*.

⁷⁻⁷ This whole sentence is an insertion by a French translator.

⁸ Caxton has spoiled the sense by his omission here. The French text gives "*pres de la terre le Marquis d'Est, qui a non Adre*," viz. near the land of the *Marquis of Este*, which is called Adre. ⁹ *Orig.* wonue.

brede / ffor aboute this see that I haue spoken of, is ¹a countree
 named Epyre.¹ The chyef cyte is named duras / of whiche pyrrus
 was somtyme kyng. ²An other is named Mayene² / that is in the
 myddle of the londe³ / where ben also noble Cytees / Nyz and ⁴
 stralyce / In this londe was Archade / Thessale / and machedone /
⁴Of thise three landes euerych was called Trace⁴ / And alle thise
 were conquerd vpon the grekes / But afterward ther was an
 Emperour named Basilie recouert thise londes, ⁵And brought the ⁸
 blacz and the bougres longe afore this tyme / in suche wyse that
 the two danemarches were comen agayn to his power⁵ / but yet
 wold not the grekes suffre to repayre agayn the townes / ne laboure
 the londes, which shold be right good, to thende that none shold ¹²
 enhabyte there, By cause they holde it for a strengthe / And that
 nothyng shold be fonde therin / Also in espyre, whiche extendeth
 fro duras vnto a mount named bagulars / And endureth foure
 iourneyes : by that passed the other barons / But the Duc and his ¹⁶
 compaigne passed by danemarche la Mayen / whiche is named
 otherwyse Mese / They cam by a destrayte, whiche is named the
 Cloystre of seynt Basyle / And syth they descended in to a playne /
 Where they fonde grete ⁶plente of vytaylle and of pastures / And ²⁰
 cam vnto Asine pol, whiche is a moche fayr cyte and good / There
 herd they saye and trouthe it was / that themperour of constanty-
 noble had enprisonned huon le mayne / broder of the kyng of
 ffrance, and many other barons that cam with hym ; ffor thise ²⁴
 noble men were hasty, and cam by lombardye in to puylle / ffor
 thens they passed to duras / And soiourned for tabyde the othler
 barons / whiche ought to come in to tho partyes / ne they supposed
 to haue doubted ony thyng in the londe of the grekes, that were ²⁸
 cristen as they were / But the baylly of duras toke alle the moost

The chief
city of Epirus
is Duras.

In this land
are also Arcadia,
Thessaly,
and Macedonia.

The Emperor
Basilias re-
conquered
these coun-
tries.

The duke
passed
through
Moesia.

[⁶ If. 33, bk.]

At Asinople
they heard
that the Gre-
cian Emperour
had imprisoned Hugh
the Great.

¹⁻¹ Fr. *a deux terres, de quoi chascune a non Espire. Lat. super Adriaticum cuius mare erat utraque Epirus, cuius alterius metropolis est Durachium.*

²⁻² Fr. "*en la terre ou ces pelerins passoient avoit deux Danemarches. L'une avoit non de Ripe (Lat. Dacia Ripensis) qui est à senestre sur la rive de la Dunoe l'autre est nommé la Maienne.*" Caxton has ruined the sense here by his omissions. ³ Lat. "*Dacia mediterranea.*"

⁴⁻⁴ Fr. "*et trois terres dont chescun avoit non Trace,*" Caxton's translation again faulty.

⁵⁻⁵ A "*il chaca les Blas et les Bongres bien loin si que les Danemarches li remestrent.*" The text B that Caxton followed gives *achata*, which is evidently a corruption of *chaza*, and the "*brought*" may be a misreading for "*bought*." The Lat. gives "*eodem Bulgarorum subjugato populo per Basilium.*"

grete barons, and sente them in yrons to themperour of Constantynoble to doo his wyll with them / he helde them in prison, and abode the comyng of the other barons / by cause yf they cam with grete power he wolde delyuere them for theyr loue / and yf they cam not with grete myght he thought not lyghtly to lete them passe. whan the duc godefroye and the other barons herd tydynges of this prisonment / he toke good messagers, and sente them with theyr lettres to themperour. And they prayde and warned hym that he shold sende to them without delaye this hie and noble man huon le mayne and alle his companye / ffor they helde hym for lordes, bretheren and felaws of this pylgremage. And herin he had don more his wyll and his force than right / whan he had reteyned one so gentil and hie prynce.

The bailiff of Duras sent all the great barons, who were with him, in yrons to Constantynoble.

Godfrey sent to the Emperour and warned him to release these noble men.

How the duc godefroye constreyned themperour by force to rendre and delyuere his prisonners /

16 capitulo xxxiiij^o

i N this tyme was Emperour a greke, moche fals and ful of tricherye, and was named alexes, and to his surname Conius / he was moche acqueynted and pryue with that other Emperour Nychofores bothoniat, in suche wyse that he made hym his steward / And was the grettest man of the londe sauf themperour. He by his malyce purchaced euyl and harme ayenst his lorde, by thassent of grete peple that he helde aboute hym, and toke hym and helde hym in his prison vj yere tofore that our pilgryms cam theder / The messagers of the Duc and the other barons demanded of this Emperoure Huon le Mayne, lyke as they were commaunded, and the other prysonners / in lyke wyse / Themperour answerde shortly that he wold not delyuere them / They retourned² in to the hoost, and said to them thansuer of themperour. ³whan the duc & the other barons herd this, they were moche wroth, And concluded among them by theyr counseyl / that they wold playnly make warre ayenst hym / that dyde so grete outrage to holde so hie a prynce in prison, ne wolde not answere by mesure ne reason / They habandonned to the hooste to take in that contre where they were in, Alle that they coude fynde, And brente alle the townes / Thus abode they in thise partyes, and destroyed alle the contre / And dyde moche grete dommage and harme : and grete plente of proyes

Alexius the Greek Emperour was false and full of trickery.

He sent word to Godfrey that he woul not release the barons.

[² leaf 34]

The duke was very angry and commenced to ravage the Emperour's country.

¹ *Orig. aud.*

² *Orig. retourned.*

The Emperor then decided to release Hugh the Great, and the other prisoners.

and other gaynes cam in to the hoost of the barons / Themperour sente vnto the duc and vnto the other barons / that they shold doo holde theyr peple in pees, And that he wold delyuere huon¹ le² mayne and the other prisonners. They agreed and acordid gladly, 4 And cam with alle theyr bataylles renged and in ordenaunce to fore constantynoble, as for tassiege the toun. Anon yssued oute huon the mayne, doene dancelle³ / Guyllame charpentier, Clarembault de venduel / And entred in to the payuillon of the Duc / And 8 thanked hym moche and alle the other of theyr delyueraunce / And the duc and the hooste receyued them with moche grete ioye / ffor they had moche grete angre and grete despite of that was don to them. 12

The grete despyte that themperour toke, that duc godeffroy reffused to goo in to constantinoble⁴ vnto hym. cap^o. xxxv

The Duke refuses to visit the Emperor.

In consequence the Emperor forbade any one to sell victuals to the pilgrims. So the pilgrims forage for themselves.

w Hyles they spak thus to gydre, cam the messagers fro them- 16 perour to the duc, And requyred them in theyr lordes name that he wold entre with a fewe of his companye in to the toun / And come speke with themperour / The duc had counseyl herupon, and answerd⁵ / that he wold not yet come in to the toune. whan 20 themperour herd this, he had therof moche grete despite, And deffended oueral that ther shold nomore vytaylle be sold to them, ne none other thynges. The noble men sawe this, and sente out on fouragyng ouer alle the countrey. And they brought in vytaylle 24 grete plente, in suche wyse that they had ynowgh, poure and ryche. Themperour sawe that this contre shold be destroyed / and doubted that they wold yet doo werse / therfor he commanded to his marcheantes that they shold goo in to the hooste and selle to them 28 suche thynges as they neded. The daye of Cristemasse or of the Natyuite of oure Lord approched / Therefore the Duc and the Barons dyde do crye in the hooste / that no man shold forfaytte ne trespace in tho foure dayes / The mene whyle cam the ⁶messagers 32 of themperour, that spak to the barons moche fayr, that they wold passe the brygge and come on the syde of the palays whiche was

[⁶ If. 34, bk.]

The Emperor sends messengers again to the Duke.

¹ *Orig.* hnon.

² *Orig.* te.

³ Caxton's French text gives *Doene Dancelle*, which he follows. This is, however, a corruption of *Dreue de Neele*, Lat. *Drogo de Neela*.

⁴ *Orig.* constatinoble.

⁵ *Orig.* auswerd.

named blaquerne, ffor there myght alle the hooste lodge in grete
houses whiche were nygh the braas of seynt george. And alle this
said they for tricherye and deceyte. Neuertheles¹ our peple byleuyd
4 them lyghtly / ffor the wynter was moche cold and sharpe of raynes
and snowes, in suche wyse that the pauyllons roted, and ne myght
not hold out the water of the rayne / the horses and poure peple
myght not endure² it. herof toke themperour his oecasion for to
8 sende in to the hoost / and that they shold passe toward the town :
and semed that he had grete pyte on them / but his entencion was
alle other wyse / ffor he dyde this to thende that he shold enclose
them in a place more strait, that they shold not renne in to the
12 contre, And that he myght haue the gretter power to constrayne
them therein.

The winter
was very cold
and rainy,
so that the
army was
very uncom-
fortable in
tents.

So they ac-
cepted the
Emperor's in-
vitation and
came into the
town.

Of the descripcion of constantinoble / And of many
countrees and londes ther aboute.

16 capitulo xxxvj^o

f Or to vnderstonde how the barons were enclosed by the des-
loyaulte of themperour / it is to wete how the cyte of con-
stantinoble stondest / the see whiche is in venyse cometh nygh
20 vnto / xxx myle of constantinoble / ffor thens departeth an arme
like a fresshe water, And estendeth it toward³ the east, in lengthe /
ij / C / xxx / myle / it is not lyke⁴ euen / ffor in somme place
it is but a myle broode, And in another it is wel xxx / of brede
24 or more / after the places that it renneth in. And it renneth
bytvene thyse two Auncyent cytees, Sexton and Abydon, of whiche
that one is in asye / And that other in europe / ⁵ ffor the arme is
deuyded fro thyse two londes ;⁵ Constantinoble is in europe : That
28 other parte is nycene, whiche is in asye / This braas or arme, thus
as it is moost brode toward the see / lyke a roode where the porte
is / it is sayde that it is mooste paysible / And easier than the see
is. nyghe therto stondest constantinoble, whiche is lyke a tryangle.
32 The first syde is bytwene the porte and this arme / Ther standeth a
chirche of seynt george / of whiche that see is named the braas of

How the city
of Constanti-
noble is situ-
ated.

The arm of
the sea run-
neth between
Sestos and
Abydos.

It also divides
Constanti-
noble from
Nicaea.

¹ *Orig.* Nenertheles.

² *Orig.* endnre.

³ *Fr. vers midi.*

⁴ *Fr. unie*, "lyke even" (in breadth).

⁵⁻⁶ Caxton has mistranslated this sentence by reading *divise* as a past participle instead of a substantive. *Fr. car le bras est devise de ces deux terres*, viz. for this arm (*i. e.* the Hellespont) is the division of these two countries.

The second side of the wall extends from the church of St. George to the Golden Gate.

[3 leaf 35]

The Emperour sent often for the Duke to come and see him.

The Duke would not go.

So the Emperour sent his archiers, who slew many of the pilgrims.

seynt george / And this endureth vnto the new palays of blacquerne,
 after the porte / That other pan¹ of the walle dureth fro this
 chirche of seynt george vnto the porte² aire / The thyrde pan fro
 that yate vnto the palays of Blacquerne / The towne is moche wel⁴
 closed³ toward³ the³ champayne of walles, of dyches, of towres, and³
 of barbicans / Atte porte descendeth a fressh water rennyng /
 whiche is lytil in the somer / but in wynter it becometh moche
 grete for the rayne / This water hath a brygge, on whiche oure men⁸
 passed⁸ ouer /⁴ whiche is enclosi⁸ bytwene the grete see and⁸ the
 braas / behynde the yate / where they lodged⁴ for tabyde that
 comyng of other barons. Themperour⁵ sente ofte his messagers to
 the duc, And⁸ sente for hym to come and⁸ speke with hym. The¹²
 duc doubted⁸ moche his tricherye, and⁸ wold⁸ not goo / But to thende
 that he toke it not for euyl / he sente to hym thre noble men / that
 is to wyte, Conon de montagu / Henry dasque / and bawdwyn⁶ de
 bort, and excused hym by them / that the barons that were with¹⁶
 hym wold⁸ not counseylle hym to goo and speke with hym tyl that
 the other barons were comen. Themperour was moche / wroth,
 and deffended agayn that no vytaylles sold be shold⁸ to the hoost.
 And dyde yet werse / ffor he sente on a daye erly in the mornynge²⁰
 shippes al ful of archers, that cam sodenly by the braas right there
 as the duc was lodged / they shotte grete plente of arowes, in suche
 wyse that they slewe moche peple that was goon on⁷ the see syde,
 And⁸ many they hurted⁸ by the dores and wyndowes / 24

How our peple brente theyr lodgys and toke theyr
 harnoyis / And of an assault that the grekes made
 on them / ca^o. xxxvij^o

w Han the Duc and the other barons her⁸ this / by comyn coun- 28
 seyl / they sente the brother of the duc⁸ for to take the brigge /
 to thende that they of the toun shold⁸ not sease ne take it / They

¹ Fr. *pan*, piece, strip.

² Fr. *as portes oires*, to the golden gates. Lat. *usque ad auream portam*.

⁴⁻⁴ The French here misunderstood by Caxton, "*Si queilz furent enclos entre la grant mer et le bras, selonc le port ou ilz estoient logiez, en maisons qui la estoient faictes*," they (*i. e.* our men) and not *the bridge*, were inclosed between the sea and the arm. They were not lodged "behind the gate," but along the harbour. Caxton has mistaken *port*, harbour, for *porte*, gate.

⁵ Orig. Themperour.

⁶ Fr. *Bandonin de Bore*, or *Borgh*, Lat. *de Bergo*.

⁷ Fr. *sur mer*.

⁸ Orig. duc.

toke / v / honderd men¹ what knyghtes as other wel armed, and cam fyrst to the brygge and kepte it, and sawe that alle the cyte was meued and armed for to come on them. Our men were thenne
 4 adcerteyned that they of the towne were theyr enemyes. And sette fyr in the howses² were they lodged in, and in other by which they doubted and fered wel a / vj / thousand or seuen in suche wys: that som of Emperours owne howses were brent³ / After they
 8 dyde do sowne theyr tompettes⁴ / And wente them alle in ordenaunce⁵ after the Duc toward the brygge. ffor they doubted⁶ moche that they of the towne wolde comè theder for to deffende them the paas / but,⁷ as I haue sayd, bawdwyn, brother of the duc, had thenne
 12 goten it vpon the grekes, whom he had ouerthrowen and chased ryght ferre. The hoost and alle the cariage⁸ passed ouer / alle in to the contrey. And arrested there alle in ordenaunce in a fayr playn, moche fyers and courageous, by the chirche of seynt cosme
 16 and damyan / which now is named the palays of buymont & the palays of blacquerne / when it was come nygh the euentyd there were many slayn of them of the town / & of the other, but not so many / The grekes myght no lenger sufre, but the pylgryms dis-
 20 comfytet them & chased them, sleynge and hewynge alle them that they myght arreche, in suche wyse that they droof them in to the toun by force. Thenne retourned they agayne as they that had wonne the felde / And lodged in the playne / The grekes were
 24 moche swollen and angry of that they had lost so many men and had ben so euyl demened. And⁹ began to ordeyne thurgh the town how they myght yssue oute with moche more affraye and strengre than they had. But the nyght cam¹⁰ that destourmed their
 28 counseyl.¹⁰ This was an euident thyng, that themperour had don the barons passe the brygge by tricherye and vntrouthe for to haue closed them as within barryers.

The Duke sent 500 men to seize the bridge.

The pilgrims burned many of the houses in which they were lodged.

[8] l. 35, bk.]

The army then passed over the bridge into the country.

Then they discomfited and slew many of the Greeks.

It was euident that the Emperour had leuaded very treacherously.

¹ Fr. "*Tant chevalier comme autres.*"

² Fr. *ou*, where.

³⁻³ Caxton's obscurity is here owing to a corrupt French text.—The text given in the *Historians Occidentaux* has the correct reading: "*Et es autres delez qui duroient bien milles on sept, si que aucuns des mesons i firent arses, qui estoient l'empereor,*"—i. e. they burned the houses in which they were lodged, which occupied six or seven miles of ground; and some which belonged to the emperor were burnt also.

⁴ Fr. *trompettes*.

⁵ Orig. *ordenanuce*.

⁶ Orig. *donbted*.

⁷ Orig. *bnt*.

⁹ Orig. *Aud*.

¹⁰ Fr. "*qui les destourna de ce conseil.*"

How after this our¹ peple began to destroye the contre.
 And of a message of buymont vnto duc gode-
 froye. And the answer of the duc vpon the
 same. capitulo xxxviij^o 4

Every man of a
 both foot and
 horse was
 commanded
 to arm him-
 self.

S sone as thoost apperceyued on the morn the day / it was
 cryed that euery man on payne of deth shold arme hym / on
 horsbak and on fote / The Captayns of som bataylle were ordeyned
 for to lede the peple in fourage. The other sette them in ordyn- 8

Part of them
 went for-
 aging, and
 brought back
 oorn, wine,
 and other
 victuals.

They that wente for vytaylle withdrewe them wel / lx / myle /
 They pyllled al aboute them alle the townes that they fonde / And 12
 brought Corn, Wyn, Beestys, and other Rychesses / Wherof the
 londe was full that vnnethe myght they conduyte alle / And they
 were oute sex dayes / And aftir retorneed in to the hooste with alle
 this merueillous gayne / whyles as they conteyned thus, Messagers 16

Bohemond
 sent messen-
 gers to God-
 frey.

cam fro Buymont to fore the Duc / And salewed hym in theyr
 Lordes name / And delyuerd to hym lettres whiche saide in this
 manere / He salewed in his lettres the duc as he ought to salewe
 suche a man / Aftir ²they sayde / “knowe ye, sire, that ye haue to 20
 doo with a moche vntrewe man / whiche alwey sette his herte and
 purpoos to deceyue them that truste in hym / Specially he hateth the
 Latyns to the deth. And doth his power in alle maners, that he

[² leaf 36]

Telling him
 to be on his
 guard against
 the malice of
 the Grekes,
 and the
 treachery of
 the Emperour.

can to doo euyl to our¹ peple. And yf ye haue not yet apper- 24
 ceyed it / ye shal knowe al by tyme as I saye to you / ffor I knowe
 wel the malyce of the grekes / And also the trycherye of them-
 perour / Therfor I pray you / that ye withdrawe you fro constan-
 tinoble / And retourne to ward the playnes of andrenoble or of 28
 sympole / and there ye may wyntre you where as is grete plente of
 alle goodes / And I myself, yf it please god, assone as the sprynge
 of the yere cometh, shal come and hast to meue, And shal assem-
 ble with you / And shal helpe you / as my lord and frende, ayenst 32
 the vntrew prynce that entendeth to doo euyll with alle his power
 vnto cristiente” / whan the duc had herd thyse lettres, by the counseyl
 of his barons He sente to hym ageyn other lettres that after the
 salewyng spak thus / “we thanke you getely, And so doo the other 36
 prynces that ben with vs, of the loue and trouthe that ye haue

Bohemond
 offers to come
 and aid God-
 frey.

¹ *Orig. our.*

sente vs / And knowe ye certaynly that ¹we haue founden on the
 prynce and on the peple of grekes / lyke as ye wene wel to knowe¹ /
 we knowe wel that ye saye it of wysedome and of trouthe / ²But
 4 we doubte moche the armes that we toke in our contrey for to warre
 on the hethen men / shold retorne and conuerte ayenst them that
 bere the name of cristiaunte as we our self doo² / we attende and
 desyre moch your comyng / Thenne, yf god will, whan ye shal be
 8 comen we shal doo take you to our counseyl.”

Godfrey replied that they had already found out that what he said was true.

How themperour appesed the duc godefroye and sente
 for hym, and of the honour that he dyde to hym.
 capitulo / xxxix.

- 12 t Hemperour was moche angnyssous emong his pryue counseyl,
 & thought how he might appese to hym the duc & his
 peple by cause he destrcyed his contre / of which he herd the
 clamours right grete and ofte / And by cause that he knewe that
 16 the messagers of buymont were come / and had brought tidynges /
 that he wold hastely come, he sente ageyn his messagers to the
 duc / & prayd hym that he wold come speke to hym, & yf he
 doubted of ony thyng he wold sende³ Iohan his sone in hostage in
 20 to the hoost / This message plesyd moche to the barons whan they
 herde it / and they sente conon de montagu⁴ / & bawdwyn de
 borgh for to receyue the hostage / they receyued hym and⁵ delyuerd⁶
 to Bawdwyn brother of the Duc, ⁷whiche abode / for to Reule and
 24 gouerne the hoost and to kepe the hostage / The duc and other
 barons wente in to Constantynople to fore themperour which had
 moche desyred them / The grekes made to them grete Ioye mer-
 ueyllously what someuer they thoughte.⁸ Themperour kyssed them
 28 alle. And demanded of euerych his name / for to honoure euerych
 by hym self / as he that wel coude do it. they were wel beholden
 of alle them of the palays / At last themperour⁹ satte in his mageste,
 and the barons aboute hym, And sayde to the duc thyse wordes /
 32 “ we haue herd saye many tymes in this londe, that thou art of hyghe

The Emperor was now very anxious to appease the Duke and his men.

He offers to send the Crusaders his son John as a hostage for better behaviour in the future.
 [7 fr. 36, bk.]

The Duke and other barons go to Constantinople to visit the Emperor.

The Emperor sat in his majesty and addressed the Duke thus :

¹⁻¹ Fr. “ nous avons ja trouvé, et en prince et en peuple, ce que vous en soupezouez.”

²⁻² Fr. “ Nous doubtons moult les armes, que nos préismes en nostre pais pour guerroyer la gent mescreant, turner à ceus qui portent le non de la Crestienté, si com nos fesonz.”

³ Orig. seude.

⁴ Orig. moutagu.

⁵ Orig. aud.

⁶ Orig. delynerd.

⁸ Orig. thoughte.

⁹ Orig. themperonr.

"We know
that thou art
a good knight
and true,
and we praise
thee and love
thee in our
heart."

lygnage / and of moche grete power in thy contre, and a good
knyght and trewe, in suche wyse that for the fayth of Ihesu criste
tenhaunce, hast enterprised to warre ayenst the mescreauntes and
hethen peple / whiche greue the cristen peple merueyllously / ffor 4
alle thyse thynges we prayse the and loue in our herte / And wyll
honoure the with grettest honour that we may doo / ffor thou art
worthy and dygne / It playseth vs and therto accorden our barons /
that we cheese the & auowe for our sone / And we put our 8
Empyre in to thyn hande, that thou kepe it as our sone from heiss-
forth in good estate and in termes of loue"¹ / whan he had seyde
this / he dyde hym to be clad with the robe of an Emperour / And
to sytte by hym / And² thenne the barons made to hym right grete 12
feste & solempnyte aftir the custom of the londe in suche thynges /
And thus was the pees affermed bytwene the prynces / and also
bytwene the peple.

"We choose
and auowe thee
for our son,
and put our
Empire into
thy hand."

Of the yeftes that themperour³ made to duc godefroye, 16
to the barons and to the gentilmen of his hoost.

capitulo xli^o

The Emperour
then present-
ed the Duke
and his com-
panions with
great gifts.

a None whan this was don / the tresour of themperour was
opened & was presented to the duc / and to his felawship / 20
so grete yeftes and so grete rychesses that it was merueylle to see /
Ther was grete plente of gold, of syluer, and of precious stones /
many clothes of sylk ryght ryche: vayssellys of dyuerse facions,
whiche were merueyllous⁴ of facions and of matere / Oure peple 24
meruellyd moche of this grete rychesse / Thyse yeftes cessed not at
the fyrst tyme / but fro the daye of the Epyphanye / vnto thas-
sencion tyde / themperour gaf to the Duc euery weke as moche as
two myghty men myght susteyne / of pierrye / of pens of gold, of 28
copper, and of tyn he gaf to hym ten muyes, ⁵euery muye is
four bussellys.⁵ But the duc departed alle thyse thynges vnto
knygh = ⁶tes and alle aboute where he sawe / that it shold be wel
employed. Whan they had ben with themperour a lytil whyle, 32
they toke leue & cam agayn in to the hoost / They sente agayn
Iohan his sone, whom they had holden in hostage moche honour-
ably / Themperour dyde do crye vpon payne of deth / that noman

But the Duke
divided all his
[⁶ leaf 37]
gifts with
those about
him.

¹ Fr. "*en enterine amour*," in sincere or perfect love. Caxton probably read *enterine* as two words (in, terme), and translated accordingly.

² *Orig. Aud.*

³ *Orig. themperour.*

⁴ *Orig. merueyllous.*

⁵⁻⁶ Inserted by Caxton.

shold doo harme to the pylgryms / but shold do selle to them alle
 maner wares at prys resonable / The duc in lyke wyse dyde doo
 crye, that euery man as dere as he louyd his lyf shold doo no force
 4 ne wrong to them of the contree / Thus forthon lyuyd they in
 moche peas / whan Marche cam the duc knewe wel / that the other
 barons wold come / and apperceyued wel that the wille of them-
 perour was / that he wold passe with his peple the braas of seynt
 8 george / To the same acorde the barons and the other of the
 hoost / And saide to themperour that he wold passe ouer / And he
 anon dyde do make redy many shippes & passed wel alle and cam
 in to bethnie, whiche is the fyrst partye of Asye. They lodged
 12 them aboute¹ the Cyte of Calcedonie / Of this cyte fynde we
 wryten, that in the tyme of pope lyon and Marcyen themperour
 assambled there one of the iiij grete counseyllis / where ther were
 .iiij.C.xxxvj / prelates for to condempne an heresy, that a Monke
 16 name d Eutyses(16) had founden. And that helde a patriarke of
 Alysandre named discretus(17) / but² there they were dampned /
 This cyte is so nyghe constantynoble³ that there is but the braas by-
 twene them bothe. And there was the hoost lodged moche easely /
 20 ffor who so had to doo in the cyte of Constantynoble he myght
 passe twyes or thryes in a day / The cause why themperour made
 the duc to passe, was for he wold not that / the hoostes of the
 barons that were to come / shold not⁴ assemble⁵ to gydre so nyghe
 24 hym / And in lyke dyde he to the other barons that cam aftir, ffor
 he neuer wold gydre tweyne to gydre /

From this
line on, the
Greeks and
Crusaders
lived in
peace.

In March,
Godfrey
crossed into
Bithyia and
encamped
around Chal-
cedon.

This city is
divided from
Constanti-
noble by the
Braas of St.
George.

Bohemond,
Prince of Ta-
rentum, had
arrived at
Duras, and
traversed
Bulgaria.

[* leaf 57, bk.]

How Buymont was made capitayn of a grete hoost.

And the names of many nobles of thoost & of
 28 their mayntene. ca^o xlj.

a Ftir this maner contened hym themperour and duc godefroy.

But buymont the sone⁶ of Robert guychart, prynce of Tarente,
 had passed the see adryane / And was come vnto duras / whan alle his
 32 hoost was comen he toke his waye thurgh the desertes of bougrye /
 And wente softe and fayr⁷ by cause of them that folowed hym. In
 his rowte were many noble men / of whom we shal name to you a

¹ Orig. abonte.

² Orig. bnt.

³ Orig. constantynoble.

⁴ This "not" is superfluous.

⁵ Orig. assemblhe.

⁶ Orig. soue.

⁷ Orig. an d'fayr.

Many noble
men accom-
panied him.

They spent
Christmas in
the city of
Castore; but
could get no
one to sell
them pro-
visions.

They went
foraging in
the country,
and got great
wealth and
booty.

The Emperor
feared the
coming of
Bohemond.

And sent men
to follow him,
and to do him
damage if
possible.

part / that is to wyte / Tancre the sone of graal the marquys.¹
Rychard the pryncipat sone of william fferbrace. The Brother of
Robert guychart / Raymont his brother / Robert the hanse² /
Herman of caryn³ / Robert of sourdeval / Robert fytz cristen,⁴ 4
vmfrey fytz raoul⁵ / Rychard sone of therle Ranyol erle of rousygnol,⁶
and alle his bretheren. Ogan of chartes. Aubery of cannac /
And vmfrey of montygneux / Alle thyse had made buymont their
capytayn / They cam in to the cite of castore and made there the 8
feste of cristenmasse and helde it moche hyely / But⁷ by cause they
of the contre wold selle to them / nothyng which helde them for
enemyes / therfor by force they muste sende out on fouraging and
brought grete proyes and good gaynes / of whiche they dyde moche 12
harne to alle the contrey / Aftir they cam in to the londe of
pelagoine, whiche is moche good and fertile, and lodged them there /
Aftir they herd saye that nygh by was a castel right strong, wherin
alle the popeliquans⁸ of the lande were withdrawn for the strenght 16
of the placè / And there were none but suche mysbyleued peple /
Buymont and his peple armed them and wente theder anon⁹ / And
founde there moche grete rychesse in the towne and grete proyes
whiche they put out a part / And after sette fyer ther in the town / 20
And alle them that yssued they slewe with the swerde. And the
remenaunt bothe men and wymmen they brent alle. Themperour
herd saye that Buymont cam with grete peple. And doubted
moche / And had his comyng moche suspecyous, ffor he had 24
many debates ayenst hym and his, of whiche he had alwey the
werse. The souldyours of themperour and alle they that enter-
meted¹⁰ of armes sojourned and wyntred in thise partyes by whiche
Bumont passed / Themperour commaunded¹¹ to his conestables of 28
alle his peple, that they shold cooste buymont with as moche people
as they myghte gete vnto the water named bardare / in suche manere
that yf they myght greue, ennoye, and domage in ony paas to
them,¹² that they shold come on hym strongly. Thus he had 32

¹ There is a discrepancy here in the French texts, some giving "son of Gral," others "son of William."—Lat. "*Wilhelmi marchionis filius.*"

² Fr. *Robert de Hanse.*

³ Fr. *Herman de Carui.*

⁴ Fr. *Robert le filz Custen.* Some versions give "*Turstan.*"—Lat. *Robertus filius Tristan.*

⁵ Fr. *Onfrey le filz Raoul.*

⁶ Fr. *Ranul.*

⁷ *Orig. Bnt.*

⁸ Fr. *popeliquans*, heretics. Lat. *heretici.*

⁹ *Orig. auon.*

¹⁰ Fr. *s'entre mettoient*, had to do with.

¹¹ *Orig. commaunded.*

¹² Fr. *en aucun pas*, at any place, or, on any occasion.

ordeyned¹ cautelously behynd them, but to fore as he / was moche
 disloyal and couert, and coude wel make semblaunt of other
 thynges than he thoughte, he sente vnto buymont of his grete
 4 men / And by them lettres moche payssyble and of fayr wordes /
 And of bountes moche debonayr and deceyualle whiche were as
 folowen.

In this he was very treacherous, as at the same time he sent messengers of welcome to Bohemond,

Messagers and letres fro Themperour to Buymont,¹
 8 and the ²contenue of the same as foloweth. [* leaf 38]
 capitulo xlijo^o

t He salewyng to fore was moche fayr / And aftir sayde / "we
 knowe certaynly that thou art an hie prynce & moch noble
 12 sone of an noble and valyaunt man / ³ffor this grete maner we
 preyse the / and haue the in chierte³ / And also for thou hast
 enterprised,⁴ with so good herte and so good wille in this tyme the
 seruyse of oure lord / And the pylgremage ⁵whiche is due vnto alle
 16 them⁵ that byleue in Ihesu criste. we haue ferme wyll & cer-
 tainly purpoos to honoure the / And shewe by dede our grace that
 we haue thought / Therfor we praye and requyre the in good
 fayth / that thou commande⁶ to thy peple that they doo none
 20 outrage to oure peple, & haste / the to come to vs all surely, ffor
 thou shalt haue ther by honour & prouffyt / Our⁷ messagers that
 come to the shal by our commandement doo thyn hooste haue
 resonable market of vytaylles and of alle other thynges" / The sem-
 24 blaunt of these wordes were fayr / but ther was ther vnder moch
 venym and of felonnye. Buymont, whiche was wyse and knowyng
 many thynges, had many tymes preuyd the desloyalte of them-
 perour / And receyued⁸ thise wordes by semblaunce moche aworth
 28 and in thanke / But he preyssed them lytil in his courage.⁸ Neuer-
 thelesse, he thanketh hym by mouth / and by lettres that he
 dayned⁸ to wryte to hym and sende, considered that he was so smal
 a man ayenst hym & sente hym other curtoys wordes, &c / These
 32 messagiers that were thus comen, conduyted the hoost vnto the
 ryuer of bardre / whan the moost partye of the hoost were passed

who said, "We prize thee, and hold thee dear in our hearts, because thou hast undertaken the pilgrimage of our Lord."

"We pray thee to do no damage to our country, and in return will sell thee provisions at a fair price."

Bohemond, who had often experienced the Emperor's treachery, did not believe his fair words,

but answered him courteously.

¹ *Orig.* Buymont.
³⁻³ Fr. *Por ce, de grant maniere, te prisons, et avons chier.*" Caxton's French text may have omitted the "de."
⁴ *Orig.* euterprised.
⁵⁻⁶ Fr. "*qui est la besoigne de tous ceux,*" which is the duty of all these, etc.
⁶ *Orig.* commaude.
⁷ *Orig.* Onr.
⁸ Fr. *courage*, heart.

The Emperor's men attacked them, as they were crossing the river Bardara.

The brave Tancred turned back and put the Greeks to flight, taking many of them prisoners.

[^o lf. 38, bk.]

Bohemond made semblance not to perceive the Emperor's treachery.

ouer, & the other ordeyned them for to passe after. The constables of the soldyours whiche had awayted and folowed them wened to haue founden theyr poynt. And launced on this partye of thoost whiche was not yet passed, and were many moo of them ⁴ than of oures / The noyse and the crye arroos moche grete. Tancre whiche moche was appert & hardy, had¹ tho passed half the ryuer whiche was grete, but² when he herd this he retorned agayn as hastily as he myght, ³and discomfyted / ij. M / of the moost ⁸ noble of them vigorously and putte⁴ them to flyght.⁵ And many he toke of them a lyue / whom he brought to fore buymont, he demanded them in the presence of alle / wherfore they had ronneso on the hoost of the cristen men / whiche were also cristen and ¹² people of themperour their lord and frende / They answerd that they were seruauntes and soldyours of themperour and muste⁵ doo his commandement, ffor by hym they had this don / ⁶here by myght alle they apperceyue that herde this, that the fayre wordes that ¹⁶ themperour sayde were but deceyuauce and tricherye / but buymont, whiche was wyse and knewe that he muste⁶ passe by thempyre, made semblaunt that he apperceyued not, and made good chere to thise men for to coure his courage / And that plesyd not ²⁰ som of his barons /

How Buymont approuched constantinoble,⁷ and was sente to come to themperour, And how by the prayer of duc Godefroye he wente toward hym / ²⁴ capitulo xliij^o

b Uymont and his hoost wente so ferre by the countrees that they approched Constantynoble. whan themperour knewe that, he sente agayn grete messagers to hym / and prayde hym entierly ²⁸ that he wold leue his hoost and come speke with hym with a pryue meyne / Buymont wyst not what to doo, ffor he was in the daunger of hym so grete a man, whom he doubted to angre / And on that other parte, he knewe his falsenesse and deceyuauce, And had wel ³²

As they approached Constantinople, the Emperor sent for Bohemond to come and speak with him privately.

¹ Fr. *ja*, already.

² *Orig. lnt.*

³⁻³ This sentence seems to have been entirely misunderstood by Caxton. Fr. "*Et deux milles des plus preux retournerent avecques lui; Ilz se fraferent en ceulx qui estoient venus moult vigoureuement, si que ilz les disconfirent tantost, et misrent en fuite.*"—i. e. two thousand of his own men returned with him, and attacked the others and discomfited them, etc.

⁴ *Orig. putte.*

⁵ *Orig. muste.*

¹ *Orig. coustantinoble.*

- apperceyued that he louyd hym not / And therefore, he fered to goo
to hym / whyles he was thus entredeux¹ / The Duc Godefroye cam
to hym the thursdaye afore Esterdaye, ffor themperour had² so moche
4 prayd the Duc / by cause he doubted that he wold not gladly come
to hym / that the Duc wente to hym for to make hym come to
themperour / whan the duc and Buymont mette / they made moche
grete Ioye to gydre, and spak to gydre of many thynges. After
8 entred the duc for to praye hym to come to his fader themperour /
Buymont was loth tobeye his prayer and requeste / But with grete
peyne the duc vaynquysshyd² hym by prayer / And made hym to
goo. Themperour receyued hym with grete honour and ioye and
12 kyssyd hym / And aftir spak so moche to hym and to the duc, that
Buymont by the counseyl of the duc made to themperour homage
with his hondes, and swar to hym feaulte as to his lorde / Thenne
shold ye haue seen come out of the tresour of themperour many
16 grete rychesses, gold / syluer / vessel / precious stones / and clothes
of sylk so moche that vnneth myght be preysed / whyles that
Buymont abode in the palays, Tancre his newew, sone of his suster,
that was right wyse and of grete herte, retched not for to see
20 Themperour ne to speke to hym / But made alle³ the hoost to
passe ouer the braas seynt george, and to lodge in bethine, nygh to
calcedoine / where thooste of the other barons⁴ had ben a good
whyte / whan themperour knewe that tancre had eschewed hym,
24 he was moche wrath, but he made no semblaunt therof, as he that
wel coude coure his courage / he made moche grete feste to the
barons that were with hym, & euery daye he gaf to them grete
yeftes and newe thynges / Aftir they departed by his leue / And
28 passed the braas with the other / There soiourned they, & abode
the comyng of the other barons. There was brought to them grete
plente of vytaylles / and⁵ of other thynges fro the cyte of con-
stantynoble and fro the countree aboute.

Bohemond
hesitated
about obey-
ing the
summons.

Godfrey
endeavours
to persuade
him to come
to the Em-
peror.

And finally
prevails upon
him to do so.

Bohemond
swears fealty
to the Em-
peror, and
receives great
gifts from
him.

Tancred
would not
go to the
Emperor,
but crossed
over to
Chalcedon.

[⁴ leaf 39]

Here all the
Crusaders
awaited the
coming of
the other
barons.

32 How the erle Robert of fflaunders with his hooste
approched Constantynoble, And how themperour
sente for hym / And of their deuyses to gydre /
cap^o xliij^o.

¹ A good example of Caxton's habit of transferring French words and expressions bodily into English.

² *Orig.* vaynquysshyd.

³ Fr. "*tout vest.*"

⁵ *Orig.* aud.

Robert of Flanders wintered at Duras, and in spring hastened to follow the other pilgrims.

He was received in Constantynople with great honor by the Emperour.

He joined the other Crusaders,

and they received counsel together, and were very impatient, because the rest of the great barons arrived not.

r Obert, the Erle of fflaundes, whiche was comen to fore the wynter to bar, a cyte of puylle, where the body of seynt Nicholas lieth, had passed the see, and was descended at duras / Ther in a moche fayr place and plentiuos¹ he had wynterd hym / 4 But assone as it began to wexe fayr tyme, he toke his Iourneye after the other / And hasted faste to folowe them / but it happed that er he cam to the barons / he receyued² the messagers of themperour that sayd to hym in his name / that he shold leue his hooste 8 and come see themperour, and speke with hym wyth a fewe of his meyne / he demaunded and knewe wel / how the other barons had don to fore hym. And therfor he cam in to constantynoble³ with a fewe of his companye. Themperour⁴ receyued hym wyth grete 12 Ioye and honour / They spak of many thynges to gydre. And after, lyke as other barons had don, he dyde hommage, and made oth of feaulte / Themperour gaf to hym grete yestes / and to alle them of his companye, whan he and his peple had abyden and 16 soiourned there, by the wylle of themperour he made his peple passe ouer. And he hym self wente after vnto the other barons / whiche with grete Ioye receyued hym, And spak moche to gydre of theyr auentures of the waye. And ofte they were in counseyl, how 20 they shold doo fro than forthon / they were moche displesyd for taryeng of the other barons whom they abode / It was not longe after, but that the messagers of the Erle of Tholouse and of the bisshop of puy were come. And tolde how theyr lordes cam / and 24 that they were nygh / And shold be hastily in constantynoble.⁵

[⁶ It. 39, bk.] ⁶Of the mayntiene of the hooste that therle of Tholouse and the bisshop of puy brought ouer see. cap^o xlv^o 28

The Earl of Toulouse and the Bishop of Puy were accompanied by many valiant and powerful men.

t Hyse tweyne noble men departed to gydre out of their countrees with grete nombre of peple with them / They were accompanied with many valyaunt and puyssaunt men of theyr countreyes. Ther was fyrst William, bisshop of Orange / Raybout, 32 erle of the same cyte / Gaste de bedyers / Giralt de roussylon / Guillem de montpeliers / Guillem, erle of forestes / Raymont peles / centon de beart / Guillem de Amaneux / And many other barons

¹ Fr. *plantureux*, fertile.

² *Orig.* receyned.

³ *Orig.* constautynoble.

⁴ *Orig.* Themperour.

⁵ *Orig.* coustantynoble.

moche worshipful, whiche for the seruyse of oure lord lefte theyr countrees, theyr lygnages and alle theyr delytes. They cam alle in to lombardy, and passed by the syde of aquylee. And aftir cam
 4 in to the londe called Ister / ffor thens in to dalmace, whiche is a grete contrey bytwene hongrye and the see adryane / Therin be fore Archiebisshoppes / Iadre / spalete, Antibare, and Raguse / The
 8 peple of that contre is cruel and moche accustomed to robbe and to slee / There be montaynes, and the londe is ful of depe waters rennyng / And large mareyses in suche wyse that there is but lytil londe gaynable¹ / Beestes ther be grete plente in the pastures by whiche they lyue / Neuertheles they that dwelle nygh the see / ben
 12 of other maner lyuyng of habyte & of langage / ffor they speke Rommant / ²And the other speke not but as they be nourysshid² / The noble men of whom I spak / camen in to this londe, And had ther many grete trauayllys and diseases for the wynter, which
 16 was ouer cold, And for the contre, whiche was euyl garnysshyd of vytaylles / they hadde merneyllous grete suffraunce, ffor alle the peple of the countree for feer of the pylgryms had lefte cytees, castellys, and townes for to flee and hyde them in montaynes.
 20 They had born theder alle theyr thynges / ffrom thens they pursued the pylgryms / And them that were olde / seke and feble, and taryed after the hoost, they slewe alle / The erle whiche was wyse toke hede of the hoost / The other barons he sente to fore /
 24 he kepte alwey the rier garde with grete nombre of his peple wel armed aboute hym / the ayer of the contre was so ful of mystes and so thyeke / that they byhynde myght vnneth folowe them to fore ; ffor this londe, as I said to fore, is ful of ryuers and rennyng
 28 waters / of lakes and mareys / that a grete nyle³ souldeth euery day / it semed that it shold neuer sesse / On that other syde the sclauouns and the dalmaces⁴ that knowe the places and the countrees made on them many assaultes at certayn paas / and slewe
 32 many of them that were vnarmed. The Erle and the good men of the hoost closed them in, And slewe many of them. And many moo shold haue slayn / yf the wodes & their retraytes had not be so nyghe / Somtyme it happed that therle toke of them a lyue /
 36 And made to smyte of theyr feet and handes / And lefte them lye

They arrived in Lombardy,

and passed into Dalmatia.

The people of this country are cruel and fierce.

These noblemen and their followers suffered greatly in crossing this land.

The air was so full of fog and mist that they could scarcely see each other as they marched.

[* leaf 40]

The Sclavonians and the Dalmatians harassed them continually.

¹ Fr. *gainnables*, capable of being cultivated.

²⁻² Fr. "*les autres ne parlent se Esclavonois, non,*"—the others speak nothing but the Sclavic tongue.

³ Fr. *nisle*, fog, mist.

After three weeks of peril and discomfort, they came to a castle where they found the king of Sclavonia.

Neither by prayers nor by presents could they mollify the people of this country.

in the way for to fere¹ with the other that cam after / In this maner they were thre wekes in that londe in grete paryl / And in grete mysease / After they cam in to a castel named serdre² / there they founde the kyng of sklauonye. The Erle that was wel be- 4
spoken / spak moche fayr to hym / and gaf to hym largely grete yeftes and Iewellys / ffor he hoped ther by that he wold haue holden his peple in peas, And haue don hem had couenable market of vytaylles / But³ it auaylled not / ffor neuer for prayer, ne for no 8
seruyse / myght they aswage⁴ his courage / ne mollyfye the peple of the countre / But they founde them more cruel and more vyllanous than to fore. Thus were they foure wekes after in this sorowe, ffor they were forty dayes in passyng this contre / Aftir cam they 12
to duras.

Ambassadours of themperour to the sayd Erle and
bisshop / And of the conteneue of his lettres / And
of the daunger wherin the said bisshop was 16
thenne / capitulo xlvj^o.

The Emperour sent letters to the Earl of Toulouse and the Bishop of Puy,

praying them to passe through his land without doing harm.

t Hemperour had in suspicion the comyng of therle / by cause that he knewe wel that he was a moche wyse man and of grete courage. And wel herd saye that he had with hym grete 20
plente of good men / Therefore he sente to them to duras noble men of his londe that delyuerd to hym lettres fro themperour, which spak in this maner after the salewyng¹ / "The good renomme that renneth of the thurgh the world, hath made vs to haue certayn 24
tydynges / that thou art a man of grete wytte, of grete power, and of grete prouesse / Therefore we moche desyre to see the, and honoure as hym that we loue of good herte, and preyse / And we praye the moche acertaynly, and requyre for a grete yeste / that 28
thou doo thy peple passe our contrees without oultrages and doynge harme. And haste the to come to vs, alle sure to haue oure grace and oure bounte; we haue commanded that vytaylles and other necessarytes shal be sold to thy peple at prys resonable" / whan the 32
Erle and alle the barons herde thise tydynges by thise lettres, they were glad⁵ and ioyous / ffor they had longe suffred grete diseases / They toke theyr waye by forestes and by montaynes, and passed the londe of Epyre. Aftir they cam in to pelagonne, where they 36

[⁵ If. 40, bk.]
The Earl and barons were glad and joyous to receive these letters.

¹ Fr. "*pour espoenter les autres*," to frighten the others.

² Fr. *Scedre*.

³ *Orig. Bnt.*

⁴ Fr. "*adoucir son coeur*."

fonde moche grete plente of alle goodes / The valyaunt bisshop of
 puy lodged hym on a day fer fro the hoost in a fayr place that he
 founde / and in the nyght the bougres assaylled hym in his lodgys
 4 and toke hym / But by cause he was necessarye to cristiente our
 lord sauð hym, that they slewe hym not / ffor one of the barbaryns
 demaunded of hym gold / therfore he defended hym fro the other,
 that they slewe hym not / In the mene whyle the noyse was herde
 8 in the hoost. Thenne they ranne to armes / and syth ran on them /
 And recoured the bisshop with alle his thynges / On the morn
 they toke theyr waye and passed salenyke¹ / And alle macedonie /
 And after grete trauaylles and many iourneyes they cam to a cyte
 12 named Redost / Thether cam the messagers of themperour agayne /
 And spak to the erle, prayeng' hym in theyr lordes name / that he
 wold come to fore his hooste with a fewe of his companie in to
 constantynoble / Messagers ther were also fro the barons that had
 16 passed the braas / And requyred the same by mouthe, And by
 lettres fro theyr lordes. The erle hym self had sente messagers to
 fore to knowe the beyng' of the cowntre / and of the barons. And
 they were returned, whiche acordeð moche to the same, and coun-
 20 seyld hym to doo that themperour requyred.

The Bishop
 of Puy was
 assailed by
 the Bui-
 garians,
 but was
 rescued from
 danger, and
 his life pre-
 served to
 Christianity.

At Redost,
 the Em-
 peror's mes-
 sengers came
 to him
 again, also
 messengers
 from the
 Crusaders,
 begging him
 to visit the
 Emperor.

How the Erle of Tholouse beyng with themperour
 wold not do *homage* to hym, and of the despyte
 that themperour dyde / ca / xlvij:

24 b Y the prayer of so moche peple therle muste nedes doo soo at
 theyr instaunce / And thus lefte his hooste / And cam in to
 constantinoble with a fewe of his meyne / many messagers encount-
 red hym, whiche alle cam for to fetche hym / whan he cam to fore
 28 themperour he was well receyued with moche grete chere and ioye
 of hym, and² alle the barons of the palays. After themperour dyde
 to be sayd to hym / and requyred hym right swetly / that for to
 haue alwey alyaunce and amytee with hym / And also for the grete
 32 prouffyt that he shold haue therof, he shold make homage to
 themperour / lyke as alle the other had don / he answerd shortly
 that he wold none make ne doo to hym. Themperour had grete
 desdayne, and was moche wroth / he sente to fetche the conestables
 36 of his souldyours, and for them that had the charge of his men³ of

The Earl
 complied,
 and was well
 received, but

he would not
 swear fealty
 to the Em-
 peror.

At this the
 Emperor was
 very wroth,

[³ leaf 41]

¹ *Orig.* saleuyke.

² *Orig.* aud.

and com-
manded his
men to do all
the harm that
they could to
the Earl.

Armes / And commaunded them secretly in counseyl, that they
shold auyse theyr tyme and poynt, and smyte in to the hooste of
The Erle / And doo to them alle the harme they myghte, And slee
grete plente of them / This dyde Themperour¹ comaunde them 4
the more surely / by cause that he wyste wel that they that were
on that othersyde myght not helpe them, And by cause they were
his² men³ they wold not sone greue them³ / And had commaunded
that alle the shippes to bere ouer vytaylle, sholde come hastely 8
ageyn in to the Cyte, So that they on that other syde shold not
come ouer agayn / ⁴ffor euer he had suspicion thassemble of oure
peple⁴ / And therefore he made them to passe ouer eche after other
as they cam / The grete chere that he made to them / And the grete 12
yeftes that he gaf, cam more by barate and of drede than of loue
or of largesse / But oure peple, and specially the ffrenssmen, myght
not byleue that this Ioye that he made to them / Ne the Rychesse
that he gaf myght come of ony trayson ne of euyll / They knewe 16
not by experyence so moche thenne as they dyde afterward.

The great
gifts, and the
welcome that
the Emperor
gave the
Crusaders,
was nought
but treachery
and decep-
tion.

How themperour, for tauenge⁵ hym on therle / made
his Conestables tenbusshe them / and assaylle
the hoost of therle / ca / xlviiij. 20

The Greeke
made an
ambush, and
attacked the
Earl's army
by night.

He conestables whiche had commandement of Themperour,¹
t spak to gydre to theyr men / And made a busschement nyghe
to the hooste of the Erle of Tholouse / In the nyght, whan
they had supposed alle well to be assured, themperours peple smote 24
in among them, and slewe and wondded many or they were awaked
and apperceyued it / But whan the crye arroos / And the noble
men of thooste apperceyued the trayson, they armed them and
reteyned theyr peple that began to flee / and after ran vpon them 28
of themperour, And slewe many / and chassed the remenaunt. On
the morn they of the hooste began to be moche esmayed of the
trauaylle that they / had suffred in the nyght / And of the trayson
of the grekes / and theyr hertes began to⁶ cole / and to faylle of 32
the purpose of theyr waye and pylgremage. And not only the

The pilgrims
put their
assailers to
flight, but
were much
disheartened
by the
treachery of
the Greeks.

¹ *Orig.* Themperonr.

² Fr. *si homes*, his liege men, that is, they had sworn fealty to him.

³⁻³ Fr. "*ne li nuiroient mie si legierement*," they would not for a light thing injure him.

⁴ Fr. "*Car toujours avoit il souspeçonneuse l'assemblée de nos gens*."

⁵ *Orig.* tauenge.

⁶ Fr. *refroidier*.

smal & comune peple, but many of the grete & noble men had
 forgoten theyr vowes and theyr honours, and wold haue retorned
 home vnto theyr cuntry. But the noble bisshop of Puy / and
 4 ¹ the Bisshop² of Orange were emonge them, and many good, wyse, But the good Bishops of [1. fr. 41, bk.]
 relygyous men and clerkys, that prechyd to them the wordes of our
 lord, and recomforted them moche wel / And shewde them that yf
 they retorned, they shold lese thonour of this world / And also of
 8 that other. Thus with grete peyne they retheyned them. whan the
 erle, whiche was in Constantynople, herde of the trayson that was
 don to hym in his hoost, he was as a man out of his wytte, &
 anon sente his men to themperour / And sente hym word that he
 12 had betrayde hym. ffor whyles he retheyned hym and made hym
 good chere, he had doo slee his peple by trayson / And sente worde
 herof to the barons that were on that other syde, prayeng them as
 his bretheren that they wold come to hym to auenge it. wel may
 16 ye knowe that yf therle had power sufficient, he wold not haue
 departed tyl he had auengyd hym; And that it shold haue ben
 dere bought / ffor he was a man of grete courage, And forgate not
 lightly shame don to hym / Themperour sawe that this thyng was
 20 goon ouer ferre, in suche wyse that he repented hym / that he had
 so commaunded in his angre and hastynes, and hasted hym moche
 for to sette counseyl in this werke / And sente / for Buymont and
 therle of fflaundes to come and speke with hym / by cause he wold
 24 sende them for to appese therle of Tholouse / They cam, whiche
 were moche angry of this that was don / They wente to therle in
 the name of themperour / But they sayd to hym more on theyr
 owne behalue than of themperours / They shewde hym wel that it
 28 was not tyme ne place for tauenge his shames that had ben don to
 hym in the seruyse of oure lord, ffor it shold be empesshement
 vnto the grete werke that they had enterprised for to saue theyr
 sowles / And on that other syde, yf they wolde so doo, they had
 32 not the power ne pyssaunce; therfor it were better to hyde their
 thoughtes / than to discouere theyr hertes, to theyr damage and
 shame / the Erle, thus angry, was no fool / but³ souffre that his
 wytte vaynquyssh his angre / And said that he wold submette to
 36 thysse two noble men that spak to hym, and byleue them / They
 cam to themperour priuely,⁴ and shewd to hym al the fowle dede
 and werke that was commysed / Themperour vnderstode the grete
 yre that they had in their hertes / & sente for therle to come to

When the
 Earl heard
 of the
 Emperour's
 treason he
 was beside
 himself with
 anger.

The Emperour
 saw that he
 had gone too
 far, and
 begged Bohemond
 and Robert of
 Flanders to
 help him
 appease the
 Earl of Toulouse.

The Earl,
 who was no
 fool, listened
 to the Emperour's
 excuses.

² *Orig.* Bisslop.*Orig.* bnt.⁴ *Orig.* priuely.

hym in to his palays / & excused hym to fore alle pryue, & apperte, & estrangerys, that he had not comanded this fayte to be doon / but it displeysd hym moche / And yet he, beyng without culpe and blame therof, he was redy to restore to the Duc alle the 4
 The Emperour offered to
 [1 leaf 42]
 make good the damage done by his men to the Crusaders.
 dammages that ¹were don to his hooste after his power. Thus every day by day / and more and more myght wel be perceyued the grete hate that the grekes had to the latyns, And of the desloyal felonnye that themperour had in his herte / ayenst oure peple / but 8
 it must be suffred / ffor it myght not thenne be amended.

How at thynstaunt prayer of the barons of the
 hooste / The Erle made homage to themperour /
 whiche gaf grete yeftes to hym and his. 12

Capitulo xlix^o

a Fter the counseyl of the other barons / the erle was therto
 meuyd / And by the grete prayers of themperour, that he dyde
 homage to hym, and sware to hym feaulte, lyke as the other had 16
 doon / And the pees was affermed emong them. Themperour gaf
 to them so grete yeftes / that alle they were merueyllously esmayed /
 The other barons, that were come ouer agayn on the hether syde,
 receyued newe yeftes and presentes. After, they passed the braas, 20
 and returned in to bethnie. And they prayd moche the erle that
 he shold not longe tarye and abyde there. the Erles hoost cam in
 to Constantynoble / And he made them passe ouer the braas, & to
 lodge with the other: he hym self abode in the toun, for certeyn 24
 necessytees² that he had do to doo and to ordeyne / And he, as a
 moche wyseman, prayde and Incited ofte themperour / that he
 shold enterpryse the seruyse of our lord, And that he wold be lord
 and capytayn of alle the hoost / where as were so many noble men / 28
 And he had hope that our lord shold sende to hym suche honnour
 that he shold delyuere his peple and londe by hym / ³wel coude the
 Erle make to hym remonstrance / acording to the barons whiche
 had spoken in this mater³ / Themperour answerd to them alle in 32
 one maner / that this pylgremage⁴ was a moche hye thyng / and
 that he moche desyred the pardon / And aboue alle other thyng the
 The Earl arrived in Constantynoble, and his men encamped near the others.
 The Earl endeavoured to persuade the Emperour to go to Jerusalem with them.
 The Emperour answered that he much desired to go.

² *Orig.* uccessytees.

³⁻³ Fr. "*Bien scavoit le conte lui monstrier, selonc ce que les autres barons lui avoient monstré quil parlast, et euzmesmes en avoient parlé.*"

⁴ *Orig.* pylgrenagr.

compagne of so hye noble men plesyd hym moche. And about
 hym and his empyre he sayd he had moch cruel peple and moch
 vntrew, as the Bougres, the comans, and other that gladly wold doo
 4 harme to hym and to his londe, and conquere his Empyre, as moche
 as they myght gete / And therefore it were grete parylle for me to
 withdrawe fro my Countre / well and fayre he excused hym
 withoute forth / But that he sayd to oure ¹peple was but trycherye [11. 42, bk.]
 8 and falsehed; ne he had neuer talente to helpe our peple / But
 thought wel in his herte how he myght noye them to his power /
 They that were ouer the braas / The Duc Godeffroy / Buymont /
 therle of fflaundes / And the Bisshop of Puy, aduysed and ordeyned
 12 theyr affayres for them / And sayde they wold drawe them to ward
 Nycene / ffor to abyde there the other Barons that were comyng on
 the way / whan they approched a cyte which was named Nyco-
 mede / which is the oldest Cyte of the Countre of Bythyne / Be ye
 16 certayne that Pieter theremyte, with a fewe peple that had abyden
 there, yssued oute of the poure ²place / And had ben there for the
 wynter. And cam ayenst thyse Barons, and salewed them. They
 made to them good chere / And demanded them of theyr way
 20 and Iourneyes / They gaf to them ³grete yefets, of whiche they had
 grete nede. ⁵Pieter tolde to them theyr grete mesauentures, ⁴And
 sayde that it cam by theyr owne oultrage and folye. Thyse noble
 men of whome I haue sayd, had peple snowgh, and cam to Nycene /
 24 And assieged it the XV / day of maye / They lefte places nough
 for to lodge the other Barons that cam after. The Erle of Tho-
 louse, whan he had do made suche thynges as hym neded in
 Constantynoble / he toke leue of Themperour / whiche gaf to hym
 28 ryche yeftes alle newe / And cam after hastely to the syege of
 Nycene.

But his coun-
try was so
surrounded
by hostile
nations, that
it would be
very danger-
ous for him
to leave
home.

[11. 42, bk.]

The great
barons de-
cided to go
to Nicæa
and wait for
the coming
of the others.

On the way
they encoun-
tered Peter
the Hermit,

who recounts
his misfor-
tunes.

The Cru-
saders com-
mence the
siege of
Nicæa the
15th day of
May.

How duc Robert of Normandy, and other here
 named, approched Constantinoble / and made
 32 homage to themperour. ca° l°

i N the whyle that they leyde the syege / Robert duc of
 normandy, and other noble men with hym; that is to saye,
 Steuen therle of Chartres and of bloys / Eustace broder of
 Robert, Duke
 of Normandy,
 and other
 noblemen

² Orig. ponre.

³⁻⁵ Caxton has translated here very freely. Fr. "telement qu'ilz curent
 grandement leurs necessités."

⁴ Orig. mesauentures.

sent messengers to the Emperor.

They had spent the winter in Apulia, but in the spring had crossed to Duras,

[leaf 43]

and after long marches arrived in Constantinople.

The Emperor welcomed them, and demanded the oath of fealty, which they gave.

They then pursued their way to Nicæa, where they were received with great joy.

Duc Godeffroye, sente to the Emperour and to other Barons theyr messagers / In theyr companye were Steven¹ daubmable, Alayn fergaunt / And Conayn, two hye Barons of Brytayne; The erle Rotheron of Perse, Rogyer de Barneuyll / Thyse and other ynowgh ⁴ were² in the Yere to fore, in thentre of Wynter, comen In³ to Puyllle and in to Calabre, whiche⁴ ben good Countreyes / Whan the newe tyme was comen / they assembled theyr peple / And ordeyned theyr passage on the see, And cam to duras / And by ⁸ cause they had taryed so ⁵longe, they hasted them moche, and passed Macedomone and the two thaarses, And by grete Iourneyes and grete trauaylles cam vnto Constantynople. Themperour sente for them to come to hym / They that knewe how the other barons ¹² had don, cam in to his palays to hym / He receyued them with moche grete Ioye / Alle his Barons made to them grete⁶ feste / He spak to eueryche by hym self ryght swetly, ⁷and acqweynted⁸ with hem⁷ / After dyde do requyre of them homage and feaulte. They ¹⁶ dyde as the other had don that were passed to fore / And sayd it was no shame to ensiewe thensample of so valyaunt men, ne to doo that they had don / They becam his men, and dyde hym homage, and swore to hym / Themperoure receyued them in his grace / And ²⁰ gaf to them so grete yeftes that they were abasshed alle / ffor the yeftes were so ryche and so dynerse / that they neuer to fore had seen none such / And after toke theyr leue⁹ of Themperour / And passed the braas of Seynt George / And cam with grete haste to ²⁴ Nycene / where as the hooste of cristiente abode for them. The Ioye was grete whan they were comen, whiche were the laste / They lodged them in the places that were kept for them.

How themperour sente for to destroye oure Cristen ²⁸
men one his seruaunt, faynyng to be a trewe
Conduyteur & guyde. ca° lj°

¹ Fr. *Etienne d'Aubemarle*.

² Caxton has here omitted "*avecques le conte de Flandres, et avec Huon le Maine.*"

³ Misled by the recurrence of the words "*Apulia and Calabria*" Caxton has here omitted several lines. Fr. "*en Puille et en Calabre. Mais quand les autres passèrent jusques à Duras, ceulz-ci pour la presse de Piver y rassem¹erent leurs gens, et se remiserent en Puille et en Calabre qui sont moult bonnes terres.*" ⁴ *Orig. whche.* ⁶ *Orig. grede.*

⁷⁻⁷ Fr. "*et moult bien les acointa,*" and received them kindly.

⁸ *Orig. acqweynted.*

⁹ *Orig. lene.*

- Atyns¹ was a Greke, and wel acqueynted with themperour, Latyns was a
 1 the moost fals, vntrewe man that euer was. And so he wel trencherous
 semeð / ²ffor he had his nosethrellys remuleð and tourned.² and deceitful
 4 This felawe, by the commandement of his lorde, wente with oure Greek,
 men / And sayð that he wold conduyte³ them, ffor he knewe wel who, by the
 alle the Contre and the paases by whiche they wold passe and goo / Emperor,
 But Themperour dyde alle this for euyll / ffor he trusted in the conducted
 8 falsensse of this fals greek / whiche counseyllèd them allewey to our men.
 theyr dammage / And was alway as the serpent emonge the elis.
 And themperour had charged hym for to late hym wyte every day
 how the hoost behaued them, and of theyr purpose / And therupon
 12 he wold sende to hym his wylle and⁴ entente / At this sieghe oure
 people first assembled to gydre, and the Capyteyns and barons spak At the sieghe
 of theyr comune⁵ werkes and counseyls / ffor to fore they had the of Nicæa,
 nener ben to gydre, ne seen eche other / ⁶ther was knowen the Crusaders
 16 certaynly⁷ by nombre and by extymacion to ⁸fore Nycene,⁶ whan [§ If. 43, bk.]
 they were alle assembled / sixe .C / thousand men a fote / And of There were
 knyghtes and men of armes on horsbak, an hundred thousand or 600,000 foot-
 moo / They alle had moche grete wylle for to employe them wel in soldiers and
 20 this warre / And desyreð moche at this fyrst begynnynge of their 100,000
 warre to enterprise so hyely and doo so wel / that alle other peple knights and
 shold doubte them. horse men.

Of the situacion of Nycene / And how our peple
 24 approched therto / Merueyllyng of the place and
 of the strengthe / cap^o lij^o

- o F the cyte of nycene, knowe ye that it had be vnder tharche-
 bysshop of nychomede / But themperour constantyn made it to
 28 be taken away fro the power of this archebysshop / and it was a
 place of honour / by cause⁹ the fyrst of the iiij grete counseylls
 had be sette there / ffor in the tyme of seynt syluestre the pope / Nicæa was
 a place of
 honor, be-
 cause the first
 of the four
 great counceils
 had been held
 there.

¹ Fr. *Latins*. Lat. *Latinus*.

²⁻² Fr. "*Car il avoit unes narines rennilées.*" Lat. "*nares habens mutilas in signum mentis perversae.*" Caxton evidently read *remulées*, and then not understanding the word, gave it an English termination, and transferred it bodily to his translation.

³ *Orig.* condnyte. ⁴ *Orig.* aud. ⁵ *Orig.* comne.

⁶⁻⁶ One of the important verbs is left out in this sentence. Fr. "*selonc ce quil fut certainement sceu par nombre et par estimacion ilz eurent devant Nicene,*" etc., *i. e.* they had before Nicene, etc.

⁷ *Orig.* certayuly.

⁹ *Orig.* canse.

In the time of the Emperour Constantine, there was a heretic named Arrius.

318 prelates assembled at Nicæa, and condemned Arrius and his heresy.

The seventh Council of the Church was also held here, when Adrian was Pope of Rome.

The country round about is fair and fertile.

The walls of the city are strong, high, and thick,

[7 leaf 44]

and the people fierce and hardy, and skilful in arms.

ther was a patriarke of constantinoble, named alexandre / & emperour constantin / ther was a mescreaunt named arrius / which mesprised certeyn poyntes of the fayth / & many men folowed hym. therfor assembled in the Cyte of Nycene iij. C. xvij. 4 prelates / And there was disputet̄ ayenst this popelican. And by wytnes of scripture, and by thaccord of holy men that were there, Arryus was condempned̄ and his myscreaunce / Syth after, in the tyme of an another constantyn, Emperour, whiche was sone vnto 8 ayerne,¹ Assembled̄ another counseyl² in the same place / whiche was the / vij / Thenne was adryan pope of Rome : And Tarestē³ was patriarke of constantinople. there were dampned som mysbyleuyd peple, that said / that alle the ymages that were made in 12 holy chirche were ayenst the fayth, And they were false cristen men and⁴ vntrewe that suffred̄ them. This cyte of Nycene stondesth in a playn, but the montaynes beu nyghe / And it lacked̄ not moche, ⁵but they be round̄ aboute⁵ / The countrey is moche fayr and 16 plentyuous / ⁶the grete forestes ben by a ryuer nyghe the cyte, toward the weste, moche longe and brode⁶ / By that ryuer the shyppes brynge vytaylle and̄ other marchandyse in to the cyte ; whan it is a grete wynde, the grete wawes smyte sore on the walles. 20 On that other part of the toun ben grete dyches, brode and̄ depe, And̄ ful of water, of a lake and other ffontaynes. The walles aboute be stronge, hye / thycke / And̄ fulle of grete Tourettys / The Peple within ⁷the toun were fiers and hardy, and wel aduysed 24 of armes⁸ / And̄ grete plente there were / whan oure men approched it, they merucylled moche of the strengthe of the toun.

How the puyssaunt Turke Solyman, with a grete hoost, aduysed tyme and houre to assayle and 28 smyte on our peple, for to reyse the siege /
Capitulo liij^o

s Olyman, of whome I haue spoken to fore, whiche was a moche puyssaunt Turke, had the seynorye of this cyte / and of alle 32

¹ Fr. *Irenæ*. Lat. *Irenæ*. ² *Orig. couseyl*.

³ Fr. *Tarestes*. ⁴ *Orig. aud.*

⁵⁻⁵ Fr. "*qu'elles ne soient tout entour*," but that they surround it entirely.

⁶⁻⁶ Fr. "*Les granz forez sont delez ; uns lais est pres de la cité moult lèz et moult lons devers occident*." Caxton's French text gave "*river*" (*fleuve*), which he has followed, but the Latin and the other French translations give "*lake*" (*lais*). ⁸ Fr. "*avisés d'armes*," skilled in armes.

the countre aboute. he was moche wyse / hardy and manly of his body. ffor the tyme that he herde of the comynge of our peple / he was garnysshed of his frendes and soldyours for to defende his cyte and his londe. An vncler of his, named Belphet, (18) moche puyssaunt and ryche, had late conquerd alle the londe that is fro the braas of seynt george vnto surry / whiche is / xxx / iourneyes longe / In that tyme Romanus diogenes was Emperour,¹ whiche was to fore alexes / that was deposed / This belphet, soudan of perse, had gyuen the gretter parte of the londe to solyman his neuwe / in suche wyse that he had alle the londe fro the cyte of tarce, that is in Cylyce, vnto the braas of seynt george / Thus this Solyman had his baylles in the town of Constantinoble,³ whiche resseyuyd his passages⁴ and custommes of the marchans of the toun and of other. This solyman was withdrawn to the montaynes with as moche peple as he myght haue, a x / myle fro the hoost, And dyde lye in a wayte and espye how he myght fynde the maner to reyse the siege / yf he had mocht /

Solyman was wise, hardy, and manly.

His vncler Belphet had conquered all the land from Constantinoble to Syria.

Belphet gave the gretter part of their lands to Solyman.

How Solyman, beyng in the montaynes, sente his messagers to them of the toun, & of the comfort that he gaf to them. ca^o liiij^o.

Wre peple cam to fore the tonn, and withoute acorde and without any ordenaunce began tassaylle, in suche wyse that they within myght not yssue / ne they without entre. But the grete lake that touched the town destroubled moche, ffor they myghte, maulgre the Hooste, goo and come by the see as ofte as they wolde / Oure Peple had none shippes, ne myght not deffende the lake. Certaynly they had besyged⁵ it wel by londe / Solyman, that sawe this cyte thus enuyroned with peple, wherof he was wroth & angry / And doubted moche that they of the toun shold be abasshed of the grete multitude. ther for he sente two of his preuy messagers, And commaunded them in his name that they shold entre in to the toun / And saye thyse wordes, " I holde you so valyaunt men, and of suche prouesse, that I byleue certaynly

The Crussaders inuested Nicæa, but the inhabitants were still able to go and come by the Lake.

[⁵ ff. 44, bk.]

Solyman sent two messengers to the town,

¹ Orig. Emperonr.

² Lat. "qui ante hunc Alexium fuerat tertius."

³⁻⁵ Caxton's corrupt French text does not follow the Latin very closely here. The text of the *Historiens Occidentaux* gives a more correct version; "En tel maniere neis quil avoit ses baillez, d'autre part, en la veue de Constantinople," i. e. he had his bailiffs just in sight of, not within Constantinople.

⁴ Fr. *peages*, tolls for passage.

telling the inhabitants not to fear the Crusaders, who were weary with travel, and poorly armed;

that ye preyse and sette lytil by this peple, that ben comen fro so fer contreyes, where the sonne goth down. And they be wery, euyl ordeyned and garnysshed, and haue none horses that may endure trauayll / we ben fressh, and our horses rested in our contre / 4 wherof it is no doubte we be better than they an C / tymes. And that ye maye wel knowe, ffor it is not longe syth that we disconfyted in one day moo than / l. M / Therfor conforte you and mayntene you as noble men, ffor to morn, to fore the houre of none, 8 ye shal be without¹ faylle delyuerd of them alle / but be ye wel. aduertysed & redy, that whan we smyte in the hoost / ye opene youre² yates and yssue vpon them in suche wyse / that ye thenne be parteyners of the vycctorye of thonour / & of the prouffyt" / 12

and to be ready, for he would come the next day to deliver them.

How the messagers of Solyman were taken by our men, and by them was knowen the couyne of the cap^o. lv^o.

Our peple espyed the messengers, and killed one, and took the other prisoner.

t He messagers of Solyman cam upon the lake, And arryued a 16 lytil ferre fro the toun. And after began tespye and see how they myght entre in to the cyte / Oure peple apperceyued them and ran on them, that one of them was slayn atte takynge / That other was brought a lyue to fore the barons / they made hym to be 20 drawn and payned to saye the trouthe. he confessyd and sayde that Solyman had sente them in to the cyte ³for to garnysse them & make them redy / ffor theyr lord on the morn shold come³ and

After hearing his confession, the great barons took counsel, and prepared to meet Solyman,

smyte sodanly in the hoost / the barons byleuyd hym wel. And 24 commaunded hym to be kept / And toke counseyl among them how they shold doo. Therle of Tholouse and the bisshop of puy were not yet come vnto the hoost / The barons sente for them hastily for this thynge / They cam and rode alle the nyght, in suche wyse 28 that they cam in to the hoost to fore the sonne rysyng. The baners were displayed, and the trompes sowned. Ther was moche peple,

who arrived, as he had promised, the next morning.

& vnneth myght they be lodged in the places that were kept for them / Thenne Solyman at the hour of tierce / lyke as he sayd that 32 was taken / cam down fro the montayn in to the playn. Thenne our peple that were ⁴wel aduertysed armed them. And dyde do

[⁴ leaf 45]

¹ *Orig.* without.

² *Orig.* yonre.

³⁻³ Fr. "*pour eulx garnir de ce que leur seigneur vendroit le lendemain,*" to warn them that their lord would come the next day; *garnir* seems here to be used in its original German sense.

sowne the trompettes. Euery man drewe hym in to his bataylle as it was ordeyned / and moche quykely¹ were alle sette in ordenaunce.

4 How a grete bataylle of Solyman cam smyte vpon our peple, And of thende of the scarmuche.

capitulo lvi^o

o F the hooste of Solyman departed a bataylle fro the other, wherin where² .x.M / men on horsbak / And drewe them 8 toward the gate right toward the south / Ther was lodged therle of thoulouse. And this yate was delyuerd hym to kepe / But Solyman that the day to fore had espyed that waye and had seen no man there lodged / And wende that no man had ben there / ffor he 12 knewe nothyng of the comynge of therle ne his companye / this bataylle smote in emonge the peple that were comen / They receyued them moche fiersly with glayues & swerdes / & sore adommaged them / ³And made them to resorte agayu bakward.³ 16 Solyman⁴ that ensiewed made them to retourne with hym, and assembled to the peple of the erle of fflaunders / The duc godefroye, buymont, and therle of thoulouse, aduysed and sawe that ther were so many of the turkes / that the erle of fflaunders myght not suffre 20 alle. And adressyd theyre bataylle to that parte / And smote in emonge them. The medle was moche harde / and aspre⁵ / And many turkes were slayn / Ther was so moche don and so wel / that 24 Guy de gerlande, seneshal of the kynge of ffrance,⁶ Guy du puysett, Rogier de barneuylle / Thyse bare away the prys to fore all other. But this bataylle endured wel an houre al hoole / In thende the turkes myght suffre nomore our peple / But were discomfyted

One of Solyman's battalions attacked the Earl of Toulouse.

Solyman driven back, returned and attacked them again.

Many Turks were slain.

After an hour's contest they were forced to flee.

¹ *Orig.* quykely. ² Fr. *estoint*, "were," not "*where*."

²⁻³ Fr. "*et firent ressortir arriere*."

⁴ According to the Latin original Soliman on returning, attacked, not the troops of the count of Flanders, but those of the count of Toulouse, and the count of Flanders came to his rescue with Godfrey of Boulogne and Bohemond. Caxton's translation is due to his corrupt French text. Lat. "*cum ecce Solimannus, cum maioribus subsequens copiis eis, refundens animos qui jam erant dissoluti, secum iterum in nostros redire compulit. At vero dux, dominus quoque Boamundus et comes Flandrensis, cum suis expeditionibus, ad unguem armati, videntes hostium majores advenisse cuneos et turmas densiores, [et] gravi multitudine et animosa instantia comitis exercitum supra rires fatigari, irruunt unanimiter, et hostium se inferunt legionibus.*"

⁵ Fr. *aspre*, vigorous, sharp.

⁶ Lat. *Guido de Posseva. A Guy de Posseva.*

and fledde away moche fowly / Our peple folowed them not ferre,
 ffor the montaynes and the wodes were ouer nere in which they
 fledde / But were of turkes slayn / iiij. thousand, and som ther were
 a lyue taken / Oure peple had moche grete ioye of this vycторыe, 4
 and cam ageyn to theyr siege, and besieged the toun¹ as wel as
 they myghte for to angre and discourage them within the toun,
 whiche awayted after socoure. They made to be caste with engynes
 to them within the toun grete plente of heedes of the turkes that 8
 had ben slayn in the bataylle / The prisonners a lyue and a
 thousand heedes of the turkes they sente to themperour / He coude
 them grete thanke and had therof moche ioye. And sente to them
 agayne newe yeftes of Iewellys, of clothes of sylk and other 12
 thynges right largely / And commaunded to the marchauntes² that
 they shold lede vytaylle ynowe vnto the hooste / and other thynges
 necessarye.

The Crui-
 saders were
 greatly en-
 couraged by
 this victory.

They sent a
 thousand
 heads of the
 slain to the
 Emperour.

[2 l. 46, bk.]

How oure barons were lodged in the sayd siege / of 16
 their mayntene / And how euery daye they en-
 forced³ them tassaylle the toun / Capitulo lvii^o

m Oche thought our barons how this cyte myght be assieged⁴ on
 alle partyes, ffor other wyse them semed they myght not gete it / 20
 By comyn counseyl they lodged them alle / They sette ayenst the
 sonne rysyng the duc and his two bretheren / Toward byse⁴ were
 lodged buymont and⁵ tancre and the other barons that were in
 theyr companye / ⁶The duc⁷ of normandye and the erle of fflaunders 24
 lodged by them to ward the south / The erle of tholouse,⁶ hue le
 mayne, the bisshop of puy, therle of chartres, and other barons,
 many with alle their peple, were so lodged that alle the cyte was
 enclosed sauf the lake whiche was in the weste / And after sente 28
 they hastily in to the forest. And made to come grete plente of
 tymbre for to make engyns / Alle the carpenters of the hoost⁸ and

The great
 barons take
 counsel how
 to arrange
 the siege of
 Nycena.

They sent for
 timber to
 make ma-
 chines.

¹ *Orig.* tonn.

³ Fr. "*ilz s'efforcoient*," they exerted themselves.

⁴ Fr. "*deuers bise*," toward the North. Lat. *Septentrionalis*.

⁵ *Orig.* aud.

⁶⁻⁸ Caxton has altered the sense here, by wrongly dividing his sentence, misled probably by his original, in which it is difficult to decide which is the correct division. A. gives the clearer and more correct reading—" *li quens de Flandres et li dus de Normandie se logierent lés anz: deuers midi fu li quens de Toulouse*," etc.

⁷ *Orig.* duk.

⁸ *Orig.* hoost

sawyers cam forth / of whom was grete nombre. In a lytil whyle
 reysed they engynes and slynges. And made in therthe wayes and
 caues couerd for to fylle the dyches and to myne the walles,
 4 Ther was grete caste of grete stones at the walles and tourettes / so
 that in many places the walles were clefte and broken in many
 partes / ffor to doo thyse thynges / they were wel .vii. wekes.
 There were in this whyle many assaultes and fyghtes ofte to fore
 8 the yates / On a day the barons acordeð that the toun shold be
 assaylled; but this assault endamaged lytil the toun ne them
 within. But ther were lost two valyaunt men / that one was
 nameð Bawdwyn handeron,¹ a ryche man and a good knyght of
 12 berry / That other was of fflaunders named Bawdwyn of gaunt,
 noble and hardy / ²Thyse two wente so ferre to fore daye, that² the
 one was slayn with a stroke of a stone / ³And that other with an
 Arowe / Guyllem, Erle of forest / And Galles de lylle,³ thyse two
 16 were hye noble men / and assaylled moche that day. In this tyme
 deyde of sekenes in the hoost guy de possesse a moche good knyght.
 The hooste were sorouful of the deth of thyse noble men / but
 euery man⁴ that our lord wolde gwerdone them perpetually in
 20 heuen ffor the good seruyse that they deyde in. They were
 honourably buryed / And after entended vnto theyr werke /

They soon
raised engines
and slings

They cast
great stones
at the wall,
and broke it
in many
places.

They assault-
ed the town,
but damaged
it but little.

The army
was very
sorrowful,
because of the
death of two
noble men.

⁵How our barons made theyr castellys of tree and ap-
 prouched the toun. And how they within the
 24 toun brake one of them and slewe them with
 Inne. Capitulo lvij.

[⁵ leaf 47]

o N a day the capytaynes of the hooste were acordeð that the
 castellys that they had made shold be drawn forth and aproche
 28 the walles / ffor eche of the greet men had commaunded to make

They decided
to move their
engines up to
the wall.

¹ Fr. *Baudoin Chauderon*. Lat. *Calderon*.

²⁻² Fr. "*ces deux s'estoient moult tirés avant, ce jour, tant que,*" etc., these two had gone so far in advance (of the others) that day, that, etc.—Caxton has mistaken "avant" for a preposition governing day, instead of an adverb modifying "tirés."

³⁻³ Fr. "*li autres d'une sajete, et remest li assauz, un autre jour fu recommenciez li assauz par acort des barons et fu occis d'une sajete,* Guillaums li quens de Fores, et Galles de Lyle. Caxton has ruined the sense here, by his "bourdon." He has omitted all between the two "sajetes."

⁴ Fr. "*tos avoient ferme esperance que nostre Seigneur, qui en son service les prenoit, leur querredouoit moult hautement à tousjours.*" Caxton has omitted. "had a firm hope," just before "that our Lord."

Herman of
Germany and
Henri
D'Asque
devis'd a pow-
erful engine.

The Turks
broke this
engine and
killed all the
knights
within.

Our men
could not
prevent the
enemy from
entering the
city by the
lake.

an engyne hastily in his parte / The erle herman of duchelon¹
and¹ henry dasque, that were good² knyghtes and² enterprisers, had
deuys'd a thyng of a³ grete tronke of an oke, and had sette theron /
xx / knyghtes alle couerd aboue / And vnder they had men ynough 4
for to myne the walle / They approuched³ the castel that it ioyned³
to the walle / The knyghtes aboue began to deffende them, And
they vnder persed the walle. The turkes within had dressed⁴ the
grettest part of theyr engyns to this castel, and⁴ many strokes had 8
smeton so longe that wyth the strok of a grete stone ⁴they brake
alle and fylle doun to gydre⁴ in suche wyse that neuer one⁵ escaped
aboue ne vnder, but alle were deed, There was grete sorowe in the
hoost / And moche more shold be, ne had not be the grete com- 12
forte that they had in our lord / They lefte not herfore, but euery
man payned hym more and more to greue them with Inne / An⁶
gaf to them so many assaultes day and nyght / that they lete them
haue but lytil reste / but one thyng ther was that greued our peple 16
moche / An⁶ that was that ther cam euery day in to the tounne
fresshe vytaylles and newe men / Armouris and⁶ artyllery by the
lake / An⁶ they coude not defende it, wherof they were moche
marryd⁶. 20

Of the counseyll that our men toke for tassiege the
toun by watre for to constreyne them not for to
entre ne yssue / cap^o lix^o.

li Erof wold our barons haue counseyll how they myght dis- 24
trouble this comyng by water / They assembled and acorded
that they wold⁷ sende of theyr knyghtes grete plente, wyse men,
and⁷ men a fote and⁷ take alle the shippes at the see syde that they
coude fynde,⁶ and sette them vpon charyottes of the hoost and 28
brynge suche as they myght brynge hoole. An⁶ the other they
shold⁷ parte in two pyeces or three. And also they wold⁷ sende to
themperour and⁷ praye hym that he wold⁷ delyuer to them shippes /
They that had⁷ charge of this werke cam to the see without taryeng⁷ 32
and fonde shippes grete plente, suche as they had nede of. An⁶
by ⁷the commaundement of themperour, whiche graunted gladly,

[ll. 47, bk.]

¹ Orig. amd. ² Fr. "*entreprenants*," enterprising.

³ Fr. "*de gros trës de chene*," of large timbers of oak.

⁴⁻⁴ Fr. "*Il deffroisa et chëut tout ensemble*," it broke in pieces, and fell down in a heap.

⁵ Orig. oue.

⁶ Orig. fyude.

drewe out of the water ynowgh, Thenne coupled they to gydre
 four¹ cartes or fyue after that the shyppes were, and sette them
 thereon by force of peple al hole, and with many men drewe them
 4 forth with cordes and with trayse of the cartes in one nyght / vij.
 longe myle or more / These shippes were taken of and launched in
 to the lake moche hastily, ffor many hondes make light werke.
 And the peple wente therto with a good wylle. They had emonge
 8 them many marounners that conde wel shippecrafte / And they were
 sette therin, moche peple offerd them self to entre alle armed / they
 toke as many as neded, and garnysshed wel thyse shippes / Somme
 shippe had in an hondred / and other / l. or xxx. or xx / after they
 12 gretenes / in suche wyse that the waye that they had in the lake,
 Oure men hadde taken from them, whan they of the hooste sawe that
 this waye of the laken was take from them,² they had grete Ioye.
 And hoped that the siege shold not endure / The turkes of the
 16 toun whan they apperceyved that oure men had don so grete a
 we-^{le} and so stronge, They fyll in despayre and were abassled and
 merueyelled of the vygour of our peple that had don this in so short
 tyme / And thenne were they enclosed on alle sydes, and had loste
 20 the waye for theyr shippes.

In one night they drew the ships seven miles overland.

They soon launched them in the lake,

and garnished them with sailors.

How after the Cyte was asseyged by water and by
 londe, oure men assaylled it / And of a Shotte
 that Duc Godefroye dyde. Capitulo / lx^o

24 w Han the Barons sawe that theyr shippes were in the lake in
 suche wyse that no man myght grete them, Anon they dyde
 do crye that alle men shold arme them and come to thassault, And
 it was acorded that eche of the barons shold assaylle in that parte
 28 where he was lodged / they admonested and enforced theyr peple
 to doo wel / Thassault was more³ / than euer it had be / There
 somme threwe out of thengyns grete nombre of stoness / Euery man
 dyde his part: toward the south in the partye that was delyuerd⁴
 32 to therle of thoulouse / there was an hye toure more grete than ony
 of the other / by that toure was the palays, In whiche Solymans wyf
 was. Therle had sette alle his entent for to breke this toure longe
 tyme / ⁵ffor he had doo throwen ther at grete stoness⁵ / And had

The barons now ordered a second assault.

The palace in which Solyman's wife lived was near the Earl of Toulouse,

¹ *Orig. founr.*

² *i. e. the towns-people.*

³ *Fr. greindre, greater.*

⁴ *Orig. delynerd.*

⁵⁻⁶ *Fr. "Car il y avoit fait jeter deux grosses perrières longnement."*

The Earl of
Toulouse at-
[1 leaf 48]
tacked this
tower vigor-
ously.

The troops
mined the
walls, and
threw such
large stones
at it,
that they
weakened it.

Those within
made a new
wall of lime
and stones.

A huge Turk
damaged our
men greatly
with his bow.

Duke Godfrey
shot the man
through the
body, so that
he fell down
dead.

The Saracens
were much
abashed of
this feat.

not broken one stone of the tour / And by cause he wold not for
shame so leue it without takyng of it. And ordeyned gretter
1stones alle newe, 2which began to breke the creuaches of the same
tour2 / & with the strokes of the stones moche powdre cam out 4
of the clyftes / The peple of the hoost apperceyued it / And sawe
that the toure began to falle / they passed the dyche / and brought3
engyns vnto the walles. Ther began they with grete exploit to
myne the walle and to perse it, they within caste grete stones upon 8
the engyns / And with shotte of handbowes and arbalestres they
hurted4 many of them that they sawe discoverd / And by cause
they sawe that the5 closyng of the toure began to faylle / they walled
it within forth with stones and chalk, and made a right stronge 12
wall good and thycke / 6Our men that were atte tour6 had made an
hole in the walle, that two men myght wel entre attones frely /

On the walle in the parte where Duc Godeffroye assaylled, ther
was a turke stronge, grete, & hardy, which dyde grete damage 16
to oure men / And hurte many with a stronge bowe turquoys that
he had / And with a lytil of oure langage that he coude / cessed not
to saye euyl and discouraige them that assaylled and called them
Cowardes. hit happed that duc godeffroye saw it / And auyset 20
hym many tymes and was merueylously displeysd with hym / 7And
thought how he myght chevysse to be at his ease,7 he toke in his
hand a arbaleste good and myghty / and helde it bent til the turk
cam agayn and abandouned8 hym / The duc toke his syght and 24
marke and shotte at hym, & smote hym right thurgh the bely,
that he fyl down to the ground fro the walle / The crye and the
showtyng began grete in the hooste and the ioye / The duc had
grete honour and many good prayers therfore. the other sarasyns 28
that were on that other parte of this defence were moche abasshed

Caxton mistakes here: "*perrières*" (machines for casting stones) for "*pierres*" (stones).

2-2 Caxton's translation here does not make sense. Fr. "*Le jour de l'assault on commença à veoir crevaces, en celle tour, qui se longuement s'estoit tenue,*" i. e. they commenced to see the crevices, instead of "breaking" them.

3 Fr. "*menèrent un chat,*" brought a cat, i. e. a covered shed.

4 Orig. hurted.

5 Fr. *closture*, *barriere*, that which encloses.

6-6 Fr. "*nos gens, qui estoit ou chat,*" our people who were in the shed.

7-7 Fr. "*se pensa comment il porroit ce venchier,*" and devised a plan for revenging himself.

8 Fr. "*s'abandonna,*" exposed himself.

and ferd that they deffended them the more cowardly. The other that were in the other partyes of the toun caste fro the tours stones vpon oure peple that were atte assault and hurte many with castyng, 4 shotyng, and throwyng vpon oure engyns pytche / Oyle and grece alle boyllyng / And threwe also brondes and other thynges brennyng moche thicke in suche wyse, that somme they brente. They that assaylled on the partye of therle of tholouse at the tour that I 8 sayd to you to fore, laboured sore for to myne the walle / But one thyng destroubled them sore, what somener they brak on the day / they within made it agayn in the nyght / in such wise that they were in wylle to leue it / And wrought more slowly than they 12 dyde byfore,¹ wherfore a moche valyaunt knyght of ²the hooste of the Normans cam right theder and admoneste³ the assaylles³ for to goo forth, he passed the dyche tofore with his helme laced / the shelde vpon his heed and brake vygorously⁴ the walle, where as 16 the turkes⁵ had made agayn / But ther was none that folowed hym. And they of the wallys threwe so grete stones on him and so thicke, that they slewe hym in the presence of the other that were by / And after with hookes and crochettes they drewe the bodye vp to 20 them on the walle / And there disarmed hym, and threwe the bodye to our peple. Theñne our men that were there toke the body, and buried it worshipfully / he was moche bewaylled in thoost of cristen men.

They threw down oil and boiling grease upon our men.

They rebuilt by night what our men destroyed by day.

[2 lf. 48, bk.]

A valiant Norman assailed the walls, but none followed him, and he was killed.

24 How after many assaultes, oure men beyng in Counseyl, A lombard cam to them, whiche offred to make an engyne that shold destroye the toun.

capitulo / lxj^o

28 t Henne sawe the Barons that they loste moche peple with thassault / And dyde but litil harme with theyr engyns⁶ vnto⁷ the toun and theyr enemyes / Assemble^d for to make counseyl how they myght doo / There cam a man to them, a lombard, 32 which had seen the grete hurte & losse of our peple / & sayd to the barons that he was a good maister to make engyns, yf he myght haue stuff & maters therto propice & necessary / which with goddes helpe shold in short tyme ouerthrowe the tour where 36 to they had don so moche payne / and wold make large waye for to

A Lombard offered to build some engines of war for the Crusaders.

¹ *Orig.* byforee.

³ *Fr.* *assailleurs.*

⁴ *Orig.* vygoronsly.

⁵ *Orig.* turkes.

⁶ *Orig.* eugyns.

⁷ *Orig.* vuto.

The barons
agreed to give
him material
and men,
and to pay
him well.

He finished
his engine,
and fastened
it to the wall.

[3 leaf 49]

About mid-
night the
tower fell.

entre in to the toun who so wolde / They that herde hym promyse^d
hym that he shold haue alle that shold be nedeful / And yet a
good reward and ryche for his laboure / This maister toke werkmen
and made them to werke as he commaunded, that in short tyme he ⁴
had made his engyn, whiche was merueillously¹ strong and grete /
And ioyned it to the walle alle ful of men of armes & footemen /
they that were on the walles vpon the tour threwe with grete myght
grete stones and fyre brennyng^r moche thycke / but thengyne was ⁸
so stronge and rude, that the strokes dyde it no harme / ne the fyer
myght not fastne on it: whan they of the toun apperceyued that
they coude not noye this engyn, they were sore a ferde, and dis-
couraged merueyllously,² and alle in despayre. Our men traueylled ¹²
to theyr power to take oute the grete stones atte fote of the walle
of the toure / And vnderstetted it with strong stanchons and grete /
whan they had so moche myned that them semed that it was
ynowgh. They ³toke ⁴theyr habyllemens and sette them ferre fro ¹⁶
the walle / and thenne put fyer on alle sydes vnder the toure, &
wythdrewe them to their habyllemens and to thengynes alle in
saufte, whiche were a grete way of.⁴ About mydnyght the fyre had^r
soo brente and wrought that this tour fylle down to therthe with so ²⁰
grete a noyse and tempeste that it semed that alle therthe trembled^r /
And ther was none, but he had grete horroure and feer in his herte /
Oure peple made hastely do sowne the trumpettes, and crye to armes
for to come dilygently to thassault. ²⁴

How after that this engyn had so wel wrought / The
wyf of solyman, with two of her childeren, wente
out of the toun and were taken by our men /
cap^o lxiij^o 28

Solyman's
wife endeav-
ours to escape
with her two
sons.

t He wyf of Solyman, that longe had be in mesease of drede /
had^r so grete feere that almost she deyde for drede, and sayd^r
she myght no lenger see it ne suffre / and made sodanly make redy
a vessel, and put it on the lake for tescape by nyght / But oure ³²

¹ Orig. merueillonsly.

² Orig. merueyllonsly.

⁴⁻⁴ This passage seems not to have been entirely understood by Caxton.
Fr. "Il mistrest leur atret, boiz et grant merrien, por le mur qui iert fortement
cstançonez, puis bouterent le feu de toutes parz et se trestrent arrières dedanz leur
engins tol sauvement."—Lat. "Et sustentaculis qui murum casurum sustenta-
bant igne supposito et nutriendis ignibus apta subiecta materia machinam relin-
quunt ad suos cum omni celeritate se conferentes."

peple that were in the shippes for to kepe the water fro their
 enemyes cam ayenste her, and toke the lady with her two sones
 that she had with her thenne in her companye. They presented
 4 them in the mornyng to fore the barons. They made them to be
 kept right surely with the other prisoners that they had / The
 Turkes in the toun¹ were thenne in grete meschief, as wel for
 thentre that was so grete and brode / as for their lady that they
 8 had loste / themne they axed trefwes for to speke to the barons to
 gyue ouer the toun and them self in to their handes. Tacius, the
 greek of whom I haue spoken to fore, whiche was moche double
 and malycious, spak to the noble men that had the gouernaunce of
 12 the toun in counseyl, And shewd to them that thyse pylgryms were
 straungers² of ferre countrees and euyl and cruel men / And shold
 doo to them alle the harme they myght, And destroye the peple
 and the londe, yf they yelded the cyte to them. But and yf they
 16 wold aduowe and take themperour to theyr lord / And yelde them
 to hym their lyues sauf, and their goodes in to his hande, he shold
 kepe them well and sauffy³ / and shold doo to them grete good /
 ffor he was theyr neyghbour / So moche sayd he and dyde, that
 20 they of the toun toke theyr counseyl⁴ & cam to the barons, and
 sayd to them that they wold put in the handes of themperour their
 lyues sauf / their bodyes the cyte and their godes / This displeyd
 not moche to the barons / ffor theyr entencion was for to passe
 24 forthier / & hoped that themperour wolde departe the gayn / proye
 and goodes of the toun⁶ generally in thoost, neuertheles, to fore
 that they wold graunte them this thyng / they sayde that they
 shold delyuer entierly, and doo come in to the hoost alle the
 28 prisonners of pieter theremyte that were in the castel of counthot⁷ /
 And in lyke wyse alle the other that they had taken in the siege,
 and them to fore that Solyman helde. And this don they acorde^d
 that they shold yelde them to themperour / Thenne the barons,
 32 prynces and knyghtes, and also the comyn peple sente by one
 acorde messagers to themperour for to sygnefye hym how they of
 the cyte had yelded them to hym / Therefore they sente to hym /
 that he shold sende of his hye and noble men with grete nombre of

They were taken prisoners by the Crusaders.

The Turks ask for a truce.

Tacius the Greek persuades the townspeople to surrender to the Emperor, instead of to the Crusaders.

[³ If. 49, bk.]

The Crusaders agree to the surrender, on condition that all Christians be delivered to them.

They send messengers to the Emperor to announce that the city has yielded.

¹ *Orig.* tonn.

² *Orig.* straugers.

³ *Orig.* sanfly.

⁴ *Orig.* connseyl.

Orig. tonn.

⁷ Caxton's French text gives "Cunthot." In the different French MSS. of our text, there is a remarkable row of variations for this word. *Ocrinchot*, *Suniloth*, *Couthot*, and *Tunchot*. Lat. *Civitol*.

people for to resseyue the toun, And the persones of whom they had many / ffor they alle acorde^d that the honour shold be his, And that the toun shold come in his demayne, And the prisonners at his wylle / They that had enterprised^d theyr vowe for taccomplysshe, 4 had purposed^d for to departe fro this place, and to goo forth vnto the lande of surye.

How themperour sente grete barons for to receyue the sayd toun after that our peple had acerteined 8 hym that they wolde yelde it / Capitulo / lxiiij

The Emperor was greatly rejoiced, and took possession of the city.

g Rete ioye had themperour of thise tidynges / he taryed^d not / but sente of his moost priue men, as wel barons as knyghtes, with grete quantite of men of armes that resseyued the cyte in his 12 name / And garnysshed^d it of alle thyng that was nedeful, & dyde repayre the walles and alle that was broken of the torettes. Alle that euer they founde in the toun of Armures of Rychesses and of vytaylles they seased for themperour / And sente the 16 prisonners in to Constantiuoble / Themperour sente to euerych of the barons special lettres, presented^d to them grete yeftes / And thanketh them moche of thonour / that they had don to hym / And^d of this that they so wel kepte theyr promesse / ¹ ffor that toun 20 had don grete gryef and anoyauce² to thempyre¹ / The mene peple that moch had trauaylled^d in the sieg and had holpen with grete courage / compleyned^d sore / ffor they had hoped^d that alle the hauoyr and goodes of the toun shold haue ben departed^d emonge them / 24

He sent thanks and special gifts to each of the barons.

But the common soldiars complained bitterly,

because they received none of the spoils.

[³ leaf 50, sig. 61]

But themperours men bare it alle away, And they that trauaylled^d for it were not rewardid^d / the worde that was moche grete cam³ vnto the barons / & they sayd^d that they had grete wronge / ffor the couenautes made bytwene themperour & them were suche 28 that yf they gate in theyr waye, ony cytees that had ben to fore themperours, they shold deyluere the cyte & the londe to themperour / but the proyes & gayne shold be departed⁴ in thoost. Ayenst thise couenautes dyde themperour, but it was not tyme 32 thenne ne place to make argument ne debate ayenst the Grekes, therfor the noble men made the comyn peple to tarye,⁵ to thende

¹ Caxton's French MS. is faulty here. A. gives the correct reading:—
"que grant accroissement avoient ja fait a l'empire."

² Orig. anoyauuce.

⁴ Orig. departed.

⁵ Fr. *tenir*, to keep still, not "to tarye."

that they shold not enpesshe this pylgremage / thus was suffred
 that the wyf of soliman & his ij sones & grete plente of prisoners
 were ledde in saefte vnto themperour / which made moch grete
 4 feste to the lady & her childeren, & as longe as they were in the
 toun he helde them moche honorably / after in short tyme he
 sente them agayn to solyman, alle quyte delyuerd, without demand-
 yng of ony raunson. this dyde he to thende, to haue the loue and
 8 grace of the turkes / in suche wyse that ther was bytwene them
 a counseyl & acorde to greue our peple / & also for another
 rayson / that is to wete yf they were in such poynt of another cyte
 or place, that the cristiens constreynd so by force, that they shold
 12 not be aferd to yelde them frely in the hande of themperour / thus
 was taken the cyte of nycene, the yere of thyncarnacion of our lord,
 a / M / lxxxxvij, the xx day of the moneth of Iuyn.

Solyman's
 wife and chil-
 dren were
 delivered up
 to the Em-
 peror, who
 sent them
 safely back to
 Solyman.

The city of
 Nicaea was
 taken on the
 20th day of
 June, 1097.

How our¹ hoost² departed on theyr iourney / & how
 16 som departed fro theyr felawship / and how soly-
 man determyned tassayle them /

Capitulo lxiiiij^o

t He hoost of the pylgryms departed by the commaundement of
 20 the barons, the iij daye to fore thentree of Iuyll, fro the place
 where they had holden siege / they wente two dayes to gydre moche
 peasybly / & after lodged them by a brygge for the ease of the
 water / On the morn, after they customme atte spryngyng of the
 24 day, they passed the brygge duryng the derknesse of the nyght, ffor
 it was not wel day / Or, perauenture,³ they departed wetyngly the
 one fro the other, ffor buymont, the duc of normandye / Therle
 steuen of chartres / Tanere and therle of seynt pol torned away on
 28 the lyft syde / And descended in to a valeye named Gurgom / And
 lodged them there aboute none by a ryuer, where as was grete
 plente of water / There rested they al that nyght in peas. But,
 neuertheles, they made theyr hoost chaunge⁴ theyr watche diligently /
 32 alle the other torned on the right honde alle the day / & went
 thurgh a fayre Countre / & lodged them in fayre grete medowes
⁵vpon the water syde. And that one hoost was fro that other more
 36 angred that he had thus loste his wyf with his children and his

The Cru-
 saders
 marched forth
 out of Nicaea,

and encamped
 a two-days'
 march from
 the city.

Here they
 separated
 into two
 divisions.

[3 lf. 50, bk.]

¹ *Orig.* onr.

² *Orig.* hoost.

³ *Orig.* perauenture.

⁴ Fr. *echangailier*.

Solyman followed the left division to see how he might harm them.

noble cyte / he commaundeð to folowe oure peple on the lyfte syde / And dyde grete peyne to see how he myght greue them, he had with hym a moch grete nombre of men of armes on horsbak / his espyes were with the pylgryms, whiche toke heede of alle theyr 4 couyne, they dyde hym to wete that oure hoost was deuyded in two parties / And that the lasse partye was torneð toward the lyfte sider to hym than that other parte / he was moche glad and Ioiful whan he herde thyse tydynges / he sawe that he was wel in poynt 8 for to venge hym / And had his men al redy, and ordeyned his bataylle to poynt at the day sette / departed for to befyghte oure men, thus as the spryngynge of the day began to clere / the men that made the watche this nyght that were withdrawen a lytil fro 12 thoost, apperceyued them, and cryed to Armes, And blewe hornes and trompettes moche affrayedly / the hoost awook sodenly, and our men armed them right hastely / And ordeyned their bataylles as they had deused. The wymmen / sekemen and children were 16 ledð a part besyde a water al ful of reed, by whiche men myght not come to them, to fore were they closeð with cartes and charyottes / wherof they had grete plente. And after sente messagers vnto the grete hooste, ffrom whiche they were folyly 20 departed for to praye them that they dylygently wolde come socoure them, ffor they were in moche grete paryll / whan theyr bataylles were thus renged, euen right the first day of Iuyll at the houre of pryme / be ye certayn that Solyman, with a grete nombre 24 of men of armes, estemeð at two honderd thousand wel armed to poynt and horsed, arryued. ther was not one of them, but he was on horsbak. Oure¹ peple were but fewe / And the moost part of them on foote / And it was no merueylle though they doubted the 28 comyng of theyr enemies.

He attacked them at day-break.

They placed the women and children in a safe place,

sent messages to the rest of the army, and prepared to defend themselves.

Solyman had 200,000 horsemen, our peple were but few in number, and mostly on foot.

Of the bataylle that solyman had ayenst som of our peple that were departed fro theyr felawship folyly / ca. lxxv. 32

Han the Hooste of the Turkes smote in on our men, the noyse w was moche grete of busynes / of trompes / of men, and of horses that none myght be herd / and was grete hydour to here the fyrst comyng on of the turkes / They shotte so thycke 36 vpon our peple that there was neuer rayn ne hayl so like, in so

¹ *Orig. onre.*

moch that ther were many hurte of our peple. whan the first route
 1 had made theyr shotte / The second route cam after where moo <sup>[1 leaf 51,
sig. 62]</sup>
 Archyers were than to fore / & began shote moche more thyeke than
 4 may be recounted² / Our knyghtes sawe that they loste theyr horses
 & them self by the shotte, And smote in to the turkes vygor-
 ously, But the multitude of the turkes were so grete / that our men
 had grete dammage, whiche were but fewe. They that had theyr
 8 sheldes & targes they kept them som what, But they that were
 without armour muste flee / or ellys they had be slayn among the
 horses. And many were slayn and hurte / There were slayn of oure <sup>2000 of our
men were
slain.</sup>
 12 slayn a moche valyaunt yong man, noble and hardy, whiche had
 don wel alle that day, Guyllam, sone to the Marquys, Brother of³
 Tancre / he was suoton with an arowe and deyde in the place /
 And another va'yant man in like wise named Robert of Paris. He
 16 deyde by his prowesse / Tancre that was hardy made merueylles of
 Armes / And abandouned hym self, as he that sette not by his lyf / <sup>Bohemond
rescued Tan-
cred, who was
in great
danger.</sup>
 20 turkes sawe oure men moche hurte and trauayled and toke theyr
 bowes on the lyft Arme, And after ran on them with swerdes and
 maces in suche wyse that they ouerthrewe⁴ them and⁵ put them a
 bak vnto theyr caryage. There they helde them And hydde them <sup>Our men
retreated.</sup>
 24 by the reed, and deffended them vygorously, and suffred the grete
 plente of turkes discharge vpon them one route after another.

Of the dilygence that Duc Godeffroy made whan he
 was aduertised herof / And how Solyman was
 28 discomfyt & his bagage taken. Capitulo lxxj^o

o Wr barons, godeffroy, the noble duc, and the other prynces
 herde thise tydynges how buymont and his compagne were at
 suche meschyef lasted them sore / ther cam to gydre the duc⁶ and <sup>Godfrey and
the other
barons hast-
ened to the
assistance of
Bohemond.</sup>
 32 his ij bretheren, bawdwyne & Eustace, the erle raymont / hue le
 mayne, and many other barons ynowgh. The peple a foote⁷ /
 And they that were euyl horsed they lefte for to kepe the lodgys /
 they wente forth / & wel⁸ xl / m / alle armed & wel horsed /

² *Orig.* recounted.⁵ *Orig.* and.³ *Orig.* of of.⁶ *Orig.* dnk.⁴ *Orig.* onerthrewe.⁷ *Orig.* foote.⁸ Caxton has omitted "estoint" here.

¹whan they approched the place where the batayll was / & sawe them so put a bak / & herde thafraie of trompes & hors / the peple of buymont espyed them, anon their herte cam agayn¹ / & were entierly refresshyd / & smote in to their enemyes as they ⁴ that nothyngedoubted / & began to doo well. The ²good bisshop of puy was there, & comforted ofte the barons & the knyghtes for tauenge the blood of the cristen men whiche thenemyes of our fayth had there shedde. Incontinent the barons that cam smote ⁸ in to the turkes so vygorusly ³that it semed that euerich myght abyde the burthon⁴ of the batayle.³ they slewe so many, and bete down in theyr comyng / that the other durst not abyde, But fledde away discomfyted / the nobles folowed them, & chaced them wel ¹² iiij / myle, sleying al them that they myght atteyne. & they founde many of our⁵ men prisonners that the turkes ledde with them / whom they delyuerd. after they wente to the tentes of solyman, and there they founde so grete plente of rychesses / of vytaylles / of ¹⁶ sheep, of horses, & other beestes that it can not be recounted / Robes, vayssel, & paynyllons of dyuerse colours & of straunge facions in suche wyse that ther was none, but he was ryche. ffor ye may well knowe that / ij C.M / men that solyman had / behoued ²⁰ grete plente of lodgys & of other estorementes.⁶ our peple cam agayn in to oure tentes with grete ioye & honour. ther were lost wel in that batayll of our men a foote⁷ aboute a .iiij. M., & of horsmen but fewe. Of the turkes were founden dede / ij / M., & ²⁴ there were of them many grete men / this batayll endured fro the hour of pryme vnto nygh none / & ofte our peple had the werse, ffor as I haue said, solyman had / ij C / M / men alle on horsbak. our peple were but / l. M / on horsbak whan they were alle ²⁸ assembled the one with the other / whan our lord had thus gyuen this victorye to his peple / they rested them in this fayr place where the tentes were / thre / dayes / theyr horses refresshed them right wel in this whyle. of the armures & other gayne that they ³² had conquerd vpon theyr enemyes, they arrayed & apparaylled them right wel / that to fore were euyl armed / Moche wel dyde

When Bohemond's men saw assistance arriving [? If. 51, bk.] they took heart and fought more bravely.

The Turks soon fled discomfited.

Our men found great booty in the tents of Solymann.

The Crusaders rested themselves and their horses three days.

¹⁻¹ Caxton has mistranslated his French. Fr. "*quant ilz aprouchierent, et les gens de Buymont, qui estoient si audessousz, oyrent les trompes et l'effroy des chevaux qui venoient, si leur, revint le cuer à tous.*"

²⁻³ Fr. "*qu'il sembloit à ung chascun d'eulz que l'en s'atendoit à lui de toute la besoingne,*" that it seemed to each one of them that he was expected to take the whole burden of the battle on himself.

⁵ Orig. our.

⁶ Fr. "*estorements,*" equipments.

⁴ Orig. bnrtion. ⁷ Orig. foete.

they in this bataylle, & grete honour had they and̄ shal euer haue, They will ever receive great honour for this battle.
 and in especial they that here be named / Bawdwyn le borgh /
 thomas¹ de fedre / regnault de beauvays / Gale² de chamont /
 4 gaste de bedyers / & geart³ de cherysy / thenne was ordeyned
 & acorded by the barons & cryed̄ in thoost / that no man shold̄
 ryde fro thens forth by hym self without leue of the captayns.

How the iiij day after this victorye our peple went
 8 forth on their waye / & of the grete mesease
 of thoost the same day ! cap^o. lxxij^o:

a⁴ Fter this, whan they had abyden there thre dayes / the fourth The fourth day after this victory they went on their way.
 daye folowyng, by tymes to fore day, they dyde doo sowne⁵
 12 theyr trompettes, & wente forth on their waye / Syth they
 passed̄⁶ bythyne / And entred in to the londe that was named
 piside. They trauaylled so long, that at the laste they fonde a [⁶ leaf 52. sig. 63]
 contre moche drye & infertile, without waters / The tyme was
 16 moche hoot and brennyng, as it falleth ofte in Iuyll / They ha^k so
 grete thirst / that they wyst not what to doo. the peple on fote They suffered so from thirst in this march that 500 died in one day.
 specially faylled and faynted, alle for the duste / for the heete /
 and⁷ for thurst / ther deyed wel this same day of mysease fyue
 20 honderd men & wymmen. And̄ knowe ye certaynly that ther
 happed̄ a merueyllous thyng that day in the hoost, that we fynde
 nowher in none other historye / ffor the wymmen with childe, that
 yet were not come to theyr terme / by thanguyssh of the heete, &
 24 of the mesease of thirst, that they were delyuerd of theyr children
 & childed / & not only the pour wymmen / but the ryche also /
 this was a grete sorow, & pyte to see / The men, that ought to be
 more hart^k & stronge ayenst trauaylle, wente theyr mouthes open /
 28 & sought thayer and̄ moysture therof, whiche they myght not
 haue : the heete, and also the swote destroyed̄ them / ye shold̄ haue
 seen the horses and other beestes, that myght not goo⁸ forth, in
 suche wyse that they muste leue them, whiche deyde in the waye /
 32 houndes for the chace & huntyng / fowles for the flyght, as Hounds, falcons, and hawks died by the way,
 ffawcons / hawkes / & sperhawkes, ye shold̄ haue seen that day
 abyde & deye. & in lyke wyse the grete stedes & cursours,

¹ Fr. "Thomas de Fere."² Fr. "Gale de Chaumont."³ Fr. "Girart de Chersisi."⁴ Orig. Fter.⁵ Orig. sowue.⁷ Orig. aud.⁸ Fr. "aller avant," go further.

and horses
ran mad for
lack of water.

Our Lord had
pity on His
people,
and led them
to a running
stream.

They arrived
at Antioch
the Less,
and quartered
the army
there.

whiche were moost peryllous / becam alle araged and wood for
thurst¹ / & with grete payne were ledde forth / whan they ha^l
ben long^t in this mesease / Our² lord beheld them in pyte, &
made them to adresse in to a valeye, where they fonde³ a rennyng ⁴
water, fayr & grete. thenne ranne oure peple to the brynke or
ryuage with grete haste. many ther were that drank so moch that
they deyde vpon the place; ffor som of them that had^t eschewed
the deth / fonde it there, by cause they kepte no mesure. & this 8
fyller vnto knyghtes & other men, and beestes, whiche⁴ dranke as
moche as they wolde / whan they were escaped^t this euyl aduenteure,
they cam in to a londe moch fayr and fertile, ful of woodes, of
ryuers, of medowes, and of good^t felde labourable / This was by 12
antioche the lasse / whiche is the chyef cyte of the londe of
pisside; and there lodged they with theyr hoost.

How somme of the grete Barons of thoost, after to
haue approuched Antyoche the lasse, departed 16
for to goo vytaylle them. Capitulo lxviij^o

Some went
farther on,
because it was
difficill to
[⁵ If. 52, bk.]
find pro-
visions for so
many.
Baldwin,
Godfrey's
brother, led
one party,
and Tancred
another.

f Ro thens departed / som of the barons of thoost / & helde
their waye, by cause it was a greuous thyng^t to fynde vytaylles
to so moche peple to gydre / The fyrst was Bawdwyn, Brother to 20
the duc; with hym was peter⁶ therle of scaruay, Reynart therle of
toul / Bawdwyn de borgh, & guyllebert de montcler / ther wer
wel v / C / on horsbak / & ladde with them men a fote largely /
The second^t was tancre / & with hym Rychard^t du pryncipat, 24
Robert danse,⁷ & other knyghtes⁸ grete nombre, that they were /
v C / on horsbak, & had also many men a foote as the other had.
theyr entencion and^t purpose was to ride about the thoost in the
contre, for to⁹ seche somme aduenteure and vytaylle; ¹⁰& yf they 28
had founde ony paryll / grief, pas, or plente of theyr enemyes,¹⁰ that
they wol^t lete thoost haue knowleche therof / they wente strayt

¹ Orig. thurst.

² Orig. Onr.

³ Orig. foude.

⁴ Fr. "si l'en les laissez tant boire comme ilz voulerent."

⁶ Caxton has here misread his French, which gives "*Pierre conte de Starnoy.*"
This, in turn, is a corruption for *Stadenois*, which is the reading of A. Lat.
comes de Stadenes.

⁷ Fr. "*Robert d'Anse.*"

⁸ Orig. kuyghtes.

⁹ Orig. so.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ Fr. "*Silz eussent trouue aulcun peril de grief pas, ou de plenté de leurs
ennemis,*" if they should get into any trouble, either from a dangerous place,
or on account of the great number of their enemies.

theyr waye, & passed by syde ij cytées: that one was named
 lychonie, and that other Eraclee. after, they torned on the right
 honde, and passed toward the see side. The duc Godeffroy & the
 4 other prynces abode in theyr lodgys, for the plesaunt & delyt-
 able places that they had founzen, by cause they wolde playe &
 refresshe them of the trauaylles & annoyes that they had suffred.
 thenne said they that they wold goo hunte in to the forestes, which
 8 were nygh to them on alle sydes, & were ful of wilde beestes /
 On the morn they entred in the woode / eche helde his way at his
 will. the duc, as he wente a path thurgh the foreste, herde a man
 crye / & he drewe thederward / & he sawe a poure man, that
 12 was goo for to fetche wode for to bere in to the hoost, fledde,
 strongly cryeng, to fore a grete bere / The duc ran vpon hym, &
 drewe his swerd for to delyuere the pour man fro the beeste / thenne
 the bere adressyd hym vnto the duc, and lefte the pour man, that
 16 fledde fro hym / he hurte the dukes hors so sore, that he caste the
 duc to therthe. The duc leep a foote, & drewe oute his swerde.
 the beeste was nothyng aferd of hym, but made a felonnous crye,
 horryble & hydous, & syth ran vpon the duc, & bote hym
 20 right cruelly in the thye. after, he adressyd hym right vp, &
 embraced hym with his potes, or feet to fore, for to haue caste hym
 to grounde. the duc, thus hurt as he was, was yet moch strong,
 & fyl not to the erth thenne / but caught hym by the skyn about
 24 the necke with his lyfte hande, for to put away his heed from hym ;
 & with that other hand he put his swerd in to his body, thurgh
 bothe the sydes vnto the crosse, and so slewe hym. After, he
 wente and sette hym down on therthe right by / ffor he had so moch
 28 bledde of his wounde that he had in his thye, and was so mer-
 ueyllously sore hurte¹ that he myghte not stonde longe on his feet.
 The poure man, whiche he had delyuerd fro deth, ran hastely in to
 the hoost / and tolde them this tydyng² of the ³duc. Alle they
 32 that herde it were so effrayed that they ranne with grete haste
 theder / The barons, and alle the other that myght goo. they
 founde hym lyeng on the ground, pale⁴ and discoloured ; and after
 toke hym in a lyttier, and bare hym in to the hoost. But neuer
 36 man was more demened, ne more sorow made, ne⁵ noe moo pytyous
 cryes and lamentacions thurgh alle the lodgyses, As wel ryche as
 poure / and men as wymmen / Anon were sette alle the maistres

They passed
by the cities
of Lycania
and Heraclea.

Duke God-
frey, while
hunting, saw
a man fleeing
from a great
bear.

The Duke
attacked the
bear, and
was severely
wounded.

The man
whom he had
[³ leaf 53,
sig. 64.]
rescued ran
to the camp
with the
tidings.

The barons
came and
carried God-
frey home
in a litter,
with great
lamentations.

¹ Orig. harte.

² Orig. tydyuge.

⁴ Fr. "vain," weak, faint.

⁵ Orig. nr.

and cirurgens for to dychte hym & to hele hym; there were many / ffor euerych of the prynces had of them, for to awayte on them in the hoost.

Here recounteth thystorye of somme aduentures that 4
thenne¹ fylle in the hoost of cristen men /

cap^o lxi^o

At the same
time, Ray-
mond of Tou-
louse was
very ill.

i N this sayson, the same tyme, it happed that another valyaunt
man, named Rayment, Erle of thoulouse, laye down seke of a 8
maladye moche grenous and peryllous / Neuerthelesse, the hooste
wente forth alwey / Therfor he must be caryed forth in a lyttier.
On a day it happed that he was so deteyned of his maledye / that
certeynly they supposed that he shold deye / They that kepte hym 12
made the littier to be sette down to the grounde, ffor they sawe hym
so feble that they thought certaynly that the sowle shold departe.
The bisshop of Orenge, whiche was a moche holy man and a
religions, sayd the commendacion for the sowle and the seruyse, as 16
of one deyeng, sauf syngyng masse. Alle the hoost was ouermoche
discomforted / by cause they supposed alle, that anon and sodanly
to lese these two grete men, whiche were of moche grete counseyl²
and of grete ayde / They made prayers and orysones thurgh alle 20
thoost, Where as they souge masses. The ryche and the pour
prayde moche humbly, and with good herte, that our lord wold
rendre them hool and sauf / for to socoure and counseyle them / as
they had nede. The barons departed in charyte largely almesse 24
vnto the pour peple / so moche dyde they, one and other, that our
lord, whiche is ful of pyte, herde them, and gaf helthe to the two
noble men in short tyme, in suche wyse that they rood al hool, &
in good poynt with thooste they passed al pissyde. And after 28
entrede in to a lande named lycane, And cam vnto³ a Cyte called
licoine / they founde it alle voyde, and nothyng therin / they had
grete meseases of vytaylle, ffor the Turkes, whiche had herde the
tydynges that our peple cam / trusted in none of theyr fortresses / 32
but voyded them, and fledde in to the forestes and⁴ montaynes /
men, wymmen & childeren, ⁵horses, beestes, vytaylle, & alle
other thyng they caryed with them / They⁶ suffred moche disease

The army
was in great
grief, for they
expected to
lose both of
these great
men.

The sick
and the poor
prayed humbly
that God
would spare
them, and He
heard their
prayers.

[³ ff. 53, bk.]

¹ Orig. theune.

² Orig. counseyl.

³ Orig. vuto.

⁴ Orig. aud.

⁶ Fr. "Car ilz se hastèrent moult de passer cellui pays," they hastened, not "suffered."

to passe that contre. They cam in to Eraclee / And after cam in to
 a cyte named Marase / There they lodged and sojourned thre dayes / They went on
 to Eracle,
 and from
 thence to
 Marase.
 Bawdwyne, brother of the Duc, that was departed fro the hoost, left
 4 his wyf with his two bretheren / She deyde there of sekenesse / Here Bald-
 win's wife,
 Gutiera, was
 left, and here
 she died.
 She was an hie lady of Englonde, valyaunt,¹ wyse, and good /
 gutier² was her name / She was buryed and entereed moche
 honorably in the same place / She was moche bewaylled in the
 8 hoost.

How Tancre, that was departed fro the hoost, as-
 sieged Tarse / And toke it by certeyn couenaunt.

cap^o. lxx^o.

12 t Ancre, whiche was a wyse a man, and of grete courage, rode
 thurgh the londe sekynge aventure, in suche wyse that he fonde
 in his waye a cyte called Tarse. This londe of Scylce is a countre Tancred's
 party arrived
 at Tarsus,
 of thoryent, toward the sonne gooyng down. In this londe ben
 16 two grete cytees, whiche ben Archebisshoprichs, that one named
 Tarse, of whiche I said to fore / Therin was born seynt poul
 thapostle / That other was named anauazie / And eche of these two
 cytees haue other cytees vnder them / Tarse founded one of the
 20 childeren of Noe Ionen, whiche was sone of Iaphet / the sone of
 Noe. Neuerthles, (19) solins sayth that perseus founded it / but it
 maye be wel that one founded it / And that other repayed and
 amended it / Tancre assieged this cyte, and constreyned them Tancred
 besieged it,
 and com-
 pelled it to
 surrender.
 24 within, what by menaces and fayr wordes / that they yelded it to
 hym in a manere / They sette this banere vpon the hiest toure of
 the toun. And he swar and affermed to kepe them from damage
 and hurte; ne non shold be put out of his hows, ne lese ony thyng
 28 that apperteyned to them vnto the comynge of the grete hoost.
 And thenne shold they yelde the toun vnto the grete prynces of
 thoost without ony debate / Thus was it acorde bytwene hym and
 them of the toun. In this toun were cristen men, hermyns, and
 32 grekes / And in alle the londe about.³ But the turke helde alle the
 fortresses that medled with armes / And had the seynorye vpon
 this peple / And wold not suffre them of nothyng, sauf to occupye
 and laboure therthe, and for to marchaunte to bye and selle.

¹ *Orig.* valyaut.

² Fr. *Gutuere*, Lat. *Gutuera*.

³ *Orig.* about.

How Bawdwyn, brother of Godeffroy, sechyng¹ his
 auentures, sawe tancre & his peple to fore tarse,
 & adressed hym to them / ca° / lxxj

[² leaf 54] ²b Awdwyn, Brother of the Duc, and the peple that he ledde 4
 with hym, were entred in to a countre moost barayn, where
 they suffred grete peyne for vytaylle. After, they cam vpon a
 montayne, where they myght see alle the londe of Scilice / and
 the cytees vnto the see. They sawe tarse nygh them, and³ the 8
 paunyous, And they supposed that they had be turkes / that had
 assieged the cyte / They descended doun for to knowe what peple
 they were / And also for tenquere the beyng of the countre about /
 They that were with tancre, in thauaunt garde, sawe thyse men of 12
 armes approuche, And lete theyr lord haue knowleche / Tancre
 wende certaynly that they had be turkes, that cam for to soccure
 them of the toun, and made eche man to arme hym dylygently /
 and sette them in ordenance; And after yssued oute ayenst them / 16
 The baners displayed. But whan they approuched that one to the
 other / And knewe eche other by the armes / they opened theyr
 helmes and embraced eche other, and made moche grete ioye, And
 after cam to the cyte. And thenne bawdwyn was by tancre right 20
 wel and honourably lodged, for tancre had grete plente of vytaylles,
 of whiche bawdwyn and his peple had grete nede.

Baldwin's party, after many hardships, arrived at a mountain from whence they could see Tancred's tents.

Tancred mistook them for Turks as they approached,

and went out against them.

They soon recognized each other as friends.

Of thenuye that bawdwyn & his peple had to see
 the baner of tancre vpon the walle of the toun / 24
 & how tancre departed. ca° / lxxij°

i N the morne whan the sonne was vp, and cleer daye, bawdwyn,
 and they that were with hym, sawe the baner of tancre vpon
 the hiest tour of the toun. And had therof moche grete enuye; 28
 and began to murmure and speke maliciously of that they had
 gretter power, and moo peple and better, & saik that they ought
 to haue the worship of this toun / It is trouthe that vnto this day
 there / bawdwyn and Tancre had ben lyke two bretheren, in moche 32
 pryue acqueyntaunce and trewe loue / But bawdwyn, by enuye of
 his herte and by euyll wordes that som of his men made hym to
 vnderstonde, was thus of this thyng meuyd. Tancre, whiche
 was moche wyse, attemperat and resonable man, vnderstode thise 36

Baldwin and his men were jealous when they saw Tancred's banner on the tower.

¹ *Orig.* sechyug.

³ *Orig.* aud.

- wordes,¹ And dyde moche payne for tapesse hym. And cam in
 persone to bawdwyn, and shewde hym / how to fore that he was
 comen / ne that noman knewe of his comynge, were thyse couen-
 4 aunes made bytwene hym and them of the toune / And his baner
 sette vpon the toure. And herin he vnderstode not that he myght
 haue ony shame ne dishonour. Bawdwyn was not ²content of
 thise wordes, and he founde somme that attysed hym in his folye /
 8 he spak grete wordes, ylle and iniuryouses, to tancre / in suche
 wyse / that with lytil more they wolde haue³ don armed theyr men,
 for to haue destroyed eche other. thenne sente bawdwyn for them
 of the toun / And whan they cam, he menaced them strongly, and
 12 saide that they shold throwe doun the baner of Tancre to therthe /
 And sette vp his on the tour:⁴ And yf they dyde not, they shold
 wel knowe that he wold destroye them, and alle that they had
 without the toun / and take the toun and caste it to therthe,
 16 maulgre alle that tancre myght doo / They of the cyte sawe that
 tancre myght not waraunte ne deffende them ayenst bawdwyn,
 made with hym suche couenauntes as they had made to fore with
 tancre / And sette his baner where as he commaunded⁵ / Tancre
 20 saw the force that was don to hym, and was gretely despleysyd, and
 had grete yre in his herte / But he couerd his thought wysely, And
 wold not suffre the peple, that were comen in this pylgremage for to
 make warre ayenst thenemyes of the fayth of Ihesu Crist, shold
 24 slee eche other for thoccasion of hym. he departed fro this place /
 ffor he doubted that somme noyse or medle myght sourde herof.
 And cam to a cyte nygh by, named adane / There myght he not
 entre / ffor a noble man of burgoyne, named gelpes, was parted fro
 28 thoost with a grete route of men of armes as the other dyde, for to
 seke auentures, and he had taken this cyte by force / And had
 caste out the turkes / And helde it entierly. Tancre herde that
 somme of our peple helde it, and sente good messagers to gelpes,
 32 And⁶ prayd hym to opene the yates, and suffre his men that they
 myght goo in to the toun for to bye to them suche as they neded /
 This Gelpes dyde it debonayrly / And hym self gaf to them
 largely for nought / ffor he had founde the toun ful of gold and
 36 syluer, of Robes, of beestes / of whete / of wyne / of oyle / and of
 alle good that a man had nede of /

Tancred tried
to appease
Baldwin.

[² If. 54, bk.]

Baldwin answered him
insultingly,

and com-
mended the
citizens to set
his banner in
the place of
Tancred's.

Tancred, to
avoid a con-
flict, left
and went to
Adana.

The lord of
Adana, G-
lphes, received
Tancred
kindly, and
gave him
everything
that he
needed.

¹ *Orig.* wrodes.

³ *Orig.* hane.

⁴ *Orig.* toure.

⁵ *Orig.* commanuded.

⁶ *Orig.* Aud.

How, a lytil after, tancre cam to the cyte of anamystre, whiche the turkes helde it, and toke it by assault / cap^o. lxxiiij^o.

Tancred took leave of his host the next morning, and went on to Anamystre.

t Ancre on the morn toke leue of his hooste, And toke his way 4 with his peple / And rode so fer that he cam to a Cyte, named anamystre¹ / This was one of the beste cytees of that londe / It was fayr / and moche delytable. Tancre cam theder, and knewe certeynly that the turkes helde it / he assieged it al aboute, And 8

[² leaf 55]

fro ²the tyme that he cam he assaylled the toun. thus he dyde the first, the second, and the thirde day / so many assaultes he made to them, and hurted them of the toun,³ that they were strongly greuyd and abasshed. they without toke ⁴the toun, and entred vnder the ¹²walles,⁴ And thus was the toun taken by force / And alle them that he fonde therin of hethen peple, he put to deth without mercy. The toun was ful of rychesses, and alle maner of vytaylles were grete plente. Tancre departed al the gayn and the goodes of the ¹⁶toun to his men, as he that wel knewe how that he shold doo / and to eche man after that he was / in suche wyse that alle his men were ryche. They refresshed them moche wel, and theyr beestes, of the mesease that they had suffred in theyr waye. They soiourned ²⁰there a grete whyle with moche grete deduyt.

He took this city after a three days assault.

They refressed themselves and their horses here.

How bawdwyn entred in Tarse. And how / iii.C of our pylgryms were slayn of the turkes to fore the same toun. ca^o. lxxiiiij. 24

After the departure of Tancred, Baldwin commanded the inhabitants of Tarsus to admit him into the city.

b Audwyn sawe / that Tancre was departed fro Tarse, And sente for them of the toun³ and sayde to them that they shold lete them entre in to the toun, ffor hym thought⁵ shame to lye long and abyde there ydle without doying ony thynge, tyl the comynge ²⁸of the grete hoost / They sawe and aduysed wel that they had not power ynough to resiste them, and thought yf they lete them not entre with theyr agreement / that they wold entre ayenst theyr wylle & without force⁶ / thenne they opened their gates / & wold ³²

¹ Fr. *Anamistre*, Lat. *Mamistrane*.

³ *Orig.* tonn.

⁴⁻⁴ Fr. "*prinrent eschieles et entrerent pardessus les murs.*"

⁵ *Orig.* thought.

⁶ Fr. "*et à force*," and by force. Caxton has said here exactly the contrary of what he intended, probably.

that bawdwyn shold haue two toures where he shold lodge, & other of those in the howses in the toun alle peasibly, the turkes that had the seygnorye of the toun helde yet the other towres in
 4 they puissaunce / they had in moche grete doubtte and suspencion bawdwyn and his men that were lodged in the toun / And they thought that they shold haue no socours / And aboute this they had moche grete drede of the grete hoost that shortly shold arryue
 8 there / and sought emonge them the moyens and maner / How they myght yssue oute of the toun, and lede with them theyr wyues¹ and childeren² with theyr pryncipal bageus and Iewellys / It happed that this same nyght thre honderd men afote that were
 12 departed fro Buymont for to folowe tancre arryue alle to fore this Cyte of Tarse, where they thought to fynde hym / whan bawdwyn knewe what peple they were / and that they wente in thayde of tancre / he wold not³ suffre them to entre in to the toun / They
 16 were wery and⁴ trauaylled and prayed hym moche swetly, and cryed hym mercy many tymes, that for the loue of god he wold doo so moche that they myght this nyght be lodged in the toun / ffor they wold no thyng but⁵ good. herof the fotemen⁶ of this companye
 20 prayed hym in lyke wise / But he wold in nowyse here them / Neuertheles by cause they without⁷ had mesease / the mene peple in the toun aualed down with cordes, breed ynough,⁸ and wyn in barellys, and other vytaylles, with whiche they myght wel passe
 24 this nyght / whan our peple were a slepe in the toun, And they without began theyr first sleep it happed that the turkes that were within the toures / opened the yates of whiche they had the keyes secretly withoute noyse, & ledde out theyr wyues, theyr childeren,
 28 & alle their thynges, And all the hethen men of the toun thought they were not sure with theyr ghestes, and yssued out of alle the toun : whan theyr wyues and childeren were withdrawen a lytil fro
 * the toun / they wolde leue tokenes cruell and ylle of theyr depart-
 32 yng / they cam vnto the thre honderd pylgrims that laye withoute gate & slepte strongly as they that doubtet of nothyng / And put them alle to deth and slewe them / yf ony of them escaped he was happy.

They agreed to let him have two towers.

The Turks were much afraid of Baldwin.

300 of Tancre's men arrived that night, but were very inhospitably received by Baldwin.

[4 It. 55, bk.]

That very night the Turks secretly left the city with their families and property.

and slew the 300 outside of the walls.

¹ *Orig.* wynes.

² Caxton's French text, which is corrupt, gives : "*avec leurs autres principales bages,*" which he has followed by translating "bageus and jewellery." The Lat. gives "*et omni mada substantia sua,*" which the better French texts translate, by "*toutes leurs choses.*" ³ *Orig.* uot. ⁵ *Orig.* bnt.

⁶ Fr. "*de sa companye,*" of his own army. ⁷ *Orig.* without. ⁸ *Orig.* ynough.

How the peple of bawdwyn knewe the departyng of
the turkes, and of the slaughter of the cristen
men. cap. lxxv^o.

In the morn-
ing Baldwin's
men discov-
ered the
flight, and
the dreadful
slaughter
that had
taken place.

The common
soldiers put
the blame on
Baldwin.

The knyghts
begged the
soldiers to be
quiet
[3 leaf 56]
until Baldwin
could address
them.

One morning
they saw a
fleet in the
sea near
them,

from
Flanders,
Holland, and
Friesland.

o N the morne erly whan oure men awoke in the toun they sawe 4
the toures where the turkes had be lodged open and the howses
voyde / They knewe wel that they were fledde. They serched the
walles and¹ yates for to enquiry how they were goon. they wente
so ferre that they fonde this grete occision² and slaughter at the 8
gate. Thenne began a sorow and a moche grete crye in the toun,
Alle men put the blame and culpe on Bawdwyn and hys knyghtes,
ffor they wold auenge the deth of theyr bretheren, whom the 12
sarasyns had so shamelly and vylaynously slayn. By cause that the 12
knyghtes of bawdwyn and also he hym self wold not suffre them
to come in to the toun. And in dede the men of foote sayd this
was don by grete outrage & grete falshede. And yf they had
not lyghtly withdrawen them in to the toures / they had smyten 16
them alle to deth / The knyghtes helde them alle styll tyl that
the footemen were cooled / and after sente messagers whiche spak
to them and requyre them to forbere so long / tyl that Bawdwyn
3 had spoken to them / they were content to here Bawdwyn speke. 20
Bawdwyn excused hym to fore alle / and swar and affermed that
for none other thyng theentre was deffended them, but for that he
had sworn to them of the toun / that by hym shold none entre tyl
the grete hooste cam / By thyse wordes and by cause other enter- 24
meted to make the peas and spoken debonayrly to the mene peple,
was bawdwyn acorded to the foote men and his knyghtes also. In
this toun they sojourned and abode a certayn whyle, vntyl a morn-
yng / they sawe in the see nygh them⁴ a shippe aboute iij myle fro 28
them / They yssued oute of the toun and descended to the see /
they that were in the ship approached to them in suche wyse that
they spak to gydre / they of the ship sayde that they were cristen
men, they demaunded of what contre, and they answerd of fflaun- 32
dres / of holande / and of ffryselande / And trouth it was they
had be escumours⁵ of the see and robbers the space of viij yere.
Now they repented them / And by penance cam in pylgremage to
Iherusalem / they desyre⁵ them to come a londe / And they cam 36

¹ *Orig. aud.*

² *Orig. occisiou.*

⁴ Fr. "*une navie*," a fleet, instead of a single ship. Lat. *classis*.

⁵ Fr. "*escumours*," pirates, corsairs.

and made to gydre grete ioye / they had a maister ouer them nameð The captain's name was Guy Nemer of Bologne.
 guynemer.¹ And was born of boloyue vpon the see in the londe of Erle Eustace, fader of the said duc Godeffroy / whan he herde that
 4 Bawdwyn the sone of his lord was there, he lefte his ship, And said he wold goo with hym to Iherusalem / he was moche ryche of this euyl gayne. And had many men with hym / that he ladde in his ship / thenne Bawdwyn lefte / v.C men of armes for to kepe the
 8 toun wel in poynt. And after he toke his waye for to seke somme Baldwin now started out in search of further adventures.
 auentures as he dyde to fore / he helde the right way til he cam to the cyte of anamyster, whiche tancre had gotten by force of armes vpon the turkes, as I haue sayd you to fore / Bawdwyn thought
 12 wel that he wold not lete hym entre in to the cyte. And therfor he lodged hym in the gardyns about / ²Tancre knewe that bawdwyn whiche loued him not² was so nygh hym / And he had not forgotten the wronge and the oultrage that bawdwyn had don to hym.
 16 Thenne he dyde do arme his men, and sayde that thenne was tyme Tancred armed himself to go against Baldwin to avenge the insult of Tarsus.
 for to venge hym / ffor he was nygh his retrayt, & bawdwyn was fer fro his. They sente Archiers to fore in grete nombre for to hurte and slee theyr horses, whiche they had sente in to the
 20 pastures. Tancre had with hym fyue honderd men of armes in good poynt and wel horsed. And smote in sodanly in to the peple of bawdwyn whiche were not aduysed of them / they slewe many and moo they hurted, the men of bawdwyn ran hastely to
 24 ³arme them & cam & fought with them that ran by the tentes / [³ If. 56, bk.]
 there began a bataylle bytwene them moche grete and fiers, but it endured not longe, ffor tancre had not so grete plente of peple that myght endure ayenst the men of bawdwyn, therfor they wold with-
 28 drawe them in to theyr toun / but theyr enemyes enchassed them Baldwin's army chased Tancred and his men back into the city.
 strongly so moche that they muste flee / there was a brygge ouer a water bytwene the hooste and the cyte / the peple of tancre entred so thyk that many were lost and slayn vpon the brygge and
 32 drowned in the water / whan they were put in to the toune agayn they were moche angry in their herte / and wold take more peple and retorne agayn; but the nyght cam that destroubled it⁴ / In this scarmuche was taken Rychar le pryncipat, cosyn germayn of
 36 tancre, and robert danse, both two were noble men, by their counseyl and atyement tancre had ronne vpon Bawdwyn. Of that

¹ Fr. "guynemers."²⁻² Fr. "Tancre savoit que Baudoin qu'il n'aimoit mie."⁴ Fr. "le conseil," i. e. their plan.

In the morning messengers of reconciliation were sent between the armies.

The two barons kissed and became friends.

other syde was taken a moche noble man, named Gylbert de Mounteler. they were moche angry on that one syde and on that other for them that they had loste, ffor they doubted that they had ben slayn or drowned / whan it cam on the morn and they hertes 4
 a lytil aswaged / they sente messagers eche to other / And knewe certaynly that thyse men that were taken lyued of whom they dredde that had ben deed, and good men wente bytwene / And medled for to speke of pees in suche wyse that they cam agayn to 8
 entier concordauce and parfycht loue by the grace of the holy ghoost that adressyde theyr hertes / They amended theyr trespaas eche to other / And kyssed to gydre as frendes in good fayth /

How the sayd Bawdwyn retorned to the grete hooste / 12
 And how Tancre mayntenyd hym moche wel in conqueryng contrees. Capitulo lxxvi^o

Baldwin returned to the main army to see his brother.

Tancred and his men went on through Cilicia,

[² leaf 57] and took Alexandria the Less by assault.

b Awdwyn had counsel whan he was come to Maraze, as I have recompted that he shold goo no ferther forth / But 16
 retorned in to thoost of the barons, By cause he herd saye how the duc his brother had be hurte peryllously / And wold see and knowe of his estate and how he ferde / theyr counsel was that tancre shold goo forth. Bawdwyn lefte with hym guy neuers (20) / And them 20
 that were in his company comen fro the shippe / They passed all sylyce and bete down alle the forestes¹ of the hethen men that they myght fynde. they brente the townes, and slewe theyr enemyes. And after cam vnto a cyte called Alexandrye the lasse,² that they 24
 toke by force, and conquerd al the contre about. The hermyns and turkes that dwellyde in the montaynes of this contre, herde tydynges that Tancre and his men were so valyaunt and so myghty that nothyng myght holde ayenst them / And sore dredde that lyke as 28
 he conquerd the playne, he wold come vpon them in the montaynes / And destroye the londe entierly and the peple, ffor tappease his courage they sente to³ hym good and certeyn messagers, whiche brought to hym grete yeftes, as gold / syluer / pre- 32
 cious stones / clothes of sylk / horses / and mulettis / they sente hym moche largely / ffor whiche cause Tancre⁴ lefte them in peas. Thus dyde he wel his honoure and his prouffyt⁵ in alle places that he went by / in suche wyse that it semed wel to euery⁶ man / 36

¹ Fr. "*fortrcsscs*," not "*forccsts*."

⁵ Orig. prouffyt.

³ Orig. ta.

⁴ Orig. Taucrc.

⁶ Orig. enery.

that oure lord god adressyd his way and mayntened his werkes
vertuosly.

How bawdwyn conquerd a grete contre vpon the
4 turkes by the counseyl¹ of a knyght hermyne,
named pancrace² / ca^o. lxxvij^o

n Ow ye have herd how Tancre mayntened hym in sylyce / the
grete hoost that folowed hym cam vnto marase / Bawdwyn
8 that had seen his brother the duc hool and sound, had herd
agayne tydynges of Tancre,³ how he dyde by the contre where he
wente / he had moch grete desire to gadre to gydre peple, & goo
serche the contre lyke as he dyde to fore / But he had lost moche
12 the good wyl and grace of thoost, ffor they of thoost had herd tolde
thoultrage that he had don to tancre and to his men. And ther-
fore many doubtet for to entreprise the way with hym / Buymont
and his men also had not lyghtly suffred this thyng vnauenged, ne
16 had it ben for the loue of the duc his brother / Therfor bawdwyn
founde but few felawes that wold goo with hym / Godeffroy the
duc, whiche was a moche wyseman / and of good wyll / blamed and
repreuyd moche his brother of this werke / he brought hym herto
20 that he knowleched his folye to fore alle the peple, and sayde that
he had made amendes to tancre / after his will & yet wolde
amende it vnto his playsyr / & swar that he had doon it more by
the counseyl and atyusement of other / than of hym self. By thyse
24 wordes he appeasyd the hertes of many men ; for he was a moche
valyaunt man and moch curtoys / & neuer was perceyued in hym
vylonye. he had an hermyne with hym moche pryue / named
pancrace / he was right wyse and an hardy knyght. But he was
28 ouermoche trycherous and vntrewe, he was escaped oute of the
prison of themperour of constantynoble. And cam in to the hoost
at nycene, where he acqueynted hym with bawdwyn / And he
prayd hym and admonestet that he shold take men and goo in to a
32 countre where he shold lede hym to / whiche was moche plentyuous
and ful of goodes / And yf he wold goo / he shold conquere⁵ it
lightly / so ofte he said to hym herof that he began to take his way
and departed with two honderd knyghtes and other men of armes
36 ynough and feotemen grete nombre / They folowed pancrace alle /

Baldwin,
hearing of
Tancred's
success, had
a great desire
to go and do
likewise.

But he was
much dis-
liked,

and few men
would accom-
pany him.

Finally, he
acknow-
ledged his
fault before
all, and made
amendis to
Tancred.

[4 lf. 57, bk.]

Baldwin and
two hundred
knights de-
parted under
the guidance
of Pancre-
tius.

¹ *Orig.* couseyl. ² *Lat.* *Pancratius.* ³ *Orig.* Taucere.
⁵ *Orig.* conquere.

whiche brought them toward byse in a moch ryche lond / they that dwellyd in this londe were alle cristen men, sauf a fewe turkes which helde the fortresses / they were lordes of the contre / and suffred not the cristen men shold^t meddle with ony armes in no wyse / whan they that were of oure¹ fayth sawe bawdwyn and his men, they were glad and ioyeful / ffor they loued not the turkes, they delyuerd ouer the contre where they had^t puysaunce / in suche wyse that in a short tyme that he had conquerd alle the 8 londe vnto the flood eufrates: Bawdwyn was moch drad & doubted thurgh alle the contre ther about in such wyse that for drede / they lefte hym alle the fortresses wel garnysshed, and toke them without debate / the cristen men whiche had receyued hym 12 in to his londe, bycam so fiers and hardy / that they hunted alle the hethen men out² of the contre. ther were somme barons of the contre that seruyd bawdwyn with alle theyr puysaunce / and heelpe hym to brynge alle thyng to his wyll / 16

In a short time he conquered all the land, as far as the Euphrates.

The Christians of the country helped him.

How they of rages sente theyr messagers to bawdwyn, prayeng hym that he wold come to them.

cap^o lxxvij^o

t He renomme of this grete man, of whom his prowesse & 20 wytte spredde oueral, cam vnto the cytezeyns of rages,³ hopyn^g by hym to be delyuerid of the seruage in whiche they had ben long. The grettest men that had^t the gouernaunce of the toun sente certayn Messagers to Bawdwyn, and pray^t hym for the loue of God, 24 for his honoure and^t prouffyt, that he wold^t come vnto theyr cyte, whiche was named^t rages⁴(21) / as is founden in the byble / Thether sente thobye his sone, yong^t Thobye, for to demaunde the moneye that Gable his cosyn ought hym / and^t on the way wedded sara his 28 wyf / the Cytezeyns of this cyte receyued cristen fayth anon after the deth of oure lord^t Ihesu criste / by the prechyng^t of seynt Iude appostle, brother of seynt Symon⁵ / as it is founde wreton ⁶the book of Eusebee of cesaire / they helde yet fermly this lawe that tyme / 32

The Christians of Rages send word to Baldwin to come and deliver them.

Saint Iude the Apostie converted this city to the Christian faith.
[⁶ leaf 58, sig. 71.]

¹ *Orig.* onre. ² *Orig.* ont.

³ *Fr.* Rhodes. *Lat.* Rhages.

⁴ *Lat.* "est autem Edessa nobilis Mesopotamia, quæ, alio nomine, Rhages appellatur."

⁵ *Fr.* "Si comme l'en treuve ou premier livre (*A. inserts here 'de l'estoire'*) de sainte Eglise, que Eusebee de Cesaire, etc."—as is found in the first book of the *Ecclsiastical History of Eusebius of Cesarea.*

but¹ the turkes that were about² them constreyned³ them so moch that they made them paye greuous and grete tributes euery³ yere, in so moche / whan tyme cam for to gadre theyr fruytes, of
 4 theyr vyues and other / they raunsouned⁴ them and muste paye at theyr wylle / or ellys they wolde destroye alle / Neuertheles in the
 8 toune⁵ durst noman⁶ dwelle but he byleuyd in Ihesu criste, ffor this only toune was holden hool and⁷ entierly in the fayth. the hethen
 8 peple had⁷ conquerd⁷ the other townes / and⁷ therfor they greued⁷ moche the cristen peple of this toune / ne wold not suffre them yssue
 out of the toune for to doo theyr nedes, ffor on alle sydes of them
 was the puyssaunce of the turkes / In this toune had the seignorye
 12 a greek that was moche oold⁽²²⁾ / and had⁷ no childeren, he had⁷ ben there syth the tyme that this londe was vnder themperour of
 Constantynoble, ffor he was sente thyder by themperour for⁸ to be baylly. And⁷ whan the turkes toke alle the countrey / he departed⁷
 16 not thens, but abode alwey in his baylliage / Neuertheles he was that made neyther hoot ne cold / ne kept not the peple / but at
 theyr wyll / whan the Cytezeyns were acorde⁷ for to sende for bawdwyne he knewe it wel and was content / whan Bawdwyne herde
 20 that they of Rages had⁷ sente for hym by comyn counseyl and acorde / he toke counseyl with his men & fonde by his counseyl
 for to goo theder. he ordeyned lxxx horsmen without moo for to goo with hym / he passed the ryuer of eufrates / and lefte the
 24 remenaunt of his peple in the fortresses that he had⁷ conquerd⁷ in the contre to kepe them surely / the turkes that dwellyd in this
 lande knewe the tydynges how bawdwyne shold⁷ come to Rages with a fewe men, & made an embusshement by the waye where he
 28 shold⁷ passe / and sette there grete plente of men of armes / thyse tydynges wer sayde to bawdwyne, & therfor he turned⁷ to a castel
 by, whiche an hermyne helde / he receyued hym gladly & al his men moch honorably, & was lodged there ij days / the turkes that
 32 were ennoyed to be so long so embusshed, yssued out and cam with baners displayed to fore the castel where bawdwyne was inne / none yssued⁷ out for ther were ouer many men / The proye that they
 founde in the pastures / they brought alle with them. And⁷ after

This was the only Christian city in all this country.

The lord of this city was an aged and childless Turk.

Baldwin went with eighty horsemen to the city.

The Turks set an ambush, to attack him on the way.

¹ *Orig. bnt.*

² *Orig. abont.*

³ *Orig. enery.*

⁴ Caxton has omitted, "*estovoit*," they were *obliged*, to ransom their lands and fruits.

⁵ *Orig. tonn.*

⁶ *Orig. uoman.*

⁷ *Orig. conquerd.*

⁸ *Orig. fro.*

Baldwin
escaped and
went on to
Rages,

where he
was received
with great
honours.

[3 ll. 58, bk.]

turned in to their countrey¹ / On the thirde daye Bawdwyn yssued
out and toke his waye and cam to Rages / The duc of the toun² that
was a greek, as I haue said to fore, cam ayenst hym. And alle the
other on horsbak & a foote with trompes and busynes / The peple⁴
of the toun receyued hym³ with procession the moost honorably
they myght, euerych peyned hym to make hym feste after his
puyssaunce.

How the duc that was at rages varied for to holde
this that he had promysed to Bawdwyn /
capitulo lxxix^o

g Rete suspection had the duc in his herte whan he sawe this
Ioye that alle made to Bawdwyn. thenne by enuye he began¹²
to fynde occasions by whiche he myght / parte fro the couenauntes
suche as he had sente, whiche were suche / Bawdwyn shold haue
half the Rentes of alle the Cyte and of alle the xploytes / as long as
the duc lyued / After his deth, whiche was olde, he shold haue alle¹⁶
the seynorye entierly and hool. Now the duc wold not holde
this / But sayde, that yf bawdwyn wold deffende the cyte fro the
strengthe of the turkes, and fro theyr gryeues that they made in
the countre he wold gyue to hym, and his men resonable souldye²⁰
and good wages / whan Bawdwyn herd this that he was come
theder for to be a souldyour / he had moche grete desdayne, and
sayd that he wold not abyde there so / but wold ordeyne for hym
& his men for to retorne / the Cytezeyns of the toun sawe that²⁴
this thyng wente not wel / And cam to the duc / and shewde hym
that grete euyl & peryll shold folowe yf he lete this noble man
departe / ffor by thayde of hym they and alle theyr thynges shold
be kept in peas and deffended⁴ / and they shold be in grete fran-²⁸
chyse. The duc sawe wel by thyse wordes that he shold do folye /
yf he sette hym ayenst them of the toun / therefore he couerth his
herte for that tyme / not withstondyng he considered many thynges
and thought / But sayde that he wold acorde therto / and made³²
semblaunt that he dyde it with good wille in the presence of alle
them of the toun,² and avowed bawdwyn to his sone / and graunted
hym the half of alle that he had and shold haue his lyf duryng /
And after his decees to haue alle as his heyr / Grete ioye had they³⁶
in the cyte whan this was made / And had moost ferme hope for to

Baldwin is
to have half
of the income
of the town
at present,
and the whole
after the old
Duke's death.
The old Duke
did not keep
this agree-
ment.

The people
of the town
were so in-
dignant, that
the Duke
was forced to
abide by his
bargain.

¹ *Orig.* countrey.

² *Orig.* tonn.

⁴ *Orig.* deffended.

recoune¹ the franchise of the tributes² that the turkes ha³ charged them with. ffro that day forth they began to remembre in theyr hertes the wronges and gryefs that theyr duc³ ha³ don to them
 4 in tyme passed / And thought moche that yf tyme and place cam to poynt / they wold suffre it no lenger / But thought how they myght auenge this that they ha³ suffred alle the tyme that he ha³ be duc.

8 ⁴How Bawdwyn wente to assaylle famosette, the cyte [⁴ leaf 59, sig. 72.]
 nyghe to Rages / Capitulo lxxx^o

a Cyte was there nyghe by / moche stronge and wel garnysshed / Blanduc was lord of Famosette, a neighbouring city.
 named famosette. An vntrew turke named blanduc⁵ was lord
 12 therof / he was a trychour / but he was noble and hardy in armes / This sarasyn had don moche harme to the cytezeyns of Rages : he sette on them trybutes and dyuerse demaundes ofte, as they ha³ ben his bondemen / And for to haue thyse thynges he had good
 16 ostages. he helde theyr childeren so fowle as they ha³ ben in seruage, he made them to bere donge and fylthe, and doo fowle werkes / herof they of rages were moche greuyd. They cam to fore bawdwyn, and kneled to hym at his feet, and prayd hym with
 20 ioyned handes right humbly, wepyng grete teres / that he wold deluyer them fro this turk forsayd, in suche wyse that they myght recouere theyr childeren / whom he helde so shamefully / Bawdwyn wold fayne doo theyr requeste, after theyr desire at this theyr first
 24 requeste / And to gete theyr loue and thanke / he dyde do arme hym and alle them that he myght haue / And yssued with them out of the toun / And cam to fore famosete / And assaylled the toun moche vygorously / But they within deffended them as men
 28 wel garnysshed and in a strong place / whan Bawdwyn ha³ ben there, I wote not how many dayes, and sawe it coude not lightly be taken. he lefte in a fortresse nyghe by lxx knyghtes / and put
 32 that every day they shold renne to fore the toun of famosete, And suffre to yssue of the toun neyther man ne beste. and after he cam
 agayn to rages / the Cytezeyns of the toun sawe wel that bawdwyn
 36 thynges / And ha³ despyte and grete desdayne, that this old duc They en-treated Baldwin to recover their children.
 He held the children of the people of Rages as hostages, and treated them cruelly.
 Baldwin left a party of men to besiege it, and returned himself to Rages.

¹ *Orig.* recoune.² *Orig.* tributes.³ *Orig.* duc.⁵ Fr. *Baudus.* Lat. *Baldus.*

whiche was nought worth, and that had don to them moche sorowe / ¹and was not his felaw, but his lord in the toun¹ / therfor they toke counseyl emonge them / and sente for a puyssaunt man, whiche had many fortresses by² them in the montaynes, named⁴ constantyn, & acorded alle to gydre for to slee their duc, & wold make bawdwyn duc & lord vpon them. ffor they moch hated this old man, that without fayll had greued³ them long tyme in many maners / for he toke fro them gold & syluer, & all that 8 plesyd hym in the toun, & ther was none so hardy that durst withstande hym ne displese hym, ffor yf they dide, anon by the turkes with whom he was acqueynted, made them to destroye theyr

[⁴ If. 59, bk.] vygnes ⁴and fruytes, and brenne theyr whete and corne / and lede ¹² away theyr beestes / And yf ony of them went out of the toun, they had fere for to lese theyr heedes /

They decided to slay their duke, and to make Baldwin their lord.

How they of the toun of rages slewe theyr duc, and chees bawdwyn for to be theyr lord / cap^o lxxxix^o 16

t Hey had not forgeten the wronges and Iniuryes⁵ that they had suffred of theyr duc / they hoped al, that yf he were deed / that bawdwyn shold deffende them better than he. Therefore they wente al armed, as it was enterprised, vnto a tour where as he laye. 20 And began strongly tassayle it, and enuyronned⁶ round about / The duc sawe that the peple was so sore menyed and angry on hym / And called bawdwyn, and prayd hym to take of his tresour as moche as he wolde, and repase the peple / Bawdwyn cam among them, 24 and traunylled moche by prayers and menaces for to haue supposed to haue repased them / but he myght doo nothyng, ffor al way ther cam moo and more, in suche wyse that the companye encreced / Bawdwyn departed thus fro them, and spak to the Duc, and said²⁸ that he shold take to hym suche counseyl⁷ / that he myght eschewe the furye of the peple / ffor⁷ he myght not remedye it. thenne the duc, as a man despayred, bonde a corde to a wyndowe and descended down therby / But whan they apperceyued he was thurgh 32 smeton with arowes er he myght come to therthe. Thenne they toke hym al deed / And drewe hym thurgh the toun / And after

They went all armed to the tower where the Duke lay.

Baldwin tried to appease the people, but in vain.

The Duke in descending from a window was pierced with arrows, and fell down dead.

¹⁻¹ "*and*" should be omitted, and "*not only*" supplied here, to make the translation correspond with the original. Fr. "*cestoit non mie seulement son pareil mais son seigneur.*" ² Fr. "*pres d'culx,*" near them.

³ *Orig. greded.*

⁵ *Orig. Iniryes.*

⁶ *Orig. enuyronned.*

⁷⁻⁷ Fr. "*comme il pourrait pour miculx chevir avecques culx.*"

smote of his heek / And coude not doo ynowgh to satisfie theyr
 crueltees. On the morn they toke bawdwyn by force, ayenst his
 will in deffendyng hym self / and lyft hym vp as theyr kyng¹ and
 4 lorde / They made to hym oth of feaulte / And after delyuerd¹ to
 hym the grete fortresse of the toun / And² gaf to hym at his will
 Rychesses and moche grete tresours that the grekes had assembled
 by long¹ tyme / Thus was the cyte of Rages delyuerd withoute con-
 8 tradiction to bawdwyn / Banduc, that was lord of ffamosete / sawe
 how Bawdwyn conquerd alwey the londes and contrees, and
 encreced his puyssaunce / And sente to hym messagers whiche lete
 hym wete how that his Cyte was moche stronge / and myght not
 12 lightly be wonne, but he wold selle it hym yf he wold gyue
 hym .x / M / besauntes / Bawdwyn aduysed hym herupon / &
 by counseyl acorded to bye it, and payd to hym that somme, &
 receuyed the toun entierly / & Banduc rendred thostages that he
 16 had holden alle thenne / And thus he conquerd the hertes and
 loue³ of them of the toun / that they called hym theyr fader / And
 they dyde alle that plesyd hym to theyr power, and redy tobeye
 hym to the deth.

They made
 Baldwin king
 by force.

Banduc sold
 Ffamosette to
 Baldwin for
 ten thousand
 besants.

[³ leaf 60,
 sig. 73]

20 How bawdwyn wente and assieged the toun of serorge,
 nygh to rages, and toke it / And of his orden-
 aunces. cap^o lxxxij^o

i N this londe was a Cyte named serorge,⁴ wherin dwellyd none
 24 other peple sauf hethen men / The lord of the toun was named
 balak. the turkes that were therin dyde many traueyls and vylay-
 nous oultrages / so many that they prayde bawdwyn theyr lord for
 the loue of god / and for thaffection that he had to them / that he
 28 wold take counseyl and sette a remedye of this thyng / he answerd
 curtoysly / And sayde that he wold doo it gladly. thenne he com-
 maunded that euery man shold arme hym dylygently / And whan
 they were redy / they shold yssue out of rages, and goo strait for to
 32 assiege the cyte of sororge / Thenne dressyd they theyr engyns, and
 began to leye the siege / And brak the walles on d^r torettes. The
 Turkes that were within the toun were moch abasshed, ffor they
 thought wel that bawdwyn ne his peple wold not leghtly departe
 36 fro the siege / ne they vnderstode of no socours fro noo syde / wher-

Balak was
 lord of the
 city Serorge.

Baldwin be-
 sieged this
 city.

¹ *Orig.* delynerd.
 GODFREY.

² *Orig.* Aud.

⁴ *Sororgc.*

The Turks yielded the town to him.

fore they sente theyr messagers to bawdwyn / And so entreted that, theyr lyues saued, they wolde yelde the toun to hym. Bawdwyn receyued the toun / And put in the grettest fortresse, one his bayly, that shold doo his commaundement in that countrey / And ordeyned 4 a moche grete tribute on them of the toun,¹ and lefte hem therin / ffor he had not other peple ynough² for to people the toun yf they wente theyr waye / By the prise of this cyte, was alle the way delyuerd of the hethen, fro rages vnto antlyoche / ffor to fore myght 8 none goo vnto the ryuer³ of eufrates for the peple of sororge / Thus cam⁴ Bawdwyn to grete honour and to moche ioyous feste in the cyte of rages / Now we shal leue to speke of Bawdwyn / And shal speke now of the grete hooste that cam be hynde after. 12

By this conquest all the way from Rages to Antioche was taken from the Turks.

How the grete hoost cam to fore maresc.⁵ And how the turkes that were within fledde. And how our peple payned them to conquere countrees / capitulo lxxxiiij^o 16

[6 If. 60, bk.] Godfrey and his army arrived before the city Maresc, from which the Turkes fled.

t He duc godeffroy & the grete plente of the barons & knyghtes and noble men and other with them, they passed moche greuous wayes, and were comen by valeyes and montaynes vnto a Cyte named Maresc. this is not that toun that I spak of to 20 fore, ffor that is named Maraze / This cyte named Maresc was enhabyted with Cristen men. Neuerthelesse the Turkes helde the fortresses, And had the seignorye of the toun. And euyl entreted the cristen peple. thyse hethen peple herd of the comyng of our 24 peple, & fledde by nyght for fere of them / And ther abode none of the toun sauf they of oure fayth / whan the hooste approuched, the barons knewe the trouth of this toun. Thenne they deffended generally that none shold doo no harme to them of the toune ne to 28 theyr thynges / They lodged them in a moche fayre place and delytable / And had vytaylles ynough and good cheep. They of the countre lete the barons of thooste haue knowleche / that ther fast by / was a ryche Cyte and ful of goodes named Artaysse / 32 And dwellyd in the fortresses of the toun none other but hethen men. The prynces toke counseyl herupon / And sente Robert the Erle of fflaundes theder / he toke with hym Robert de Rosoye

There was a rich city near by, called Artaysse.

¹ *Orig.* tonn.

² *Orig.* ynongh.

³ *Orig.* ryner.

⁴ *Fr. revint*, returned.

⁵ *Orig.* maresc.

And Gossolyn the sone of aconon¹ de montagn / they were wel a thousand men of armes when they cam to fore the toun / Anon they assiege^t it. The turkes that were within trusted not the walles of the toun / And wol^t haue withdrawn them to the gretter fortresses of the toun. But the hermyns and the other men of our fayth / to whom the turkes had don long tyme grete shames & moch harme in the toun / whan they sawe oure men they had grete affyaunce and truste in them / And toke vnto them moche grete hardynesse / And raune to armes / and er the turkes myght withdrawe them in to the fortresses² and toures / they slewe them / and threwe their heedes ouer the walles to our men / & aftir opened the gates & receyued them in to the toun with grete ioye, & therin they fonde al that they had nede of / ffor the cyte was merueyllously ryche. ffor thens vnto Anthyoche was but xv myle / this cyte of whiche I speke is vnder the patriarke of anthyoche / & for fere of oure peple were the moost parties of the turkes fledde in to anthyoche. whan they herd saye that artayse was thus taken / & they had slayn them that were lordes, they toke counseyl emonge them for to aduise how they myght hurte thoost. they choos out / x m / to whom they comanded tacomplysshe this thyng^t / they wente forth / and whan they approched^t thoost / they put³ them all in a busschement sauf / xxx. wel horsed and lightly armed, whom they sente forth for to drawe men fro thoost. they approched so nygh / that the hooste of the toun sawe them / ffor they made semblaunt for to take fourriers⁵ and the horses nyghe them / oure peple ran to armes / & began to folowe so ferr that they fought to gydre folyly vpon theyr watche / they sprange out, and wold haue ronne bytwene them and the toun for tenclose them in, but our men assembled them and ran to gydre / and cam defendyng^t them / vntyl they cam into the toun in suche wyse that they loste noman / The turkes sawe wel that they myght not recouere the toun, and began to assiege it / ffor they had peple ynough, and after began tassayle it. they within deffended^t them wel that they without loste more than wan. whan the turkes sawe that the grete hoost made them redy and approuche / And that they prouffyt not, they toke counseyl / and^t retorned^t in to anthioche / But⁶ the brygge that was bytwene they garnysshed moche wel / The Erle of fflaundes and the other that were with

Robert of Flanders went to besiege this city.

The Christians in the city opened the gates to our men.

The Turks resolved upon vengeance, and planned an ambushcade.

[⁴ leaf 61, sig. 71]

But our men escaped, and reached home safely.

The Turks then returned to Antioch.

¹ Fr. *Conon*, not *Aconon*.

² *Orig.* fortresses.

³ *Orig.* pent.

⁵ Fr. *forriers*, foragers.

⁶ *Orig.* But.

Goselyn, son of Conon of Montagu, died, and was buried with great lamentation.

hym within artayse went not out, but kept the toun / but that day a maladye toke goselyn, the sone of aconon of montagu, a yong man, curtoys and moche valyaunt. he deyde of that maladye / And^l was buryed^l in that toun with moche worship and grete lamentacion.

How it was commaunded vnto alle the barons to come vnto thoost for to goo vn to anthyoche, and of s^om recountres that they had in the way / cap^o. lxxxiiiij^o.

w Han the turkes that were come fro anthyoche for to recoure artayse were departed^l from thens / at the spryngyng^t of the day / tydynges cam that the grete hooste was lodged^l nygh by, ffor they had^l herd^l saye / how therle of fflaundes was besieged^l / And therfor by comyn counseyl they had^l sente xv / C / horsmen to fore to socoure them yf they had nede. They commaunded^l them that yf the siege were departed / they shold leue peple resonably to kepe the toun / And shold saye to therle of fflaundes, and^l to them that were with hym, that they shold come agayn in to the hoost.

The great barons were all ordered to the siege of Antioch.

Tancre, whiche had conquer^l alle sylyce, had in commaundement to come agayn / and he returned, and alle the other also that were departed fro the hooste generally were comen agayne / sauf Bawdwyn, whiche abode aboute Rages, where he did^l wel his thynges. ¹whan the hoost was thus counseyll^l & ordeyned,¹ they dyde do crye thurgh out al thoost that noman shold^l departe without leue. Thenne toke they al theyr way for to goo strayt vnto

Baldwin alone stayed at Rages.

[² If. 61, bk.]

Anthyoche / they herd² wel saye that ther ran a water whiche they muste passe. But the brygge vpon this water was moche wel garnysshed^l of theyr enemyes, to thende thenne that the hoost shold^l not be destroubled^l for to passe whan they shold arryue there / by comyn counseyl of them alle, Robert, the duc of normandy, shold^l goo to for to knowe yf he myght delyuere the passage / and^l to sende worde to the barons what he founde. with hym wente euerard^l du puysaut and^l Rogyer de barneuyll, thise two he made conestables of his hooste, and had^l thauaunt garde /

Robert of Normandy went in advance, to see if the bridge could be passed.

¹⁻¹ Fr. "*Se fu rassemblez enterinement*," viz., "when the army was again entirely assembled."

ffor they were bothe moche cheualrous and proued in armes. thus departed they fro the hooste and cam to the brygge / ¹the brygge was lift vp whiche is named esenclaves / And in scripture

4 Orontes¹ / Also it is called in the contre helle.² The brygge was moche strong / And had at thentre on this syde hie towres and stronge / In euery tour were .l / men of Armes for to deffende with bowes and arabalestres the entree of the brygge and the passage of

8 the water. On that other syde toward antyoche were comen seuen honder horsmen for to kepe that syde of the water toward them / this ryuer of helle renneth on the syde of Antyoche, And cometh by another cyte named cesaire / But it souldeth by another cyte

12 named Eliopee, And is called mallec,³ and descendeth in to the see by there as I haue sayd / whan our peple were comen to this brygge / thentre was wel denyed them, ffor grete plente of turkes were descended down to the bariars / The other toures rested not

16 to caste stones and shote so sore that it was a moche grete scarmuche and fiers. they fought so moche to gydre that tydynges cam in to the hoost which alwey meuyd, and was thenne not fer from the brygge. they aunanced theyr paas and sowned trompes and

20 busynes / and smote on them that held ayenst them the paas / they that were in the toures durst holde them no lenger there for fere of the grete peple that they sawe come with the grete hoost / ffor they thought they shold not be there sure. The other also descended /

24 And were put alle to flyght / in suche wyse that oure men toke the brydge / the other knyghtes of oure peple that myght not come to the baryars for the prees whilis the scarmuche was, were moche anguysshous and descended down, where as there was a place to

28 passe whiche they of the contre knewe not of, And passed ouer and discomfyted the seuen honder sarasyns that kepte the bancke / So moche dyde one and other that alle the hooste passed delyuerly

ouer, And caryage after / they lodged them in a moche / fayr place,

32 a / vj / myle fro the toun / On the morn they ⁴approched alle the

This bridge was over the Orontes.

It was well defended, and there was a sharp skirmish here.

Our main army came up, and soon took the bridge.

Our men all passed safely over.

[* leaf 62]

¹⁻¹ Mistake arising from a corrupt text. The correct French is, "*li ponz estoit sur l'eau qui a non es anciennes escriptures, Orontes.*"—In Caxton's French text, "*esanciennes*" is written as one word.—Caxton read it "*esenclaves*," and then left out part of the sentence in order to make an intelligible sentence with his new word.

² Caxton follows his French text, and translates "*l'Enfer*" by *Helle*. The correct form is "*El Fer*," the Fer. Lat. "*Orontes appellatur, verbo vulgari, Fer dictus.*"

³ Fr. *Maubec*, Lat. *Malbec*.

grete waye bytwene the montaynes and the ryuer, in suche wyse that they lodged but a myle fro the cyte.

How Antyoche, by succession of tyme, had dyuerse names, and of the noblesse of aunceyente / 4
cap^o lxxxv^o

Antioch is a noble city, whose patriarch is third after that of Rome.

a Nthyoche is a moche noble cyte / which conteyneth the third place among the patriarkes, after the chirche of Rome. This cyte was named somtyme Esencianes¹ / after that the wrytynges 8
witnessse / Nabugodonosor, kyng of babylone, brought sedechyas, kyng of Iherusalem, theder, whan he had taken hym / And slewe his sones to fore hym / And after put out his eyes, as is founden in the fourth book of kynges. whan Alysandre, kyng of macedone, 12
was deed, Anthyochoch had this part of the londe, & enforced moche the cyte of grete toures and wallys / And wold haue it named after hym Anthyoche, and ordeyned it chiefe of alle the Royame / the prynce of thapostlys, seynt Peter, was first bisshop 16
there, in a chirche that theophilus made to hym of his hows, which was a noble and a myghty man in the toun / Seynt luke, the holy euangelyste, was born in this toun² / to the same theophle wrote he thactes of thapostles / whiche was the .vij / bisshop in anthyoche / 20
ther was the first counseyl of them that byleuyd in Ihesu Criste after his deth. And thenne was establyshed that they shold be called crysten men of crist ; ffor byfore they were called nazaryens, of the cyte that he was of / this cyte was conuerted³ by the prechyng 24
of Seynt Peter, therefore he gaf it the name of theopoble / whiche is as moche to saye as of god oure lord / vnder Antyoche ben .xx. grete cytees / of whiche ben / xiiij Archebisshopriches / The sex haue two Primates, whiche ben called catholicos / that one is in the 28
cyte whiche is named Amene, And that other is at bandras.⁴ ⁵And alle this claymeth thoryent⁵ /

Saint Peter was the first bishop here.

The first council was held here.

Saint Peter converted it with his preaching.

¹ Caxton's text has the same corruption here as in p. 133. The correct sentence reads "*ceste ot non es anciennes escriptures Reblada.*"

² *Orig.* tonn.

³ *Orig.* connerted.

⁴ Fr. *Baudas*, Lat. *Baldacenses*.

⁵⁻⁵ Fr. "*et tout ce claime en l'orient,*" viz. "and all this is called the Orient."

Of the situation of Anthyoche. capitulo lxxxvjⁿ

t His cyte, of whom I haue spoken, is anthyoche / And stondesth
 in the londe of this Surye / And is parte of the londe of the
 4 grete surye. It stondesth in a moche fayr place and delytable / Antioch has a fine situation.
 Now I shall recoute to you how it stondesth / It is a moche grete
 towne / And aboute moche good londe, for to bere habondance of
 1 whete, of corn, of fayr fontaynes and smale rennyng waters / and [1 lf. 62, bk.]
 8 it is emong the montaynes toward the eest, whiche contre dureth
 wel xl myle of lengthe, & wel vj myle of brede / aboute ther is a
 lake or mere, assembled of sprynges & wellys, that renne therin / North of it is a lake; on two other sides are mountains.
 whiche is ful of fyssh / Of this lake yssueth a rennyng^t water,
 12 whiche cometh nygh the cyte, And renneth in to the ryuer that
 renneth by the toun / the montaynes closed the two sides of the
 toun. Neuertheles, ther ben vnder them fressh waters and erable
 londe. The mount whiche is toward the south is named Oronte / One mount-
toun is named
Orontes;
 16 lyke as I sayd you of the ryuer; ffor seynt Gregoire sayth that
 antyoche is sette bytwene oronte the ryuer & oronte the montayne /
 one partie of this montayne, that goth toward the see, is moch hye,
 in such wyse that it hath a name by hym self. Somme peple wene
 20 that this hylle be pernasus, a montayne of whiche scripture² spekeh
 moche / by cause of a fontayne that is atte the foote of the same
 hylle, which is named leschille buymand / But, without faulte,³
 this is not the mount⁴ of whiche the auctors⁵ speke: ffor this
 24 montayne pernasus stondesth in the lande name^d Thessaylle / That
 other montayne, whiche is toward the south, is name^d the black
 montayne, fulle also of sprynges and wellys / of wodes and of
 pastures / There were wonte aunciently thermytes for to dwelle /
 28 thurgh this valeye renneth the Ryuer that I spak of to fore / And
 renneth to ward the see / In the montayne toward the south,
 begynneth the walles of Antyoche, and come vnto the Ryuer⁶ / hit
 is a grete espace within the closure. ther ben enclosed within the
 32 walles two montaynes⁷ / vpon the hiest stondesth a fortresse, so
 stronge that it is not prenable, but by famyne. Bytwene thyse two
 montaynes, whiche ben moche hye, is a valeye right depe, but it is
 strait / in that renneth a litil water, right faste and swyfte, and
 36 entred in to the toun: ⁸ and doth moche good to the toun / In the The enclosure
of the city is
very large,

containing
two moun-
tains, a
valley, and a
river.

² Fr. *escriptures*, the books, the ancient writings, not "the *Scriptures*."³ Fr. *sans faulte*, without doubt. ⁴ *Orig.* mount. ⁵ *Orig.* auctors.⁶ *Orig.* Ryner. ⁷ *Orig.* montaynes. ⁸ *Orig.* toun.

All the walls
are marvel-
lously thick,
and there are
many towers.

[2 leaf 63]
The town is
two or three
miles long.

Cyte ben many fontaynes / but¹ the beste is the fontayne whiche is named the fonteyn of seynt poul, And is nyghe to the eest gate / ther is another fontayne without the toun, which by crafte and conduytes is brought in to the toun right subtylly / Alle the walles⁴ of the toun / that is to wete, they that ben on the montaynes, and they that ben hangyng / And also they that ben in the playn, ben merueyllous thycke, ffor they ben of ouer stronge werke / Ther ben toures moche hye and wel defensable, that is toward the sonne⁸ gonyng^o down / The ryuer renneth so nygh the toun / that the brygge on whiche men passe ioyneth to the walles and to the gate of the cyte / The lengthe² of the toun is wel two or thre myle / hit is nyghe vnto the see / xij myle of.

12

Who that was thenne lord of antyoche / And in what manere he was comen vnto this seynorye /
cap^o lxxxvij^o.

Ancean was
lord of
Antioch.

Belphet, sou-
dan of Persia,
had con-
quered all
this country.

He had given
Nicaea to
Solyman, and
Dumascus to
Ducar.

o F this cyte of Anthyoche was lord² a turk, named Ancean of 16
the mesque / ther had ben a puyssaunt sowdan of perse³ / of
whom we haue spoken to fore, named belphet, which had conquered
alle thyse londes. And after, whan he wolde retorne agayn in to his
contrey / he departed^o entierly his conquest to his neuus, and to²⁰
somme of his meyne / by cause that he wolde that they that were
his trewe men and frendes, shold holde peas, eche in his partye /
and shold be as defendours and the closyng^o of the londe / he gaf
to his newew solyman, nycque, or nycene, with alle theyr ap-²⁴
pertenantes, as ye haue herd to fore / to another newew, named
dutar,⁴ he gaf the Cyte of damaske / And alle the cowntre about /
and wold that eche of them shold bere the name of soudan / and
lyke dygnyte / Solyman,⁵ by cause he marched on the grekes, had²⁸
euery day debate ayenst themperour of Constantynoble / Ducar was
ayenst them of Egypte / And ofte made warre eche to other, ffor
they loued not to gydre / To thende thenne that thyse two, Solyman
and ducar, myght the better mayntene theyr warre, he wolde that³²
they were puyssaunt and hye men as soudans. To one his seruaunt,

¹ *Orig. bnt.*

³⁻³ Caxton has spoiled the sense by dividing his sentence incorrectly. Fr. "*un Turc qui avoit non Ancean; de la maignie avoit esté d'ung puissant Soudan de Perse.*"

⁴ Fr. *Ducar*, Lat. *Ducac*.

⁵ Fr. "*Soliman parée quil marchissoit aux grecs,*" i. e. "because he was neighbor to the Greeks."

named assougar, which was fader of sangum, And graunt fader of
 Noradyn, of whom ye shal here here after / he gaf the renommed¹
 cyte, called halappe / To this Ancean, of whom I spak to fore, he
 4 gaf this hye and noble cyte antyoche, and lytil lond about / ffor To Ancean
he gave
Antioch.
 the Calyph of Egypte helde alle the conntre vnto the boundes of
 Surye. this ancean, whan he herd that the grete hoost of cristen
 men cam, he sente messagers and lettres to the barons of thoryent /
 8 and hym self spak to them by mouth expressedly, and requyred the
 caliphe of bandras and the soudan of perse, which was more
 myghty than any other / that they wolde socoure his londe and
 hym. They beleuyd al this lyghtly / ffor Solyman was comen to
 12 them / that had wel assayed what oure men coude doo / therfore²
 he also requyred moche to greue oure cristen men, And that they
 wolde auenge³ hym / Ancean requyred that they wolde deffende
 hym / The grete barons of thoryent, and other hye and noble men,
 16 promysed hym that they wolde helpe hym certaynlye / Ancean [4 lf. 63, bk.]
he also
gathered
men, and got
together
everything
necessary for
a siege.
 forgate not in the⁴ mene whyle / but gadred as moche peple as they
 myght haue in the contreye aboute hym / as they that fro day to
 day abode the siege, he assembled vytaylles, Armures, engyns, and
 20 alle other thynges necessarye to peple assyged / And prayd moche
 ententifly the cytezeyns of the toun that euery man shold make
 prouysyon and garnyson for hym self as moche as he myght.
 Thenne wente the cytezeyns of the toun to vyllages and other
 24 places ther aboute / And brought alle in to the cyte, whete, wyn / He was so
diligent that
the town was
soon well
garnished.
 Oyle / and alle maner of beestes / so moche that the toun⁵ was
 merueyllously garnysshed. many hye, puyssaunt and noble men,
 were comen fro the contrees that oure peple had passed / whiche
 28 were fledde in to this stronge toun for to kepe them self / in so
 moche that it was sayde / and was trouthe / that ther were in the
 cyte / vij. M / horsmen, alle armed and wel in poynt / And of
 footemen there were, that bare harnoy, moo than / xx. M /

32 Dyuerse oppynyon of our men to fore they assieged
 Anthyoche / And how they acorded alle for
 tassiege it / cap^o lxxxvij^o

¹ *Orig.* remommed.

² Fr. "*pour ce, s'entre semonaient moult efforcement de grever nos xpriens.*"
 Caxton has also omitted "*Soliman prioit*" before "*that they would auenge
 him.*"

³ *Orig.* auenge.

⁵ *Orig.* tonn.

o Vre men were approached so nygh the cyte, that they sawe it
 nygh to them. After, they assembled for to take counseyl
 how they shold procede forth / for there were somme of the barons
 that counseyllled¹ / that they shold tarye the siege vnto the newe 4
 tyme of the yere / ffor the wynter cam on / whiche shold be moche
 greuous to lye out / On that other parte, ther were many of thooste
 that were sprad about in the cytees and castellys, whiche myght
 not lyghtly be assembled tyl after the wynter. And ferthermore, 8
 they sayde that themperour of constantinople shold sende grete
 peple for to helpe them / Therfor it were wel reason that they
 shold abyde them / Also, on the other syde of the montaynes, they
 sayde they shold haue peple al fressh, of whom they had grete 12
 nede for tassiege suche a toun.² And, in the mene whyle, myght
 the peple and theyr horses soiourne alle the wynter in the countre
 about, And shold be the fressher, and harder, and strengre for
 tendure³ trauaylle and payne whan it shold nede / The other 16
 barons acorde^d that they shold sette the siege forth with withoute
 delaye / ffor yf thenemyes that were in the Cyte had the respyte /
 they shold garnysshe them better of men / of Armures, of Engyns /
 and of other estorementes than they had theⁿe: They also that 20
 were comyng, shold haste them the more yf the cyte were beseged
 for to helpe⁴ them / To this counseyl acorde^d fynably alle. they
 ordeyned theyr bataylles / & cam to fore the toun / there they
 lodged them the x day of octobre. In oure hooste were men wel 24
 arme^d to the nombre of C / C. C / M. / without wymmen / chil-
 deren / and other men that bare no harnois. And yet myght not
 alle they besiege alle the cyte / ffor without the montaynes / where
 was thought to lye no siege, ⁵was at the foot of the hylle vnto the 28
 ryuer, a grete part of the walle in a fayr playn, which myght not
 be leyd about with peple⁵ / In the comyng of this grete hoost /
 was a moche grete bruyt and noyse of buysyns / of horses, of peple,
 of Cartes and charyottes / But this daye, ne on the morn folowyng, 32
 was no noyse / but seme^d that the toun had ben alle voyde, and
 noman therin; but⁶ this was don by cause they had moche grete
 garnyson of peple & of other thynges.

Our men were
 not agreed
 about besieg-
 ing the town.
 The winter
 was coming
 on, their
 number was
 not large
 enough, and
 they needed
 help from
 Constantin-
 ople.

[¹ leaf 64]

Finally they
 encamped
 before the
 town the 10th
 October.

The town
 meanwhile
 was very
 quiet.

¹ *Orig.* counseyllled.

² *Orig.* tonn.

³ *Orig.* tendnre.

⁵⁻⁵ *Fr.* "avoit il grant partie des murs, des le pic du tertre jusques au fleuve, en beau plain, qui ne peut estre acaint de gens," a large part of the walls, from the foot of the hill to the river, were exposed, which could not be surrounded by the army.

⁶ *Orig.* bnt.

How, after the situacion of the toun, eche of the hye barons of the hoost were lodged at the sayd siege. cap. lxxxix^o

- 4 a Nthyoché had, conteynyng in the cyte / v / yates / toward^r Antioch had
 thoryent / ther was one, & was named the porte seynt poul, five gates
 & that was by cause it was vnder the monastery of seynt poul towards the
 whiche is hangyng^r on the territoire¹ / the second^r was toward^r Orient.
- 8 thoccident. And² the lengthe of the toun³ is bytwene both thise
 yates, and that is named^r the porte of seynt george / On the syde
 toward^r byse ben thre yates, whiche alle yssue toward the Ryuer / On the side
 that yate aboue is named^r the porte of the hound^r. ther is a yate toward the
 12 to fore this yate⁴ / by whiche men passe the mareys which is vnder North were
 the walles of the cyte / The seconde is named^r the porte of the duc : three gates.
 the ryuer is ther wel a myle long fro thise two yates. The thirde
 is named the yate of the brygge, by cause the brygge is there / by
- 16 whiche men passe the Ryuer / ffor bytwene the port of the duc,
 whiche is in the myddle of thise thre / and^r this that is the laste on
 that syde, approuche so the flood^r of the toun, that fro thens it
- 20 renneth costeyeng⁵ the toun alle ioynyng to the walles. wherfor it
 was that this yate, ne the yate of seynt george, our men myght not
 assiege, ffor noman myght come theder but yf he wente ouer the
 Ryuer / Buymont⁶ assieged^r this yate aforsayd^r, with them that were Bohemond
 comen in his companye. beside hym, in⁷ aualyng^r down, were besieged the
 24 lodged^r Robert the duc of Normandy, Robert therle of fflaundes / upper gate.
 Steuen therle of bloys, and huon⁸ le mayne / Thyse had^r pourprised^r
 fro the lodgys⁹ of buymont vnto the yate of thounde / ffor the [p. 64, bk.]
 frensshemen / the normans and^r the bretons, were with them to fore
- 28 this gate / thenne were lodged^r therle Remont of tholouse, and the Raymond of
 bisshop of Puy, with them that were come in theyr companye ; that Toulouse and
 were the prounceaulx, the gascoyns, and^r the burgoynons / ther the Provençals were
 was moche grete peple / They toke alle the place, vnto the gate next below
 the North
 Frenchmen.

¹ Fr. "*qui est ou pendant du tertre*," viz. "which is on the slope of the hill," Lat. "*posito in clivo montis*."

² Orig. Aud. ³ Orig. tonn.

⁴ Fr. "*il y a un pont devant la porte*."

⁵ Fr. *cotoiant*, extending along the side of.

⁶ Fr. "*Buymont assiege la porte dessus*," (i. e. the upper gate, of the three) instead of "*the gate aforsaid*."

⁷ Orig. Buymout.

⁸ Fr. *en avalant*, as you go farther down.

⁹ Lat. *Hugo Magnus*, Hugh the Great.

Godfrey and his friends extended almost to the Gate of the Bridge.

The townspeople watched the encampments of our men with great curiosity.

They were much alarmed at the preparations.

next after / At this gate were lodged the duc Godeffroy / Eustace his brother / Bawdwyne therle of henawd / Reynold therle of Toul / Guemes¹ de montagu / And other barons, many whiche alwey helde them with thysse prynces. ther were the loraynes, the henewers, 4
they of sessougne / they of bauyere, and they of francoine / They toke vp alle the place almost to the yate of the brygge / And helde the Ryuer that ranne there. In this partye, toward the toun, was grete plente of apple trees / of fygtrees, and of other trees 8
beryng fruyt / whiche our peple cut, & hewe of alle for to lodge them. they of the toun² byhelde, by the hourdeys³ and batyllemens of the walles, the manere and contenance of thooste / And meruaylled moche of the Armes / of the tentes / and of the facion 12
and manere that they had for to lodge them / They were in grete doubte / ffor they were wel adcerteyned / that so moche and grete peple wold not lightly departe fro this sieg without doynge them grete dammage and harme / Ther were many that were so grete ly 16
effrayed for theyr wyues, theyr childeren & theyr other frendes, that they wold that they had ben deed and buryed long to fore / to thende that they shold not see the destruction which they doubted for to see. 20

How our peple assembled in counseyl for to fynde the moyen, for to sende for vytaylle / & of a brydge that they made. ca^o / lxxxx.

Our men had great difficulty in finding food for their animals.

The Turks killed many of them while foraging.

o Wr peple, that were thus lodged, founde not about them 24
pastures for theyr horses ne for theyr other beestes / Therefore them behoued ofte to passe the ryuer / and to renne thurgh the contrey / thus dyde they many tymes / by cause they of the toun meuyd not yet / And it was a noyous and greuous thyng to passe 28
the Ryuer / ffor⁴ ther was no brygge / but feried ouer⁵ in botes bothe horse and man. whan the turkes of the Cyte apperceyued⁶ this, they sente secretly ouer theyr brygge theyr peple, which toke and slewe our men, that they fonde so sprad in the contre. And 32
this dyde they surely ynowgh / by cause they myght not retourne

¹ Fr. *guennes de Montaignu*. Lat. *Conon de Montaculo*. ² *Orig.* tonn.

³ Fr. "*Archières et hordeis*," i. e. from the openings for the archers, and from the palisades.

⁴ Fr. "*Car il n'y avoit point de gué*," for there was no ford there.

⁵ *Orig.* oner.

⁶ *Orig.* apperceyued.

but by ¹the ryuer / & they of thoost myght not socoure them. [leaf 65]
 wherfor our barons conseyllled them to gydre, and concluded² that
 they wolde make a brygge in somme maner by whiche they myght
 4 passe without daunger³ of them of the toun / they fonde shippes in
 the laye, and aboute in the ryuer they toke and ioyned them
 to gydre, and sette planks on them, and nayled them in suche
 wyse that thre or four men myght pas e on a front / this brigge
 8 dyde moche ease to alle thoost / This brygge was nygh the lodgys
 of duc godeffroy, right ayenst the yate that he kepte ; And therfor
 the yate was named the yate of the duc⁴ / ffor this brygge of tree
 vnto the brygge of stone was a grete myle, as I sayd to you to fore /
 12 by this yate & by this bryge was moche harme don to our peple /
 And by the yate named the porte of the hounde, they greued
 moche our peple ; ffor⁵ they had a brydge of stone by the toun, of
 dyuerse waters gadred to gydre, that ran there / by that brygge
 16 they made theyr assaylles day and nyght vpon the peple of therles
 of tholouse, which kepte the gate. Oftymes they opened the yates /
 and yssued out vpon theyr lodgyes, and dyuerse they hurted, and
 slewe many. And whan they had don, they returned in to the
 20 toun / ffor oure men myght not poursiewe them but by the brygge.
 therfore hit happened that the bisshope of puy, therle of tholouse,
 and the other barons⁶ that were there / were more hurte in theyr
 mounture⁷ than alle the other of thoost.

Our barons
made a bridge
of ships

near God-
frey's camp.

The people
of Antioch
made sallies
from the town
through the
Gate of the
Hound.

24 How our peple stopped a yate of the toun without
 forth / And of a castel of tree that they made.
 cap^o lxxxxj^o

t His peple had grete despyte & grete shame of the domages
 28 and harmes that were thus don to them / And toke counseyl
 that they wold bete down the brygge. And theder they cam alle
 Armed⁸ vnder theyr targes and shekles of yron and grete plente of
 damage.

Our men
took counsel
how to put a
stop to this
damage.

² *Orig.* concluded.

³ Fr. "*Sans dangier de ceulx de la vile.*"

⁴ *Orig.* dnc.

⁵ Caxton's text is corrupt here, the sense being ruined by omissions. A. gives the correct version: "*Car il y avoit ung port de pierre, pour passer le paluz qui estoit fetz de diverses eaves,*" etc.

⁶ *Orig.* barous.

⁷ Fr. *monteurs*, i. e. their mounts (horses, mules, etc.). Lat. "*in equis et mulis.*"

⁸ Fr. "*Et sous leur escuz granz marteaulx eurent de fer, et grant planté de pis.*" Caxton has spoiled the sense here by his omissions.

pyquoyes / And began to smyte for to breke the brydge, but the walles were so strong and harde that they myght not hurte it. And on that other syde they of the toun were on the walles and tourettes, whiche threwe grete stones and thicke on them that so pecked to breke the brygge, that they were fayne to leue their enterprise and retorne fro thens / After this they thought of another thyng and made a newe castel of tree / And sette it ayenst the brygge for to kepe it that they shold not passe ouer it / on them / 8 it was moche werke and payne to make it / whan it was ¹sette and dressyd / Therle garnysshed it with his men / they of the toun adressyd theyr gones and engyns at this castel, and smote it with grete stones / And they in the toures shotte ther at grete plente of 12 Arowes, so many in such wyse that none durst abyde in this castel ne about² it / On a day it happed that our men withdrewe them fro the brydge and fro ther about / And they within opened the yate and yssued out³ by the rowtes / They that were in the castel 16 of tree fledde / And the other sette fyer on it / And brent it to ashes / Our men sawe wel thenne⁴ that they warred not wel thus, And ordeyned thre gones⁵ for to shote stones at the brygge, whyles they shotte none of the turkes yssued oute there / But as 20 sone as they cessed, they cam oute & made theyr assaylles as they dyde to fore. It displeyd moche to oure barons that they myght not sette no remedye ayenst the comynge oute of thyse turkes / Atte laste ⁶they acorded that they wold take grete stones of the 24 Roche, such as were conuenient⁷ for a gate, and stoppe the passage.⁶ They toke an honderd men and more, and stopped the gate ouer the brydge. ther were so many that it was doon in suche wyse that it coude not be lightly broken agayne / They had grete 28 trauaylle and payne to make it / But they that were lodged there kepte alle armed them that brought the stones. Thus was the gate stopped in suche wyse that thoost abode alle in peas there / ffor the Turkes myght nomore make theyr assaylles there. 32

How our peple were in grete meschyef for as moche as they of the toune yssued and entred in and oute with grete rowtes. Capitulo lxxxij^o

² *Orig.* about. ³ *Orig.* ont. ⁴ *Orig.* thenue. ⁵ *Orig.* gounes.

⁶⁻⁶ Fr. "ilz s'accorderent à ce qu'ilz prinrent grans roches, tels qu'il conuoit bien à l'une porter, C hommes en plus, et cstouperent la porte."

⁷ *Orig.* conueuyent.

They made a wooden engine, and set it against the bridge.
[I. ff. 65, bk.]

The Turkes burnt it to the ground.

Our men then stopped up the bridge with big stones.

o On a day it happed that ther wente out of thooste as wel on
 foote as on horsbak a thre honderd men / and passed ouer
 the brydge of tree. And sprak the contreye¹ as men that wente
 4 ou foragyng / It is the custome of an hooste for to goo out² so
 oftymes & retorne without dammage or hurte / Therfor they had
 supposed to hane ben sure / They of the toun appreeyed it and
 yssued out with grete plente of peple / And wente ouer the brydge
 8 of stone and ranne on them that they sawe goo so folylly / And
 somme they slewe / And other fledde to the brydge³ of shippis
 where they supposed to haue passed / But thenemyes were there
 to fore. And deffended them the waye / in suche wyse that many
 12 of them were drowned in the water that supposed to haue passed
 ouer / other of oure men recounted the turkes that had slayn &
 discomfyted our men & bare away with them their proyes and
 despoilles, And ran on them / The Turkes fledde / and our men
 16 poursiewed them sleying and⁴ betyng them vnto within the brydge
 of stone / They of the toun⁵ that sawe theyr men so poursiewed
 sprang out with grete prees and passed the brydge, & ran on our
 men / whiche wold haue deffended them / but they myght not
 20 suffre so grete nombre of peple and fledde. they folowed them
 doying to them grete dommage, til they cam to the brydge of
 shippis / there they assaylled them so harde⁷ / that many men
 armed fyll in the water whiche were there drowned and loste
 24 Oure⁸ men lost there many men on foote and on horsbak / In this
 manere were they of thooste in grete mesease / ffor they were better
 besieged than they of the toun / There were many of theyr enemyes
 in the woodes and montaynes whiche ofte ranne vpon our peple
 28 whan they sawe them goo without ordenaunce, and they of the toun
 yssued out whan it plesed them / in suche wyse that our⁹ men
 durst not goo fer fro thooste for to fourage ne for none other thyng /
 And also in theyr lodgys were they not assured, ffor the tydyng
 32 was that the turkes assembled moche grete plente of peple for to
 smyte in thooste on that one side / & they of the toun on that
 other side shold yssue on them /

One day 300
men went
forth from
the army to
forage.

The towns-
people fol-
lowed and at-
tacked them.

[4 leaf 66,
sig. 81]

The Turks
fled, and our
men in turn
pursued.

More of the
townspeople
came out to
assist their
fellows.

After this,
our men did
not dare to
go far from
the army,
foraging.

¹ Fr. "*et s'expandirent par le pays.*" ² *Orig. ont.* ³ *Orig. brdyge.*

⁵ *Orig. aud.* ⁶ *Orig. tonn.*

⁷ Fr. *s'entasserent*, i. e. they crowded on so thickly. ⁸ *Orig. Onre.*

⁹ *Orig. onr.*

Of the famyne and mortalyte of thoost after that they had be at the sayd siege the space of two monethes. cap^o. lxxxxiiij^o.

f Or to recounte alle thauentures that were in so grete a siege shold be ouer greuous and a moche long^t thyng / Therfor¹ I shal saye to you this that longeth to the comyn / thooste had holden siege vnto the thyrde moneth, vytayll began to faylle / And^t was grete suffrete and scarsenes in thoost / they had^t in the be- 8 gynnyng^t largely and grete habundaunce both for men and horses ; but they made grete waast & more than neded, & so by their oultrage & folye they lacked in short tyme / which myght haue long susteyned them yf they had kepte it wel & gouerned^t by 12 mesure. they suffred^t grete penurye in thoost of vitayl for men & beestes, in such wise that the pour peple were in grete peryl / euery day assembled / ij / or iij / C men of armes to gydre for to serche the contrey and fetche vytaylles / they swore to gydre that 16 alle the gayne that they myght fynde & conquere / they shold^t departe egally emonge them. They wente forth ²fer fro thoost / and^t fonde the townes moche wel garnyssed^t by cause they were fer fro thoost / they thought that noman shold robbe ne take 20 nothyng fro them / And thus brought vytayll to thoste. But whan the Turkes of the toun, and^t also other in the countrey, had apperceyued this / they made embussumentes and^t ranne vpon our³ men whan they retorned, or other whyle whan they went forth, & 24 slewe them somme tyme alle that none retorned^t for to brynge tydynges to thoost / And therfor durst they goo nomore a four- agyng / The derthe was moche grete in thoost / & euery day grewe the famyne⁴ in suche wyse that a man ete wel at a mele in 28 brede⁵ four / & / a cowe was worth⁶ four marc weyght of syluer, which a man myght haue at begynnyng⁷ for⁸ echt or ten shylyngis / A lambe or a kyd^t was at sex shylyngis, whiche to fore was worth but thre or four pens / the mete for an horse for a nyght cost .xvj / 32 pens / ther deyde many for honger in suche wyse that at the begynnyng^e of the siege the horses were nombred^t at .lxx / M /

Victuals began to fail our men.

Both men and beastes suffered greatly.

[² If. 66, bk.]

Parties of men went forth into the countrey to find provisions.

The Turkes slew many of these parties, so that they dared go no more.

Many died for hunger.

¹ Lat. "*unde omissis specialibus, generalia prosequemur.*"

³ Orig. onr. ⁴ Orig. famyme. ⁵ Fr. "*pour deux souls de pain.*"

⁶ Lat. *duabus marcis.*

⁷ Orig. legynnyng^t.

⁸ Fr. V. B. *à v livres ou iiij.* A *à cinq souls, ou iiij.* Lat. *quinque solidus.*

And at that tyme were scarce / ij.M. And they were so poure,
 feble, and lene that vnneth they myght helpe any man / the tentes
 and pauyllons roted / ffor it rayned continually a rayne so thycke
 4 and grete that no cloth myght susteyne it, wherfor moche peple in
 the hooste deyde for colde and mesease. Theyr clothes roted on
 theyr backes by cause they myght fynde no place to drye them,
 ther was one so grete mortalite in thoost / that vnnethe myght be
 8 fonden men for to burye them that deyde / Many that sawe this
 grete daunger and peryll in thooste wente and departed pryuely to
 Rages where bawdwyn was / & in to Scilice where other cytees
 were also / Thus were many slayn. And grete plente deed of
 12 famyne and of other maladyes / And the hoost was so mynysshid
 that ther were not half so moche peple as they were at begynnyng.

The pavilions
 and tents
 rotted be-
 cause of the
 continual
 rains.

Many men
 left the siege,
 and went to
 Rages.

How our peple ordeyned grete rowtes for to goo for
 vytayll, & to reteyne the peple which fled for
 16 hungre / ca. lxxxxiiij^o

o Ftymes assembled the barons for to fynde counseyl how
 they myght reteyne the peple that thus departed / & also in
 what maner & how they myght aduyse & ordeyne for vytayll for
 20 thoost, & they concluded that one partye of the barons shold haue
 grete plente of men with them, & go right depe in to the londe
 of the paynems for to bryngre vytaylles and alle that they myght
 fynde and gete on theyr enemyes / to this were chosen buymont
 24 & the erle of fflaundes, Thoost was delyuerd to therle of thoulouse
 and to Huon le mayne to gouerne, ffor the duc of normandye was
 not there, And duc godeffroy laye seke moche greuously / They
 departed for to goo on fourage, many folowed for to gete somme
 28 gayne / whan the turkes of the toun² sawe thooste thus voyde
 and waxe lasse, And knewe for certayn that therle of fflaundes³ /
 Buymont / and the duc of Normandye went not there / And that
 the duc godeffroy laye in his bedde seke / They preysed and doubted
 32 moch the lasse the remenannt. And toke counseyl that they wold
 make an assaylyng by the brydge / but they that kept thoost had
 knowleche herof / And were aduertysed⁴ / And were al armed on
 horsbak and cam ayenst them and slewe many of the turkes that
 36 were come to fore and were many grete men of the toun / whan
 the other barons sawe this what for sorow and for fere were discom

The barons
 took counsell.

They sent
 large foraging
 parties
 out for food.

[¹ leaf 67,
 sig. 82]

The Turkes
 sallied forth,
 and attacked
 those who
 were left
 behind.

² *Orig.* tonn.

³ *Orig.* fflaundes.

⁴ *Orig.* aduertysed.

fyted and fled agayn in to the toun / But a grete mesaventure
 happed to oure peple / ffor as the turkes fledde dyscomfyted one of
 them was beten doun of his hors / And his hors fledd toward the
 lodgys / And many of our men ran after to wynne hym / The mene 4
 peple and other that sawe the horse supposed that our men had
 been discomfyted and that they had fled to fore theyr enemyes /
 And they began to flee / And other that sawe them flee / fledde
 also in suche wyse that alle turned to discomfyture ouer fowle / 8
 whan the turkes behelde this and sawe that our men discomfyted
 them self, anon they returned and passed the brygge / And began
 to chace them that so fledde, and bete and slewe them fro the
 brydge of stone vnto the brydge of the shippis / there were slayn 12
 of our men on horsbak a / xx / And a foot yet moo. the turkes
 returned in to theyr cyte demenyng grete Ioye and¹ feste for this
 iourneye.

By mistake
 the Crusaders
 fled and lost
 the day.

How buymont and therle of fflaundes mayntened hem 16
 beyng in fourage / Of theyr recountrees and of
 the gayne that they made. Capitulo lxxxv^o.

b Vymont And therle of fflaundes that were sente by comyn
 counseyl in fouragyng, entred fer in to the lande of theyr ene- 20
 myes. And founde² a moche Ryche toun good and ful³ of
 thyng that they had nede of in thoost; they toke all / ffor they
 fonde neyther man ne woman that empessed ne letted them /
 Thyse two barons had sente theyr espyes in dyuers partyes of the 24
 londe for tenquyre & serche where they myght gete more vytayl
 for to lede the hooste / Now it happed that one of the spyes cam
 to buymont & sayde that a grete company of turkes were em-
 bussheed in a place nyghe by them, for to renne on them whan 28
 [† ll. 67, bk.]⁴ they wente on fouragyng. Thenne they ordeyned that therle of
 fflaundes shold goo forth with his men, & buymont⁵ shold come
 fer after. And so was doon / Therle of fflaundes fonde thyse men,
 And assembled to gydre fiersly, the batayll was long & cruel / 32
 ffor the turkes had mo men than therle of fflaundes. At the laste
 our men were discomfyted, for the flemynge myght not endure
 but fledde er buymont cam / And so were lefte of our men there
 wel an hundred or more in the place / And thenne our men returned 36
 in to thoost with grete good and gayn that they had gadred to

Bohemond
 and his com-
 panions
 found a rich
 town full of
 provisions.

The Earl of
 Flanders was
 discorifited
 in an engage-
 ment with
 the Turks,
 and fled.

¹ Orig. aud. ² Orig. fonude. ³ Orig. ful. ⁵ Orig. buymout.

gydre / whyles they were there cam to them other espyes of an
 other contre / that aduertysed them of other turkes that wayted to
 hurte them whan they sawe theyr aduantage / they were thenne
 4 moo men and better armed than they had ben to fore / they were
 in counseyl / & therle of fflaundes wolde that noman shold enter- The Earl of
 Flanders de-
 termines to
 retrieve his
 defeat.
 prise the batayl but he. But he toke mo men with hym than he
 dyde tofore / Buymont¹ cam after with as many as he myght
 8 haue. Therle of fflaundes hasted hym and surprised the Turkes He surprised
 the Turkes in
 a narrow
 valley,
 in a valeye strait, in suche wyse that they myght not renne hether
 ne theder for to shote. But were constreyned to deffende them
 strongly with theyr swerdes and maces / whiche was not sure for
 12 them / By cause whan oure meyne discharged on them they myght
 not susteyne it, but fledde anon / Oure men folowed them in hew- and routed
 them.
 yng & sleynge them / and ouerthrewe many of them, They wanne
 horses / mules / Armoures and robes grete plente, & after returned
 16 in to the hoost with grete victorye & grete gayne. Grete ioye
 was made thenne in thoost whan they were comen / alle they were
 refresshyd & alleged of their meseases that they had longe suffred /
 They had vytaylles resonable a certeyn tyme. But it endured not
 20 longe that whiche they had brought with them /

How a grete rowte of Cristen men were in this tyme
 slayn by the turkes bytwene fynemyne and
 terme / cap^o lxxxxvj^o.

24 i N this tyme cam tydynges fro Rome² that³ doubled theyr Sad news
 came from
 Roumania.
 sorow and anguysshis⁴ and theyr mesease doubled, it was
 sayd & trouthe it was that an hie noble man & puyssaunt of
 denmarke, named guennes,⁵ of moch fayr beaulte & of good maners,
 28 herd say that the barons of ffrance & the valyaunt men of that
 londe were goon in pylgremage ouer the see for to make warre to
 the sarasyns / this noble man to fore named whiche had a valyaunt
 herte and hie⁶ had grete wylle for to goo after them / he toke of [6 leaf 62,
 sig. 83]
 32 his fader certeyn good / and ledde with hym wel / v / C / knyghtes
 and other men yong and wel armed, he hasted moche for to ouer- Guennes of
 Denmark,
 with 500
 knights,

¹ Orig. Bnymout.

² Fr. Roumanie, Roumania, not Rome. Lat. "interca de partibus Romanica."

³ Fr. "qui moult leur mist grant douleur et grant angoisse cseuers, et leur mesaise doubla."

⁴ Orig. angnysshis.

⁵ Fr. guenns. Lat. Danorum regis filius Sueno nomine.

take thoost of the ffrensshemen, but he myght not ouertake them / ffor he cam ouer late / And had none in his companye sauf men of his cuntry / he cam by constantinoble¹ / where themperour dyde to hym honour / and after he wente to Nycene with alle his com- 4
 had en- camped be- tween the cities Fy ne- mine and Terme.
 Here he was attacked
 and slain by the Turke.
 panye / And lodged hym bytwene² two cytees / that one was named fynemyne / And that other terme, there they dyde not as they ought to doo, by cause they were in the londe of their enemyes / but they assured them ouermache / in suche wyse that on a 8
 nyght a grete partye of the turkes that had espyed them smote in sodanly on them and began to slee them in their beddes / Neuertheles somme ther were that apperceyued them and ran to their armes / & cam ayenst the turkes and sold their lyf dere / but in 12
 thende they were alle slayn, and none escaped of alle thoost except a thre or³ foure atte moste.

How the vntrew greek latyns(23) departed fraudelously fro the hoost. And other moo by thensample of 16
 hym / cap^o lxxxxvij.

Latyns, the deceitful Greek, had carefully watched our army.
 Seeing how matters stood, he advised our men to leave the siege,
 and promised to bring aid from the Emperor, in the spring.
 1 Atyns this disloyal greek of whom we haue spoken to fore, whom themperour had delyuerd to oure peple, for to lede and conduyte them had foynously taken heede of the gouernaunce of 20
 thoost vnto this day / and of the rewle of the barons, & alway peyned hym for to deceyue them in alle the maners that he myght. Now apperceueed he wel, that thaffayres of thooste were not in good poynt / ne in good disposicion and doubted moche, for he was 24
 ful of cowardyse, and thought the pylgryms shold somme day be surprisid of the turkes of the toun, and shold alle be slayn, therfor he spak secretely to one and other, and counseyllid them to leue the siege. And that al thooste shold departe in to the cytees that 28
 our men helde vnto the newe tyme, ffor it was certayn he sayde that themperour had sente for the grettest hooste, that he myght assem- ble for to come and socoure them as sone as he myght fynde grasse on the erthe for the horses / And he hym self / By cause he loued 32
 the werke of oure lord with the noble men that he had, wold enterprise vpon hym for the comyn prouffyt a grete trauayll, And he hym selfe wold goo dylygently to themperour for to haste hym with his hoost and alle the vytaylle that he myght fynde / And to make 36
 [4 ff. 63, bk.] hym come / Many of the Barons knewe vpon ⁴this poynt his

¹ *Orig.* constantinobl.² *Orig.* bytwnee.³ *Orig.* on.

falsenes / And apperceyued that he sought manere by this waye for
to flee. And byleuyd hym not / but acorded that he shold goo his
waye; he made semblaunt for to retourne and come some ageyn,
4 and lefte his pauyllons and som of his men to whom pereaduenture
he had sayd that they shold folowe and come after / or ellys *that*¹ he
neraught what myght come of them. Thus departed he whom the
deuyll had brought, And lad hym away agayn; ffor by the wordes
8 that he had sowed / and by the sample of his departyng, began
many men to departe fro thoost / And toke no regarde to theyr
auowe ne to the oth that they had promysed / but wente secretly
one after another / The famyne was moche grete in thooste. The
12 barons coude² fynde no remedye ne counseyl therfore. Trough it
was they sente ofte two and two of the grettest lordes with grete
compayne³ of men for to purchase vytaylles, They wente moch
surely in the landes of theyr enemyes right deep and ferre. And
16 sleynge many of them that wold haue deffended theyr passage / but
vytaylles brought they none, ffor the turkes of the contre that had
aperceyued that oure peple wente for to seche vytalles had do
ledde away alle theyr beestes and theyr vytaylles vnto the mon-
20 taynes and deserte places where none myght come, & somme had
they hydde in the wodes and caues vnder the erthe, whiche our
men coude not fynde.

The Barons
generally
believed him
not.

He departed,

and many
followed his
example, thus
breaking
their oath.

The Crusad-
ers were now
in great
straits,

and could
obtain no
victuals.

How the prelates of the hoost counseyllled to doo
24 penaunce for tappese god; And of thordenaun-
ces that were made teschewe synne /

Capitulo lxxxvij^o

f Amyne / mortalyte / and many other perylls cessed not to
28 renne on the peple of oure lord / The noble and wysemen of
thoost that were trewe, good, and relygyous as the bisshop of puy,
that was legate for oure holy fader the pope, and other spak to
gydre thenne / And sayd it was moche to drede and doubte that
32 our lord were angry with his pylgryms for their synnes. therfor
they adysed that they wold speke with the barons for to make
peas and acorde vnto our lord. And was ordeyned by the consente-
ment of alle them of thoost, that they shold faste in prayrs and in

Famine and
death were on
all sides.

¹ Fr. "*ou peut estre ne lui en chaloit ce qu'ilz devenoient,*" or perhaps it made no difference to him what became of them.

² Orig. conde.

³ Orig. compaune.

They cried
for mercy
unto the
Lord for
three days.

[leaf 69,
sig. 84]
(Great reforms
were institut-
ed in the
army.

Duke Godfrey
now suddenly
recovered, to
the great joy
of all.

penaunce for to crye mercy vnto our lord by the space of iij dayes, to thende that he wold^d pardone theyr trespasses & beholde them in pyte. this was don with grete wepyng & wayllynges of herte / after this they commanded that alle the comyn wymmen of euil lyf^f 4 shold be voyded & cast out of thoost / & was cryed thurgh out al the hooste / that who that after that were taken in adulterye or in¹ fornycacion shold^d haue his heed^d smeton of / Incontinent the² droncardys of the tauernes, the players of dyse, and the grete othes 8 were deffended^d vpon the same payne, fals mesures and thefte / alle suche thynges were commaunded to be lefte and escheved^d / there were choosen wise men and trewe, that shold take heed^d for to punnysshe the malefactours³ / After thyse ordenaunces and statutes 12 were somme founden culpable in the same / where were so punnysshed therefore / that the other were⁴ chastyse^d therby / whan the peple were amended vnto our lord, the mercy of our lord^d cam without taryeng on them / ffor the duc Godeffroy, whiche was all 16 the surete of thoost / And as theyr estandart / had ben longe seke by thocasion of his hurte, that he had taken in the londe of pysside by a bere, as it hath be sayd to fore, nygh by lytil Anthyoche, and was now sodenly come to good helthe / wherof alle 20 they of thooste had moche grete ioye / and byleuy^d fermely that theyr penaunce and prayers had lengthed his lyf and respyted it.

How Buymont fonde a subtil remydye for to deluyer
and purge the hoost of the espyes of the turkes / 24
cap^o lxxxxix^o.

The news of
the siege of
Antioch by
the Crusaders
spread all
through the
East.

g Rete renommee was spradd thurgh out al thoryent / and toward^d the contrees of the south / that ouer grete nombre of peple of the contrees where the sonne goth down were comen, and 28 had besieged the noble cyte of Anthyoche / hit was a grete thyng^r in trouth / But the tydynges were moche more gretter withoute comparyson / Eueryche of the puyssaunt⁵ lordes of that countrees and londes had sente theyr espyes in to the hoost / and ther were 32 so many that they cessed not to come and goo, and continually / & vnnethe myght ony thyng be don or sayd in thooste ne in the lodgys, but that it was anon⁶ knowen in the panemye⁷ / It was a

² Fr. "*les beuveries, les tavernes,*" etc. ³ *Orig.* malefactonrs.

⁴ Fr. "*que les autres s'en chastierent.*" ⁵ *Orig.* puyssannt. ⁶ *Orig.* auon.

⁷ Fr. *paicnnie*, heathendom.

light¹ and easy thyng¹ for them to be with our peple in thost / Ther were of the turkes that coude speke greek / and the langage of Ermenye / And toke thabyte of the surreyens, of grekes / and of them of hermeny / ther were many of suche maner of peple / the barons toke counseyl emong them how they myght voyde & purge thoost of this pestelence of espyes, ffor they helde them in grete paryll & grete daunger / that theyr couyne & purpos shold be knowen in the lowdes of theyr enemyes, and it was no light thyng to knowe them that were suche espyes / Emonge² alle other thynges they coude³ fynde none other remedye / but to holde theyr counseyl secrete / and fro them forthon saye lasse to the peple than they were woont to doo / Buymont, whiche was of moche grete wytte and hye herte, spak to the barons, and sayd in this manere / "ffayr lordes, I praye you that⁴ ye wil late me cheuysshe with this matere / ffor I haue remembryd how we shal be delyued of this peryl⁴ / wherfor, I praye you, gyue to me the charge therof" / The barons helde Buymont⁵ for a moche wyseman, and prudent / And gladly sette the charge therof on hym, and departed fro the counseyll / Buymont⁶ forgate not this that he had promysed / whan tyme of soupper cam / he disposed and ordeyned hym for to souppe / he made the knyghtes⁷ of his contre to take out somme turkes that he had in prison, And made theyr throtes to be cutte / And after smote them in pyeces and arrayed them for to be rosted. Thenne began they to demaunde what he wold doo / Thenne Buymont⁸ sayd to his men / And bad his men also to saye to other / "that alle the barons had thus ordeyned and sworn, that alle the espyes that myght be taken in thost shold be rosted and seruyd at the tables of the barons / And the barons shold ete them by their oth." thyse tidynges were anon sprede thurgh out thoost / that suche Iustyce was don in the lodgys of buymont. Alle men ran theder for to see this merueylle / The turkes them self that were comen in to thoost for to espye, were moche affrayed, And euerych of them thought longe⁹ or he was departed fro the lodgys, by cause they doubted that they shold be seruid in lyke wyse / Aftir whan

Greek, Syriann and Armenian spics were present in our army in great numbers.

It was a difficult thing to get rid of them. [³ If. 60, bk.]

Bohemond took charge of this matter.

He threatened to roast and eat all taken as spics.

The Turks were greatly frightened at this, and many left the army.

¹ *Orig.* lihgt.

² *Orig.* emonge.

⁴⁻⁴ Fr. "*vous me laissez convenir et chevir de ceste chose, car j'ai pensé une delivrance, de ce peril,*" viz., let me settle this matter for you, for I have thought of a way to deliver us from this danger.

⁵ *Orig.* Buymont.

⁶ *Orig.* Bnymont.

⁷ The correct French text gives "*bouchiers*" (butchers), instead of "chevaliers." Lat. *carnifices*.

⁸ *Orig.* Bnymont.

⁹ *Orig.* louge.

They went home and reported that the Crusaders surpassed all men in cruelty. After this no men were willing to go as spies to the Christians.

they were returned home to their lordes / that had sent them. they sayd to them, And tolde al aboute the countrey / that suche men as were come for tassiege Anthyoche suffred moche mesease / And were harder ayenst traauyll and labourer than stone or yron / Of 4
 cruelte they passed alle beres and Lyons / ffor the wylde beestes ete men alle Rawe, But thysen men roste them afore, & after deuoure them. This tydyng was in suche wyse knowen and publysshyd in alle paynemye / that after the Soudan and the grete admyrals¹ 8
 myght neuer fynde man wolde come and espye the hoost. They that were in the cyte assyged were so effrayed and had so grete hydour of this / that fro that tyme afterward the counseyl of the barons was better kept and more secretely than it was to fore. 12

How the Calephe of Egypt sente his messagers with grete yeftes vnto our hoost / Capitulo C^o

[² leaf 70] ^{2e} Mong other mescreauntes grete lordes and prynces, The caliphe of Egipte was the moost myghty of men and moost ryche of 16
 goodes; he sente his messagers vnto the barons that were in thoost, And I shal saye how and by what occasion / (24) Grete hate and moche fiers hath ben bytwene the Turkes³ of thoryent and the Turkes³ of Egypte / And hath be of auntyent and long tyme, By cause they 20
 discorde in theyr creauce and mysbyleue / And eche sayd to other and yet doo that they be fals sarasyns / as I haue sayd to fore in the begynnyng of this book, And therefore they ben ofte in warre / Somtyme one partye is aboue / And another tyme that other / In 24
 the tyme that our peple were to fore Anthyoche / this caliphe of whom I speke now, helde alle the londe of Egypte vnto the Cyte⁴ of Sureye / whiche conteyneth wel / xxx / Iourneyes longe / The Soudan of Perse, a lytyl tofore that oure peple cam, had conquest 28
 the toun of Anthyoche, whiche is by the Royame of egypte / and alle the londe entierly vnto the braas of seynt george, as I haue sayd to fore / Now had the calyph of egipte in moche suspicion the Sowdan of Perse, and moche plesyd hym his destruction and 32
 dommage / And had moche ioye that Solyman had lost Nycene, whiche Solyman was neuwe to the sayd Soudan / and was so 36
 eifebled of his men. And also he was plesyd that our cristen peple had besieged the Cyte of Anthyoche / Therfor he sente good

There has long been great hate between the Turks of the Orient and those of Egypt.

The Caliph of Egypt was much pleased that Solyman had lost Nicæa.

¹ Fr. *Amirault*, i. e. Emirs.

³ *Orig.* Turkes.

⁴ Fr. *La Liche de Surie*. Lat. *usque Laodiccam Syriac*.

messagers to speke to them whiche brought right grete yeftes / And
 moche ryche presentes / yf they wold receyue them / And they
 sayde that the Caliphe was redy for to gyue to them socoure and
 4 ayde right largely of men / of good^d and^d of vytayll, and prayd them
 moche derely that they wold mayntene and conteneue theyr siege.
 The barons of our hoost receyue^d the noble men that were comen,
 and sent from hym honorably, and made them to sojourne with
 8 them / And they that were wyse knewe anon the wytte & vygour
 of our barons, and begonne to haue moche grete doubte & suspencion
 that our peple were so valyaunt / & that yet they sholde do grete
 dommage in theyr londe / so that they deuysed in this thyng^t as ye
 12 shal nowe here in redyng hoolly this book.

He sent rich presents to the Christians before Antioch, and promised to help them.

How Ancean, the lord of anthyoche, and his barons
 sente vnto the turkes, theyr neyghbours, for to
 demaunde socours¹ / cap^o. Cj^o

16 t He lord of Anthyoche and the other grete and noble men of
 the toun, seyng that our² men suffred so moche famyne and
 3 mesease / as we haue sayd to fore / and fore alle thyse thynges
 wold in no wyse leue theyr siege, but shewe^d by theyr counten-
 20 ances that this trauayl greued^t them not / wherfore they were
 moche abasshy^d. And thenne Ancean, by the counseyl of his men
 and them that were moost pryue with hym, sente messagers and
 lettres to his moost ryche neyghbours / And prayd^t hym right
 24 derely for the honour of theyr lawe, for the sauyn^t of them self /
 And for his loue, that they wold come and socoure them without
 taryng. And he sente them word in what maner they shold
 approche secretlye to Anthyoche. And after they shold couere
 28 them in a busschement nygh by / And there abyde the pylgrims as
 they had ben accustomed, and at suche tyme as they shold^t come
 to the brydge / ffor there shold they sprynge out of the toun / And
 shold^t assaylle them, & whyle they were besy in fyghtyng, they
 32 that were embusshed shold^t sodenly breke & come by hynde on
 them & fyght, And so shold they be enclosed^t bytwene them
 within And them withoute, in suche wyse that none shold escape /
 They that herd this lettres and thyse messagers doubted^t them
 36 moche of oure peple / wherfor they acorded gladly to this counseyl.
 they assembled them of hallape / them of cezayre, them of haman /

The Lord of Antioch was much astonished at the [3 lf. 70, bk.] persistence of the Christians, notwithstanding their sufferings,

and sent to his neighbours for help.

They devised a plan for attacking the Christians on all sides.

and of other cytees about, tyl they were a grete nombre of peple /
 And this dyde they the moost secretly they myght, as was to them
 commaunded, and legan to departe and approuche Anthyoche /
 And cam to a castel named harant, whiche is fro thens a .xiiij / 4
 myle. there they lodged and thought on the morn as sone as the
 scarmuche shold be bytwene the pylgryms and them of the toun /
 they shold synyte in with theyr spores vpon oure men. And oure
 cristen men were in grete peryl / But one thyng ther was thenne / 8
 that tho and other tymes dyde them grete good / ffor ther were
 cristen men, hermyns and surryens in the cytees of whiche the
 turkes were departed, whiche anon lete the barons of thooste haue¹
 knowleche how it was concluded bytwene the turkes / They 12
 assembled anon for to take aduys herupon, And was acorded
 emonge them / that alle they that had any horses to ride on shold
 be arayed And² on horsbak as sone as it were nyght / And that
 euery man shold drawe in to his bataylle lyke as they were 16
 assygned / And after shold yssue out of thoost without any noyse.
 the peple on foote shold abyde styll alle, and be redy to deffende
 the lodgys, yf any thyng sourded ayenst them.

A large number assembled, and approached Antioch.

The native Christians revealed this plan to the Crusaders.

The Crusaders took counsel.

How oure peple knewe the couyne of the turkes / of 20
 thenbusshe³ that they made, and of their victorye
 and gayne that they had. Capitulo Cij^o

[³ leaf 71]

At night, they went out to meet the enemy, secretly.

In the morning they arranged themselves in six battalions,

and the battle commenced.

a S sone as it was nyght they yssued out lyke as they were com-
 manded / They passed the brydge of shippes, And they were 24
 not passyng / vii / C / men on horsbak / they that wente cam to a
 laye, whiche was bytwene the laye of whiche I haue spoken to fore /
 And the Ryuer named⁴ helle / whiche ben that one fro that other,
 nyñ a myle / there they rested them this nyght. they enemyes that 28
 knewe nothyng of theyr comyng / were this nyght passed the
 brydge, whiche is vpon the Ryuer of helle. In the mornynge, as
 sone as our men apperceyued the day, they armed them and made
 vj bataylles of⁵ them / The turkes had sente by fore their corrouns / 32
 which cam & sayde that the grete peple cam ayenst them / they
 sente to fore ij of theyr bataylles, & aftir cam the grete peple /
 whan they approuched they were in grete desraye / the Archers
 approuched first, whiche shotte thycke; But oure men smote in 36
 with the speres moche asprely in suche wyse that they made them

¹ *Orig. hanc.*

² *Orig. Aud.*

⁴ *Orig. uamed.*

⁵ *Orig. cf.*

to flee, and chased them to theyr grete bataylles. There were they
 in suche a destrayt bytwene the Ryuer, and the laye that they
 myght not shote ne flee after theyr customme. There was the
 4 medlyng grete and fier / And the barons and men of armes dyde
 moche wel, But the turkes that had lost the maner of fyghtyng /
 myght not deffende them, ne endure the strokes of oure peple, but
 fledde theyr way al that they myght. Thenne whan our barons
 8 sawe this / they began to doo wel, And commaunded that noman
 shold faygne, but folowe the chaas asprely / The turkes fledde vnto
 hernant. Oure men folowed alwey, sieyng and hewyng of heedes
 and armes, that al the waye that they passe^d by was sowen with
 12 dede men / This chaas endure^d wel .x / myle / The turkes that
 were within the castel of hernant sawe that that theyr men cam
 alle discomfyted / They sette fyere on the castel, & they them self
 fledde / But the hermyns and the other eristen men of whom were
 16 many in the castel recouere^d the fortresse / and^t yelde^d it to oure
 men whan they cam. This daye were slayn of the turkes moo
 than / ij / thousand / They toke .v / C / heedes of them that were
 best arrayed, And brought with them in signe of vycorye. They
 20 war there wel a / M / horses for Armes, grete and myghty, wherof
 they had grete neda. Thus returned they to theyr lodgys charged
 ful of prayes of armures & of dispoylls, makyng^t grete ioye, and^t
 thankyng^t oure lord that had comforted^t them in theyr meseases. [1 ff. 71, bk.]

The conflict
was great
and fierce.

The Turkes
fled, and our
men followed
for ten miles.

More than
2000 Turkes
were slayn
this day, and
our men
gained great
spoils.

24 How the turkes of Anthyoche² sprange out³ and
 assayled the lodgys of oure peple. Capitulo Ciiij^o

t He cytezeyns and habytantes of Anthyoche had^t herd tydynges /
 how the turkes that had ben so discomfyted were departed^t, and^t
 28 meuy^d fro theyr contrees for to come socoure them, Therfor they
 had^t theyre eres opene to here tydynges of theyr comyng / And
 were alle armed and redy for to make thassaylle by the brydge alle
 incontinent⁴ whan they shold see them / but whan they sawe that
 32 the nyght passed, and that the day cam without hauyng⁵ any
 knowleche of theyr approuchement / Theyr espyes made them
 certayn that our men were goon on horsbak ayenst them, Therefore
 they toke herte / And^t yssue^d vnto the lodgys, ffor our men
 assailed our
 encamp-
 ments.

² *Orig.* Authyoche.

³ *Orig.* ont.

⁴ *Orig.* incontinent.

⁵ *Orig.* hauyng.

were not yet comen agayn in to thooste. ¹They assaylled them moche asprely and harde / so longe that somme of them that were in the playnes within the toun wente vpon the toures and vpon the walles, by cause that oure² men that fought³ shold be abashed by 4 thocccasion of theyr peple that shold come¹ / And as oure peple approached the turkes / they apperceyued that the other that they abode / were discomfyted, by cause oure men cam ioyously with alle theyr despoilles. Thenne aroos the sorow grete thurgh alle the 8 toun. Our men approached the toun / And dyde do throwe ij. C / heedes of the turkes that they had brought with engyns in to the cyte for to make them certayn of theyr victorye, And yet to thende that they shold not forgete theyr sorowe that was entred in to theyr 12 hertes. The other iij C / that were lefte they pyght them on stakes at the foote of the walle / And sette there men for to kepe them / By cause they shold be alwey in theyr syght. whan they cam to the deffence / the nombre of them that were discomfyted 16 were / xxvij / M. Thus⁴ were somme grete turkes taken & brought prisonners / This was don in feuerer the / vj / day the yere of thyncarnacion of our lord / M / lxxxvij^o.

From the towers they saw our men returning victorious, and were very sorrowful. Our men threw 200 heads of Turks into the toun.

This was done the 6th day of February, 1097.

Of a castel that our men made of somme pylgryms ²⁰ that arryued at the porte, and how they were discomfyted by a busschement of turkes /

cap^o. Ciiij^o.

a lle the barons of thoost toke counseyl, and acorde^d that vpon ²⁴ a territoire, whiche was at the tentes of Buymont,⁵ shold be ⁶made a fortresse, which shold be wel garnysshyd with good men of armes, to thende that yf the turkes made theyr assayllics, as they were acustomed / they of this fortresse shold renne on hem. And ²⁸ this towr was a barbycane of thooste / like as they had deuysed

[6 leaf 72]

The barons decided to make a fortress near Bohemond's tent.

¹⁻¹ Caxton has exactly followed his original here, which is very faulty: A. gives the correct reading: "*Durement i assaillirent, et longuement, tant que cil qui estoient sur les beates les virent, lors leur firent signe qu'il s'en retournerassent, car il veioient venir genz. Cil entrerent en la vile, et monterent sur les tors, et sur les murs por connoistre si c'estoit leur gent qui venoient.*" Lat. "*pene tota die nostris gravissima intulerunt certamina, quousque de superioribus civitatis significantibus exceubiis nostrorum adventum in urbem se reciperunt, ubi super turres et moenia et loca eminentiora constitui adventare quidem considerant legiones ignari, tamen nostrorum an suorum essent, castra que accedrent.*" ² Orig. onre. ³ Orig. fought. ⁴ Orig. Thns.

⁵ Orig. Buymont.

& ordeyned, so was it made without taryeng¹: and valyaunt men
 and hardy were sette in this fortresse largely. thenne was alle
 thost assured as they had ben within the walles of a good² Cyte /
 4 The¹ siege had endured thenne .v. monethes / A shippe of genewes The siege had
 now endured
 five monthes.
 cam theder, whiche had brought pylgryms and vytaylles. they
 aryued at the porte, & sette them in the Ryuer of helle, as it
 falleth in to the see / they had sente ofte messagers in to the hoost /
 8 that they shold feteche them by som of the grete barons, with so
 good company that they myght be sauflly conduyted in to thoost.
 they of the toun had thenne apperceyued that messagers wente and Messengers
 were sent
 between the
 town and the
 sea, to a
 Genoese ship.
 cam fro the shippe in to thoost / And sente out men, that slewe
 12 somme of them ; And therfor durst none goo more without grete
 companye. Our barons had aduysed to make a grete fortresse at
 thende of the brydge, in a mahommerye² / that the turkes had, and
 wold sette men of armes there for³ to kepe and deffende thysse of
 16 the brydge, yf the turkes wolde come / But by cause that there
 were peple yssued out of thoost for to goo to the ship, were chosen
 somme of the barons, whiche shold goo and feteche them, ffor they
 were peple that were goon for to here tydynges of their contrees /
 20 and wold haue comen agayn, but they durst not. therto was chosen
 buymont / the Erle of tholouse, Euerard du puysat, And therle
 gamyer of grece, whiche also shold conduyte the messagers of the
 calypho vnto the port of the see, and at retornyng shold brynge Bohemond
 and a party
 of men were
 chosen to
 protect those
 going to the
 sea.
 24 agayn and conduyte them of thooste / they of Anthyoche herd saye
 that the sayd Barons were departed fro thoost, and descended
 toward the see / And sent out four / M / knyghtes⁴ of the moost
 noble that they had, for to lye in a wayte at their retornyng. It
 28 happe that the fourth day that our men sette them on the way for
 to retourne, and brought Armures and many horses laden with
 vytaylles and other thynges / And toke none heede of them that
 laye in a wayte / The turkes brake sodenly on them / And surprised As they were
 returning the
 Turks at-
 tacked them.
 32 oure men at a paas. The erle of tholouse had the vaward⁵ / And
 Buymont cam after. The crye began moche grete. ⁶whan the
 Turkes sawe thyse noble men, they held them al styll⁶ / And

¹ After *city* Caxton has omitted "*Car devers Orient estoit celle garnison venue. Devers indy les murs de la palus qui estoient le mur. Devers occident et devers bise le gardoit le fleuve, qui se espanoit vers la mer.*"

² Fr. *Mahomeric*, Lat. "*ubi erat quoddam eorum superstitionis oratorium.*"

³ *Orig. sor.* ⁴ *Orig. kuyghtes.* ⁵ Fr. *l'avantgarde.*

⁶⁻⁶ Fr. "*quand les Turcs vindrent, les preudhommes se tindrent tout croyement.*"

began tenceigne the peple on foote, that they shold holde them to gydre. They of the grete affraye that they herde, ffor drede that they had, hydde them ¹in the bussches, and fledde in to the montaynes and woodes, and toke none heed to that they brought / 4 whan our barons sawe this, they knewe wel that they strengthe was not lyke theyres, And began to come to the lodgys dylygently with as many men as they myght conduyte. The other, that wolde not folowe, ne myght not, were alle there slayn / there were slayn 8 wel of men and wynnmen to the nombre of iij C. / this duryng tydynges cam to the hoost, that alle they that were comyng were al slayn & put to deth by the turkes, that had espyed them / Of the barons² them self, that conduyted them, was not knowen³ 12 whether they were a lyue or deed. the duc Godeffroy, that was not ydle, had grete anguyssh in his herte for the peple of our lord that was thus lost, And lete do crye that alle men shold arme them in thoost on peyne of deth / and that none shold abyde behynde 16 in so grete a werke / alle assembled, & passed the brygge of the shippis / and they made .v / bataylles / robert, duc of Normandye, lad that one ; The .ij / lad therle of Flaundres / the thyrde, huon le mayne / The forth, Eustace / brother to the duc⁴ Godeffroy / And 20 the duc⁴ hym self had the fyfthe. whan they were all ordeyned, the duc⁴ called them ; And alle they heryng, sayde in this manere / “ Fayr lordes, yf it be trouthe thus as the tydynges renne, that for oure⁵ synnes⁶ thise cruel houndes and fals / haue⁷ slayn so valyaunt 24 men, and of so grete counseyl, whom ye sente to the see side / And with them be perysshed also our felows, whom they shold haue conduyted / I see not but of twø wayes that one / or that we deye with them as good cristen men in this world, and certeyn to receyue 28 the reward of Ihesu Criste, whom we shal serue vnto the deth / Or yf oure lord wyll that oure seruyce be to hym acceptable / that we take vengeance on thise mastyfs, that haue thus enpayred cristen- 32 cte, and endommaged and destroyed thise valyaunt men. As for my self, I saye to you⁸ certaynly / I had leuer to deye presently, than to lyue without to be aduenge^d on them / Now vnderstonde ye what I shal saye to you ; me semeth that thise turkes, yf they haue the victorye vpon oure men, as it is sayd / they shal be now 36 mounted in grete pride / And by grete bobance, for to angre vs, wyl come to the cyte / And brynge their proyes and fardellys to fore

[1 If. 72, bk.]
Many of our
men fled.

At least 800
were slain.

Duke Godfrey
assembled
five battalions
to aid those
who had been
thus sur-
prised.

He exhorted
them either
to die as
Christians, or
to avenge
their fellow-
soldiers.

“As for my-
self,” said he,
“I would
rather die
than not be
revenged.”

² Orig. barous. ³ Orig. kuowen. ⁴ Orig. dnc. ⁵ Orig. onre.

⁶ Orig. fyunes. ⁷ Orig. hane. ⁸ Orig. yon.

vs / And ye shal wel see that they shal not kepe them wel in
ordenaunce, but shal goo folyly ; And this shal be grete auantage to
vs / Therefore, ¹by my counseyll, yf it be so / that¹ we hold vs al
4 redy for to doo the seruyse of oure lord, ffor whiche we departek
oute of oure countrees / late vs haue in hym stedfast hope, ffor he
²guerdonneth right wel his souldyours / whan our enemyes shal
come to vs, late vs receyue them vygorously with glayues / speres
8 and swerles / late eueryche of you remembre wel in his herte of the
wronge and shame that they haue don oure lord, and to oure self."
This worde, that the duc sayde, was wel vnderstande of alle / And
plesyd them merueyllously well. They began to warne eche other,
12 and somone to doo well / As³ there they knewe to gydre, And
there helde them al redy / And thenne buymont aryuek, & cam
among them / And a lytil whyle after cam therle of tholouse : And
they tolde to them of theyr mesaventure. They had moche grete
16 ioye of their comyng, and that they were escaped / They moche
comforted eche other / And after sayk to them the counseyl of duc
godeffroy / They acorded therto / and sayd that it ought so to be
doo ; And so abode there alle they to gydre / Ancean, Capytayn of
20 the Cyte, by thyse semblaunces that he sawe, knewe that his peple
had discomfyted the oures. Moche doubted he of theyr comyng
agayn, by cause that our men were yssued ayenst them / therfor he
dyde do crye in the toun / that alle men shold arme them and
24 come to the yate of the brydge, for to be redy in araye for to
socoure their peple, yf nede were / Our men had sente their espyes
and theyr courreurs in dyuerse partyes, for tenquyre and knowe
whan the turkes shold come, and fro what parte.

28 Of a batayll, where our men auenged them of the
turkes / and of a stroke that duc godeffroy gaf
in this bataylle. cap^o Cv^o

i T was not longe after, but whyles as they taryed there, and
32 had theyr hertes desyryng to doo prowesse, yf they had tyme
and place, that theyr messagers arryuek alle rennyng, whiche told
to them that the turkes were nygh / They began to recomande them
self to oure lord, and wente forward in theyr bataylles like as they
36 were ordeyned / whan they sawe tyme and place, they smote theyr

¹⁻¹ Fr. "Pour ce c'est mon conseil, si vous voiez qu'il soit bon, que," etc.

³ Fr. "si comme ilz se cognoissoient."

"We must hold ourselves ready to do the service of our Lord."

[² leaf 73]

The Crusaders then began to exhort each other to do their best.

Just then Bohemond arrived, and there was great joy at his safety.

Ancean stationed soldiers at the bridge, to aid his men if they should need it.

Our men
attacked the
arriving
Turks
fiercely,

so that they
retreated to
the bridge.
[¹ If. 73, bk.]

Duke Godfrey
was ready for
these, and
slew them or
drove them
back.

All of the
barons did
great feats
of arms.

Ancean sent
his men to
attack ours
in turn.

hors with theyr spores / And cam to so fiersly that the turkes were
al abasshed / thenne they began to smyte asprely on the right syde
and lyft, And flewe in to the presse in suche wyse that euery man
wold be the best and moost valyaunt / in so moche that they gaf 4
to theyr enemyes no leyser to aduyse them what they shold doo /
They myght not endure the grete strengthe of oure men / but wold
haue drawen toward the brydge / ¹But the duc godeffroy / that
moche knewe of suche thynges, was² pourueye³ therof to fore / And 8
had taken a lytil territoire, whiche was ayenst the brydge / And
there he helde hym in his bataylle / Alle the turkes that they
chaced toward hym / he slewe them, or he made retorne ayenst
them fro whens they cam, where they slewe them alle and hewe 12
them / the erle of fflaundes dyde right wel this day, as a good,
valyaunt & hardy man in armes / the Duc of Normandye brak
the presse, that no turke durst³ approche hym / the Erle of tholouse
hym self wold auenge this / that they had made hym to spore his 16
hors the daye to fore / huon le mayne forgate not to shewe of what
lygnage he was, and of what contre / ⁴but⁵ seme⁶ that he dyde to
his enemyes / that alle the werke and charge had ben his / thenne
eustace, brother of duc godeffroy; Bawdwyn, erle of henawd / 20
hughe, therle of seynt poul; And alle the other barons, knyghtes
and noble men, in theyr countrees dyde meruaylles of armes, ther
was neuer man lynyng that sawe ony werk better enterprised and
more valyauntly ahyeuud, and that communely of alle / Ancean 24
sawe this bataylle so grete / ⁶And sawe his peple yssue out⁷ for to
gyue them herte and courage⁶ / And to put awaye thesperaunce of
theyr flyght, commaunded to shette the yates after them. they
cam pryckyng ayenst oure men / & wold haue made theyres to 28
retorne whiche were discomfyted, but the affraye and the drede was
so grete in them that they neuer made semblaunt therto / they them
self, that frely cam on, whan they sawe the prowesse of our men,

² Fr. "*s'estoit par avant moult prevu,*" i. e. he had thoroughly prepared himself in advance.

³ *Orig.* durst.

⁴ Caxton is very obscure here, although he seems to have understood his French. Fr. "*aincois sembloit à ce qu'il faisoit sur ses ennemis que toute la besoigne estoit sienne,*" viz. it seemed, to judge from what he did to his enemies, that the whole burden of the fight lay on him.

⁵ *Orig.* buf.

⁶⁻⁶ Fr. "*si fist ces gens issir hors, et pour eulx donner cuer.*" Caxton seems to have read *rist* (saw), instead of *fist* (made).

⁷ *Orig.* ont.

and the¹ grete strokes that they gaf, tersed theyr backs with the
 other / ne neuer made grete resistance / there was the fyghtyng
 grete, and merueyllous² betyng¹ doun of the turkes, that men myght
 4 not but with grete payne passe / ther was so grete noyse, so grete
 crye, & so terryble neyhng¹ of horses oueral, that a man shold
 not haue herd thondre. they that had made the yates to be shette
 after them,³ were ofte this day in peryl to lese theyr lyues.³ the
 8 wyues of the turkes, the maydens and feble peple of the toun, were
 vpon the walles and tourettes, where they sawe theyr peple torne to
 meschyef and to destruction / ye may wel thynke that they had
 grete sorowe / wepyng, and moche crye and noyse. wel cursed
 12 they that tyme, that they so longe had lyued that they shold see
 suche meschyef happen to them / Ancean sawe that he loste alle his
 men, and had none hope for to recoure them / commaunded that
 that yate shold be opened for to receyue in to the toun them that
 16 were lefte / whan the turkes sawe the yate opene / they had so
 grete wylle to entre in to the toun / that vpon the brydge they
 pressy¹ so euyl for haste, that they fylle in to the water of them
 grete plente. The Duc Godeffroye, that al that day had so wel
 20 don, And whan it cam for to departe to fore the bridge / he gaf a
 strook¹ moche valyaunt / and suche one / that it shal perpetually
 and euermore be spoken of in wele and in honour / ffor I trowe
 ther happed neuer none suche to fore / ne neuer shal happen here
 24 after. There were this daye many heedes smeton of / Armes and
 sholders at one stroke / he wel apperceyued¹ one of his enemyes,
 whiche helde hym nygh to Godeffroy, And auanced hym ofte, and
 peyned¹ to greue hym / The valyaunt Duc smote hym with his
 28 swerde by suche myght and vertue, that he smote hym in two
 pyeces in the myddle / in suche wyse that the ouerste part of hym
 fyl to the ground / And that other parte abode styll syttyng on the
 hors / whiche entred in to the Cyte with the other / And knowe
 32 ye certaynly that this sayd Turke was armed with a good hauberk,
 and moche stronge / Alle they that sawe this merueylle / were
 gretely abashed¹; And the Turkes them self had grete fere and
 drede. ⁵O mercyful God, what myght and strengthe gyuest thou
 36 to thy seruautes, that haue their fayth and truste in the / Suche a
 stroke hath not⁶ be herd of to fore this tyme⁵ / That same daye

The conflict
was terrible.

The Turkes
were worsted.

and Ancean
opened the
gates of the
city to receiue
the fugitives.

[⁴ leaf 74,
sig. 91]

Duke Godfrey
smote a man
in two with
one stroke of
his sword.

All who saw
this marvel
were greatly
abashed.

¹ Fr. *sentirent*, left out by Caxton. ² *si* omitted.

³⁻³ Fr. "*firent à maintz, le jour, perdre les vies,*" he caused many, that day, to lose their lives." ⁵⁻⁵ Inserted by Caxton. ⁶ *Orig. uot.*

The Turkes
lost great
numbers of
men,

and twelve
great emirs.

they of Anthyoche loste moo than two thousand men. And yf the nyght had not comen so sone on, they shold haue ben so enfebled of men / that with payne shold they haue conne holden and kept the toun ayenst oure men. It semed wel that at the brydge were 4 many Turkes slayn, ffor it was thicke there of dede bodyes. The ryuer that descended to the see / was alle bloody vnto the See / Somme Cristen men of the londe yssued oute of the toun, And cam to our peple / that told them that .xij / grete admyrals had the 8 Turkes loste in the bataylle / For whom they were ouermoche sorouful ; For they were so endommaged / that neuer in theyr lyf shold they be therof restored.

How the Cristen men thanked oure lord of this 12
victorye / And made a Castel in theyr mahom-
merye, where there they fonde grete gayne.

Capitulo Cvj^o

[l. 74, bk.]^{1t}

The barons
give thanks
for this great
victory.

The common
soldiers un-
buried the
Turkes, and
plundered
their graues.

1500 men
were thus
taken up out
of their
graues.

He next day, whan the daye was wel cleer, the barons 16
assembled alle, for humbly to thancke our lord of the victorye
that he had gyuen to them ; And after, spak of the comyn besynes.
Comynly was deuysed and acorded of alle / that there shold be
made a tour, as they had enterprysed at thende of the brydge, for 20
to take away the yssue fro them of the toun / And for to kepe and
warante oure peple whan they ranne to fore it / There had the
Turkes buryed by nyght the dede men that had ben slayn in the
bataylle to fore / whan the peple afoote knewe this, they ranne, 24
And there vnburyed them / And toke them out of theyr sepultures
and graues / And toke and bare away Gold / Syluere / And theyr
robes, the whiche they had buryed with them in their sepultures,
after theyr customme / They of the toun had moche sorowe, by 28
cause they sawe to fore theyr eyen the corses taken vp of theyr
frendes, whiche they had buryed with grete costes and despenses.
And it displeyd them moche that the nombre of theyr deed men
shold be knowen / whom they had supposed to haue kepte secrete / 32
ffor without them that fyllen in the flood or Ryuer, And withoute
them that were buryed in the toun / And them that were hurt
vnto the deth, and buryed in the toun, were taken vp oute of
theyr graues in the mahomerye a thousand and fyue honderd. 36
They smote of thre honderd heedes, and sente them to Themperour,
for to late hym haue certayn tydynges of the bataylle that they had

ayenst¹ the turkes / The messagers of the Calyph of Egypte were
 not yet departed fro thens. And whan they sawe this, they were
 ioyous of the deth of theyr enemyes / But they were alway after
 4 afeerd, and dred oure peple / There were many of oure owne men
 that had fledde in to the woodes and montaynes, whiche after
 retourned in to thooste / There cam many in to thooste / that men
 supposed had ben deed / the barons commanded that the fortresse
 8 shold be made, & adressyde moch hie and stronge, hastely. It was
 made of such stones as they drewe out of the tombes & sepultures
 of the turkes / & after, the barons began to aduyse to whom the
 keypyng of this tour shold be delyuerd, which was fayr & strong; &
 12 to fore was made a dyche, moche depe. ther were Barons ynowe,
 whiche excused them by many reasons why they myght not kepe it /
 But the valyant Erle of Tholouse prouffred hym self / And prayde
 that it myght be delyuerd to hym ffor to gouerne / ffor by the grace
 16 of God he shold kepe it wel / Alle the Barons coude hym moche
 good thancke / And² by this recouerd³ he the grace and loue of the
 comyn peple / whiche he had alle loste / ffor fro the somer to fore,
 by thoccasion of a sekene and maladye that he had / ⁴he had don
 20 none auancement of ony werkes and nedes of the hoost.⁴ Eueryche
 of the other barons had don his power / But he dyde right nought /
 therfore thempyre coude hym thank / ffor it was supposed that he
 was the rychest. but for tentreprise of this thyng, they sayd wel
 24 alle that he was not a ferd, ne euyll. And on that other syde, yet
 he dyde more, ffor he leyd out .v / C / marck weyght of syluer in
 the hand of the Bissshop of puy, and other good men, for to helpe
 to restore the dommages of the horses that the poure men had
 28 taken in the bataylle. there were many after, that were the more
 hardy for to goo ayenst theyr enemyes, for hope to haue, and
 recouere theyr horses / ffor thyse thynges was therle of tholouse
 moche louyd and preysed, in so moche that they callyd hym fader
 32 and wardeyn of thoost.

The messengers of the Caliph of Egypt had great fear and dread of our men.

A fortress was now made by the Christians of stones, high and strong.

The Earl of Toulouse offered to garnish and keep this fortresse. [leaf 75, sig. 92]

He was, on this account, called the "Father and Warden of the Host."

Of a fortresse that Tancre made ouer the Ryuer and
 deffended it valyauntly. capitulo C / vij^o.

¹ *Orig.* ayenst.

³ *Orig.* reconerd.

⁴⁻⁴ *Fr.* "s'estoit si forfaît (var "soustrait," which is the correct reading), de toutes les besongnes de l'ost." *Lat.* "Nam ab aestate practerita, per totam insequentem hyemem, occasione cujusdam aegritudinis, ita remissus jacuerat, et pene inutilis."

i N this newe fortresse of the brydge therle of thoulouse sette
 thyrin / v.C. men of Armes, hardy and valyaunt knyghtes and
 otnr / And by cause of this fortresse the yssuyng and goyng out
 of them of the toun was deffended / Oure men thenne wente surely 4
 in the countre / the turkes myght not yssue but by the west yate /
 whiche is bytwene the foot of the hylle, And the ryuer of helle.
 And this yssue myght not moche greue ne hurte oure men / ffor
 alle the lodgys were ouer the ryuer / but alway by that waye cam 8
 vytaylles and fresshe metes to them of the toun¹ / And thus they
 were not ynowgh constreyned / by so moche as they had this
 yssue / The barons assembled and counseyll² how they myght
 take this waye fro them / they acorde³ wel that this myght not be, 12
 But yf ther were a fortresse made ouer the Ryuer whiche muste be
 deluyerd to one of the Barons for to kepe. They acorde³ well alle
 that the fortresse shold be made / But none profer⁴ ne sayde that
 he wol⁴ kepe it / Many of them sayde that Tancre was ryght pro- 16
 pyce to this thyng. But he excuse⁴ hym, And say⁴ that he
 was ouer poure for tendure and bere so grete dispence. Therle of
 Thoulouse sterte forth to fore / and gaf to hym an / C / marck of
 syluer for to make it with. And It was ordeyned that he shold 20
 haue euery moneth .xl marke of the comune. Tancre, whiche was
 moche valyaunt and wyse, dyde do make this tour, in a lytil tertre
 nygh ynowgh to the gate, And after receyued it in to his warde and
 keypyng. And god gaf to hym so moche worship / that he loste 24
 nothyng / But kepte it al hool vnto the ende of the siege. In the
 syde bynethe by the Ryuer was a moche fayr playne in whiche
 habounded many fayr pastures⁴ / And grete plente of trees a / iij /
 or four myle fro the Cyte. They of the toun by cause they had not 28
 pastures ynowgh / they had sente grete plente of theyr horses and
 mounture in to that place / whan they of thoost apperceyued it /
 They assembled knyghtes ynowe and other valyaunt men of
 Armes / And wente theder / but not by the right waye / but by 32
 pathes and hyd wayes, so longe that they assayled them that kept
 them and slewe them. They brought in to the hoost / ij / M.
 horses for men of Armes grete gente, and fayr / besyde the mules
 and other beestes, wherof they had largely. Of this gayne had 36
 they grete ioye / ffor they had of nothyng so grete nede in thoost as
 of horses / ffor they had ben mynysshed moche and lassed in the
 bataylle / And many deyed that tyme for hungre and mesease.

By this new
 fortress, the
 Turks were
 kept from
 going in and
 out of the
 town.

The y decided
 to build a
 second
 fortress,

[3 lf. 75, bk.]

of which
 Tancred
 should be
 placed in
 command.

On the river
 side of the
 town were
 fair pastures,
 filled with
 horses.

The Crusad-
 ers made a
 sally, and
 captured
 many of
 these.

¹ *Orig.* tonn.

² *Orig.* connseyll.

⁴ *Orig.* pastures.

How thenne the turkes of the toun began to haue
mesease and sorowe / And our peple ease /

Capitulo Cviiij^o

- 4 t Han¹ the Cyte was thus on alle sydes assyged^t that the turkes
myght not yssue oute / they began within to haue mesease,
²for the Turkes had^t not vytayll ynowgh,² wherof it happed^t that
they myght not helpe them in theyr nede / ffresshe mete flaylled^t
8 them, whiche greuyd^t them moche / Oure men had^t bandon to goo
vnto the Porte of the See / ³By whiche they had^t so moche to suffre
as they had^t endured^t all the wynter³ / ffor the pryme⁴ temps and^t
swete tyme was come in suche wyse that shippes myght goo and^t
12 come by the See / whiche brought vytaylles ynowgh. There were
many of oure people that had^t sojourned^t all the wynter in the
Townes, whiche thenne cam agayne in to thooste alle fressh & wel
armed. / bawdwyn the brother of duc Godeffroy / of whom ye
16 haue wel herd^t speke to fore / whiche had^t so moche rychesse / had
herd tydynges⁵ that the barons ⁶had suffred many meseases in
thoost / And sente to them alle grete yetes and presentes / not
only to the grete prynces / But also to the moyen peple / And to
20 the leste gaf he also ynowgh of his owen, wherfor had the loue &
grace of alle this companye / he gaf to his brother the Duc alle
thyssnes of his londe that he had^t on this syde the Ryuer of
Eufrates / with which he gaf to hym the Cyte of torbesel & the
24 contre ther about⁷ wherin was moche whete / wyne & oyle. And^t
yet aboue al this he gaf to hym / L / M. besautes / And there
was a noble man of hermonyie whiche was named^t Nycose, whiche
was wel acqueynted with bawdwyn. And for his loue sente vnto
28 duc Godeffroy a pauyllon, the moost fayr and^t moost ryche, that
myght o wher be seen / It was of ouer straunge facion and^t mer-
uellously grete / But whan his messagers bare it in to the hooste⁸ /
One pancrace a moche ryche man of Hermonyie / Of whom I haue
32 spoken to fore, dyde do espye them by the waye / And dyd^t to take

The Turks
now suffered
great discom-
fort from the
siege.

Ships brought
our men
provisions by
sea.

[⁶ leaf 76,
sig. 93]
Baldwin sent
great gifts to
the Cru-
saders.

He sent his
brother God-
frey 50,000
besants.

Pancratus
seized the
pavilion sent
to Godfrey,

¹ Fr. *Quand.*

²⁻² Fr. "*car leurs chevaulz n'avoient mie assez viandes*—" for their horses
—(not "the Turks") had not food enough.

³⁻³ Fr. "*dont ilz n'avoient mais tel souffrete comme ilz avoient enduree
tous l'iver.*" Lat. "*Nude et ni castris ex parte plurima releuata erat illa
victus inopia qua periculose nimis per totam hyemem laborauerat exercitus.*"

⁴ Fr. *doux temps*, spring time.

⁵ Orig. tydyuges.

⁷ Orig. about.

⁸ Orig. haoste.

and gave it
to Bohemond.

Godfrey was
very angry at
this,

and de-
manded the
pavilion from
Bohemond.

Bohemond
finally, to
keep the
peace, sur-
rendered it
to Godfrey.

it from them /. And after sente the payllon to Buymont. And
was presented to hym in his name. whan the seruantes of Nycose
cam to Duc Godeffroy / And had tolde hym alle this that panerace
had don to hym / he had therof moche grete desdayne / Syth he 4
toke with hym the Erle of fflaundes, to whom he had more loue
and acqueyntaunce than to any other of the barons / And wente to
buymont and demaunded his payllon that was gyuen to hym /
Buymont answerde that therof he knewe not / that it was longyng 8
to hym / ffor a noble man of the countre had gyuen it to hym.
But whan he knewe that the duc wold not suffre it / By hys cur-
tosye and atte prayer and requeste of the other barons he rendred
and delyuerde to him his sayde payllon, to thende that no noyse 12
shold sourde ne arryse betwene them and myght lette the werke
of oure lord / Thus were they good frendes / Many men merueylled
them how that so valyaunt a man as the Duc Godeffroy was / In
whom was no thyng founden to be reprehended was so meuyd / 16
ayenst so hye and noble a man for so lytil a thyng as was a payllon.
Ne I can see none other reason, But that a noble herte maye not
suffre shame / And it was late hym vnderstande that it shold be
to hym a grete shame / And also it shold be ayenst his honour yf 20
he suffred it to be taken away from hym, ffor couetyse he dyde
it not /

How the Erle Estyeuen of Chartres and of Bloys fledde

[¹ If. 76, bk.] ¹fro the hooste shamefully / Capitulo Cix.^o 24

It was re-
ported that
the Soudan of
Persia was
coming with
a vast army.

t He renomnee sourded² moche grete / & grewe every day how
the Soudan of Perse, whiche was so ryche and puyssaunt,
by the requeste of them of Anthyoche had doo somone his peple
of alle his power for to come socoure this cyte / he had assembled 28
merueyllous grete peple, ffor the tydyng cam not only to them of
thooste / But it was sayd of many men that yssued out of the
Cite for to come in to thooste as hermyens and surryens, whiche
were cristen / wherof it happed that Steuen, therle of chartres & of 32
bloys, whiche was so noble puyssaunt and wyse, that for his
wysdom the other barons of thooste named hym the fader of coun-
seyl,³ made hym self seke as was sayd / he toke leue of his frendes.
By cause he sayde he wold goo in to Allexandrye the lasse / whiche 36
was nyghe to the porte / And wolde abyde there til he were deed

Steven, Earl
of Chartres
and Blois,

left the Cru-
saders, and
went to
Alexandria
the Lesse.

² Orig. sonrde.

³ Fr. *sc fist malade*, fell ill.

or ellys hool / Thus he departed and lað away with hym grete
 good / & with hym departed .iiij/M. men, whiche were of his
 companye and of his countreye, he wente strait in to Allexandrye
 4 the lasse / And there helde hym to thende / that yf our peple had
 vycторыe of the bataylle whiche they awayted dayly, he wolde
 retorne in to thoost as guarysshyd and hool of his maladye; and yf
 it had meshapped them, anon he wolde haue entred in to shippis
 8 whiche were all redy for to retourne in to his country / Of this
 thyng all the barons of thooste were so abashed & angry that
 they wepte hote teeris for pyte, that they had of so hye and noble
 man that toke none hede to his gentillesse,¹ to his wytte / ne to
 12 the worschyppe that men dyde to hym / But departed so euyl in
 poynt / (25) that many men had no shame to withdrawe them after
 hym / Thus departed many / The Barons had counseyl to gydre /
 And dyde do crye thurgh the hooste, that noman shold be so hardy
 16 to departe withoute leue / ffor yf ony wente, they shold be holden
 for murdyrere, And Iustyce shold be doon to suche men / By this
 ordenaunce for teschewe the payne and for to kepe theyr honour
 they held them in peas in thoost / And obeyed alle in pees in the
 20 hooste, And obeyed debonayrly to the barons of thooste, ²As
 Monkes or Cloysters to theyr Abbot, withoute departyng³ ony of
 theyr company.²

There he
 stayed to see
 the result of
 the siege of
 Antioch.

All the barons were so
 ashamed of
 this cowardly
 behavioure,
 that they
 wept tears of
 pity for
 Steven.

The great
 barons finally
 brought the
 army to
 obedience.

How a Cristen man, Emyrferius, whiche was in An-
 24 thyoche, ³acquyented hym with Buymont /
 ca° Cx°

[³ leaf 77,
 sig. 94]

a Nthyoche, this holy cyte that I haue spoken of to fore,
 was conuerted by the prechyng of seynt peter thapostle /
 28 alway it helde wel this fayth, and yet holdeth certaynly, god be
 thanked. Whan the disloyalte and falsenes of mahomet ran thurgh
 thoryent this cyte wold neuer⁴ receyue his lawe,⁵ and whan the
 myghty men of the countre wold constrayne them by force to this
 32 euyl lawe, they deffended them well ayenst alle suche, wherof it
 happed that whan the deuyl had sette this false byleue thurgh alle
 the londe of Perse vnto the braas of seynt George / and fro Inde
 vnto spayne / this cyte abode alway in the fayth of the trouthe of
 36 Ihesu Criste / Trouthe it is that fourteen yere to fore that our peple
 and abode
 always in the
 faith of Iesus
 Christ.

¹ Fr. "*sa gentillesse*," etc., to his rank, etc.

²⁻² Fr. "*comme moines cloistriens a leur abé, sans partir nullement de leur compagnie.*" ⁴ Orig. nener. ⁵ Fr. *loi*, religion, faith.

cam theder / the grete Soudan of Perse had conquerd alle the londes
vnto Anthyoche / And by cause they were not myghty to hold it
ony lenger, they yeldeð it vnder the puyssaunce of this grete man.
Thenne after cam oure men for tassiege it. Almost alle they of the 4
toun helde the fayth of oure lord. But withoute faylle they had
no power ne noo seygnorye in the cyte, ffor they medled of nothyng
sauf theyr craftes and theyr merchaundyses to wyne theyr breed /
¹the turkes had the bataylles / and wente to armes whan it was 8
nede.¹ ther was none so hardy of the cristen men that durst arme
hym / and specially syth our peple cam to fore the toun The cristen
men that were therin were holden suspect that they durst not yssue
ne goo oute of theyr howses / there were many of suche cristen men 12
that were of grete lynnage, to whom was don moche shame. there
was a lynnage of noble men that were heremyens. They were
nameð in theyr langage Bam and Cyrra² / that is to saye the³ sones
of haubergers / And for certeyn of the same langage were descended 16
theyr lynnages, and yet ben ther somme that make hauberks / they
had a toure whiche was nameð the tour of the two sustres. In this
toure were / ij / bretheren that were lordes of this lynnage. The
oldest⁴ had to Name Emerferyus,⁵ a moche sage and prudent man / 20
Acqueynted he was and pryue with the lord of the toun, in suche
wyse that he had made hym his notarye within the palays / This
man herde men speke moche good of Buymont fro the begynnynge
of the siege. And wel vnderstode by the comyn renomnee that he 24
was a wyse man, And trewe of grete herte and enterpryse / Ther-
fore he sente to hym his Messenger / And acqueynted with hym
moche⁶ pryuely, and lete hym knowe alle the beyng & state of the
Cyte / and the purpoos of the turkes / but they were bothe two 28
wysemen, therfor coude they wel couere theyr counntenances /
There were but few peple about buymont that knewe hym.

The Chris-
tians had no
power in the
city, but were
ruled by the
Turks.

There was
among the
Christians a
noble family
of Arme-
nians.

The eldest
was called
Emerferius.

He sent mes-
sengers to
Bohemond to
[⁶ If. 77, bk.]
revel to him
the plans of
the Turks in
the city.

¹⁻¹ Mistranslation owing to corrupt original. A. gives the correct reading. "*Les Turcs avoient les baillies et aloient as armes quant mestier estoit,*" "The Turks possessed all administrative power, and went to war when necessary." Lat. "*solis Turcis et infidelibus militare licebat, et majores civitatis administrare dignitates.*"

² B. gives "*Bam and Cyrra;*" followed by Caxton. A. gives *Bar. zarra.*

³ "sons of the cuirass makers." Lat. "*Qui dicebatur Beni Ferra, quod in lingua latina interpretatur, filii loricatoris.*"

⁴ Orig. oldesc.

⁵ Fr. *Emirferius.* Lat. *Emirfeirus.*

Of somme deuyses that the sayd Emyrferius sente
to buymont, & in what maner he acorded to
delyuer to hym the toun. ca. Cxj^o

- 4 s Euen monethes had tho endured the sieg to fore the toun /
Buymont the wyse and subtil / had many tymes essayed his
frende of the toun / how the cyte myght be yolden to the cristen
men. So ofte he sente to hym by his sone that sayd thus to hym
8 in this manere / "fayre swete syre, I trowe certaynly that our lord
Ihesu Criste wold that I had this acqueyntaunce with you and this
loue; ¹ffor euer syth I haue be acqueynted with you, myn herte
neuer rested to drawe and acorde euery day more and more in
12 your bonnte,¹ and your maner plesyd me moche / I haue veray
ferme & fast hope that I and the myne shal be yet in tyme
comynge moche holpen and honoured by you² of this thyng that
ye haue discoverid to me / of which I haue ben merueyllously
16 pensyf / syth I haue herd of it / I haue moch counterpeysed³ the
wayes of that one side and of that other, ffor I thynke wel certeynly
that yf I may delyuer my countrye for the peple that ben enemyes
of oure lord, and rendre and delyuere it to the seynorye of my
20 fayth, I shal haue grete guerdon of oure lord and grete honour in
the world / But yf it so happed thus that this werke were des-
covered that I haue enterprised, to fore er it cam to an ende or
conclusion / I shold be delyuerd to alle the tormentes of the world /
24 & alle my lygnage effaced and destroyed, that it neuer shold be
spoken of after. ⁴And neuertheles many thynges be put in aduen-
ture,⁴ therefore I wylle discouere to you alle my herte, as to hym
that I holde for a trewe frende / yf the barons that be in your com-
28 panye wylle graunte as trewe men as they be, that this Cyte shal
be youre for euermore and your heyres yf it may be conquerd /
⁵I shal put me in adventure⁵ so that I shal delyuer to you this tour
that I holde / whiche is moche strong and wel garnyssed / And
32 this I shal doo for goddes loue and youre / But yf they entende
that euery men shal haue his part / as of thyng goten by warre /

Emirferius
kept sending
friendly mes-
sages to
Bohemond,

and promis-
ing to deliver
the city to
him,

notwith-
standing that
he would be
put to torture
if discovered.

This he
would do for
God's love,
and for love
of Bohemond.

¹⁻¹ Fr. "*Car oncques puis que je fus de vous acointe, ne me fina le cuer de traire à accorder chacun jour de plus en plus a vostre bonté.*"

² Orig. yon.

³ Fr. *contre pensées*, carefully weighed.

⁴⁻⁴ Fr. "*et neant moins de plusieurs choses se met l'en aventure*"—viz. "in several respects great risks are to be run."

⁵⁻⁵ Fr. "*je me mettrai en aventure.*" "I will take the risk on myself (*i. e.* of delivering the city to you)."

therupon wyl I not labour ne doo payne / ffor I wote neuer to
 what ende it shold¹ come. therfor I pray you, fayr swete syre and
 trew frende, that ye put you in deuoyr & payne that this toun be
 youres / not for couetyse, but for the prouffyt of the cyte Cristen / 4
 & I promyse to you that the day that I shal knowe that it shal
 be thus graunted^d to you, I shal delyuer to you the entree of the
 toun. Alway one thyng I saye to you for certayn, that yf it be
 not mayde within short tyme that ye shal neuer day of the world 8
 recouere it / ffor euery day come to the lord^d of this toun lettres and
 messagers certefyeng^d that they that come to socoure the toun ben
 about the ryuer of eufrates whiche is not ferre / And they ben wel
 a .ij / C / M / men of Armes. yf they come an you on that one syde / 12
 And they of the Cyte on that other / ye may not suffre ne with-
 stande them / but ye shal be alle deed or taken / And therefore take
 ye here vpon hasty counseyl."

[¹ leaf 78]He besought
Bohemond to
labour earn-
estly for the
same object.What they
did must be
done quickly.as succour
from beyond
the Euphrates
was daily
expected.

How buymont discourd this thyng to duc godeffroy, 16
 to huon the mayne, to the duc of Normandye,
 and to therle of fflaundes / Capitulo / C / xij^o

f Ro the day that buymont² had herd this / he began tenquyre³
 moche subtylly and examyne the hertes of the barons / And 20
 demanded them otherwhyle what they wold doo with this Cyte yf
 it were taken / Of the ansuer somme of them thought that it was
 fer of / Therefore taryed^d buymont to discourere his herte and his
 thought till he sawe better his poynt and tyme / neuertheless he 24
 drewe a part duc godeffroy, huon de mayne, the duc of normandye,
 and therle of fflaundes. To them he sayde that he trusted so
 moche in oure lord^d, that yf the cyte myght be graunted^d to hym it
 myght be wel in short tyme conquerd. They accorded it and moche 28
 preyed in theyr courage the wytte of this man that had^d in wyll
 to accomplysse so grete a thyng / By thaccord of them this thyng
 was discourd^d to therle of tholouse / he ansuerd^d that he wold^d neuer
 yf the Cyte were taken / gyue his parte to another man / The 32
 barons prayd^d hym moche, but he wold not consente therto for
 nothyng / Therfor the thyng was in suche daunger / that almost
 the thyng was alle loste / ffor Buymont put not the payne / ne
 his frende of the toun wold^d not but yf the toun shok^d be alle his. 36
 Neuerthesles for alle this, Buymont sente to hym ofte grete yestes for

Bohemond
did not reveal
his plan im-
mediately to
all the other
barons.All but the
Earl of Tou-
louse agreed
that the town
should be
Bohemond's,
if surren-
dered.² *Orig.* buymout.³ *Orig.* tenquyre.

to kepe hym in acqueyntaunce¹ and in the loue that was begonne bytwene them.

Of the grete socours that the Soudan of perse had

4 sente to them ²of anthyoche, and how Corbagat [¶ ff. 78, bk.]
assyeged rages / capitulo / Cxiiij^o

i N the whyle that thyse thynges ran thus in Anthyoche / the
messagers that fro Ancean were goon to the soudan of perse
8 for to demaunde ayde / were returned³ as they that had wel don
theyr thynges,³ ffor that grete prynce atte requeste of them of
Anthyoche, And atte prayer of his men, had enterprysed to efface
and destroye alle our pylgryms that theder were comen / And ther-
12 fore he sente theder grete plente of Turkes and of cordyns⁴ in to
this countre / And had delyuerd all the seynorye and gouernaunce
of the hooste to one his acqueynted⁵ / ffor he trusted moche in his
wytte / in his loyalte / and in his prowesse / This man was named
16 Corbagat, he commaunded alle men to obeye to hym. he sente
lettres pendantes⁶ oueral his londes, and commaunded that they
shold be delyuerd ouer all that where he shold lede them / that
they shold goo / And alle that he commaunded them they shold
20 doo without contradiction / he departed fro his countrey with alle
his peple and his power / he passed so ferre that he cam in to the
countre of rages / Ther was told to hym that one of the barons of
ffraunce helde the Cyte of Rages whiche he had conquerd, and alle
24 the loude aboute it. He had therof grete despyte / and sayd to
fore and er he passed the Ryuer of Eufrates / he shold take the
toun and destroye alle the frensshemen that he shold fynde within /
Bawdwyn was not of lityl courage, And had wel herd tydynges of
28 this peple / he had wel garnysshed his Cyte with armes, vytaylles,
and noble men / And doubted but lytil his comynge / ne the men-
aces, ne the grete wordes of thyse peple that were reported to hym /
Corbagat commaunded that the cyte of rages shold be assieged / And
32 after dyde do crye to assault / grete peyne dyde they, wenyng to have
taken the cyte and alle them that were thein / But they that kept
the toun deffended⁷ them moche wel, in suche wyse that they en-

Ancean's
mes-sengers
now re-
turned,

and reported
that a great
army was
coming to ail-
Antioch, un-
der Corbagat,

who ordered
the city of
Rages to be
attacked at
once.

But Baldwin
was well pre-
pared with
arms and
men,

and deffended
his town well.

¹ *Orig.* acqueyntaunce.

³ Fr. *besongnes*, duties.

⁴ Lat. *Curdinorum*.

⁵ Fr. "*un sien acointe*," one of his trusted friends.

⁶ Fr. *lettres pendantes*, letters with hanging seals.

dommage^d moche them that were without, And they within loste
no thyng. They helde them about the toun thre wekes, he had
no worship ne prouffyt there. At laste the grete and noble men of
thooste cam to hym / And sayde and counseyllid hym to departe 4
fro the siege / ffor he ought fyrst do that thyng for whiche he cam /
that is to saye, for to take and slee alle them that were to fore
Anthyoche. And after in his retornyng in a morowtyde he shold
haue the toun of Rages. And Bawdwyn, yf he were not deed, 8
they shold take and bynde ¹hym, And presente hym to theyr lord
as a sheep or a moton. he acorde^d to theyr counseyl and departed
fro thens. But allewaye the taryeng that the turkes had made
sauyd oure pylgryms² / ffor the mater was not so acorded bytwene 12
Buymont and his frende, that yf they had comen strait to Anthy-
oche / oure men had ben in ouer grete mescheyf bytwene them that
he brought³ / and the other turkes that were in the toun.

After three
weeks' fruit-
less siege,

Corbagat was
advised to go
on to An-
tioch.

[leaf 79]

But this delay
had saved
the Crusaders
before An-
tioch.

How our men beyng aduertysed⁴ of the grete hooste 16
of corbagat, sente somme of theyr knyghtes for to
esteme them / And what they reported of that
they had seen / ca. Cxiiiij^o

t He tydynges began strongly to growe of this people that cam / 20
And it was no merueyll yf they were effrayed^d in the hooste of
the pylgryms / The barons assembled^d in counseyl / And ordeyned
by comyn acord / that somme of theyr wysemen that understode /
them in suche thynges as to esteme peple in the felde shold goo 24
and knowe their couyne / to this were chosen Dreues de Nelle,
Clarembault de venduel / Euerard⁵ de cherysy / & Renaud^d, therle of
toul / They ledde with them other knyghtes, knowen and preuyd^d
in Armes / they departed^d fro thoost so ferre, that they approuche^d 28
the turkes, whom they sawe and folowed them fro fer / Neuertheles
they wel apperceyued, that lyke as water renneth in the see, cam
fro alle partes grete rowtes and merueyllous plente of peple in this
hooste of Corbagat. This noble men wente so ferr that they sawe 32
and knewe alle theyr beyng and strengthe / And syth drewe them
to the barons, and sayd to them the trouthe / The barons prayde
and defended them also, dere as they had the werk of oure lord /
that they wold not descouere this thyng to the foote men of thoost 36

The Chris-
tians sent
some of their
best warriors
to inspect the
coming ene-
my, and
report.

They re-
turned, and
reported that
it was a vast
army.

² *Orig.* prlgryns.

³ *Orig.* brought.

⁴ *Orig.* aduertysed.

⁵ Caxton's text gives, *Euerard de Cherisi, A.*, and the Lat. *Girart de Cherisi.*

in no wyse / but kepe it secrete fro them / ffor it shold be grete
 peryll yf they knewe the trouthe that they shold flee away by
 nyght / And be alle in despayr /

4 Of the counseyl that our peple toke for to ordeyne
 theyr nedes whan they knewe the comyng of this
 right grete hoost¹ / ca^o. Cxv^o.

t He barons toke counseyl / on whom the faites and burthou of The barons
took counsel
as to what
was to be
done.
 8 this werke laye, how they myght conteyne them in this
 greuous poynt in whiche they were / som ther were that gaf coun-
 seyl that they shold departe fro the siege / And that somme of
 them² on horsbak / and they on foote shold abyde for to kepe that [2 ff. 79, bk.]
 12 they of the toun³ shold not mowe ioyne to the other. And somme
 other the best horse⁴ shold lede of them on foote a grete partye
 ayenst Corbagat, and fyght ayenst hym / The thyng was in grete
 doubte, And wyste not how to accorde. Buymont, whan he sawe Everybody
was in great
perplexity.
 16 them so surprised called the Duc Godeffroy, therle of fflaundes /
 Huon de mayne, the duc of normandye, & therle of tholouse /
 And syth sayd to them these wordes / "ffayr lordes, I see you in
 moche grete doubte, and it is no merueyl / ffor the comyng of this Bohemond
made a
speech, show-
ing the des-
perateness of
their con-
dition,
 20 puyssaunt man that cometh on vs and bryngeth with hym so grete
 plente of our enemyes. Ne ye be not yet accorded in what maner
 ye shal attende, ne what shal be your countenance whan he shal
 come / Ne I can not saye to you as me semeth thyng that by this
 24 way may moche auaylle / ffor yf we yssue alle ayenst the turkes /
 lyke as somme men counseylle, somme in one partye / And that
 other to abyde / as other counseyl, we haue loste our payne and
 oure dispencis in the siege of this toun, ffor as sone as we shal
 28 departe fro hens, or alle, or half / they that comen shal sende in to
 the toun grete plente of vytaylles, and fresshe men put in to it. yf
 noman abyde at the siege this shal be good for them to doo. And
 yf ther abyde a parte they shal not leue for them. for whan we be
 32 alle to gydre, vnnethe maye we constrayne them of the toun. thenne
 the fewe that shal abyde / how may they haue the force and myght
 ayenst them within / Therfor me thynketh that we muste seche and declaring
that other
means than
forcible ones
must be
sought.
 36 cyte maye be yolden to vs, And that we maye be within to fore er
 these turkes come. this shal be a more sure thyng / yf ye demaunde

¹ *Orig.* hoost.

³ *Orig.* tonu.

⁴ *Orig.* connseyl.

He then revealed the plan of Emirferius.

how this maye be / I shal shewe you the way and manere how it
 shal wel be as me semeth / I haue a frende in this Cyte, a trewe
 man and wyse, after that I can apperceyue. we haue couenaunted,¹
 he and I to gydre, wherfor he ought to delyuer to me a tour moche 4
 strong and wel garnysshed of alle that nedeth, whiche he holdeth /
 whan I shal demaunde hym / I muste gyue to hym thus doyng a
 grete partye of my good and hauour and franchyses and other
 alyaunces muste kepe to hym and hys. But this maye not be / 8
 but that eche of you gyue ouer his part to me, And quyte hym of
 ony part of the cyte, that it shal abyde to me & to myn heyres
 for euermore, ffor other wyse he entendeth not that shall delyuer
 hit. yf it plese you, in this maner ye may haue the toun. And if 12
 ye wil graunte this, ²I somone and warne you to fere in suche wysc,
 that thyse couenauntes ³be wel accomplyshed by godes grace² /
 And yf it plese you not / And ye maye fynde ony other maner, I
 am redy tacquyte alle my parte to one of you / or to another of oure 16
 companye / yf he wyl delyuer to vs the Cyte / And god knoweth
 It shal plese me wel, And I shal be right ioyous in good fayth."

This can be carried out only on condition that the city be given to Bohemond and his heirs for ever.

[³ leaf 80]

How after that Buymont had declared his fayte to alle
 the hooste, they acorded that the toun shold be 20
 his / sauf the Erle of Tholouse / Capitulo Cxvj:

The barons all joyfully agreed to this, except the Earl of Toulouse.

W **H**an the barons herd this / they had grete ioye in their hertes,
 and anon acorded to this that buymont requyred / euery man
 graunted his part that he shold be quyte therof, except only therle 24
 of tholouse, whiche,⁴ in a reuerrye wheryn he was, sayde / that he
 wold not acquyte his part, ne gyue it ouer⁵ to noman luyng. The
 other barons promysed certeynly to holde it / And gaf to hym theyr
 fayth that they shold not discouere it to noman / They prayd hym 28
 that he wold wysely brynge this mater aboute, And dilygently
 laboure taccomplisse it / ffor grete peryll myght come in the
 taryeng of it / The counseyl departed / thus. This Buymont, which
 was wyse and trewe, spak to the messenger⁶ that knewe theyr 32

¹ *Orig.* couenaunted.

²⁻³ Caxton seems to have misunderstood his French text. Fr. "*je le* (i. e. *Emir ferius*) *semondrai de convenances, telement que la chose sera bien accompli à l'aide Dieu,*" viz., I will summon him to keep his agreement," etc.

⁴ Fr. "*qui par une reuerie ou il estoit entré,*" i. e. who on account of a fit of obstinacy into which he had fallen.

⁵ *Orig.* oner.

⁶ Lat. "*Amicum solitis conuenit nuntiis.*"

couyne / And sente hym to his frende / And bad hym saye that the barons had graunted to hym that the toun shold be hoolly his with moche glad chere / Therfor he somoned hym by his fayth /
 4 that he shold accomplissh this next nyght hoolly that he had promysed hym / One thyng happed this same day that was moche helpyng to this werke / & to thaccomplisshyng therof / ffor this frende of buymont named Emyrferyus entremedled moche of
 8 thaffayres and thynges of ancean and of the toun. This same day whan he was besy in this werke / he sente his sone, that¹ was thogrete to his hows for to fetche somewhat / whan he cam to the tour hastily / he founde that one of the grete admyrals of the toun
 12 pleyed² and deled with his moder. whan he sawe this / he had so grete sorowe in his herte that he ran agayn to his fader / And told to hym lyke as he had founden it. The fader was a moche wyseman, And was moche sore angry, And sayd thys
 16 wordes to his sone: "Fayr sone, it semeth not ynowgh to thys fals houndes that they take fro vs alle that we haue, and kepe vs fowle in their seruage. But with this / they doo vs alle the shame that they maye / By the ayde of Ihesu criste, ³in whom I byleue /
 20 I shal labour and doo payne to fynde the maner by whiche theyr power and myght shal be lassed, mynnysshed, and shorted / And they shal haue guerdon for the euy that they haue don to vs." he made themne no semblaunt⁴ of Angre that he had / But sente his
 24 sone to buymont anon by the maner that he was acustomed to goo, And badde hym that he shold be redy. ffor as to hym he wold hold hym this nyght alle his couenautes⁵ / he badde hym also that alle the Barons of thooste shold yssue oute about⁶ none, euery man
 28 armed in his bataylle, And make semblaunt for to goo ayenst Corbagat. And after in the begynnyng⁷ of the nyght to retorne agayn pryuely withoute noyse / And kepe them so armed and redy to doo that shal be sayd to them aboute mydnyght. Buymont⁷
 32 was moche ioyous / whan he herd this message / And aftir ledde hym to fore the barons, to whom this thyng was discouerd / And made hym saye in theyr presence the wordes as he had brought / The barons, whan they herd hym, were moche Ioyous / And⁸ sayd
 36 wel that this counseyl was good and faythful, and of grete courage accorded therto /

Bohemond sent the messenger,

summoning Emirferius to fulfil his promise, and deliver up the town.

This same day, Emirferius was especially wroth with one of the great emirs of the town.

[11. 80, bk.]

He concealed his anger, but sent word to Bohemond that he should be ready that night.

Bohemond and the barons were joyous when they heard this message.

¹ Fr. "qu'il avoit ja grant," viz. "who was now grown up."

² B. *jouoit avec sa mere.* A. *gisoit avec sa mere.* ⁴ *Orig.* semblannt.

⁵ *Orig.* couenautes. ⁶ *Orig.* about. ⁷ *Orig.* Bnymont. ⁸ *Orig.* Amd.

How they of Anthyoche had fere of treson / And
 how they assembled in counseyl / And of that
 whiche Emyrferius deposed there at /

Capitulo .C / xvij^o 4

The people
 of the town
 had begun
 to suspect
 treachery.

o Ne thyng happed in this tourn / that is acustomed^o ofte to come
 in grete werkes / They that had the keypyng and charge of the
 toun / began to haue susppection within theyr hertes, and^o deuyned^o
 that the Cyte shold^o be by trayed^o / they knewe no reson ne how / 8
 ne they apperceyued^o no grete semblaunce / But alway that one spak
 to that other of the grete men / And^o them semed that it shold^o falle.
 So moche aroos this murmur and wordes, that they assembled to
 fore Ancean lord of the toun / And told to hym that his men 12
 had such fere, & it was not without reson, ffor the cristen men
 were in the toun, and were in doubte that by them dommage
 myght come to the Cyte / They ledde so Ancean with wordes that
 they made hym to be aferd^o also / Anon he sente for hym that was 16
 named^o Emyrferius, And^o tolde to hym how this worde ranne about /
 And^o by cause he helde hym for a wyseman / he demaunded^o what
 counseyl he wold^o gyue here on / he, that was sharp of ententement
 & apperceyuyng^o, knewe anon / that his lord^o demaunded^o thyse 20
 wordes for to knowe, yf he shold^o answeere ony thyng^o, By¹ whiche
 he shold^o be suspecte. And^o knewe wel that this assemblee was there
 made by cause they had^o susppection / he thought wel to brynge them
 out of this wenyng by his answeere / and sayd : “ Fayr lordes, ye be 24
 hye, noble, and wysemen, ²ye oug^ht to conne them good thancke /
 And^o the lord specially of this that they ymagyne and^o doubte of
 trayson² / ffor in so grete a thyng as ye haue to kepe / ought to be
 doubted^o alle that may be falle / ffor we be in peryll of our lyues of 28
 oure franchyses / of wyues, of Chylderen / and^o herytages / ³Thise
 ben thynges that ought to be well vnderstanden and^o kepte³ / But
 me semeth that by two wayes maye be gyuen⁴ counseyl in this
 thyng in suche wyse, that yf ony were vntrew & suche a traytre 32
 that wold^o destroye his countrey he shold^o haue no power / This

Ancean sent
 for Emirferius, and
 asked his
 advice in this
 matter.

[¹ leaf 81]

Emirferius
 replied that
 in two ways
 this danger
 of treason
 might be
 averted.

²⁻² Caxton's translation is unintelligible. Fr. "*Moult vos doivent tous ceaulx de la vile scavoir bon gré, et le seigneur principalement, de ce que vous ymaginez et doubtez de trayson,*" etc., viz. "all the people of the town ought to be grateful to you, especially the lords, because you are on your guard against treason."

³⁻³ Fr. "*ce sont choses ou l'en doit bien entendre a garder.*"

⁴ Orig. gynen.

thyng myght not be don ne spoken of but by them that haue the
 toures in keyng / Therfor me thynketh yf ye haue suspicion
 her of ye may wel remedye it, By ofte remeuyng them fro theyr
 4 places, ffor this thyng may not be deuysed but¹ by moche grete
 leysur. And whan ye chaunge them thus ofte / in suche wyse that
 they that be here this nyght / shal be sette the next nyght fer
 thens / ²where he shal haue no knowleche,² & her by ye shal take
 8 fro them alle the ease for to commune or speke of ony trayson" /
 whan they herd this counseyl that this cristen man emyrferius gaf
 to them / they acorded alle well therto / & by this fylle from them
 alle the suspicion fro theyr hertes that they had ayenst them / &
 12 thus as he had deuysed shold³ haue don yf it had not ben so late,
 for it was nyght / and so grete remeuyng³ myght not be made but
 by space of tyme / The lord commaunded them to kepe alle the cyte
 hoolly / Thus departed they fro the counseyl / Emyrferius that
 16 sawe wel that the thyng that he had⁴ enterprised / yf he and⁵ Buy-
 mont⁴ hasted⁵ not / that it shold neuer take good⁵ ende / Therfor he
 thought moche to bryng his purpos to effect without that ony man
 shold perceyue it /

First, change
 the men in
 the towers
 very often;

Second, do
 not let the
 men know
 where they
 are to be
 changed.

Emirferius
 now said that
 he must make
 great haste.

20 Of the meschyef that the turkes made euery daye to
 the cristen men that were in Anthyoche enhabyt-
 yng with them. ca. Cxviii.º

f Ro the begynnyng⁵ that the Cyte was assyeged / the turkes of
 24 the toun had in great suspicion the Grekes, Surryens and⁶
 heremyns, and generally alle the other Cristen men that duellyd in
 Anthyoche. wherof it happed⁶ that the poure Cristen men that had
 not in theyr howses garnyson sufficient for longe tyme / they made
 28 ⁶them to voyde the toun and⁶ alle theyr meyne, ffor they wold⁶ not
 that the Cyte were charged⁶ ne encombred with them / They retheyned
 the ryche men within by cause they had vytayll ynowgh / they
 kepte them straye, and by fals occasions robbed them euery daye,
 32 and toke fro them alle theyr thynges. They chaced them to the
 labours and werkes of the toun / yf they had walles for to make
 or amende / They bare the stones, the mortar, and sande ; yf they
 wolde adresse engyns for to caste stones / or other Instrumentes of
 36 warre they muste drawe the cordes, And⁶ neuer as longe as they

In the begin-
 ning of the
 siege, the
 poor Chris-
 tians had
 been sent
 away.

[⁶ ff. 81, 1-k.]

The rich ones
 who were
 kept were
 daily robbed,
 and abused.

¹ Orig. bnt. ²⁻² Fr. "ou ilz n'auront nulle cognoissance."

³ Orig. remeuyng.

⁴ Orig. Buyuont.

⁵ Orig. begynnyng.

fonde cristen men they sought none other for to doo suche werkes /
 And whan they had trauaylled longe / in stede of rewardes / they
 ledde them and bete them thurgh the stretes in suche wyse, that
 they had leuer to haue ben caste out¹ of the toun atte begynnyng 4
 with the other ² than to be receyued with thysse fals houndes,
 that thus greued them of the toun that were cristen / Thus were
 they accorded. viij / dayes to fore to speke to Emyrferius, frende of
 Buymont / that they wolde slee alle the cristen men, and had don 8
 it² yf one of the admyrals of the toun had not letted / and empes-
 shed it / which was alway pryue and frende of the cristen men. he
 made to delaye it / vij dayes by this reason, ffor he sayd to them :
 "Fayr sirs, I hope that the cristen men that haue assieged vs shal 12
 departe fro the siege with in viij dayes for doubte of corbagat which
 cometh / & yf they departe, why shal we slee the cristen men
 that ben in this toun / And yf they departe not, thenne maye ye
 doo as ye haue deuysed." Thysse .viij. dayes were now passed, in 16
 suche wyse that it was commaunded moche pryuely to them that
 had the charge, that they shold slee them the same nyght. thenne
 the same day at none it was cryed thurgh the hooste of the
 pylgrims / that alle they that had horses were armed, and to 20
 drawe euery man to his bataylle, where he was constituted and
 ordeyned / for to doo that theyr Captayns shold commaunde
 them. The men on foote knewe nothyng what they shold doo / ne
 the horsmen neyther / sauf they that buymont had aduertysed. 24
 thus³ departed they fro thoost alle in ordenaunce / It semed wel
 that they wold goo ferre / They wente forth tyl it was nyght /
 whan it was derke it was commaunded that they sholde retorne
 agayn secretly without ony noyse / And that they shold holde them 28
 armed in theyr lodgys. This valyaunt man Emyrferius, of whom I
 haue spoken to fore, had a brother with hym, But he was not of
 suche courage as he was / the good man had sayd no thyng to
 hym of that he purposed to doo / ffor he doubted moche ⁴ he wold 32
 not be agreable therto / They were to gydere in the tour at the hour
 of none whan the bataylles yssued of thooste, they behelde it by the

The Turks
beat them,
and drove
them to
labour.

They had al-
ready decided
to kill all the
Christians in
the city.

This very
nyght was
set for the
massacre.

The Crusa-
ders, this day,
ordered their
army forth
out of camp—
to return
quietly at
night alter
dark.

[* leaf 82]

Emirferius
was with his
brother in
the tower

¹ *Crig. ont.*

²⁻³ The wrong division of the sentence, and the omission of some words, has rendered the translation obscure. Fr. "*que d'etre retenuz. Ce ne souffisoit mie a ces desloyaulz chiens quilz grevoient ainsi la chrestientie de la ville, ains s'estoient accordis VIII jours avant—qu'ilz parlissent a l'amy de Buymont, quilz les occiroient tous; et pieca il eust été fait.*"

³ *Orig. thns.*

batayllementes. Emyrferyus wold¹ preue and² knowe the courage of
 his broder whiche was yonger than he / And sayd³ to hym / "Fayr
 swete broder, I haue moche grete pyte of thyse hye men that thou
 4 seest there, ffor they be of oure creaunce, moche faythful and⁴ good⁵
 cristen men. Now ryde they also surely, As yf they ought nothyng
 to doubt, And their deth is ful nygh them, ffor it may not be that
 they may resiste ayenst them that come / and ayenst them of the
 8 toun¹ / And yf they knewe it I trowe they wold² take other coun-
 seyl." his broder answerd / "this is a moch folyssh pyte that thou
 hast / And³ I see the in a grete musardye. Certainly it shold⁴ plesse
 me wel / that the turkes had nowe smeton of alle their heedes, and⁵
 12 slayn them alle that thou seest there departe / And⁶ alle the other
 in lyke wyse, ffor neuer syth they entred⁷ in to this londe / we had
 neuer good day ne one good⁸ nyght, but haue made vs suffre many
 euilles by thocccasion of their comyng / & therfor I may not loue
 16 them. But³ I wold that they shold haue⁴ an euyl endyng¹, and that
 right soone." whan emyrferyus had herd thyse wordes he doubted
 to fore what to saye to his broder of his purpos. but fro this forth
 he doubted nomore / and began to hate hym moche in his courage /
 20 he thought wel that by hym myght be destroubled the grete
 auancement⁵ of Cristendom. Therefore he was in grete anguysshe
 how⁶ he myght delyuer hym /

as the army
marched out.

Emirferius
pretended to
pity the Cru-
saders for
their suffer-
ings.

But the
brother an-
swered that
he should be
glad to see
their heads
all cut off.

Of the dilygence that buymont made in this werke /
 24 And how Emyrferyus slewe his brother, and
 delyuerd the toun to the cristen men /

Capitulo Cxix^o

b Uymont slepte not this nyght, ffor he shold haue ben moche
 28 displeyde / yf by his neelygence this werke shold¹ be taryed.
 He wente ofte to the Barons, that knewe of this thynge, for to be
 counseyllid / He helde in his honde a laddre of cordes, moche
 subtylly made / Aboue, it shold² be fasted³ to the creneaux⁷ of the
 32 walle, with good⁴ and⁵ stronge crochettes of yron, And⁶ for to fastne
 also in therthe. whan it cam aboute mydnyght / he toke his
 messenger, that knewe his secrete pryuely / And⁷ sente hym to his

That night,
Bohemond
prepared a
ladder of
cordes, with
iron hooks.

¹ Orig. tonn.

² Fr. "de grant musardéc te voi penser."

³ Orig. Bnt.

⁴ Orig. haue.

⁵ Orig. auancement.

⁶ Fr. "Comment il s'en porroit deliurer," viz. "how he might get rid of him."

⁷ Orig. creueaux; Fr. creneaux, loop holes.

Bohemond's messenger went to Emirferius [1 l. 82, bk.] to see if the time had arrived.

He waited until the watch passed by, then sent word to Bohemond.

Emirferius let down a cord and drew up the ladder.

Bohemond mounted the ladder first.

Emirferius showed him his brother's dead body.

frende to knowe / yf it were yet tyme that he shold approuche to the wallys, ffor hym thought that alle the Cyte was in moche peas and reste / whan this messenger cam / he had hym abyde ¹there styлле, and saye no worde tyl that the mayster of the watche were 4 departed and passyd by; ffor the custome was suche in the cyte, that aboue the watche that was ordeyned and aduysed / that a noble and wyseman shold serche and vysyte euery nyght the watche, And amende that as they founde amys. And he wente 8 thus thre or four tymes in the nyght, with a grete companye of peple, that bare light. It was not longe after, that he cam & sawe in the tour where Emyrferius was, and sawe alle thynges wel ordeyned and in good disposicion; And it plesyd hym wel, and ¹²passed² forth / This man sawe thenne that it was tyme to performe his werke, And sayd to the messenger: "goo thy way dylgently, and saye to thy lord that now is tyme to doo well, and that he come to fore this tour; and see that he haue good companye with ¹⁶hym and trewe" / The messenger departed forthwith / Emyrferius entrede in to the tour, and founde his broder slepyng moche faste. he had fere that he shold awake er the werke were accomplysshid, and that he myght destrouble it; therefore he toke his swerd, & ²⁰roof hym thurgh bothe sydes, and slewe hym. The messenger cam to Buymont, and told hym his erande. he cam incontinent to fore the tour, And the other barons with hym, that knewe of the werke. Eche of them had but a fewe with them, but they were ²⁴good & trew. emyrferius put out his heed & salewed them, & they resalewed hym; and after aualed a corde down the wall. they toke it, & bounde it faste to thende of the laddre of cordes / whan it was bounden and drawn vp, fastned & attached with the ²⁸crochettes of yron aboue, there was none that was so hardy that wold fyrst goo vp. whan Buymont sawe this / he toke thenne the laddre first, as a valyaunt man & ardent taccomplysshe the werke, And wente vp til he cam to the batillement. Emyrferius³ knewe ³²anon that it was buymont;⁴ And toke hym by the arme, and kysed his honde. Buymont wente vpon the walle, And kysed hym⁵ swetly. He thanked hym of the seruyse that he had don / Emyrferius ladde hym in to the towre, And sayde to hym: ³⁶"Beholde, and see what I haue don for god and you. This man, that ye see here deed, is my brother Germayn / I haue⁶ slayn hym

² Fr. "*il passa oultre.*"

³ Orig. Emyrferyns.

⁴ Orig. buymout.

⁵ Orig. hyin.

⁶ Orig. hanc.

by cause he wolde not acorde to this werke that ye and I haue enterprysed." Buymont¹ had moche grete Ioye, ffor fro thenne forthon knewe he well that his frende dyde alle in good fayth /

4 Thenne cam to the creuuls,² and put oute³ his heede and called his peple, and sayd that they shold come vp dilygently by the laddre. They durste not go vp / But alway supposed it had be deceyu-

8 foote on the laddre / And descended down to the erthe, and sayd to them : "fayr lordes, ye tarye ouer longe / there is no doubte / ffor knowe ye certaynly that this good man hath shewde to me his brother, whom he hath slayn for loue of vs" / whan they herd this,

12 they all toke the laddre, he that myght best heste / And mounted vp so many, that ther were men ynowgh on the walle / Therle of fflaundes went vp, and Tancre, for touseyne the other how they shold doo / whan the fyrst towr was wel garnysshed with men, they

16 ranne to the other by, And slewe the watche men, and helde the toures.

When Bohemond saw that, he no longer suspected or doubted him.

[4 leaf 83]

The other barons would not follow.

Bohemond descended, and assured them that everything was right.

They then mounted and took the towers, slaying the watch.

Of the mayntene of the cristen men in this pryse,
And of the affraye of the turkes of the toun.

20

Ca° .C.xx°

a T the foote of the laddre abode somme of the Barons, for to conduyte⁵ thooste / whan they sawe that they had vpon the walles men ynowe that myght garnysse dyuerse / towres / They

24 ran hastely to the lodgys for to make the peple arme them / And to drawe nerer / to thende that they myght al be redy for to entre in

6 whan our men were on the walles / they were not ydle⁶ / but were noble and hardy / in such wise that they had anon .x / towres

28 taken⁷ alle in arenge / And had slayn alle them that they founde therin, And the cyte was not yet meuyd ne awaked / ffor the grete men of the toun, whan they herde the noyse, had supposed certaynly that they had slayn the Cristen men / lyke as they had com-

32 maunded, And that this affraye had be for none other thyng : And they meucd not oute of theyr beddes. In this partye, where oure

The people of Antioch, hearing the noise, thought that it was the Christians being insus-sacred.

¹ Orig. Buymout. ² Orig. creuuls.

³ Orig. oute. ⁵ Orig. condnyte.

⁶⁻⁶ Caxton has made a "bourdon" by leaving out all between the two "sur les murs." Fr. "quand leur gens qui estoient sur les murs, leur en feroient signe. Nos gens qui estoient montees sur les murs n'estoient mie oyseaux," etc. ⁷ Fr. "toutes en un renc," all in a row.

men were goon vp, was a posterne. Our men that were¹ on the walles descended and brake vp the lockes, and opened the yate, in suche wyse that many entred of oure peple. And after cam to the grete gate, that was called the gate of the brydye / And alle the 4
 watche that kepte it they slewe, And after opened the gate / A squyer of Buymontys ran til he cam to an hye towre, whiche was vpon the tertre by the dongeon of the toun / there he fyxed the Baner of Buymont his lord. whan oure peple that were in the 8
 toun apperceyued that the daye was nyghe, And the dawenyng appiered, thenne they made to sowne theyr trompettes and busynes, for to calle al the people of the hooste / The Barons² vnderstode the signe, and smote the hors with the spores, And entred by the yates 12
 whiche they founde opene with alle theyr bataylles. The foote men of thooste awooke, that knewe nothyng of this counseyll. They sawe the tentes empty and voyde, and apperceyued that the toun was taken. thenne began they hastely to renne to the gayne, 16
 in suche wyse that none abode other. The turkes of the toun awoke, and herde the noyse, and sawe the men of armes thurgh the stretes. Thenne apperceyued they in what poynt they were. They began to flee out of theyr howses, and lede theyr wyues and 20
 chylderen with them. whan they fledde fro one rowte of our men, they recountred another gretter, whiche slewe them alle. The surryens, the hermyens,³ and the other cristen men of the toun apperceyued that the thyng wente so. they had moche grete ioye, 24
 and toke the armes hastely, and wente forth with our men and tolde to them the places where mooste peple were, And where the tresours were: They them slewe the turkes moche gladly. They payned them moche to rendre to them the guerdon of betynges and 28
 tormentes that they had don to them. Thoost was thenne entred in to the toun; The barons had sette their baners on the toures; grete occision and slaughter had be in the toun; they spared noman, ne woman, ne childe / they brak vp dores and chestes; ye 32
 shold haue seen gold and syluer departed in the stretes; ⁴It semeth well a thyng conquerd⁵ and wonne by warre. what shal I make long deuyses,⁴ ther were slayn of them of the toun that day moo than .x. M., of whom the bodyes laye alle bare in the wayes and 36
 stretes.

Our men now opened the gates of the city.

[? If. 83, bk.]

The Turks now awoke, and saw that they were taken.

Some fled, others were benten and killed.

There was great pillage and slaughter:

more than 10,000 bodies lay bare in the streets.

¹ *Orig. wrre.*

³ *Orig. hermyens.*

⁴⁻⁴ Misunderstood by Caxton. Fr. "*Bien sembloit choses conquises et gaignies par guerre, tant en faisoit on larges devises.*" ⁵ *Orig. conquerd.*

How Ancean, lord of anthyoche,¹ fledde by a posterne
out of the toun, And he was recountred and put
to deth. ca° Cxxj°

- 4 w Han Ancean sawe that the cyte was thus bytrayed, And that
his peple that myght escape fledde an hye in to the fortesse
of the dongeon. he doubted moch to goo theder, ffor he thought
wel that the cristen men wold enuyrozne incontinent this tour yf
8 he entred; therfor he yssued out at a posterne out of the toun, and
wente allone as he had be oute of his wytte / Ne he knewe not
whether he myght goo And flee for to kepe hym. whan he wente
thus by the felde moche ferre fro the Cyte, Certeyne Hermyns
12 nette hym, and knewe hym, And moche merueylled what this
myght be; And after, thought that the Cyte was taken. ² And
they approched hym / lyke as they wold³ haue enclyned to hym,
as they were woonte / but⁴ thenne they toke hym, & smote hym
16 doun to therthe / and after, with a swerde smote of his heed, and
bare it in to the toun / And presented it vnto the barons to fore the
peple / one maner peple was comen in to anthyoche, which were
not of the toun, that were come for to deffende theyr lawe / and
20 other for to be souldyours / And other for prowesse of armes, &
to gete honour and prys. thyse knewe not wel the beyng of the
toun / and were mounted vpon their horses alle armed, and begonne
to renne ayenst the hylle toward the dongeon / and by aduenture
24 they mette a route of our men, thus as they wente sechyng in the
toun, whiche ran on them moche hardly. Thyse maner of peple
wold haue eschewed them, and smote theyr hors toward the valeye /
and fylle doun of a bancke in suche wyse that they were alle to
28 brused, men, hors, harnoyes and abylementes / ther were deed wel
a / iij / C. som ther were that in the toun were born / whan they
apperceyued in the mornyng that our men were within. They toke
their hors and rode out by the yates that our men had opened.
32 ther were of oure men that wente aftir and sued them, and brought
many of them agayn, whom they put in pryson / som other escaped,
& ran vnto the montaynes / about the hour of tierce, whan the
toun was serched. Our peple assembled, and anon apperceyued
36 that in alle the toun was no vytayll; and it was not wondre / ffor
the siege had thenne endured nygh ix. monethes, and moche peple

Ancean, the
lord, fled
through the
fields;

[? leaf 84]

his head was
smitten off,
and carried
back into
town.

A party of
mercenaries
were attacked
and killed by
our men:

some escapd
to the moun-
tains.

No victuals
could be
found in the
town.

¹ *Orig.* anthyoche.

² *Fr. Venclinerent*, i. e. saluted him.

⁴ *Orig.* bnt.

Great wealth was found by the poor pilgrims, who were in great need of it.

had ben therin duryng the sieg / but gold, syluer, preceous Iewellis,
and vessel of dyuerse facions / clothes of sylke, & ryche tappets,
& of other thynges they founde so moch, that eche of our men
was all charged, as moch as they myght bere / It cam wel to poynt 4
to oure poure pylgryms for to fynde suche rychesse / after the grete
mesease that they had suffred / ther were founden in the toun¹
/ v / C. good hors of armes / But they were right lene and wery.
thus was the cyte of Anthyoche taken, the yere of thyncarnacion of 8
our lord a / M. lxxxvij / the iij day of the moneth of Iuyn.

Antioch was taken June 3rd, 1098.

How after that our men made grete slaughter of
theyr enemyes, our men helde counseyl for to
take the dongeon / theñne beyng seased of the 12
turkes / ca^o .C.xxij^o:

t He pylgryms that were theder comen fro many countrees by
grete labour, were theñne ful of shedyng of the blood of their
[2 fr. 84, bk.] enemyes / The Barons assembled in counseyl, and aduysed² emonge 16
them that this werk was not yet parfyght, but that ther was yet
trauayll and peryll tyl that the dongeon were taken and goten,
whiche was right stronge / and wel garnysshed with walles of the
toun / they sette good warde and kepers of alle the yates, And dyde 20
do crye thurgh alle the toun to assault, and commanded that all
shold come to the tour / that was on the montayne / whan they
cam theder, they knewe wel certaynly that this was not a thyng
lightly to be goten, ffor the fortresse myght not be goten but by 24
famyne; therfor they tranaylled but lytil, but withdrewe them, and
made the peple to retorne. this montayne, that is aboute the toun,
is deuyded in tweyne, like as I sayd to fore, by a depe valleye /
whiche is as stepe as it were plom down / The syde whiche is 28
toward thoryent is moch fayrer, vpon a playne wel brode, ful of
vygnes and londe erable. That other partye, toward the weste, is
moche hyer,³ as a man shold goo vp right / And right vpon the
somet, at toppe of the tertre, stondesth the dongecn,⁴ ferme of 32
ouer stronge walles and thyecke toures / they be hye and grete
toward thoryent; and toward northeeste, about the valeye, it is so

The donjon was still in the hands of the Turks.

The Crusaders saw that this fortress could be taken only by famine.

This donjon was on the top of a mountain;

¹ *Orig.* tonn.

² Fr. "*si s'en va contremont en aiguissant,*" viz. "grows steeper and steeper towards the top."

⁴ Fr. "*fermez de trop forz murs,*" surrounded by very strong walls.

deep that it semeth a right helle / And it is an hydous thyng to beholde ; It coude neuer be ymagyned how it myght be myned¹ / and fro this dongeon vnto the toun is a way, whiche is so strayt
 4 that with grete payne one man allone maye goo or come. The barons acorde^d that they wold close this litil terter and waye, to thende that they of the dongeon shold^d not mowe descende, ne doo euyll ne harme to oure men in the cyte / They made a walle moche
 8 stronge of lyme an^d sonde, In whiche they put men of Armes ynowe, and wel in poynt. They sette on the walles² stones and engyns, redy for to caste stones yf the turkes descended & cam
 12 other werkes. It was ordeyned and deuysed that alle men shold retorne & abyde there about this newe walle tyl that the dongeon were taken, sauf the Duc Godeffroye, whiche by comyn counseyl of alle, shold abyde for to kepe the gate of the est / & the fortresse
 16 that our men had made withoute the gate, that was deluyerd to buymont. They herde tydynges that this grete prynce Corbagat, of whom I haue spoken to fore, shold arryue shortly / ffor he was thenne entred in to the londe of anthyoche / It was acorde^d that
 20 they sholde sende a wyse man vnto the see, an^d saye to them that were goon for to doo theyr thynges / that they shold^d retourne hastely, and brynge in to the Cyte alle the vytaylles that they myght fynde. They them self, that were in Anthyoche,³ ran alle
 24 the countrey abeut for to seche vytaylles, but they founde but litil. The laborers of the playne countrey were moche ioyous that the Cyte was in the handes of the pylgryms, for they were of our fayth. all that they had hyd they brought ; but it was not moch, For the
 28 longe siege had destroyed the countre without, and empty^d the toun within.

it could not even be mined.

The barons stopped up the path, from the donjon down the mountain, with a wall.

Godfrey was stationed at the East gate.

[³ leaf 85]

But little food could be found in the country round about.

How whyles thooste garnysshed the toun,⁴ Somme of thoost of Corbagat⁵ cam rennyng to fore it.

32 cap^o .C.xxiiij^o

t He second day after the toun was taken, whyles oure peple entended^d to garnysshe the Cyte, cam thre honderd men of the

The second day after the town was taken,

¹ This sentence is rendered unintelligible by omissions. After "myned" must be inserted "towards the west, the hill is lower. Between this hill and the donjon is a valley, which is not very large or very deep: in this place a path descends."
² Fr. *perrières*, not *pierres*.

⁴ Orig. tonn."

⁵ Orig. Crobagat.

a band of
Corbagat's
men appeared
before the
town.

hoost, al in poynt of Corbagat, wel armed and horsed vpon lyght horses, for to see yf they myght fynde ony of oure men that rode fololy by the countre. They embusshed them alle sauf .xxx., the beste horsed, whiche cam to fore the toun; They began to renne 4 nyccely,¹ for to drawe oure men out of arraye. whan oure men sawe them, they had grete desdayne / And wende that it had be a grete shame yf they founde not to whom to speke to / syth they were come so fer to fore / A noble man of whom I have spoken 8 to fore / by whom the hooste had had many prouffytes by his wytte & prowesse, & was named Rogier de barneuylle, And was of the companye of the duc of normandye, he toke with hym .xv. knyghtes that he had of his meyne, And cam out of the 12 toun ayenst the turkes, as he that was noble, valyaunt and hardy / And acustomed to doo fayr faytes. whan he sawe them, he smote his hors with his spores toward them, And they² by cautele torned and fledde. Our men folowed hastely so ferre that 16 they launced vpon theyr watche, they sprange oute of the embussement, And ran vpon oure men / ffor they were many, and wel proued in armes. Rogier³ relyed his lytil felawship / And cam deffendyng hym toward the toun. whan they were nyghe, A turke 20 garnysshed with a stronge bowe smote Rogier thurgh the body, in suche wyse that he fyl doun deed to fore his hors. Anon his felaws withdrewe them in to the toun. The turkes descended vpon hym, and smote of his heed. seeyng they that were on the walles / they 24 bare away the heed, and thus departed / they of the toun yssued oute with grete crye and lamentacion, as they that had a grete losse. They toke the body, and buryed it honorably and with grete sorowe in the porche of the chirche of seynt peter / The barons⁴ com- 28 pleynd moche aboute the other, this noble man, as they that beste knewe hym /

Roger de
Barneville
went out
against them.

He was
smitten
through the
body and
killed.

He was
honorably
buried,
and there was
great lamen-
tation over
his death.

[f. ff. 85, bk.] ⁵How the thyrde day after the getyng and pryse of Anthyoche, Corbagat with his hoost arryued to 32 to fore it. ca^o Cxxiiij^o.

Prince Cor- a Tte the thyrde day after that Anthyoche was taken / this bagat, the grete prynce Corbagat cam to the cyte in the mornyng at the next day,

¹ Fr. *nicement*, viz. in a foolhardy way.

² Fr. *par barat*, i. e. to draw them on.

³ Fr. *ralia*, rallied, reassembled.

⁴ Fr. *plainnoient*, mourned.

sonne rysyng with so grete plente of peple, that alle the countre
 that myght be seen fro the hiest place of the toun was couerèd with
 them / The barons sawe moche more peple / than they herd saye of,
 4 For theyr hoost encreced euery day / he passed the brydge / And
 lodged hym bytwene the laye / and the ryuer of helle, whiche is
 wel a myle fro that one to that other / he had so grete plente of
 knyghtes, and so grete nombre of tentes and pauyllons, that the
 8 grete playne wherof I haue spoken to fore, where Anthyoche
 stondeth ne yet it myght not alle receyue them / But many of them
 lodged them in the terrytories¹ by / whan Corbagat had be thus
 thre dayes lodged hym thought that he was ouer far fro the cyte /
 12 And by his counseyl wold be more ner the dongeon / whiche the
 turkes helde / for to ayde and comforte them / And thought for to
 put men in to the toun by the yate that was vnder the dongeon.
 whan he was lodged on that partye, he comprysed fro the yate of
 16 the eest to the west yate all the syde of the toun toward the south /
 by syde the parte of the eest was a fortresse, whiche oure men had
 made / vpon a litil tertre as I haue sayd, and was deluyerd to
 Buymont² / But whan the toun was taken and the yate / he
 20 deluyerd this fortresse to other for to kepe / Therby lodged som
 turkes of thooste of Corbagat / They began tassaylle this tour / They
 that were within dyde grete payne to deffende them / But it was
 ouermoche charged with grete plente of peple that were there, and
 24 also with Archers, of whom they had many. The duc, whiche was
 bye at the yate, sawe that his men had ouermoch to doo / & had
 good wyll for to helpe them / and wold haue dislodged them that
 were come ouer fer forth / he yssued out with al his bataylle / And
 28 smote his hors with his spores toward the fortresse / And sawe that
 there were ouer grete plente of turkes to fore hym / which smote in
 to his men, and began to demene them euyll / Ifor ayenst one of
 them ther were .x. turkes. the duc knewe that his strengthe was
 32 not like theyres, and began to withdrawe hym toward the toun /
 But to fore that they myght reentre in to the gate / The turkes
 assayled them so euyll that ther were / ij C / of the batayll of the
 duc³ taken & deed.

appeared
with a great
army:

the great
plain of An-
tioch could
not contain
them.

Corbagat
attempted to
put some
men into the
town by the
gate under
the donjon.

They assailed
one of the
towers
guarded by
the Crusa-
ders.

The Duke
sallied forth
to repulse
the Turks,

but was him-
self driven
back.

¹ Fr. *tertres*, hills.

² *Orig.* Buymout.

³ *Orig.* dnc.

[leaf 86] ¹How after that the duc² was within the barres of
the toun / and many of his men slayn, the turkes
entred in to the toun / ca^o C. xxv.

t He Duc cam in to the toun moche angry of this dommage. 4

The Turkes
were very
proud of this
victory,

But whan the turkes knewe that this had be godeffroye of
bolyne that they had thus put abak. They³ aroos in moche grete
pryde / therfor they wente thens vnto the montayne / & entred^t
in to the toun by the yate of the dongeon / And surprysed^t somme 8
of our men that toke none hede / wyth bowes & with swerdes
they slewe them / but whan they were apperceyued our men chassed

and entered
safely into
the town by
the donjon.

them, But they put them in to the dongeon where they were sauf /
thus dyde they oftymes harme / ffor they knewe another way to 12
descende than that whiche our men had garnysshed / The barons
assembled^t for to take counseyll what they shold doo of the peryll
wherin they were. By comyn acorde it was ordeyned / that Buy-

The Crusa-
ders then
made a broad
ditch and a
fortress be-
tween the
mountain
and the town.

mont and The Erle of Thoolouse shold^t make there a dyche moche 16
depe and brode ynowgh bytwene the toun and the pendaunt of the
montayne. they made it there as it was deuysed / And made there
a fortresse whiche they garnysshed wel with men wel armed. The
turkes that were in the dongeon, And they also that were comen in 20

by this gate descended ofte / by a way couerte vnto this fortresse,
And assaylled^t it moche fiersly, in suche wyse as they lete them
haue no reste, that it happed on a day / that so grete plente of
turkes descended that the cry aroos in to the toun / that and yf 24

the other barons and knyghtes whiche were a brode in the toun
had^t not come and^t ronne to them they had^t slayn or taken thyse
noble men / that is to wete Buymont / Euerard du pyssat /
Raoul de la fontayne / Rembault crecon⁴ / And^t somme other lordes 28
that were in theyr companye / Alle they were grete men and^t good
knyghtes that were put in this newe fortresse for to defende it /

The Turkes
attacked this
often, but
were always
repulsed.

But therle of Flaundes, the duc⁵ of normandye / And huon the
mayne ranne moche hastely theder / And mette with the turkes er 32
they myght entre in to the dongeon. They slewe many, and^t many
they receyued⁶ prysonners / The other turkes that escaped^t cam to
fore Corbagat / And counted to hym that thyse men of the toun
were ouer feers and hardye. And^t it semeth whan they ben in werke 36

² *Orig. dnc.*

³ Fr. "*en moult grant orgueil monterent,*" viz., "they became very much elated."

⁴ Lat. *Creton.*

⁵ *Orig. dnc.*

⁶ *Orig. receyned.*

that ¹they doubt² nothyng the deth, ne this, ne that.¹ Corbagat, Corbagat, who was lodged in the mountain, descended into the valley. [² If. 86, bk.]
 whiche was lodged in the montayne as I haue sayd, dyde not theron
 moche his prouffyt ne his honoure, ne he founde not there pasture
 4 for his hors, as he ³dyde byneth in the valeye / whan he sawe this
 he commaunded that he shold be dislodged, and descended in to the
 valeye with his men he passed the riuier of helle. there deuised he
 the places to his barons about the toun. on the morn it happed
 8 that I can not say how many turkes approched the cyte / and
 descended fro theyr horses / for to shote at our peple that were on
 the walles for to come more ner. Tancre yssued by the gate toward Tancred sallied out and slew 6 of them.
 the eest, and stopped the way fro them in suche wyse that er they
 12 myght take theyr horses he slewe .vj. of them / And brought them
 in to the toun for to recomforte our peple for the deth of Rogyer de
 berneuyll /

How our cristen men that a lytil to fore assiegede the
 16 toun / were now assieged in the same /

Capitulo Cxxvj^o

i N this tyme duryng / the peple of the cristen men that had The Christians were now, in turn, besieged themselves.
 assieged Anthyoche but a litil to fore as ye haue had / They
 20 were now them self assieged within. Thus goon the chaunges and
 mutacions of the world ; they had moche grete trauayll for to kepe
 and deffende the Cyte. It was to them ouer peryllous that the
 dongeon was so strong and so wel garnysshed as it was. They
 24 made to them ofte grete assayiles by daye and by nyght, ffor they
 of the hooste cam in by the yate vnder the dongeon as ofte as it
 plesyd them. Our men began to be moche abashed. Ther were
 many that toke no regarde to theyr oth that they had made to
 28 mayntene the compayne ne to theyr honoure, But by nyght
 descended down of the walles by ropes and cordes and fledde to
 the see. (26) And many of them the turkes toke whom they slewe
 and brought in prison. They that myght escape cam vnto the
 32 porte, sayeng to the marchauns and to other pylgryms that were
 there comen, that they shold disancre theyr shippes and flee anon /
 ffor this prynce Corbagat, whom so moche peple folowed, had taken
 Anthyoche by force, and had slayn alle the barons and alle them
 36 that he founde within / And that they were escaped by ouer grete

¹⁻¹ Fr. "*Ilz doubtent la mort, ne tant ne quant,*" i. e., they have absolutely no fear of death. ² Orig. donbte.

and begged
the sailors to
flee from the
port with
them.

peryll and fiers aduerture / Therefore, sayd they to the maronniers,
that they shold departe and flee withoute taryenge / ffor yf the
turques cam serchyng the countre vnto the see and founde them
there they shold be alle delyuered to deth / Thus they fledde alle 4
for feere / And they them self that brought thise tydynges wente
with them. And thende that ye shold not suppose that thise
were but mene peple, ¹for the trouthe of this hystorye spareth
noman / I shall name somme that thus departed shamefully, that 8
is to wete, Guyllamme de Gratemenyl, a noble man born in Nor-
mandye / whiche held grete londe in puylle, And had to his wyf
the suster of Bnymont. Aubery charpenter, Guy croseaulx (27) /
Lambert le poure / ²And many other had they with them. Somme 12
there were that wente for pyllage, ² And for the messease of hungre
and drede for to be slayn, yolde them to the turkes / And they
tolde the certaynte of the meschief that oure men suffred alle a
longe to the turkes. Many abode in the toun that gladly wold 16
haue goon / But buymont by the counseyl of the bisshop of Puy
dyde so make watche atte alle the gates and vpon the walles, And
toke ³ kepe bothe by daye and nyght that none shold goo vp ne
doun ⁴ / And they swore alle that they shold not departe fro the 20
companye, ne breke the commaundementes ⁵ of Buymont. ⁶ He hym
self wente euery nyght thurgh the toun wyth grete plente of men,
and with grete lyght to thende that no peryll shold happe ne
trayson. Foure fortresses had he whiche he muste nedes kepe, and 24
better than the other. That one was on the lasse tertre ayenst the
dongeon / And that other was lower ayenst the assaylles that they
made. The thyrde was withoute the eest gate, the whiche was
made to kepe thooste er the toun was take / the ⁷fourthe was at 28
thende of the brydge, by whiche the port of the brydge was kept /
And therle of thoulouse kept it fyrst. But whan the Cyte was taken
he lefte it, and entred into the toun. Therle of ffaundes toke it
and garnysshyd it with fyue honderd men of Armes, of knyghtes, 32
and other wel in poynt, ffor he thought yf the turkes toke it our
men myght not after yssue by the brydge, by which their strengthe
be moche employed /

[leaf 87]

Even well
born men
behaved
shamefully.

Some euen
surrendered
themselves
to the Turkes,
out of fear.

Bohemond
guarded the
town dili-
gently,

especially
the four
fortresses,
which must
be kept.

²⁻² Fr. "*de tels en y avoit qui en faisoient pis.*" One of Caxton's hasty translations, he seems to have mistaken *faisoient pis*—"did worse," for "*went for pillage.*"

³ Fr. "*qui prenoient garde,*" who kept watch.

⁴ *Orig. donn.*

⁵ *Orig. commaundementes.*

⁶ *Orig. Bnymont.*

⁷ *Orig. thhe.*

How Corbagat dyde do assaylle a fortresse which
 therle of Flaundes kepthe withoute the gate and
 of that ensiewed / ca° Cxxvij°

40 N a daye it happed that Corbagat thought that they of the
 toun had ouermoche lyberte to yssue oute¹ and to entre agayn.

Therfor he commaunded to a bataylle of his peple, in whiche were
 .ij. thousand turkes wel in poynt, that they shold so longe assaylle

Corbagat
 assailed the
 fortress of
 the bridge.

8 the fortresse of the brydge tyl they were taken, and it happed so
 that therle of Flaundes was thenne wythin the same fortresse.

Thassault beganne at sonne rysynge, moche fiers and moche grete.
 there were so many Archiers aboute it that none myghte shewe his

12 ²head atte creneulx / but that anon it was couerd with arowes /

[² If. 87, bk.]

they that were within deffended them moche well in suche wyse,
 that they lost nothyng of the fortresse / And thassault endured tyl

The Chris-
 tians de-
 fended them-
 selves until
 sundown,
 when the
 Turkes de-
 parted.

16 fflaundes³ doubte that they shold come on the morn to thassault /

ffor they myght not longe suffre them there / therfor, as sone as it
 was nyght, he put out alle his men prenyly / and sette fyere therin,

At night
 the fortress
 was burnt
 down.

20 and brent the fortresse without fayllyng. The turkes had deuyed
 that in the mornynge erly they shold haue begonne agayn thassault

and that two / M / men more shold haue comen than had ben the
 nyght byfore. It was not longe after that a Rouete of turkes

24 pylgryms that wente pourchasshyng⁴ yf they myght fynde ony
 vytaylles in the countre / they toke them and brought them alle

Many poor,
 furnished
 Christians
 were taken
 prisoners
 and brought
 before Cor-
 bagat.

in the state that they were in to fore Corbagat / when he sawe
 them he / moche despysed them, ifor they had no Armures / And

28 but feble bowes of tree, Their swerdes rusty, their gownes and
 habellemens were old and roten / Thenne sayd Corbagat by des-
 dayne : " Thyse peple seme well men that shold take away fro the

soudon of Perse his Empyre / And conquere the londe of thoryent /

32 Thyse shold be wel content and paid yf they had breed, and⁴ a
 gobet of bacon / their bowes ben not stronge ynowgh for to slee a
 sparowgh. Now I shal saye to you what ye shal doo / ye shal lede

Corbagat,
 in ridicule,
 ordered them
 to be sent to
 the Soudan
 of Persie,

them bounden in this poynt as they now be in vnto my lord the
 36 soudan that hath sent vs hether / And telle hym that he dar not

¹ *Orig. onte.* ³ *Orig. fflaundeas.*

⁴ Fr. "*en ung toit à porcaule,*" in a pig-stye. Caxton evidently did not understand "*toit.*"

to show him
against what
sort of men
he was
waging war.

This turned
afterwards to
his shame.

be fore aferd of thyse men that he comen bether / ffor we haue enterprysed and begonne warre ayenst suche men as he may see / late me allowe with this werke, ffor there shal not abyde many of them / but I shal efface and destroye them alle in suche wyse as 4 there shal nomore be spoken of them, as they had neuer be born" / Thus ledde they thoo cristen men vnto the soudan. he wende wel to haue don his honour / in this that he sente them to the soudan / but it torded hym afterwarde to his shame / hym thought a light 8 thyng to vaynquysse the cristen men whiche had not yet wel assayed them /

Of the grete famyne and messeage that oure men suffred in the cyte of Anthyoche, beyng 12 assyged on alle sydes by the sayde Corbagat / Capitulo C. xxviii^o

[1 leaf 68^r]

A grievous
famine arose
in the town.

Each one
begged food
wherever he
might find it.

Some were
ashamed to
do this, and
hid them-
selves in
their houses.

o N alle partyes was the cyte thus assieged / They of the toun ne myght not yssue out for to pourchasse vytaylle for them. ¹They 16 were euyl at ease of this meschyf / A famyne aroos in the toun moche grete and greuou^s for deffaulte of vytayll / in suche wyse that they ete camels asses and tho horses, and yet toke they werse thynges / whan they myght gete it, ffor who that had founden a 20 deed hound or Catte, They ete it delyciously in stede of grete delices, ²ffor the hongry wombes made no daunger to seche suche as they myght fylle them with.² the grete, hye, and noble men that were acustomed to be moche honoured / had now no shame to 24 come there wher they ete suche mete / but wente oueral moche fowly, and demaunded playnly such as they neded / The ladyes, gentil wymmen and maydens, had alle langour of hongre. They were alle pale and lene / Many were compelled to begge, and aske 28 with moche grete shame / There was none that myght haue³ so harde an herte but that he shold haue had grete pyte to haue seen it / ther were many men and wymmen that aduysed them of what lygnage they were of born / that had suche courage ferme in theyr 32 hertes / that for none anguysshe that they suffred of hongre wold not goo axe their breed⁴ fro dore to dore / Thyse peple hydde them in theyr howses. Somme that knewe it / dyde to them yet somme

²⁻² Fr. "*Car les ventris familleux ne faisoient dangier de guerre dont ilz fussent remplis,*" i. e. "the hungry stomachs did not refuse to seek that with which they might be filled." ³ *Orig. hane.* ⁴ *Orig. beed.*

socour / But ther were many that deyed for hongre that had not for
 to ete / There myght men see knyghtes and other valyaunt men
 that had be to fore stronge and noble in theyr werkes / that now
 4 were so feble and poure that they wente by the stretes lenyng on
 their staues / and they heedes enclynyng doun askyng breed for
 goodes loue / There shold ye haue seen the lytil Childeren that soke
 theyr moders pappes. And the moders had nothyng to ete / But¹
 8 threwe them down in the stretes to thende that other shold norysse
 them. with grete payne shold ye haue founde one onely man emong
 so moche peple that had sufficiently that hym neded / ffor yf ony
 had be that had Gold or Syluer, It auaylled hym nothyng, ffor he
 12 founde no mete for to bye with it / the barons and the hie prynces
 that were acustomed to holde the fayr courtes / and to gyue mete
 and drynke to many men. they hydde them now / by cause none
 shold fynde them etyng ne drynkyng, they had gretter anguysshe
 16 in theyr hertes of this famyne / than had the poure peple / ffor
 they mette euery day theyr knyghtes and theyr men of theyr
 countrees that deyde for hungre, And they had no mete to gyue to
 them / It were a long thyng to recounte alle the meseases and the
 20 meschyefs that were suffred within Anthyoche whyles the tempeste
 endured / But so moche may wel be sayd, that selde or neuer shal
 ye fynde in hystorye / that so grete prynces, and² one so grete an
 hooste suffred suche anguyssh of hungre.

Even the
knights were
too feeble to
walk upright.

One could
buy nothing
to eat for
money.

It would take
a long time
to recount all
that they
suffered in
Antioch.
[² If. ss. bk.]

24 How the turkes, felyng that our men were in suche
 meschyef of hongre, enforced them for tassaylle
 the cyte / ca^o Cxxix.

Hyles that the Cyte was thus on alle partes assieged with
 28 w turkes, And the famyne ran so anguysshous, They that were
 without / and knewe the euyl couyne of our people lefte not to
 assaylle the walles alle the longe daye, They of the dongeon, And
 the other that cam in by the yate / cam and made grete assaylles in
 32 the toun. they had made them so wery / that oure men myght not
 wel defende them, and vnnethe kepe the toun. ffor when they had
 defended them alle the longe day / at euen they had nothyng to
 ete / wherof it happed that a tour by that syde where our men
 36 entred was euyl kept. and on a nyght the turkes cam withoute
 forth / And apperceyued wel that noman was within the tour.

Those out-
side assailed
vigorously.

Our men left
a tower un-
defended.

¹ Orig. Bnt.

The Turks mounted and entered.

thenne they toke laddres that they had made, And mounted vpon the walles / ther were .xxx. that wente vnto this tour for to entre in / And this was at the begynnyng^e of the nyght. The maister of the watche wente serchyng^e right there / And sawe the turkes 4 comen vp there, And cryed^e treson, treson. And thenne awoke fyrst and ran theder harry dasque / and two of his cosyns with hym / that one named ffranke, And that other Semer.¹ They were bothe of the toun called Mathale² vpon the mase. Thyse thre 8 smote in emong the .xxx. turkes at theyr fyrst comyng they slewe four. They of the toures sawe them, but not so sone. the other .xxvj. turkes deffended^e them. But this dured^e but a whyle, ffor they of the toures threwe them down to the ground / where they 12 brak their legges and neckes. Ther was none that fylle, but he was deed or maymed. Ther was slayn Semer, ffor he was hurt with a swerd thurgh the bely. frank was born away, whiche was hurte peryllously. 16

The crusaders rushed thither, and threw them all down to the ground, breaking their legs and necks.

How Corbagat sente his men of Armes for to slee the maronnners that were at the porte / wherof oure men had a grete losse. Capitulo .C. xxx^o

a³ Han the famyne grewe thus euery day in anthyoche, many 20 there were in the toun that had^e leuer be slayn, than to abyde thus the hongre. They put them in aduerture / & by nyght yssued^e 4oute of the toun whan they myght escape After they wente to the porte of the see. Somme shippis there were yet of grekes, 24 and^e of hermyens that brought, vytaylle / many ther were that bought it / And cam and^e solde it in the toun⁵ by nyght in⁶ hydles. whan the turkes apperceyued this / many tymes they awayted them / and slewe many of them / Atte laste for to take away this 28 lytil socour that they had^e. the turkes sente two thousand horsmen to the see / whiche slewe alle the maronnners and^e marchauntes that they founde, And brente their shippes. Somme ther were that laye at an ancre in the see, and they fledde / Thenue had our men 32 loste alle theyr hope for vytayll, ffor the yles of the see as Cypres Rhodes / And^e other lyenge on the sez side, As Cylyce, pamphyle, and^e of other costes durste nomore sende theyr Shippes theder /

[* leaf 80] Many ran away rather than suffer hunger.

The Turks burnt all the ships in the harbour.

Our men are now in great despair,

¹ Fr. *Soemer.* Lat. *Sigmaro.* ² Fr. *Machale.*

³ ?t or w. ⁵ *Orig.* tonn.

⁶ B. *cn musceteus*, A. *cn tapinuge*, i. e. secretly.

They of the toun¹ of Anthyoche were nowe euyl demened / ffor to fore to them cam somme comforte of the marchauns. Now they haek alle loste it / whan the turkes retourned fro the see they
 4 recountred our pour pilgryms whiche wente that way / they slewe them alle, sauf somme whiche hydde them in the bussches / whan they of the toun herde tydynges herof how they were slayn they were moche sorowful, ffor they haek ouer grete anguysshe in theyr
 8 hertes as ofte as ony mesaventure fyl to their peple. In this poynt were they with in the Cyte, and wold take none hede to theyr warde, ne wold not obeye to the barons, whiche myght thenne doo to them no good. Thus were they in grete perylle /

and in a dangerous situation.

The common people would no longer obey their leaders.

12 How guyllem de grateuylle and his felaws fugytyfs cam in to Allexandrye the lasse / ca^o Cxxxj^o:

g² Vyllem de Grateuylle & the other that fledde with hym cam in to Allexandrye the lytyl. There they founde steuen, Therle
 16 of Chartres, Of whom they of Anthyoche abode his comynge fro daye to daye / ffor the barons and the mene peple supposed that he wold remembre how he departed / and retorne agayn / They toke hym the grete sorowe of the famyne that was in Anthyoche,
 20 and to thende that they excused them of their departyng / truly the trouthe of the mesease was grete, But they told moche more than it was / It was a light thyng to reteyne this erle, ffor he had no grete talente for to³ retorne. They toke counseyl bytwene them /
 24 & made theyr shippes to be in poynt and redy / And after entred in to them / and so wente to the see / and whan they haek ben, I wote not how many⁴ dayes in the see. they arryued at a Cyte of
 28 with alle his hoost moch greet and merueyllous, of grekes and of latyns, and hasted moche for to goo to Anthyoche. he was thenne in a Cyte not ferre from thens named ffynemyne, he wold well holde couenaunte / that he had made to socour our peple with the
 32 peple of his Empyre. And ther cam in his companye wel / xl. M. pylgryms that haek abyden in his londe of the grete hooste, by cause of sekenes or for other causes. And grete nombre were comen syth fro theyr countrees for theyr pylgremages, whiche durste not passe
 36 his londes vnto Anthyoche by them self / And thenne siewek the temperour. whan the Erle stephen knewe that the Emperour was

At Alexandria the Less the deserters found Stephen of Blois,

and persuaded him not to go to the help of those in Antioch.

[4 If. 89, bk.]

Hearing that the Emperor of Constantynople was at Finimine on his way to Antioch,

accompanied by a large army and many pilgrims,

¹ Orig. tonn. ² Fr. *guillaume de grateuil.* ³ Orig. to for.

they went to him. so nygh, he wente strayt to hym, And^t brought his felaws cowardes with hym. whan themperour sawe them / he made grete ioye / And receyued^t therle esteuen honorably, ffor he helde hym in passyng thurgh his londe for a moche wyseman and a valyaunt, and 4 was wel acqueynted^t with hym. he demaunded hym moche entenyfly of the remenaunt¹ of the barons / And sayde he had grete merneylle / how he was thus departed fro their companye.

The Emperor received them honourably, but wondered that they had left their companions.

How therle of chartres discouraged themperour of Constantinople that he shold not goo and socoure our peple in Anthyoche. Capitulo C xxxij^o.

t He Erle answered^t in this maner, and sayde to themperour / Sirc, the barons of ffrance whiche passed this yere by your empyre, whom ye receyued so curtoysly & with grete honour. whan they had taken Nycene, whiche they rendred to you, They passed^t vnto Anthyoche. They assieged^t that cyte wel ix monethes. They haue taken it entierly, Reserued^t a dongeon, whiche stondesth upon an hylle within the walles, whiche the turkes holde so strongly that it is unprenable / They supposed^t to haue wel employed whan they had gotten this Cyte / But thenne they fylle in gretter peryll than to fore. ffor on the thirde day after that they entred Cam Corbagat, a puyssaunt prynce of perse, whiche brought so moche peple that alle the cuntrye by was couerd with them. Oure peple suffred gret anguyssh² thenne, ffor this Corbagat, with his peple, enuyronned them on alle partes in suche wyse that oure men myght not yssue, and dyde to them moche payne in assayllyng them with out³ forth. And^t the dongeon made to them grete assaylles within ⁴forth by whiche our men suffred grete mesease / And^t also thanguyssh of hongre was so grete, that they had no power to defende them. On that other syde / they had otherwyle comfort of youre londe / ffor the yles of the see, And^t also fro other portes cam somtyme vytaylle / that was brought in to Anthyoche, But now late ben comen the turkes, And^t haue slayn alle the maronnars and the marchauntes that they fonde atte porte

The Earl answered that they had besieged Antioch nine months;

but just as they captured it Corbagat arrived, and besieged them in turn.

[4 leaf 90]

They were now suffering great anguish from hunger.

¹ Fr. "*de la demourance des autres barons.*" A. gives "*de la contenance,*" which is the correct version. Lat. "*interrogans igitur ab eo Imperator diligenter de vita et salute et statu principium, et quaenam esset causa quod ab aliis rediret.*"

² *Orig.* anguyssh.

³ *Orig.* ont.

in suche wyse, that nowe ther dare nomoo arryue there / wherfore
 they haue loste alle theyr socours of vytaylle / And aboute alle this
 they of the toun be greuyd nyght and day by them of the dongeon,
 4 ffor by the yate vnder it the turkes may entre and yssue when it
 plesyth them / we sawe that this werke myght come to no good
 ende in this maner, wherfor we warneð them, bothe my self and
 thys that be in my companye, whiche be moche noble & wyse-
 8 men oftymes, that ayenst the wyll of god they shold not enter-
 prise to conquire this cuntry / But shold departe with the lest
 losse they myght, And the peple that folowed them / they shold
 conduyte in to such a place that they shold not be deluyerd to
 12 deth / Many tymes we sayd to them in this manere / And neuer
 wold they here vs ne byleue, But mayntene theyr reuerye, ffor
 ther be many emonge them in whom is lytil reson / we our self
 had ben deed yf we had abyden there / ne we myght doo none
 16 honour to our lord ne to our prouffyte, Therfor we departed, And
 commaunded them to god / whiche saue them and kepe, for they
 haue nede / Ye, syre, to whome I am bounden in good fayth / I
 aduise you, that ye take counseyl of your wyse men to fore ye goo
 20 ony ferther / Trowth it is that ye be the moost hie man of the
 world / But for al that ye haue not here now in your companye so
 moche peple as Corbagat hath aboute Anthyoche, And ayenst one
 of you he hath seuen / therfore myn oppynyon is yf the other so
 24 acorde, that to fore your men be put in so gret aduenture ye retorne
 home agayn. For yf ye approuche them / And that they haue
 achede theyr werke in the Cyte, ye shal fynde them redy / &
 the more ner ye approuche them / the more shame and vyle shal it
 28 be to retorne fro them whan ye be so nyghe them. thise thynges
 that I haue acounted to you, knowe wel thise valyaunt men that
 be here with me / & also a grete parte maye ye knowe by this
 good man that ye deluyerd to vs / that is wete tantyn your
 32 seruaunt,¹ whiche is so wyse and trewe, whiche departed fro vs for
 many defaultes, that he apperceyued with vs. whan he had sayd all
 this / themperour was moche ameuyn of thise wordes,² with hym
 was a brother of Buymont named guyon, that whan he had herd
 36 therle Stephen thus speke / he was alle wroth and angry / And as
 half araged for despyte sayde al on hie / that he sayd not the
 truthe / But that they were departed as Cowardes. He had moo
 grete wordes / but gyllem de gratemenyl, which was a gentelman

Above all
 they were
 distressed by
 attacks from
 the donjon
 which they
 had not yet
 captured.

Nor would
 they heed
 Stephen's
 advice to flee
 to a place of
 safety.

Therefore he
 departed and
 left them.

Stephen
 advises the
 Emperor not
 to go to
 Antioch.

[2 lf. 90, bk.]

The Emperor
 was much
 moved by
 this speech.

¹ *Orig.* seruaunt.

born of lygnage, And not of courage, And had to his wyf the
 suster of the same guyen, made hym to holde his peas, And blamed
 hym by cause he spak ayenst therle steuen. And so this guyen
 forbare hym.

4

How by the warnynges of the sayd Erle / themperour,
 whiche wold haue goon & socoured our¹ men,
 returned shortly. ca^o C xxxiiij.

v Pon thyse wordes that themperour had herd / he wolde be 8
 counseyllid, and called his barons. And alle they acorde^d
 that themperour shold^d retorne fro thens, wher he was withoute
 goyng^o ony ferther / ffor they thought it were better to remeue his
 peple withoute perylle and hurte than for to fyght in so grete 12
 meschyef ayenst Corbagat, And to mene ayenst hym in hate and²
 in warre all the londe of thoryent / He byleuyd so fermely the
 wordes of therle Stephen / that he doubted^d that the turkes had^d
 slayn them of Anthyoche / And wold thenne goc in to his londe 16
 for to receyue the Cyte of Nycene / And alle the londe of Bythynie,
 whiche oure men had delyuerd to hym / he wold garnysshe it /
 whan he departed fro thens he brente and destroye^d alle the londe
 fro³ the cryne vnto Nycene on both sydes, ⁴By cause the turkes 20
 shold not folowe hym, vytaylle began to faylle him, And so he
 muste retourne⁴ / Thus it happed that by the wordes of this grete
 man / that so fowly departed fro the other barons / themperour
 returned^d, & the Cristen peple beyng^o in Anthyoche lost so grete 24
 socours / by whiche myght haue comen alle theyr delyueraunce in
 so grete necessaryte as they were thenne, But consydere^d this that
 was gyne to be vnderstonde to Themperour, yet he dyle not / But⁵
 his deuoyre. Certaynly it was the werke of our lord, ffor yf this 28
 Emperour that cam with his peple, and grete power of men al
 fresshe had reysed the siege / & discomfyted the turkes / oure
 lord shold not haue ben so honoure^d ne thanked / And yf of the
 traauyll that the barons and the other pylgryms had suffred, them- 32

The Emperor
 called a
 council of his
 barons, and
 decided to
 return home.

He was so
 much afraid
 of Corbagat.

In this way
 the Chris-
 tians of
 Antioch lost
 the succour
 that they
 might have
 had.

The result
 showed that
 this was the
 work of the
 Lord.

¹ *Orig.* onr.

² *Orig.* aud.

³ Caxton's French MS. is here corrupted, "*Des le Coine jusques à Nique.*" A. gives the correct reading, "*Des Icoine (Lat. Iconium), jusques à Nique.*"

⁴ Fr. "*Afin que se les Turcz, les voulsissent suivre, vitaille leur faulst, se les eust couvenu retourner,*" viz., "in order that if the Turks should desire to follow them, food would fail them, and they would be obliged to return home."

⁵ *Orig.* But.

perour that come laste shold haue had the vycторыe, theyr payne
 shold not haue ben so wel guerdonne^d / Therfor our¹ lord stuffed
 that themperour departed / And^t that the ²werke shold be accom-
 4 plysshed, as ye shal here to his glorie and honour of his peple /

in order that
 the Chris-
 tians might
 accomplish
 [2 leaf 91]
 this work to
 His glory,
 and to their
 own honour.

How our³ peple of Anthyoche beyng aduertysed herof
 were all discouraged, And Corbagat enhaunced
 in pryde / ca^o: C / xxxiiij^o

8 r Enomme cam in to Anthyoche, that themperour that was
 approached by the wordes of therle Stephen, of Guyllem de
 gratemenyll / And of theyr felaws was torned back / They had on
 alle sydes anguysshes / But thyse tydynges empoysonne^d them alle,
 12 And put them as in despayr / thenne began they to curse the Erle
 Stephen and^t alle his companye that had taken fro them so grete
 ayde / Corbagat⁴ that had knowleche that Themperour cam, had^t
 moch doubte of his comyng / ffor it was a grete thyng of the
 16 pyssaunce of themperour. Now was he certayn that he was
 returned^t, Wherof he had moch grete ioye in his herte. he was
 risen in a moch fiers pryde. He ran the more asprely on them of
 the toun / Oure men in the toun were so abasshe^t, that them seme^d
 20 wel that oure lord god^t had^t alle forgete them. They lete them falle
 in despayre, And wold not endure no trauaylle that apperteyned to
 the defence of the Cyte / Alle hydde them in theyr howses / On a
 day it happed that Buymont,⁵ whiche had^t alle the power of thoost,
 24 had^t to doo with men / ffor thassaultes withoute forth, and^t for
 thassaylles within forth / He dyde do crye on peyn of deth that
 alle shold come, And^t there came none. He sente his men for to
 fetche them in theyr howses and somone them to come, And none
 28 wold come oute. He was abasshed / And^t thought⁶ what he shold^t
 doo. Atte laste he sette fyre in the toun in dyuerse places, And^t
 thenne yssue^d in to the stretes grete rowtes / Buymont sawe them,
 and^t say^t to hem his commaundement / And bad what they shold^t
 32 doo / they dy^t it / A worde sourde^d in the toun that many
 knyghtes and^t Barons had^t had^t counseyl pryuely emonge them that
 they wold^t yssue oute of the toun⁷ by nyght, And^t leue the pepole
 within.
 36 And^t wold^t doo the best they myght, and^t drawe them to the

The Chris-
 tians in
 Antioch were
 in despair at
 the turning
 back of the
 Emperor,

but Corbagat
 rejoiced
 greatly.

Bohemond
 had to set
 fire to the
 city to force
 his soldiers
 out to do
 their duty.

It was re-
 ported that
 many barons
 intended to
 steal away
 by night.

¹ *Orig. our.*

⁵ *Orig. Buymout.*

³ *Orig. our.*

⁶ *Orig. thonght.*

⁴ *Orig. Crobagat.*

⁷ *Orig. tonn.*

porte for to entre vpon the see. The duc Godeffrey knewe this
 word, he sente hastily for the bisshop of puy, And alle the barons
 and grete partye of the knyghtes, and he fylle at theyr feet,¹ and
 requyred² them for the loue of god that they wold neuer thynke 4
 suche a thyng, ffor yf they dyd so, god shold hate them / And
 they shold lese theyr sowles, as men that were in despayre of the
 mercy of oure lord. ³And on that other syde in the world they
 shold lese their honour for euer and also theyr lygnage, whiche had 8
 nothyng forfayted, And shold be shamed euer, and poynted with
 the fingre. The londes out of whiche they yssued shold be the
 lasse renommed and lasse preyed as long as the world shold endure.
 Of alle these departynges myght they neuer receyue good worde ne 12
 honour. By these wordes, and by the prechyng of the bisshop of
 puy they loste this euyl talente, alle that had be in this euyl⁴
 purpoos.⁵ But they began to affeble in the toun for honger and
 mesease, in suche wyse that they abode not, but the wylle of oure 16
 lord / Ofte cam in theyr remembraunce what goodes / Rychesses,
 and grete eases they had lefte in theyr countrees⁶ for the loue of the
 seruyse of oure lord. And now yelded he to them suche guerdon
 that they deyed euery day for honger / And kept hem not fro 20
 these dogges cruel, whiche byleuyd not in hym, but they slewe
 and beheded them in despyte & reprouche of the Cristen fayth.
 In this maner wold they chyde with our lord often as men that
 wyste not what to do ne saye. 24

Duke Godfrey begged the barons, for the love of God, to abandon this thought.

[3 If. 91, bk.]

His entreaties prevailed with them.

But they complained bitterly of their privations.

How the spere was founden of whiche Ihesus was percyd on the crosse. And of the comfort that our pylgryms toke thereby. Capitulo Cxxxv.

w Hyles as they were in this anguysshe therle herman, an hye 28
 man of duche land, was in so grete pouerte⁷ / that duc godefroy
 dyde do delyuer to hym euery day one loof of breede for pyte
 whiche was not moche grete / But the Duc myght no more gyue
 hym / ffor he had not wherof / Harry dasque whiche was one of 32
 the beste knyghtes of thooste was brought in so grete pouerte, that
 he deyde for honger. It were a long thyng for to recounte all their
 meseases; but our lord that in alle his werkes may not forgete
 mercy / sente to them grete comfort. ffor a clerk born in pro- 36

Harry D'Asque, one of the best knights in the army, died of hunger.

¹ *Orig.* feetr. ² *Orig.* reqnyred. ⁴ *Orig.* enyll.
⁵ *Orig.* purpops. ⁶ *Orig.* countrees. ⁷ *Orig.* ponerte.

uynce named^r peter, cam on a day to the bysshop of puy and to
 therle of tholouse, & sayd to them in moche grete drede, that the
 holy apostel seynt andrew had appiered to hym thryes in the nyght
 4 slepyng, & warned hym that he shold goo to the barons & saye
 to them / that the speer with which our lord was percid in the syde
 on the crosse was hyd in the chirch of seint peter in the cyte, the
 place where it was he had certainly shewd to hym / he said wel
 8 that he was not come for to saye ne signefye them / but that seynt
 andreu had^r menaced^r hym at the last tyme yf he dide not his
 message / he shold meshappen in his body. ¹It was no merucylle yf
 the clerke doubted for to saye this / ffor he was a poure man and
 12 of a lowe lygnage / And^r but lytil lettre^d. Thyse two hye men
 when they herd hym they brought hym to fore the other barons.
 They assembled^r them, and they wolde that he shold saye to them
 the same wordes as he had sayd to them / whan the other Prynces
 16 herd^r this, they mysbyleuy^d not the clerke / They cam in to the
 Chirche of seynt Peter. And^r sayd^r theyr confessions. And cryed
 our lord mercy in teres, wepynges, and wayllynges / And repent-
 aunces of theyr synnes. Thenne began to delue and dygg depe in
 20 the place that the clerke had shewed to them. They fonde the
 spere lyke as he had^r sayd to them. Thenne had they a Ioye
 emonge them so grete, lyke as euery man had^r had^r as moche as he
 myght / They ronge the belles. And^r this thyng was anon spred
 24 al about the toun. They ran alle to the chirehe hastily. And sawe
 this noble relyquye whiche was doluen out of therthe. Thenne were
 they recomforted alle, both men and wymmen, poure and ryche /
 as they had our lord emong them and seen hym, there were thus
 28 many other good^r men that sayde certaynly that certeyn vysyons of
 Angeles and^r apostles were appered to them (28) / By thyse thynges
 the peple forgate moche of theyr mseases. The bisshop of puy and
 other holy men that were in the companye sayd to the pylgryms
 32 that oure lord^r shewde to them tokene and^r signe / that shortly he
 wold sende to them his ayde and his counseyl, They concluded^r
 alle, noble and vnnoble, men and wymmen / grete and lytil / And
 sware vpon the holy relyques / that yf our lord^r wold^r delyuere them
 36 oute of the peryll in whiche they were, And^r gyue them vitorye
 of theyr enemyes, that they shold^r neuer departe fro this holy com-
 panye vnto the tyme that they had^r conquer^d Iherusalem, that
 noble Cyte, where our lord^r suffred^r deth for to saue his peple.
 40 And^r shold^r delyuere the holy sepulcre oute of the handes of the fals

The Apostle
 St. Andrew,
 appeared to
 one Peter,
 in a dream,

and bade him
 look in St.
 Peter's
 Church for
 the speer
 with which
 our Lord was
 pierced.

[leaf 92]

The barons
 dug there
 and found
 the speer.

By this
 miracle all
 were com-
 forted and
 encouragel,

and took it
 as a sign that
 they should
 soon be
 delivered.

mysbyleuyng houndes, turkes, and saresyns that kept it in theyr power.

How Peter theremyte was sente by our men vnto Corbagat / the words what he sayde. And the answer of the sayd Corbagat. Capitulo Cxxxvj^o:

After twenty-six days of famine they t

Hey had suffred this famyne .xxvj / days in the Cyte / In so moche that the people to whome our lord god had sente good hope in theyr hertes began moch to be comforted / & 8 fyllle alle to one wylle in such wise that they sayd emong

[l f. 92, bk.]

them that it were good to brynge theyr mesease ¹to an ende / Therefore was theyr comyn acorde that they shold fyght with the turkes that had assieged them, ffor they thought a fayrer thyng 12 that yf our lord wold that they deyde in bataylle, that they shold doo it in deffendyng theyr cyte that they had conquered to the Cristiente, than to languysshe and to faylle within without essayeng yf our lord wold ayde them / herof sourded a comyn word 16 emonge them that alle cryed bataylle, bataylle / the bataylle, whan they myght see ony of the Barons. Alle they sayde that they taryed alle to longe. This word was thus meynd of the mene peple. The barons thought that this enterprise myght well come 20 of our lord. And so by comon acord they assembled in counseyl. they alowed muche this that the peple made this request, and

They sent Peter the Hermit, with Herloin, an interpreter, to Corbagat.

acorded that they wold sende to this proude prynce Corbagat, Peter theremyte, whiche was an holy man, moche wyse and wel bespokin. 24 And delyuerd to hym for felaw a valyaunt man named hellom (29), trewe and of grete wytte that coude wel speke the langage of the sarasyns. And ²specially the langage of perse / They charged them with the message, like as ye shal here what they sayde to Corbagat. 28 These two sad men to fore sayd dyde do demaunde treds for to goo to the sayd Corbagat / ffor they wold speke with hym in the name of the pylgryms / hit was graunted with good wyll, They wente out of the Cyte and toke with him good companye, whiche were 32 assygned to them / they wente so ferre that they arryued at the pauyllon of this noble prynce Corbagat. They sawe hym sytte in moche grete bobaunce emonge his ryche men / Peter salewed hym nothyng, ne made to hym honour ne reuerence. But spak heeryng 36 alle in this maner / This holy companye of hye & noble men / barons, noble knyghtes, and other peple of our lord god that ben

Arriving at his tent they found him surrounded by his men.

Peter addressed him thus:

² *Crij.* aud.

yonder / within the cyte / sende to the & comaunde that thou
 departe fro this siege / & that thou nomore assaylle them / but
 late them haue an^d kepe the toun in pees, which our lord^e Ihesu
 4 crist hath delyuered to them for to holde his faith & for to doo
 hym seruyse. ffor seynt peter the prynce of thappostles / vpon the
 creauce of whom our fayth is founded, hath conuerted it fyrst by
 his prechyng / An^d by the merueyllous myracles that he dyde /
 8 our people hath conquerd it not long syth by the wyll and ayde of
 oure lord^e vpon the turkes, that haue holden it with wrong and by
 force a certeyn tyme. Therfor thou oughtest to suffre vs to enioye
 our herytage / An^d retorne thou in to thy cuntrye, an^d yf thou
 12 wilt not so doo knowe thou for certayn that within the thyrde day
 swerdes ¹schal fynysse an^d ende this debate. An^d to thende that
 thou complayne not that we desire and wille the deth pourchasse of
 so moch people in comyn bataylle, they shal offre to the this / that is
 16 to wete / yf thou wilt fyght in thyn owne persone, they shal sende
 ayenst the, one al so hye a prynce as thou art, to whom thou shalt
 fyght. An^d whiche of you maye vaynquysse and ²ouercome that
 other, shal conquere the quarelle for euermore withoute other debate.
 20 yf this thyng plese the not / take certayn nombre of thy men,
 vj. x. or xij / or as many as thou wylt / & our pilgrymys shal sette
 as many ayenst them, withoute ony moo of that one syde an^d that
 other. An^d that they that shal wyne the feelde shal allewaye
 24 haue the gayne of this debate. When Corbagat herde this message
 he was moche wroth an^d angry, an^d had grete desdayne an^d
 despyte / Thenne he tourne^d hym toward Peter an^d say^d to hym /
 Peter they that hath sente the hether, ben not in such poynt as me
 28 semeth that they shold^e offre to me for to chose of theyr deuyses,
 But they be brought by my puyssaunce an^d strengthe that they
 maye doo nothyng of theyr wylle / But I shall doo with them
 alle my playsyre / But retourne thou an^d saye to thyse musardes,
 32 an^d saye to them that haue made the to meue fro the Cyte and
 come hether, that they vnderstonde not yet the ³maluerte that they
 be in / An^d byleue certaynly / that yf I had wold, I had or now
 broken and destroyed this toun and sette my men therin by force,
 36 in suche wyse that the cremen men had be alle slayn / men and
 wymmen / lytil an^d grete. But I wyll that ye abyde in more
 caytyfnes and mesease, dyeng & languysshyng^r for hongre / lyke as
 other houndes. An^d whan it shal please me / I shal entre in to

"The Chris-
 tians com-
 mand you to
 depart from
 this siege,

and leave
 them Au-
 tiocih, which
 was con-
 uerted by St.
 Peter.

[¹ leaf 93]

They chal-
 lenge you to
 single cou-
 bat, with one
 of their
 number."

Corbagat was
 very wroth at
 this message,

and said,
 "Return,
 and tell your
 masters,
 that they are
 in no con-
 dition to
 dictate.

² *Orig. aud.*

³ *Fr. mal^eurte, misery, misfortune.*

When I am ready I shall enter the town, and kill or take all of them away as slaves."

the toun, & alle them that I shal fynde, men and wymmen of couenable eage, I shal put them alle bounden handes & feet in in pyetous estate, And shal lede them alle to my lorde for to serue hym. And they shal be his esclaves / Alle the other I shall 4 slee with the swerd, lyke an euyl tree that wyll bere no fruyt /

How the sayd Peter retorned in to the toun, and wold openly haue sayd his message / & of the subtyl counseyll of the duc whiche wold not 8 suffre it / ca° C. xxxvij°

¹p Eter theremyte vnderstode his pryde whiche was grete, and of grete quantite of peple that he had¹ / And also of ²his Rychesses whiche were ouer moche / Thenne he departed and cam 12 agayn in to the toun. he wold haue sayd the message of Corbagat openly in the presence of them that wold here hym / ffor theder ran grete and smale. But the duc Godeffroy that was moche wyse and knewe moche, drewe hym a part, and called only the barons, 16 and bad hym saye that he hath founden. he recounted to them alle, as he that had wel reteyne in his mynde / & coude saye and vtter it in the best manere / The duc doubted that yf the peple had herd this grete pryde and the menaces that Corbagat had sayd / 20 that they shold be ouer moche abasshed and feerd. Therfor he commaunded to Peter that he shold saye none other thyng / But that only Corbagat desyred and demaunded the bataylle ayenst them, And that they shold make them redy. Peter acorded wel 24 therto, And sayd to them lyke as the duc had commaunded hym / And vnethe Peter had sayd the worde / But that alle cryed with one voys / And we wylle also the bataylle ayenst hym in godes name. They shewde wel by theyr sight and semblaunce that the 28 desyre of the bataylle was grete in their hertes. Alle their mesceases were forgotten for Ioye to haue the vyctorye. The Barons, whan they sawe that theyr peple made suche ioye they were moche glad, And moche the more trusted in them. By comyn counseyl they 32 ordeyned the day of the batayll on the morn / And that thus wold Corbagat haue it, they byleuyd it wel. And hastely wente every man to his lodgyng. There ye shold haue seen Armourers put in poynt, hauberks and helmes fourbousshed / swerdes and custrellis 36

[² If. 93, bk.]

Peter returned home,

but Godfrey would not let him tell his message to the people.

They all with one accord cried to fight Corbagat.

The next day was set for the battle.

¹⁻¹ Fr. "*Pierre l'ermite entendit son orgueil qui moult grant estoit, de la grant quantité de gens qu'il avoit.*"

- whette / This nyght slepte they not in the toun noman / They that
 kept the hors toke good hede this nyght / And made alle thyng
 redy. As soone as it was nyght, It was cryed vpon peyne of deth,
 4 that alle man shold be in the mornynge to fore the soune rysynge
 alle armed as he best myght / And drawe hym in to the bataylle
 where as he was ordeyned / And that euery man shold folowe the
 baner of his Captayne / whan the spryngyng of the day apperid in
 8 the mornynge the men of the chirche were redy for to synge masse,
 And songe deuoutly / They that shold goo to the batayll were con-
 fessyd, and alle receyued the bodye of oure lord, which gaf to them
 surete of body and of soule. Alle rancour and wrath were en-
 12 tierly perdonned / by cause they wold be in parfyght charyte, And
 therin doo the seruyse of our lord, whiche sayth in the gospell,
 In this shal alle men knowe that ye be my disciples, yf ye haue
 lone and charyte emonge you / whan they were thus redy /¹oure
 16 lord sente to them his grace / which gaf to them so grete hardines,
 that they that were the daye to fore so ferdful / feble and lene that
 they myght not susteyne them self for feblenesse, becam stronge,
 and delyuer² in suche wyse / that the armes that they bare weyed
 20 nothyng as them semed, and were hardy and vygorous, so that ther
 was none so litil but he had talente to doo grete thyng in the
 bataylle. The tyme cam that the bisshops and alle the other men
 of the chirche were reuested as for to synge masse. they helde the
 24 crosse / and the saintuaryes with whiche they blessyd the peple
 And recommaunded them to god. They graunted pardon and
 remyssyon to them of alle their synnes, yf they deyde in the
 seruyse of our lord. To fere alle the other the bisshop of puy
 28 prechyd and spak to the barons. And prayd them that they shold
 thynke to auenge the shame of our lord Ihesu Criste, that thyse
 vntrewe sarasyns had don to hym so longe in withholdyng of his
 herytage. Atte laste he blessyd them with his hand, and com-
 32 maunded them to god deuoutly.

No man slept
in the town
that night.

At daybreak
all went to
church.

All rancor
and wrath
were par-
doned.

[leaf 94]

The Lord
now sent
them physi-
cal strength
in a wonder-
ful manner.

The priests
gave them
absolution for
their sins.

The Bishop
of Puy ex-
horted them
to auenge
their shame
of the Lord
Jesus Christ.

How to fore er our men departed / they made redy
 theyr bataylles right wel in poynt / & of the
 nombre of them / ca°. C.xxxviiij°

- 36 N the morn erly our pylgryms assembled / as it was ordenyed
 o & deuysed the thyrde day to fore thentre of Iuyll, to fore the

² Fr. *deliures*, hardy, bold.

yate of the brydge / to fore thysse oute of the yate / They had
 theyr bataylles ordeyned and deuysed lyke as who shold goo to
 fore / And who shold come after / The fyrst bataylle had huon¹ le
 mayne, broder of the kyng of ffrance, And with hym Ancean de
 Rybemont, And the other Barons and knyghtes of theyr countrey /
 They thought wel that the men that they ledde shold not lightly
 be discomfyted. therefore wente they first / for to perse in the better
 to fore. The second batayll ledde Robert therle of fflaundes /
 which was called the ffryson / he had none other in his bataylle but
 peple of his owne countree. The thyrde batayll ledde Robert the
 Duc of Normandye with his neuuew, whiche was moche valyaunt,
 therle steuen of Aubuale / And alle them of his owen countreye /
 The fourth batayll was delyuerd to the bisshop of puy / whiche had
 don of thabyt of the chyrche, and rode upon a good stede / the
 helme laced. And he bare in his hond the holy sperè of whiche
 oure saueour, Ihesu Criste, was perced in the² side, and conduyted
 vygorously the bataylle of therle of tholouse, whiche was not there.
 The Erle Reignald of toul had the / v. bataylle. with hym was peter
 de stadenous his broder / Therle Garnyer³ of grece, Henry dasque /
 Reynart of Anmellac / Gaultier of domedart / In the .vj. bataylle⁴
 were Rembold, the erle of Orange, Loys⁴ de moucous, and Lambert
 sone of Euenam⁵ de Montagu. The / vij / bataylle ledde the right
 valyaunt Godeffroy duc of Loreyne / with hym was Eustace his
 brother / And them that he brought out of his countrey. The .viii /
 bataylle conduyted the noble, wyse, and wel preuyd Tanere, with
 the men that were delyuerd to hym. The .ix. bataylle ledde therle
 huon of seynt poul. Aniaran⁶ his sone was with hym / Thomas⁷
 de boure / bawdwyn de bourgh, Robert⁸ fytz⁹ gerard / Regnauld⁸
 de bauuaus¹⁰ / And Gales de chamont.¹¹ The .x. ladde therle of
 Perse.¹² And had with hym Euerard du puysat, Droon de money /
 Raoul¹³ fytz godeffroy and Conayn the breton. Of the .xi. was
 Capytayn Ysachar¹⁴ therle of dys. with hym were Remon¹⁵ pabes /
 Gaste de bedyers / Gyraud de Roussylon, Guyllem de monpellyer,
 And Guyllem ameneux / The / xij / and the laste in whiche was

¹ Fr. "cut" left out. ³ Fr. *garin de gres*.⁴ Fr. *Looy de Mouçon*. ⁵ Fr. *Conon de Montaigu*. ⁶ Fr. *Anjorran*.⁷ Fr. *Thomas de Fere*. ⁸ Fr. *Robert le filz Girart*, Robert the son of Girart.⁹ *Orig. fntz*. ¹⁰ Fr. *Beauvoys*. ¹¹ Fr. *Chaumont*. ¹² Fr. *Perche*.¹³ Fr. *Raoul le filz Godeffroy*, Raoul the son of Godeffroy.¹⁴ Fr. *Ysacart le conte de Die*. Lat. *Yscardus comes Diensis*.¹⁵ Fr. *Remon Pelcz*.

Hugh the Great commanded the first batallion,

Robert of Flanders the second,

Robert of Normandy the third,

the Bishop of Puy the fourth,

[² If. 94, bk.]

Reignald of Toul had the fifth,

Rembold of Orange and other Provençals the sixth,

Godfrey of Bouillon led the seventh, Tancred the eighth,

Huon the ninth, and

the Earl of Perse and others the tenth.

moost peple was delyuered to buymont¹ / And was ordeyned that he shold goo socoure suche bataylles / as had moost nede. Therle of thoulouse, whiche was merueyllously seke, lefte they in the toun
 4 for to kepe fro the turkes in the dongeon / ffor yf ther had be no garde / they myght haue sprongen and haue slayn alle the seke men, wymmen, and children, and the feble men that abode byhynde in the toun / of whom ther were grete nombre² in theyr herberous /
 8 They had made, as I haue sayd tofore, vpon a lytil tertre a stronge walle of chalke / in whiche were ordeyned places for to dresse engyns, whiche were al redy for to caste / They had left / ij. C. men of Armes, noble and hardy for to deffend this paas fro the
 12 turkes, whiche were on hye on the dongeon.

Bohemond came last with the twelfth battalion.

The Earl of Toulouse was left to guard the town.

How Corbagat was aduertysed of thyssue of oure peple, and sente his Archiers for to deffende the brydge. And how they were disconfyted.

16 Capitulo / Cxxxix^o
 w Han they had thus deuysed theyr bataylles / in euery batayll they had sette men on foote. It was acorded emonge them that they a foote shold goo to fore. And the knyghtes that cam
 20 after shold kepe³ them. It was deffended and cryed⁴ on payne⁵ of deth that none shold be so hardy that shold entende to ony gayn As longe as ony turke deffended hym / but whan oure lord had gnyen them the vycторыe, Thenne shold they retorne, and myght
 24 tarye to take & gadre the despoilles. Corbagat fro the begynnynge of the siege of the cyte had alwaye doubte & grete suspection that our peple shokd sodanly come vpon his hoost, And specially syth that peter theremyte had be with hym in message. And therfor he
 28 had commaunded to them that were in the dongeon, that yf oure men thought to yssue they shold sowne a busyne / And sette oute a baner where they shold yssue / wherof it happed that whan thyse bataylles were renger to fore the yate to fore they yssued aboute
 32 the houre of pryne / They of the tour made the signe like as they were commaunded. Corbagat vnderstode that our men cam. And anon he sente two thousand Archiers to the brydge to kepe it that they shold not passe. whan the turkes cam theder for to mayntene
 36 the passage / they descended alle afoote. The yates were opened,

The footmen went first, and the knights after. [5 leaf 95]

Corbagat had always feared an attack,

and had arranged for signals, so that he knew of their coming.

¹ *Orig.* buymont. ² *Orig.* nombre.

³ *Fr. les garderoient*, viz., should protect them. ⁴ *Orig.* cryed.

Hugh the Great opened the attack and put the Turks to flight.

Ancean of Ribemont gained great honours by his bravery.

Our men pursued the Turks nearly to their tents.

oure¹ men yssued after thordenaunce that was deuysed. Huon² le mayne with alle his bataylle cam fyrst vn to this paas, whiche³ was kept with his enemyes. his⁴ archiers and men a foote taryed a lytil and myght not passe in no wyse / whan huon the noble man apper- 4
ceyued this he smote the hors with the spores, and so smote in on bothe sydes, that it was to late for the turkes a foote to take theyr horses / Thenne torned they fleynge, defendyng them & shotyng with their bowes. Ancean de Ribemont rode ayenst them, and bete and 8
helde the⁵ rowte so short allone that his men that cam after hym myght come and smyte in emong them and delyuerd many.⁵ And oftymes he plunged so depe in the presse that certaynly our men had supposed he had ben lost. but whan he cam agayn / he dis- 12
couerd hym wel and made large place about hym. Alle men behelde hym, he gate there moche grete honour and prys. Huon le mayne forgate not his swerd. And he dyde so moche that our pylgryms had by hym good luck and hope at this fyrst assemblee / 16
Therle of fflaundres and the duc of Normandye, with the valyaunt erle of henawd cam to this chaas / The Archiers of the turkes that so fledde were so euyl mened / that they were but a fewe whan they returned in to thoost / Our men folowed them tyl nygh theyr lodgys. 20
many of them they bete doun that neuer releuyd.

[c. ff. 95, bk.]

How oure men reioysed them of a dew or rousee
descendyng⁶ thenne fro heuen. And of theyr
mayntyen in approchyng the turkes. 24

Capitulo C / xl

o Ne thyngge happed whan oure men yssued out of the toun /
that ought not to be forgotten / ffor whan thyse Archiers were
disconfyted, the latynes cam after in theyr ordenaunce a softe paas / 28
Thenne began to falle a rayne or a dewe, so swete a rousee was
neuer seen / It sened to euery man verytably, that it was the
benediction of our lord and the grace of heuen that descended vpon

Our men were now greatly refreshed by a sweet dew which fell.

¹ *Orig. onre.*

² *Orig. Hnon.*

³ Fr. "*qui ainsi des ennemis garny estoit,*" viz., "which was thus guarded by his enemies."

⁴ Fr. "*que tart fut à ceulx qui descendoient à pic qu'ilz fussent remontés,*" i. e., so that those who had descended from their horses were very anxious to be remounted.

⁵⁻⁵ Fr. "*tenoit tant la route, tout seul, que ses hommes qui venoient apres, y pouvoient frapper à deliure.*"

them / Anon¹ they were as fressh & al so light as they neuer had suffred² mesease. This reffreshment was not only in the men, but alle theyr horses were anon so stronge, so fresshe, and so reioyced /

4 As they had had alway al that whiche was nedeful for them. This was moche apperceyued that daye certaynly, ffor the horses that many dayes had nothyng to ete sauf leues of trees and skorches² or Ryndes, were in this bataylle more stronge and more penyble /

8 than were the horses of the turkes, whiche had alwaye as moche as they myght / The Capytayns acorded that they shold drawe them toward the montaynes, whiche was fer fro the Cyte wel .ij. myles / ffor yf the turkes whiche had moch grete plente wold goo theder-

12 ward / they shold be bytwene oure men and³ the toun, and shold close them in. In this maner wente one bataylle to fore another withoute this / That one touched another in ony wyse / whan the turkes sawe them alle they merueylled and were abashed, ffor they

16 had supposed / that they had not be but a fewe enclosed in the toun / Now they semed by the myracle of our lord that they were as many of them / as were of the turkes, and yet moo. Emonge the men of armes were the men of the Chirchie reuested with

20 awbes⁴ and stooles, they that were preestes. And the clerkys in surplys / & eche of them bare a crosse in his hand / they that were abyden in the toun were on the walles, reuestyd also, in prayers and oroysons and teeris cryeng⁵ mercy to oure lord that he wolde haue

24 pyte of his peple / And saue them that day, & that he wold not suffre that his name and his fayth shold torne to reproche by the mescreauntes and hethen peple.

so that they felt perfectly strong and well.

The horses even recovered their strength.

They drew off towards the mountains, one batallion after another.

Among the armed men marched the priests, in their priestly garments, cross in hand.

How Corbat ordeyned his bataylles / And how the two hoostes marched to gydre in bataylle.

/ C. xlj^o

b Y the signes that they of the dongeon made to them of thoost, and by the tydynges that the Archiers brought / Corbat

32 ⁵knewe and vnderstode certaynly that oure men were yssued oute of the Cyte, and cam toward hym for to fyghte. Thenne⁶ of this that he was thenne adcerteyned / he had deslayne to fore and

[⁵ leaf 96] Corbat now understood that our men meant to fight him.

¹ *Orig.* Auon.

² *Fr.* *ecorces*, bark.

³ *Orig.* aud.

⁴ *Fr.* *aubes et estoles*, albs and stoles.

⁶⁻⁶ *Fr.* "*lors tint à certes ce qu'il avoit eu jusques adoncques en desdaing, et tenu pour moquerie,*" viz., then he began to take seriously that which up to this time he had held in disdain, and considered only as mockery.

holden it for mocquerye.⁶ he toke counseyl of his barons / And
 hastily ordeyned his bataylles by the counseyl of his wysemen /
 And specially of them that were born in Anthyoche, of whom he
 had many with hym. He made a bataylle of moche grete plente of 4
 knyghtes, the best and moost hardy that he had / This bataylle
 delyuerd he to Solyman / of whom ye haue herd in dyuerse places
 to fore. He commaunded that they shold drawe them toward the
 see, to fore er our men shold haue taken / and pourprysed alle the 8
 playn bytwene the montayne & the Cyte. This¹ grete bataylle cam
 thenne to fore, And was stake as bytwene two townes² and
 closed / His other bataylles he sette in poynt by leyser, And made
 that one to goo to fore another as he that knowe ynowgh of the 12
 faytes of warre / And after spak to the Capytaynes, and sayde to
 them, that they shold mayntene them as hye men and good
 knyghtes, and not to be aferd ne esmayed of thyse Caytyues / men
 enfamyned, euyll armed, and all to brused of the grete trauaylles 16
 that they had suffred, whan our men had pourprised entierly the
 playn in such wise that they doubted not to be closed in / They
 approuched so nyghe the turkes that the turkes myght shote at
 them / They made theyr trompes and busynes to sowne lowd, 20
 And³ spored their horses the thre fyrst bataylles to gydre / wel
 founde they that receyued them, ffor the turkes were grete men
 and well armed. Our men dyde right wel in this comyng on /
 The⁴ ffrensshemen, fflemynge conteyned them vygorously in brek- 24
 ynge the presse / But thenne cam so grete rowtes of turkes / that it
 behoued the other bataylles of our men to assemble hastily for to
 socoure the thre first bataylles. They were alle at the medle, sauf
 the laste bataylle, whiche buymont conduyted as ye haue herd. 28
 There shold ye haue seen fiers skarmoche of swerdes, of maces
 & axesse. the⁵ malles were so grete and strokes / that ye shold
 not haue herd yf it had thondred. The duc godeffroy sawe a

He arranged
 his own
 battalions,

and sent
 Solyman to
 intercept our
 men.

Solyman
 arranged his
 army, and
 exhorted his
 men not to
 fear the
 famine-
 weakened
 crusaders.

Our men now
 attacked
 them, and
 a fierce
 skirmish
 followed.

¹ Caxton has here made a "bourdon" by omitting all between the two "cites," and then in consequence of this omission, he has mistranslated the rest of the sentence, Fr. (*cecy fist il par tele entencion que quand nos gens seroient desconfitz, et ilz se vouldroient tirer vers la mer ou vers la cite*), *cette grosse bataille leur venist au devant, et fussent adoneques entachiez comme entre deux moles, et et du tout agreve et forelos.* ² hills, not towns. ³ Orig. Auð.

⁴ Fr. "*Les Flamans se contindrent vigourousement, et les Normans derompoient bien la presse.*"

⁵ Fr. "*le marteleis estoit si grant,*" i. e., the hammering (of the arms) was so great.

- bataylle come where in were moo men than any of the other. well thought he that yf that were discomfyted / The other shold be moche abasshed. he drewe thederward, And¹ smote in them asprely and
 4 vygorously. there dyde he & his felawship moche wel and² so valyauntly that they slewe many, and³ hewe of heedes and⁴ armes in suche wyse that the felde lay ful of dede men, of hurt and⁵ wounded, in so many that the turkes⁶ myght no lenger suffre it ne
 8 lenger endure³ / But were discomfyted and⁷ were put to flyght. Solyman that had the grete bataylle, as I haue sayd⁸ to fore / apperceyued⁹ fro ferre his men conteyned¹⁰ them but febly / And¹¹ approched¹² and¹³ sawe the bataylle of buymont / which yet had not be in the
 12 medle with the ether / he adressid hym thedre, And dyde do shote at hym grete plente of Arowes at the approachyng.⁴ But after they henge theyr bowes on theyr armes, and ran vpon them with axes and swerdes / And¹⁴ smote so sore on them that almost they tourned¹⁵
 16 the heedes of theyr horses, ffor they myght not abide so grete estour ne so sharpe of so moche peple. The duc Godeffroye knewe & sawe them fro ferre / & drewe hym diligently to that parte. Tanere toke hede also of his vnele, & cam dilygently to socoure
 20 hym. at the comyng of them two which brought many men with them was Solyman discomfyted, and¹⁶ muste parte fro the place. But the turkes had made redy fyre grekyssh(30) / And¹⁷ threwe it in to the grasse whiche was longe and¹⁸ drye in the felde / Our men thenne
 24 departed for the smoke whiche was blak and thyeke / whan the turkes sawe that they on horsbak were withdrawen, they ran vpon our men afoote, and slewe many of them. our men that were on horsbak were yssued out of the thyck smoke, and¹⁹ herde the crye of
 28 them that they so slewe / And²⁰ smote the horses with the spores, and camen agayn alle / And²¹ alle them that they founde of theyr enemyes they bete and²² slewe, and²³ put to flyght. So ferre they chassed them, betyng²⁴ and²⁵ hewyng²⁶ them, that they cam to the
 32 grete multitude / whiche thenne were discomfyted and put to flyght /

Godfrey and his men fought bravely.

[2 If. 96, bk.]
The Turks were put to flight.

Solyman attacked Bohemond's division, and pressed them hard.

Godfrey, seeing this, came to the rescue, and discomfited Solyman,

and then chased him a long distance, slaying many.

Of the fleyng of Corbagat / And of som turkes gadred to gydre. And agayn discomfyted by our men.

36

ca^o Cxliij^o¹ *Orig.* Ano.³ *Orig.* endure.⁴ *Orig.* approachyng.

i N this partye where the bataylle had bee, was in a valeye /
 As where descende^t in to the see a lytil brook or rennyng^t
 water. vnto that place had our men chassed the turkes / And there
 they drewe and^t assemble^t them agayn vpon a tertre right hye / 4
 And made do sowne theyr trompettes and busynes for to brynge
 their peple to gidre, but our men that thezⁿe had not to doo in
 none other place camen alle to them / Huon le mayne / Therle of
 fflaundes. The duc of Normandye / the Duc godeffroy, Buymont 8
 and Tancre, And they that were with them, began moche myghtely
 to ¹ assaylle theyr enemyes, thurgh the water so fiersly and by so
 grete hardynesse and force that they passed ouer, and sodanly ran
 on that hylle where they were on. And^t made them to descende 12
 doun moche perylously. fro thenne the turkes had^t none hope, to
 abyde no longer on the felde ne on the champayns, but euery² man
 wente and^t fledde here and^t there where he myght and^t thought
 beste. Corbagat the lord of the hoost, fro the begynnyng that the 16
 bataylles assemble^t / had eschewed the peryll / And^t was with-
 drawn vpon an hylle a ferre of, for to see the ende. he sente ofte
 messagers for to knowe how his men conteyne^t and^t demene^t
 them³ / wherfore he abode there / And sawe how the turkes cam 20
 alle disconfyted without kepyng araye ne ordonaunce of bataylle.
 his frendes that were about hym⁴ sayd to hym / Syre, ye see wel
 at this tyme how it gooth, therefore thynke ye dylygently for your
 self / And^t departe hastely from this place. he thenne wente his 24
 waye and^t fledde as hastely as he myght; he had^t so grete fere and
 drede in his herte that he durst abyde in no place. he passed the
 Ryuer and flood of Eufrates / And by the rennyng of his hors he
 withdrewe hym as fer as he myght. whan his men knewe that 28
 they were without Capytayne they were moche abasshed. thenne
 thought none of them of other, but euery man dyde the best he
 coude or myghte to saue hymself, & fledde alle as moche as they
 myght / Our valyaunt barons, whiche that had sore trauallyl^t 32
 theyr horses, durste not folowe them ouer ferre, lest theyr horses
 myght faylle them / Tancre with a companye of four thousand
 folowed, sleyng^t and^t betyng^t doun⁵ alle them that they myght
 atteyne, ffor the fere and^t drede was so grete in the hertes of the 36
 sarasyns that / x. men myght haue chassed / v / C. sarasyns. Ther
 was it enydently proued and shewd, that there is no counseyl, ne
 none maye be gyuen ayenst our lord god^t / And^t that our lord^t for-
² Orig. enery. ³ Fr. *si comme il atendoit illec.* ⁴ Orig. hyin. ⁵ Orig. donn.

The Turks
rallied on a
little hill.

[1 leaf 97]

Our men
followed, and
dislodged
them.

The rout
now became
general.

Corbagat fled
beyond the
Euphrates.

Tancred
followed with
4000 men,
as far as he
dared, with
his weary
men and
horses.

geteth not them that haue stedfast hope in hym, for a smalle peple, poure, and as alle deed for hongre, whiche were come fro fer countrees and londes, by the ayde of Ihesu Criste vaynquysshyd alle the power of thoryent in theyr owne loude and countree, whiche were so grete plente of peple garnisshyd and replenesshyd of alle that they had nede of.

This a small
Lamine-
stricken
army van-
quished the
proud Orient.

How our peple retorned fro the chaasse, and wente to the pillage, and of the grete Rychesses that they fonde. ca° Cxliij°

t He bataylle was thus fynnysshyd, in suche wyse that the pilgrymys had the vycторыe / They wente straye to the lodgyses
 12 ¹of the turkes, there founde they so grete Rychesses of gold, of syluer, of precious stones, of vayssell of dyuerse facions / tapytes and clothes of sylk, so moche that neuer man myght wel preyse. Oxen, sheep, and kyen were there grete plente, whete and mele
 16 grounden, of which they had grete nede ; ther was so moch that all they were encombrede to bere it / They wan horses in this discomfytur good and fatte, so many that they were abashed of the grete multitude that was there / They toke and gadred the despoylls
 20 and the tentes, wherof they had so grete rychesses / that of suche an hoost, was neuer none seen more faire ne ryche / And this cam to them merueyllously well to poynt / ffor alle theyr tentes & theyr payyllons were holly rotten / wymmen, Childeren, and other peple
 24 whiche bare none arnes they founde ouer many in the lodgyses, whom alle they brought in to the cyte Emong the other thynges. the barons assemblede them for to see the tentes of Corbagat whiche was merueyllous, ffor it was made in the forme of a Cyte / It had
 28 towres and crestes of dyuerse colours wrought with fyn sylke. ffor the mayster palays were aleys in to other tentes lyke to stretes in a grete toun. Ther myght sytte in the grete halle moo than two thousand men / whan our men had recyelled thus the rychesses
 32 and despoilles / they alle made grete trusses full of ryche thynges, and charged them on theyr horses and backes and entrede in to the Cyte of Anthyoche. yf they thenne were glad and ioyous, It was no merueille, ffor in longe tyme to fore, fyller ne happede suche
 36 aduenture in Cristiente / They rendred & gaf to our lord many thankes and graces of lawde with alle theyr very hartes humbly and deuoutly. ffor wel knewe they that alle was comen fro hym /

The Chris-
tians went to
the tents of
the Turks,
[1f. 97, bk.]

where they
found im-
mense riches.

Never were
such great
spoils seen
before.

The tent of
Corbagat was
especially
large and
magnificent.

They re-
turned to
Antioch
joyous, and
well laden.

The Turkes in the donjon now surrendered.

The turkes whiche were in the dongeon had wel seen that theyr people were vaynquysshyd / And had none hope thenne to be rescowd ne of no socoure. Therfor anon as the barons were entred in the cyte they made them to speke and trete with them. And 4
 acorded to gydre that they alle shold take theyr wyues and childeren and bere with them suche goodes as they had / and rendre and gyue ouer the dongeon. The baners of our barons were sette about on it thenne. The werkes of our lord Ihesu crist ben moche hye 8
 and merueyllous, ffor fro right grete pouerte, cam oure peple to ouer grete rychesses in so short a tyme / It is moche good to affye and truste in hym that hath such power and myght. It was meruayl of the disease & pouerte that our barons had suffred /. The 12
 valyauzt Duc godefroy was brought to this poynt at the day of the batayl ¹that he had not wheron to ryde / But he must praye and requyre moche swety therle of tholouse / whiche remeyd not oute of the toun, that he wold leue to hym an hors / 16
 but he had grete payne to gete it, he had despended alle his hauoyr and good entierly for to susteyne the pour gentilmen, in suche wyse that he had nothyng hym self. There were many knyghtes that rychely were come in to the hooste atte begynnyng, that were 20
 brought to so grete pouerte that this day they rode on asses and on pour mares. And many hye men as knyghtes valyaunt and hardy myght not cheuysshe for to ryde, but wente afoot emong the foote men, where they helde moche wel theyr place / ffor they mayntened 24
 and taught the mene peple how they myght doo to theyr enemyes grettest dommage. The power of perse was moche affebled this day. For ther wer so many slayn and deed that alle therthe ther aboute was couerd. The nombre of them that were slayn was 28
 neuer verytably / knowen / Moche was chaunged the state of our men. ffor he that in the mornynge yssued oute alle poure in suche wyse that he had not for to ete / At euen he entred in to the cyte ryche of good and of vitaylles / in suche wyse as he myght haue 32
 holden a grete court and companye. This good aduenture whiche honoured alle cristiente / and specially the Royamme of ffrance happed the yere of thyncarnacion of oure lord .M/lxxxxviij / the .xxi / day of the moneth of Iuyn /

Thus in a short time the Lord raised his men from poverty to riches and power.

[¹ leaf 98]

The power of Persia was greatly enfeebled that day.

This good aduenture happened the 21st day of June, 1098.

Of the fayre ordenaunces that oure peple made in the
chirches of Anthyoche. And in other townes
by / after this vycторыe. Capitulo Cxliiij°

4 s Yth that the barons were returned fro the bataylle / and the
thynges of the Cyte were wel ordeyned. By the counseyl of
the valyaunt bisshop of puy, and by the prelates that were in the
hoost was acorded by them alle, that the chirches of the toun were
8 entirely made clene, And ordeyned to doo the seruyse of oure lord
God. And specially the chyef cathedrale chirche / whiche is
founde in thonour of seynt Peter. They establyshed therein
clerkes and curates that shold serue in the chirche. And other to
12 gouerne and kepe the holy places clene / ffor the false and vntrew
sarasyus¹ had defowled them. They had sette in the chirches
somme theyr kyen. Oxen and sheep. And other theyr horses and
asses / The comyn wymmen and euylle knaues had made theyr
16 ordure and fylth in them that it was pyte to see / And also they
defowled thymages of Ihesu. Crist, of our lady, ²and of other
sayntes with fylth, myre and ordure / And lyke as they had ben a
lyue, they had drawe them and cut of theyr noses / and pycked
20 out theyr eyen / The barons and alle the pylgryms acorde that
there shold be ordeyned and establyssyd rentes to the clerkes
that shold serue in the chirches. there was offerd gold & syluer
ynowgh for to make crosses & chalyces. And also clothes of
24 sylk for to make agayn vestementes for men of the chirche, and
aournementes⁴ for aulters. The patriarke of the toun whiche was
a greek, named Iohan / they ordeyned and sette hym agayn in his
place with moche more grete honour and solempnyte / The turkes
28 had caste and put hym oute⁵ with grete shame, and had don to
hym many euyllis for the fayth of our sauour Ihesu Criste that
he helde in the Cytees beyng aboute Anthyoche / Oure men sette
bisshoppes in the cytees where as none were at that tyme, But in
32 Anthyoche where as they fonde one / they sette none other til
afterward that the good man apperceyued that he lytil prouffyted
there. by cause the latyns vnderstode no grekysshe language, And
lefte his dygnyte / and wente in to constantynoble, with his good
36 wyll without any forse or constraynt / Thenne assembled the men
of the chirche. And they chose and elected for to be patriarke the

The churches
of Antioch
were cleaned,
and put in
order for
the Lord's
service.

The Sarceus
had greatly
defiled them.

[² If. 98, bk.]

Rentes and
incomes were
established
for the
priests in
the churches.

The Greek
patriarch
John was
reinstated,

but after-
wards he
resigned his
position.

¹ *Orig.* sarasyus.

³ *Orig.* aud.

⁴ *Fr.* aournements, ornaments, decorations.

⁵ *Orig.* onte.

Bernard,
Bishop of
Tarsus, was
put in his
place.

bisshop of Tarse, whiche was named bernard, born at valence. He was comen with the good bysshop of puy / And he had made hym his chappellayn. he was made patriarke / The Seygnorye of the Cyte graunted alle the barons to buymont, lyke as they had promysed and couenaunted, sauf the Erle of tholouse, whiche helde the yate of the brydge / & ¹I wote not how many dayes he had garnysshed it. And in no wyse wold gyue it ouer¹ / But sayde that it was his parte. And by cause that Buymont to fore was called prynce of the peple of his contre. Therfor that name abode to hym and to alle the lordes after hym of the Cyte / and ben always called Prynces of Anthyoche.

Bohemond
was given the
seignory of
the city, and
called Prince
of Antioch.

How our peple sente ambassadours to themperour of 12
Constantinople for to somone hym to come and
socoure them as he had promysed.

Capitulo C/xlv^o

The barons
sent ambassa-
dours to the
Emperor of
Constanti-
nople,

He tydynges were thus ordeyned in the cyte as I haue deuysed 16
t to you / Thenne was the counseyl taken emong the barons that
they shold sende to themperour² of constantinoble for to
somone hym by his fayth, that acordyng to the couenauntes
that he had made to them that he shold not tarye, but come in his 20
propre persone for to helpe them, & specially³ at the siege of Iheru-
salem to whiche they entended for to goo / ⁴yf he wold not /
thenne knewe they that he wold not forthon holde his couenauntes⁵
that were made with hym⁴ / ne kepe them. And for to doo this 24
message they chaas huon le mayne, broder to kyng phelip of
ffraunce, and bawdwyn, therle of henawd. Thyse two departed fro
thoost for to goo vnto Constantinoble. But in the waye certayn
turkes assaylled them / in which medle was lost therle bawdwyn, 28
in suche wyse that neuer after were tydynges her of hym. Somme
sayde that he was slayn there / And other sayde that he was taken

[³ leaf 99]

to summon
him to fulfil
his promise.

Hugh the
Great and
Baldwin of
Hainault
were sent on
this embassy.

¹⁻¹ Fr. *et ne scay quantes tours que illecques avoit garnis, que il ne vout pas rendre*, and I do not know how many towers he had fortified here and that he would not give up. Caxton evidently read *jours* (days) instead of *tours* (towers.) ² *Orig.* themperonr.

⁴⁻⁴ Caxton has entirely misunderstood his French. *Se il ne vouloit faire, bien sceust il que ilz ne lui vouloient des lors en avant, estre tenus de nulle couvenance*, viz. if he would not do it, he might understand that from this time on, they would not consider themselves bound by any agreement that had been made with him. ⁵ *Orig.* conenauntes.

and ladde in to ferre countrees. But the trouthe of hym was neuer¹
 knowen / huon le mayne escaped alle hool with out hurt, and cam
 vnto constantinoble to themperour, but there he empeyred² moche
 4 his renomme / ffor he that was of so hye lygnage, And alway had
 ben in thoost / large / wyse, noble, and a moche valyaunt knyght /
 had³ thenne no regarde to them that sent hym / ne wolde not
 retourne to them agayn, but departed⁴ fro themperour and⁵ went
 8 strayte in to fraunce / hit was a gretter blame in hym than in a
 lasse man / whyles the pylgryms soiourned³ in Anthyoche a mor-
 talyte and deth sourded⁴ and roos emong them so grete, that ther
 was no day but there were / xxx. or / xl / biers in the chirches /
 12 It was so grete that euery man awayted presently the deth, there
 was none that supposed⁴ to haue escaped⁴ / Thenne happed a grete
 dommage in thooste, ffor the valyaunt man of grete trouthe and⁵ of
 hye counseyl deyde that tyme / Aymart the bisshop of puy. ffor his
 16 deth was grete sorowe thenne thurgh the toun. he was entered and
 honorably buryed⁴ in the chirche of seynt peter / where as the
 spere that opened⁴ the syde of oure lord was founden / he was
 moche bewaylled as the fader of thoost. After deyde a right
 20 valyaunt knyght, a trew wyseman and of grete courage, henry
 dasque, in the castel of torbesel / where he soiourned, and there he
 deyde and⁵ was buryed. In the same place / reynard de mollac,⁵ a
 good knyght and⁵ of hye lygnage, deyde in Anthyoche; he was
 24 buryed⁴ in the porche of seynt peter. Alle the wymmen that were
 in the toun deyed by this pestylence sauf a fewe / in such wyse
 that of this lytil peple deyde in a lytil whyle in this toun L. M.
 men and wymmen. The ocasion of this mortalyte was many tymes
 28 demaunded⁴ of the fisiciens & wyse clerkes. The somme sayde that
 thayer was corromped / The other sayde that the peple had⁴ had⁴
 ouer longe moche anguyssh of hongre & of thurst / And whan they
 cam therto & plente of vyttalles / they toke therof ouer outrage-
 32 ously / By whiche⁶ they ranne in a grete Infirmyte and⁵ sekenes. [° lf. 99, bk.]
 This shewde they euydently by them that ete but lytil and by
 mesure / ffor they that so dyde cam lyghtly to conualence and
 helthe.

¹ *Orig.* ueuer. ² Fr. *empira*, impaired, damaged.³ *Orig.* soionrned. ⁴ *Orig.* buryed.⁵ Fr. *Renart de Mellac*. Lat. *Reinardus de Amesbach*.

How the pylgryms of thoost desired to goo vnto
Iherusalem for to eschewe the mortalite, & tac-
complisshe their vowe / ca^o. Cxlvj^o.

The pilgrims
beg to go on
to Jerusalem. t

He pylgryms for teschewe the mortalyte of the toun. & also 4
for taccomplysse their pilgremage, began to crye for to goo
to Iherusalem. ffor therfor were they departed out of theyr
countrees / They moche prayd the barons that they wold make
them redy. and dylgently lede and conduyte them theder / The 8

The barons
call a council
to discuss the
matter.

barons that myght not be in reste for theyr requestes / assembled
and had counseyl on this mater. Somme sayde. that it were good
that they shold anon go forth toward the holy Cyte / by cause the
comyn peple desyred it / And also that euery man was bounden by 12
his vowe so to doo / The other sayde that it was not tyme for to
goo forth, ffor the brennyng hete was / ouer grete. and the drought
shold cause that they shold lacke water. The peple shold not
fynde whete / the horses shold lacke pastures. But counseyll to 16

They decide
to wait until
Michaelmas.

tarye and delaye this passage tyl mychelmasse: thenne shold the
tyme be more attempered and moderat. And duryng the mene
whyle / men myght do reste theyr horses, and gete newe for them
that had none and had nede of somme / and also men myght 20
refresshe them self whiche were very and seke. To this laste
counseyll acorded they alle / And¹ therfor it was late or they
departed. Thenne deuysed the barons that they wold remeue for
thynfyrmyte of the place / & to goo there, as they myght haue 24

Bohemond
ravages the
land of
Cilicia, and
takes four
cities.

vytailles better chepe, Buymont descended in to the londe of
Cylyce. There toke he tarse / Adane, Mamstre, Aunaure. Thyse
four cytees a fore sayd he garnysshed well with his men, And
helde entierly alle the countree aboute. The other wente ferther 28
in the countree, and ladde theder theyr horses for to sojourne. there
were many knyghtes / and men a fote that passed the Ryuer of
Eufrates for to goo forth at al auenture thurgh the countrees / tyl
they come to bawdwyn, broder of duc Godeffroye to Rages / whiche 32
receyued them gladly / And gaf them vytaylles, and made them
good chere as long as they were there / And atte departyng he gaf
to them fayre and good yeftes. It was not longe after that it
happed that one Rodahan, the lord of halappe, had debate and 36
warne ayenst a baron of his, whiche was Castelayn of a castel named
Hasart. And² ye shal vnderstande for certayn that there was

Some of the
knights visit
Baldwin at
Rages.

[* leaf 100]

¹ Fr. *pour ce fut tardé le partement.*

founden first the playe of dyse(31), and fro thens it cam, and it is
 named so. This grete man of halappe assembled his peple. And Rodohan,
 assyged this castel with alle his power / The lord that was within lord of
Halappe,
besieges
Hasart.
 4 sawe wel that he myght not holde it ayenst his lord / And he had
 no turkes for to socoure hym. ne helpe hym / Therfor he spak to on
 his frende, a crysten man. which was pryue with hym, and sente to
 duc¹ godefroy many grete yestes. And requyred and prayd hym The lord of
Hasart sent
to Godfrey
for aid.
 8 moche affectuously that he wold socoure hym in his nede / ffor he
 had desire to be his / and wold be bounden to hym to doo hym
 grete playsys and seruyes. And sente to hym his sone in hostage
 for surete / The valyaunt duc, that had a softe herte and debonayr,
 12 receyued the loue and thalyaunce of the lord of hasart. he thought
 wel that it was not ayenst the wyll of our lord for to afeblysshe
 one of his enemyes for² another. Thenne sente he to his brother
 Bawdwyn to Rages for to sende hym peple ynowe / ffor his purpos
 16 & wyll was to reyse the siege to fore this castel for to socoure his
 frende / Rodahan had holden .vij / dayes longe siege to fore this
 castel. The Duc godefroy cam by grete iourneyes / the messagers Godfrey sent
messages
to him by
carrier doves,
to the effect
that he would
soon be there.
 of the lord of the castel were with hym / ffor they myght not goo
 20 in to the castel to their lord / ffor it was besieged round about.
 therfor they toke two douues or culuers / which they had taken &
 brought with them for to doo this / that is to saye, they toke
 lettres and wrote theryn alle theyr entent. And bonde thoo lettres
 24 to the tayles of the douues, and lete them fle / And the douues
 flewe and cam strayt to hasart, fro whens they were, & had ben
 there nourished / they that awayted on them toke them / the lord
 toke the lettres. and fonde therin how he had alyaunce of the duc /
 28 his loue and grace. And how he cam for to socoure hym with grete
 strengthe. he had thenne grete loye / and toke to hym grete
 hardynesse in suche wyse that he hym self yssued out of the yates The besieged
took heart,
and sallied
out to attack
the besiegers.
 with his men largely / And assaylled them of the siege vygorously /
 32 whom he had sore doubted not long byfore.

The dylygence that duc godeffroy made for to socoure
 a turke, to whom he had promysed / And how
 he reysed the siege, beyng to fore his castell.

¹ *Orig. dnc.*² *Fr. par l'autre, i. e. by another.*

n Ow was the duc Godeffroy approached when his brother cam
with .iii/ M horsmen, noble, valyaunt and hardy men, &
[¹ If. 100, bk.] right wel armed. They were but on iourneye fro the castel /
Baldwin agreed to help his brother in this enterprise.
Therle Bawdwyn acorded wel to thenterprise of the duc his broder / 4
but he sayd wel that Rodohan the lord of halappe had moche grete
peple, And that he knewe wel for certayn / Therefore he counseyllēd
hym that he shold sende for the other barons that were abyden in
Anthyoche. and praye them as his frendes that they wold adresse 8
them taccomplisse this that he had enterprysed / Trouth it was
that he had moche prayd buymont and therle of tholouse to fore er
he departed, but they had a lytil enuye, by cause the turke had
more requyred the duc than any of them. but now whan he had 12
sente for them, them thought² that they myght not goodly abyde
behynde. And ordeyned moche dilygently theyr goyng forth / And
wente so ferre that they ouertoke hym / whan they were alle to
gydre / they were wel .xxx/ M. men of armes. Rodahan had his 16
espyes, by whome he knewe certaynly that thyse men cam vpon
hym. he doubtēd them moche, & he had wel .xl/ M men. but yet
he durst not abide them / but departed fro the siege / And returned
to halappe / The duc knewe nothyng that the siege was departed / 20
but wente strayt toward hasart. There were ynowe in Anthyoche
of knyghtes, gentilmen, & other whiche knewe that the valyaunt
duc had to doo with men. and departed fro thens, and³ wente
toward hym for to helpe hym. 24

When Rodohan heard of this he gave up the sieze, and returned to Halappe.

Of somme pylgryms goyng fro Anthyoche toward
godeffroy, were disconfyted by the turkes / &
rescowed by the duc. ca^o: C/xlviiij

Some Turkes in ambush attacked the Crusaders on the way to Hasart, and killed many.

a Grete quantite of turkes were embusshed besyde the waye 28
where by they shold passe, for to awayte them. whan our
peple approached, as they that toke none hede / the turkes sprang
on them sodanly, whiche were many moo than our men were.
Somme they slewe / and many moo toke prysonners, and bonde 32
them, and returned to theyr retrayte. The tydynges cam to the
duc and to the hoost, which were out of their wytte for sorow that
they had. Theñne returned they hastely for to siewe the male-
factours. the peple of the cowntre told them which way they were 36
goon / & addressyd them toward these turkes / whan they had

² *Orig.* thought.

³ *Orig.* and.

ouertaken and approuched them, they ran on them with grete herte, and slewe them som of them. And somme they toke prysonners. fewe or none escaped / & ¹delyuerd them that were taken prysoners / the Cristen men whom they had taken. Rodahan was moche endommaged / ffor they were wel .x. M/ turkes of the best and chosen men / whan oure men had don this they toke agayn the waye toward hasart. whan they approuched, the lord of the toun yssued out with thre honderd men on horsbak, And there as he founde² the duc / he descended to therthe, and kneled to fore hym, and thanked hym moche / And after alle the other that were there with hym, for the socours that they had don to hym in this nedc.

12 Thenne swar he to fore them alle / that to thyse barons and to the other Cristen men he shold be euermore trewe and good frende, In suche wyse that he wold to his power purchace to them the best that he coude, and warne them of theyr harme. he lodged

16 them moch wel and honorably, and made to them grete presentes. On the morn therle bawdwyn returned vnto Rages / And that other hoost helde theyr waye vnto Anthyoche /

The Crusaders in return attacked the Turks, and avenged their companions. [leaf 101]

The lord of Hasart was very grateful to the Christians, and swore ever to be their true friend.

How the Duc alway enforced hym to augmente Cristiente, And of somme fortresses by hym beten and destroyed. ca° Cxlix°

He Duc Godeffroy knewe well that the pestylence and mortalyte endured yet in Anthyoche / and his broder had moche prayd hym that he wold come and sojourne in his londe vnto August, that the tyme shold be better attempered. he toke with hym a lytil companye of them that were moost suffrable, and cam to torbosel / and to two other castellys / That one named hatap /

28 And that other Rauendel. Of thyse lande dyde he entierly his wyll. his brother visyted and sawe hym ofte whyles he abode there / The peple of the countre, and specially men of Relygyon, complayned moche of two hermyens that were bretheren, that one was named Pancrace, and that other conasylls. They had a fortresse in that contre. & were grete & noble men there. But they had no trouthe in them; they receyued the Robbour and theuys that pylled and defowled the holy places / the chirches. And dyde

36 moch harme to alle maner of peple. they were enhaunced in so moch pryde, that they toke the presente of the pauyllon that

Godfrey went to Torbosel and Hatap and Raven-dal.

The people of the country complained much of two Armenian brothers.

² *Orig. fomme.*

bawdwyn had sente to his brother to the siege of Anthyoche, And dyde it to be presented to Buymont in theyr name. whan the Duc herde thyse complayutes / he sente .L/ of his men of Armes, and the people of his countre / And dyde doo take the fortresses of 4
 thyse ¹two hermyens. And bete and destroyed them to therthe / whyles that the valyaunt duc soiourned in thyse partyes / Many of the peple of the hoost wente to therle bawdwyn to Rages, ffor he dyde them moche good, and refresshyd them wel / and largely 8
 departed of his good to them. The way was thenne alle sure and good, Syth that the castel of hasart was alyed entierly with our peple, as ye haue herd.

The Duke sent fifty men to take the fortresses of these Armenians. [1 ff. 101, bk.]

Many of the Christians visited Baldwin at Rages at this time.

How the knyghtes of Rages wolde haue betrayed 12
 Bawdwyn theyr lord, And how he was therof
 aduertysed. ca. C.L

O moche peple of Cristen men cam to Rages that it desplesyd moche to the Cytezeyns of the toun / And thermyens and 16
 latyns discorded in many thynges, ffor withoute faylle oure men wold haue the seygnorye. They dyde many ennoyes and vylonyes to theyr hostes within their howses. The Erle hym self, by cause he had so grete plente of men of hys owne countre, he calleth the 20
 fewer and lasse to counseyll of the noble men of the Cyte / By whos helpe he was comen to his hyennesse and noble lordship. They had therof moch grete desdayne within theyr hertes, And repented them² of that they had chosen hym & sette hym to be 24
 their lord ouer them / ffor they doubted that therle, whiche was so lyberall as he that gaf to euery man / shold on a day take all that they had. Therfor they sente to the admyrals of the turkes, that 28
 were theyr neyghbours, that they wold purchasse gladly by theyr helpe / how therle Bawdwyn shold be slayn, or atte leste put oute and chasset away fro the Cyte, in suche wyse that he shold neuer 32
 retorne. The turkmans acorded wel to this werk. This mater was so ferforth that they of Rages toke alle theyr goodes pryuely. And sette it in the howses of theyr acqueynted neyghbours in Cytees and castellys ther about. whyles they spak and aduysed of this 36
 treyson / A frende of therle Bawdwyn cam to hym and recounted this fayt al a longe / he merueylled moch therof / And dyde enquyre of this thyng. And founde that it was soo / He knewe wel

The people of Rages were much displeasid at these visita.

They decided to kill Baldwin.

A friend, however, revealed the plot to him.

² *Orig.* them.

them that had ordeyned this trayson. And by whom it shold be doo. And secreteley he sende his men, and toke the Capytayns of this falsenes: he put out theyr eyen of theyr heedes. Other that had not so moche trespaced, he chassed them out of the toun, And toke alle that they had. Somme there were that he lete dwelle styll in the Cyte, but he toke their good as moche as he myght gete / he had wel by thocasion of this murder that thyse traytres deuysed .xx/M/ besautes, But he departed alle to the pylgryms, that had holpen hym to take the castellys and fortresses, and sonime Cytees about Rages / He was moche dradde, and doubte moche of his neyghbours, in suche wyse that none of them durste² enterprise ony debate ayenst hym / The grete and hye men of the contre wold gladly haue purchaced the moyens and maners, for to be deluyerd of hym, yf they had myght /

Baldwin took vigorous action in the matter, by killing or driving away the ring-leaders. [1 leaf 102]

After this he was greatly feared by everybody.

How therle Bawdwyn was in daunger of deth by the treson of a turk named Balac / Capitulo C.Lj:

i N this Countre was a grete and an hye man, a turk, & was named Balac. he was acqueynted and moche pryue with therle bawdwyn / he was somtyme lord of the Cyte of Sorarge, to fore that our peple cam in to that countre. This turke apperceyued³ that therle bawdwyn sayde [not] to hym alle his counseyll and secrete, as he was wonte, ne shewde hym so good chere. On a daye he cam to hym / And shewde hym by fayr langage / that he shold come to a fortresse of his. whiche he wold gyue to hym and deluyer, by cause he had no more. and also he wold haue nomoo, as he saide, ffor his loue shold suffyse hym. And he wold sende his wyf & his childeren in to rages for to dwell there vnder hym. by cause as he sayde / that the turkes his neyghbours, & specially they of his lygnage, hated hym moche, & purchassed alle the harme they myght, for the grete acqueyntaunce that he had with the Cristen men. The Erle thought nothyng but alle wel / And sayd that he wold goo at his requeste to this fortresse at the day appointed bytwene them bothe / Therle cam theder with an hunderd horsmen / Balac wente to fore, and as a fals traytre had hye an hunderd of his men, well armed, within the fortresse / whan they were arryued

Balac was lord of Sorarge.

He invited Baldwin to visit him at one of his fortresses.

Baldwin accepted, and went on the day appointed with one hundred horsemen.

² *Orig. durste.*

³ Fr. "*le conte Baudoin ne lui disoit mais tant de son conseil.*" Caxton has either exactly reversed the sense of his Fr. original, or else there is an accidental omission of the necessary "not."

to fore the fortresse, Balac prayd therle / that he wold come vp on
 hye and see the place how stronge it was, And that he shold
 brynge but fewe men with hym, ffor he sayd he had certayn
 thynges of which¹ he myght take harme / yf they alle entred / The 4
 good Erle wold haue doon soo, but he had in his company a
 valyaunt knyght, wel aduysed and a wise man / whiche aduertysed²
 his felaws other knyghtes how it was grete perylle and daunger so
 to lete hym goo. And they wold not suffre hym, but retheyned³ 8
 hym by force / ffor they doubtet moche the malyce of this man /
 in suche wyse that in theyr hertes they had suspicion of treson /
 The Erle abode by their counseyl / & sente vp .xij. of his men wel
 armed in to the toure for to see yf ther were ony thyng to doute / 12
 he helde hym among his men. they that wente vp anon apper-
 ceuyed wel the trayson, ffor the Turkes sprange oute of theyr
 places where they were hyd. And toke thise .xij. men by force, and
 desarmed them, and retheyned them bounden handes and feet. whan 16
 the erle knewe this, he was moche sorouful for his men that he had
 thus lost. Thenne he drewe hym forth and spak to balac / And
 moche prayd hym, and coniured hym by the feaulte and oth that
 he had made to hym, that he wold yelde his men to hym / or atte 20
 leste sette them at rawnson / and he wold gyue for them as moche
 as he wold haue.⁴ Balac answerd to hym, that he trauaylled for
 nought / ffor he shold neuer haue none of them / But yf he wold
 gyue to hym the Cyte of Sororge, whiche had ben his to fore. 24
 Therle sawe that this fortresse was not lightly to be goten, ffor it
 was ouer stronge, and stode in a strange place, and rychely
 garnysshyd / And retorned to rages moche anguysshous of the
 paryll that he had be in, whan he wold by thatycement of this 28
 felon turk haue goon vp in to the tour, And sorouful he was for
 them that were taken. he had delyuerd the Cyte of Sororge to
 kepe vnto a moche wise, valyaunt and good knyght, named Foubert
 de chartres / this man kept hit with an /C men of Armes, valyaunt 32
 men / whan he herd saye that his lorke had ben thus almost be
 bytrayed / and how he had lost .xij. men / he was sory, and
 thought hou he⁵ myght helpe them ayenst this fals turk, that had
 don this feet.⁵ It was not longe after that in a nyght he sette a 36

But when he arrived Balac invited him to enter with only a few of his men.

[¶ If. 102, bk.]

Baldwin, suspecting treachery, sent up twelve men first.

The Turks sprang on them, and made them captives.

Baldwin begged Balac to allow him to ransom his men, but in vain.

He returned sorrowful to Rages.

¹ Fr. "qu'ilz eussent peu donnaigier." ² Orig. aduertysed. ⁴ Orig. hane.

⁵⁻⁵ Fr. "lui aidier contre cellui desloyal Turc qui ce lui avoit fait," viz. help him against this false Turk who has done this to him. Caxton has mistaken the past participle *fait* for the substantive *fait*.

busshement nygh vnto this fortresse, a part of his men. and in the
 mornynge he with a fewe of his companye cam to fore this toure,
 and toke the proye of beestes. They that were on hye on the
 4 batayllement sawe that they were but a fewe / And told it to balak
 and to the other men that were in the fortresse / They toke their
 horses hastely, and folowed them / for to rescowe that whiche they
 droof away / In suche wyse they exployted that they cam vpon
 8 thembusshement / They sprange sodainly oute and closed them in /
 Foubert returned vpon them, And slewe I wote not how many, but
 .vj/ he toke a lyue / ffor whom he had incontinent .vj/ of our men, of
 them that he helde in his fortresse / It was not longe aftir that four
 12 of the other escaped out of the fortresse and brake theyr prison,
 whyles theyr kepars slepte. whan balac sawe / that ther were
¹nomoo but two, he dyde² do smyte of theyr heddes. ffor than
 forth on therle bawdwyn, that had acqueyntance to dyuerse admyrals
 16 aboute hym, wold neuer after acqueynte³ hym more ne truste ony
 turk / But eschewed theyr companies and theyr Amytee. And
 that he shewde wel sone after, ffor ther was an hye and grete man,
 a turk, in that contre, named Balduc / of whom I haue spoken to
 20 fore / whiche sold this Auncyen Cyte, named Samoloc,⁴ vnto
 bawdwyn / And this turk had encouenaunted and promysed that
 he shold brynge his wyf and childeren within Rages / but he
 sought⁵ fals occasions for to delaye this thyng / On a day he cam
 24 to bawdwyn, as he was accustomed to doo, And Bawdwyn demaunded
 hym why he dyde not that he had couenaunted and promysed ; he
 began to excuse hym by thynges that were not trewe. The Erle
 toke hym, and Incontinent dyde do smyte of his heed.

Balak came
out to attack
them.

Foubert took
six of the
Turks, whom
he exchanged
for six of our
men.

[¹ leaf 103]

From this
time on Bald-
win had no
more confi-
dence in the
Turks.

28 How therle of tholouse toke the cyte of Albane. And
there constituted a bisshop /. capitulo CLij°

t He Duc Godeffroy soiojourned thus as I haue sayd in the land
 of torbesel. Therle of tholouse assembled his peple / and toke
 32 grete plente of pour pilgrymys that were there ydle and dyde nought /
 he wente to a Cyte wel garnysshyd named albane / ij iourneys fro
 Anthyoche ; he assyged it / And so constreyned them within that
 they yelded the toun to hym, and he entred therin and helde it /
 36 And by the moyen therof he had alle the countre about. he thanked

The Earl of
Toulouse
besieged Al-
bane, until it
surrendered
to him.

² *Orig.* dype.

³ *Orig.* acqueynte.

⁴ Lat. *Samosatum*.

⁵ *Orig.* songht.

He gave half
of this city
to Peter of
Narbonne.

Sansadol now
ransoms his
children, and
his brother's
wife.

Many people
arrived from
Germany,
[2 If. 103, bk.]
almost all
of whom died
of the pesti-
lence.

oure lord humbly of thonour that he had gyuen to hym. Thenne
chasse he a bisshop in the toun, a good wyseman, that was named
Peter, and born in nerbonne. And he gaf to hym entierly half
this Cyte. After this he cam in to Anthioche, and was there 4
sacred by the patriarke bernard. And gaf to hym his entememet¹
and made hym Archibisshop. In the company of therle of tholouse
was a noble knyght and valyaunt named guyllamme. This man
whan Anthyoche was taken toke by aduenture the wyf of Ancean, 8
lord of the toun / and two of his neuwes sones of his broder,
named sansadol, and helde them yet prysoners / But this sansadol
gaf to hym for them grete good and rychesse, wherfor he delyuerd
them, bothe the lady and childeren. In this sayson cam grete plente 12
of people out of Duchelande, And arryued atte port seynt Symeon,
And soiournd within Anthyoche / but the mortalyte endured ²yet
in suche wyse that they deyde almost alle. ther escaped but few
but that they were alle deed in short tyme, ffor this pestylence con- 16
tinued thre monethes hool vnto thentree of wynter / There were
deed of knyghtes only .V.C. of the mene peple, noman knewe the
nombre.

How our peple retorned in to Anthyoche, and toke 20
counseyl for to goo to Iherusalem, and of this
that foloweth. ca° Cliij°

t He fyrst day of Nouembre / the barons that were departed for
the pestelence were alle retourned in to Anthyoche, lyke as 24
they had promysed / Theyr counseyl³ and delyberacion was that
they shold goo and assiege the cyte of mazran,⁴ whiche was stronge
and wel garnysshid / ffor Albare that they had taken, it was not
but .viij. myle / Noman myght holde lenger theyr comyn peple. all 28
were desirous to goo to Iherusalem / Atte daye named they were
alle redy. Therle of tholouse / the duc godeffroye, Eustace his
broder, Therle of fflaundres, The Duc of Normandye. And Tancre
cam to the cyte of marran and assieged it / They of the toun were 32
moch rych / and ful of grete pryde / And specially by cause that
the same yere at assemblee of them was a scarmoche ayenst oure
men. of whome they toke somme, and somme slewe in suche wyse
that they had the better. ffor that cause they preyed the lasse our 36

The common
soldiers grew
very im-
patient to go
to Jerusalem.

Taucer be-
sieged Mar-
ran,

¹ Fr. *interinemet*. ² *qui lui dona paulc*. Lat. "Suscepto ab eodem
palli genio factus archiepiscopus." ³ *Orig. connsyl*. ⁴ Fr. *Marran*.

- pylgrims, They blamed and Iniured our barons, And despyted them
 and alle thoost / They beyng on the walles / vpon the hye towres
 they sette vp crosses and spytte on them in despyt of our fayth.
- 4 and made other shameful thynges for to augre with alle oure peple /
 The barons were moche wroth / And dyde do crye do assault, &
 assailed the toun asprely in suche wyse that yf they had had
 laddres they wolde haue entred in to the Cyte by force / the / ij.
- 8 daye after that they cam theder. The thyrde day cam Buymont /
 whiche brought men with hym largely, And lodged where as the
 Cyte was not assieged. Thenne had our men grete despyte of this
 that they dyde nothyng / And hastely dyde do make engyns and
- 12 reysed them castellys,¹ helfroyes, and slynges to caste stones, and
 fylled the dyches for to goo and vnder myne the walles. they within
 deffended them moche wel / And threwe vpon them grete stones,
 Fyre, brent / lyme, Oyle boyllyng, and shotte at them with arba-
- 16 lasters and bowe turquoys arowes passyng thycke / but god be
 thanked they hurted ²but fewe of oure men. they within began
 moche to be mery / Oure men apperceyued that. And theyr
- 20 the laddres ayenst the walles / & wente vp dylygently / Emong alle
 other ther was a noble & valyaunt man, & was of limosyn, named
 geffrey de tours ; he ³mayntened the fyrst tyme merueyllously well /
 Other folowed hym. ther were ynowe that entred in to the toures /
- 24 they had taken the Cyte yf the nyght had not come on and
 destroubled them, therefore they left of til on the morn, ffor that
 assault had endured fro the sonne rysyng tyl that tyme / they kept
 wel the gates that thay of the toun shold not yssue and made good
- 28 watche in thooste. But the mene peple sawe that none shewde
 hym vpon the walles / And entred in to the toun, And fonde that
 it was all voyde of peple / they toke alle that they wolde and had
 nede of, as they that longe had saffred famyne and grete pouerte.
- 32 Alle thay of the Cyte were entred in to longe caues and depe, and
 supposed to haue saued and kept them there. On the morn the
 barons sawe that the cyte was taken, And entred in, but they
 founde but lytil gayne, ffor the comyn peple had takyn suche as
- 36 they founde / they knewe wel that the turkes of the toun were hyd
 vnder the erthe ; they sette fyre in the mowthes of⁴ alle the caues /
 and sente in to it so moche smoke / that by force they muste come

whose people
insulted our
men from the
walls.

The barons
were much
wroth.

Bohemond
arrived, and

the siege was
carried on
most vigor-
ously.

[* leaf 104]

When the
pilgrims
entered the
town they
found that
the people
had fled to
caves.

They set fire
to the mouths
of these caves.

¹ Fr. *berfroiz*, movable tower of wood.

² Fr. *sc contint*, conducted himself.

⁴ *Orig. cf.*

Many they
slew, and the
rest were
taken prison-
ers.

out. Oure men slewe ynough of them. And the remenaunt they
toke prysonners. there deyde of sekenesse the good man holy and
relygyous, whiche moche louyd and dredde our lord god, Guyl-
laumme the bisshop of Orenge / whan the duc had abyden there 4
.xv dayes with the other he departed with therle of flaundes and
cam in to Anthyoche, where they had to do /

How the duc Godeffroy wold goo to rages to vysyte
his brother er he began his way to Iherusalem / 8
And of somme of his aduentures / ca° CLiiij.

Godfrey ad-
monished the
barons to
start for Je-
rusalem.

He himself
went to Rages
to visit Bald-
win.

[³ ff. 104, bk.]

On the way
home he had
a fierce skir-
mish with
some Turke,

in which he
was victori-
ous.

g Odeffroy the valyaunt duc of Loreyne sawe how the men a
fote made them redy for taccomplysshe theyr vowe and goo
toward Iherusalem, and moche requyre^d 1 and admonest^d the 12
grete lordes to the same / But the valyaunt duc would see and
vysyte his brother to fore that he shold separate fro this cowntre /
And toke his pryue² companye, and wente to Rages. whan he had
seen his broder, and doo suche thynges as it plesyth hym / he wold 16
retorne to ³Anthyoche to the other barons and other pylgrims that
abode there for hym. whan he was approuched, that he had but six
or seuen myle to ryde / they founde in theyr waye a moche fayre
place for to dyne and ete in by a fayre welle, moche delectable and 20
ful of grete herbes and grasse / Alle they acorded gladly for to dyne
in this fayre place. whyles they made redy theyr dyner be ye
certayn that oute of moche reed^d whiche was nyghe a mareys by
arros certayn Turkes wel armed. whan the noble Duc and the 24
other barons sawe them come / they toke theyr Armes hastely as
they myght / And toke theyr horses and ran vpon them vygor-
ously. And there was the skarmoche grete & fiers. The duc dyde
moche wel and valyauntly, ther were many turkes slayn / And the 28
remenaunt fledde. Our men lost there nothyng, But cam with
moche grete ioye vnto Anthyoche /

How after that the cyte of Albare was conquerd, a
grete debate arose bytwene⁴ therle of tholouse 32
and buymont. ca° CLv.

Bohemoud
and the Earl
of Toulouse

o F this noble Cyte of Albare which was taken as I haue sayd
to fore, aros a grete debate bytwene buymont and the erle of

¹ *Orig.* requyre^d.

² *Orig.* pryne.

⁴ *Orig.* btywene.

tholouse, ffor therle wold haue alle albare. buymont sayde he wold had a quarrel
 not gye away his part / yf he yelded not and gaf ouer certeyn over the city
 towres that he held in Anthyoche. And herupon buymont departed, of Albare.

4 And made the towres to be assayled, that the men of the erles of
 tholouse helde, and toke them by strength and made them to goo
 out that kept them in the name of therle, and fro then forthon he
 helde alle Anthyoche withoute felaw or partener. Therle sawe that

8 Buymont was departed from the Cyte so conquerd / And gaf the Albare was
 toun¹ entierly to the bisshop of Albare, whyles they ordeyned and² finally given
 disposed bytwene hym and the bisshop, how the cyte myght be to the bishop
 mayntened and kept in suche wyse that the turkes shold not of the city.

12 recouer it / The peple a foote began to murmure of this that the The people
 hye & noble men taryed for to take this euyl Cytees, and made still murmur-
 debate and noyse among them for theyr conquest. But the pryncipal ed against
 cause wherfor they departed fro theyr countrees lefte they, as the barons

16 forgetyng¹ and settyng not therby / And as it semed they sette for not ful-
 nothyng by thaccomplysshynge¹ of theyr vowe / Therfor the mene filling their
 peple acorde¹ emonge them self, that as sone as therle of tholouse vows.

20⁵ destroye it alle vnto the erthe, in suche wyse that they wold not [5 leaf 105]
 tarye for hym⁶ fro than forthon. It happed that the barons assem-
 bled at Rouge, a Cyte whiche is half waye bytwene marran and The barons
 Anthyoche. ffor to haue a counseyl there emonge them / yf they assembled to
 24 shold fro thens drawe forth toward to Iherusalem, ffor the mene take counsel
 peple languysshyc¹ moche and hasted for to goo theder. There the as to future
 barons coude not acorde / so that there was no conclusion taken / inuovements,
 whyles that therle of tholouse abode at this parlement, The foote but no de-
 28 men that were lefte at marran, ayenst the wyll and deffence of cision was
 the bisshop / bete down the walles and toures of the Cyte of Marran / reached.
 ffor they wold not for thoccasion of this toun⁷ abide lenger in this
 countre.⁸ when the erle returned; he was moche angry of this /

32 that they had don, but for that he coude not amende it⁹ / he couer¹
 well his courage without forth. The men a foote began alway to
 crye and requyre moche the barons that they wold conduyte them The people
 for taccomplysse theyr pylgremage / or yf they wold not / they grew still
 36 wold chese a knyght and make hym Capytayn ouer them / And more uneasy.

¹ *Orig. tonn.*² *Orig. aud.*³ *Orig. pryucipal.*⁴ *Orig. confonnde.*⁶ *Orig. hyin.*⁷ *Orig. tonn.*⁸ *Orig. conntre.*⁹ *Fr. bien couvrir son courage, par dehors, i. e. he dissimulated perfectly his real feelings.*

They suffered greatly from hunger at this time.

they shold folowe hym vnto the Cyte of Iherusalem / On that other syde was grete scarsete in thoost of vytaylles, in such wyse that the poure peple deyde for honger / Men sayde that many of them ete flesshe of men and other thynges that were not fayr ne good¹, clene / 4 ne honeste for to ete / herof sourded a grete mortalyte / ffor they had holden sieg about this Cyte of Marran with suche mescheyf of famyne that they had lost moche of theyr peple, and not so many by armes, but by mesease that they suffred. Ther deyde a 8 moch noble, valyaunt yonge man, Emorran,¹ sone of huon, Erle of seynt poul of a sekeneesse / of whom was grete dommage, and moch was bewaylled in thoost.

Enjorran, son of Hugh of St. Paul, died.

How atte request of the comyn peple the erle of 12 tholouse ordeyned day for to conduyte them / ca^o. CLvj.

The Earl of Toulouse was much distressed at the condition of things,

o F thyse Inconuenientes that ran in thoost of the pylgryms the vygorous and valyaunt erle of tholouse was in moch grete 16 anguysshe / ffor he wyste not wel what he myght doo. On that one syde he had pyte and grete sorowe of the meseases that he sawe the poure peple suffre / And was moche meuy² by theyr requestes whan they so swetly prayd hym and the other barons to 20 lede them for taccomplysse theyr vowes & pylgremage. On that [2 If. 105, bk.] 2^o other syde he had wel vnderstonden that the barons acorde² not to this that the comyn peple requyred. And therfor he that was of grete courage and valyaunt man, sayde that he wold² no lougre 24 suffre thus the pour peple languysshe ne deye. And ordeyned to them a daye that he wolde departe withoute faylle for to goo strait vnto Iherusalem / And that shold be the / xv / day folowyng, And for talledge the mesease of famyne / he toke with hym a part 28 of his knyghtes and of foote men the strengest and most delyuer, And lefte the remnaunt in the Cyte, and went forth and entred in to the londe of his enemyes and brake vp tounes, stronge howses / & brought grete plente of bestys & other vytaylles, & brought also 32 esclaves men and wymmen. whan he cam to Marran / he departed all the gayn that he had gotten as wel to them that abode as to them that he had with hym / in suche wyse that they all were ryche³ of goodes and of vytaylles / The daye began tapproche that therle 36 had named / The comyn peple cryed fast for the departyng / And sayd alle playnly that he shold haue no lenger respyte of them. he

and fixed a day to depart for Jerusalem.

As the day approached the common people were determined to depart.

¹ Fr. Enjorran.

³ Orig. ryhe.

wist not what to doo / ffor he knewe certaynly that the peple¹ had² The Earl felt that the people were right;
 right. But he had but a lytil company on horsbak, therefore he
 requyred the bissshop of Albare to goo with hym / he graunted³ it
 4 to him gladly. And lefte his londe in the hande of Guyllamme de
 cunylly, valyaunt, wyse, and trewe knyght, And delyuerd to hym
 but xxx horsmen and / xl. men afote. But it was not longe after,
 that the good knyght amended soo that he had xl on horsbak and
 8 lxxx / a foote / whan the day cam that was appoynted⁴, therle put so he burnt Marran to ashes, and started with 10,000 men.
 fyre in the Cyte of marran and brente it alle to ashes. And after
 toke his way. he had⁵ in his companye aboute a .x.M. men, of
 whom there were not but / iij / C. on horsbak. whan he was de-
 12 parted the duc of normaudye & tancere departed⁶ after, & abode for to The Duke of Normandy and Tancere accompanied him.
 goo with hym. Eche of thyse two had⁷ but .xl / men on horsebak
 But⁸ they had moche peple afote with them / In their waye they
 fonde plenty of vytaylles, ffor they passed by Cezaire / by haman,
 16 and by chamele / Of the lordes of thyse townes had they grete They received great gifts from the cities that they passed.
 yeftes gold / syluer and other rychesses, they presented to them :
 Oxen, Kyen, Motons and other vytaylles / They dyle them haue
 resonable cheep of alle thynges / eche of them conduyted them
 20 surely thourgh his countre. And where as they had power / Thoost
 encreced and grewe more and more fro day to day / ffor they founde
 many good passages oueral where they wente, of horses also wherof
 they had grete nede fonde they grete cheep / in such wise that many
 24 ⁹bought fressh horses / And so moche dyde thyse to fore that the [3 leaf 106]
 other barons cam, that dyde so moche that they had in their com-
 panye a / M men wel horsed, they cam thus a ferre fro the see
 syde. But after they acorded¹⁰ that they wold drawe them to the
 28 see syde, for to here more lyghtly¹¹ tydynges of the Barons that were
 abyden in Antlyoche / and for to fynde the better and bye theyr
 necessityes at the shippes that were in the haunenes and portes.

How therle of tholouse auengyd. hym of somme turkes
 32 robbours that robbed his hoost / ca° CLvij°

i N alle the waye syth they departed¹² fro Marran they were wel
 comen in peas and saucte, sauf only of one thyng / that is to
 wete that somtyme turkes theuys cam after thoost and slewe somme
 36 of our peple, and toke the feble and seke that abode behynde the
 other / Therle was moche wroth of this Inconuenyent, therfor he They were harassed by Turkish thieves.

¹ Fr. *avoit droit*, were in the right of it. ² *Orig. But.* ⁴ *Orig. lygtyly.*

The Earl and the bishop of Albare lay in ambush for these men,

and won great spoils from them.

Every one sent them presents,

except the lord of one castle,

which our men attacked and burnt to the ground.

[⁵ If. 106, bk.]

After this they had greater presents, and an easy passage through the whole country.

made the other¹ to goo to fore. And he and the bisshop of Albare reteyned a fewe men wel horsed, embusshed them behynde the hoost for to see yf they wold come that thus endommaged the hoost. whan they had a lital whyle taryed the turkes cam & 4 sprang vpon somme of oure men / whiche al wyllynge made semblaunt that they myght not goo. Therle sawe them / and sprange sodenly on them out of his embusshement / & smote of alle theyr heedes / sauf somme that he ladde with hym. There wan he good² 8 horses and armures many / And after he cam agayn in to thooste with grete ioye / ffro this daye forth they wente thurgh² the londe moche surely without ony lack of vytaylles, ³of Cytees and of castellys on both sydes whan they passed. Ther was no lord, but 12 he sente³ to them grete yeftes, ffro to gete theyr loue, and dyde them haue resonable cheep of vytaylles oueral / Reserved one castel, where the men that were therin trusted ouermoch⁴ in theyr forresse. Therfor they sente to them neuer presente ne message / 16 But descended alle Arme⁵ ayenst oure men for to defende them a passage. But our men, whan they sawe them, assaylled them vygorously, in suche wyse that they were anone disconfyted. There were but fewe but they were alle slayn or taken. whan the barons 20 sawe that they were rebelle ayenst them / anon they wente in to the forresse and toke it alle at the fyrst comyng, smote down the walles vnto therthe, And the howses they brente, after they had ⁵taken out all that they fynde therin. They ledde away horses 24 ynow whiche they founde⁶ in the pastures. among our men were dyuerse messagers of the contre that the grete lordes and men ther aboutes had sente for to see theyr couyne, whiche whan they sawe that oure barons dyde thus⁷ theyr wylle / And that nothyng 28 myght resiste them, they wente to theyr lordes, And told them that they were ouer cruel and fiers peple / aspre and hardy. Thenne shold ye haue seen brought, And presented to oure men grete presentes and honorable, and vytaylles as for nought fro alle 32 partes / In so moche they doubted them / ⁸that they dyde grete cure for tacqueynte them,⁸ and to bryng them in to theyr loue /

¹ *Orig.* othrr.

² *Orig.* thrgh.

³⁻³ *Fr. des cités et des chasteaulx à destre et à senestre, quant ilz passoient n'y eut oncques nul seigneur qu'il envoyast, there was not a single lord of the cities and castles, both on the right and on the left, who, as they passed, did not send them, etc.* ⁴ *Orig.* ouermoch. ⁶ *Orig.* fonude. ⁷ *Orig.* thns.

⁸⁻⁸ *Fr. ilz mettoient grant cure à les acointier, they took great pains to make their acquaintance.*

It was not longe but they passed alle the contre til they cam to the playnes of an Auncyent cyte by the see syde, named archys, they lodged nygh by the toun.

They arrived at Archis.

4 How therle of tholouse approuched with his host vnto archis, And of the situacion of the same.

ca^o. CLviiij^o

- a Rehys¹ is a Cyte of the lande of Fenyce,² and standeth
 8 atte foote of a montayne named³ Lybane, in a tereitorye moche
 stronge / and is a four or .v / myle fro the see / & hath moche
 plenteuous londe aboute it, and delectable of pastures & of waters.
 The scriptures saye / that it was founde³ moche auncyently. For
 12 Noe that was in the arke had .iiij / sones, that one of them was
 named Caym (32) / he had a sone named Canaham / Of hym cam a
 sone that was Arracheus / he founded / this cyte. And after hym this
 cyte was named⁴ Archys. Ther were prissonners of oure men in this
 16 toun. hit was sente worde by the prysonners to therle of tholouse
 that he shold⁵ assiege this cyte, & also to the other barons / ffor
 they shold haue grete good therby. the cite of tript, which was
 moch noble & rych, was but vj myle from thens, there were
 20 also of our peple prysonners / For syth the begynnyng of the
 siege of Anthyoche, and after that it was goten / our peple began
 to renne in the contree nycely & folyly for to feche somme vytaylles
 & other necessitees⁴ that they lacked / they were taken in many
 24 places in such wyse / ther was vnneth cyte ne castel in the contre,
 but ther were therin som of our pylgryms prysoners.⁵ In the cyte
 of trypple were moo than / ij / C. They them self had sente to
 oure men that yf they wolde make semblaunt to conquere⁶ the
 28 countree / The kynge of tripple wold⁶ gyue them grete hauoyr and
 good⁶ for to departe⁷ thens, and shold⁶ delyuer to them alle theyr
 prysonners. It happed thesame to them thus that our peple
 approuched the cyte of archis for to see what semblaunt they wold
 32 make, & also for tabyde the other barons that shortly shold come
 and folowe them /

Archis is an ancient city of Phœnicia,

named after one of the descendants of Noah.

Many Christian prisoners were in this city, also in the neighbouring city of Triple.

[7 leaf 107]

Our men approached to see how they could free their fellow pilgrims.

¹ *Orig.* Rrhys. ² *Fr.* Fenice, Lat. Phœnicia. ³ *Orig.* founded.

⁴ *Orig.* necessitees. ⁵ *Orig.* prysouers. ⁶ *Orig.* couquere.

Of a toun named¹ tortuose, whiche Raymont toke with
a Rowte of pylgryms, And of the departynge of
the other barons fro Anthyoche / Capitulo CLix^o

t Her yssued^t out of our lodgys of oure men / an honderd men on 4
horsbak, and two honder^t a foote / And made theyr Capytayne
Raymont pelet, whiche was a wyseman and a moche valyaunt knyght.
They wente to fore a cyte whiche was named tortuose,² for to see yf
they myght fynde ony auenture for to gete som gayne / They ap- 8
prouched the cyte and began tassayle it vygorously and moche
sharply / They within deffended them, bothe men and wymmen
valiauntly,³ but our men left but lital or nought.³ the nyght cam on
them, And they left thassault for to be more fressh⁴ on the morn / 12
And abode for more companye of thooste that shold^t folowe them /
And to begyn on the morn thassault agayn / They of the toun had
moch grete drede that our men wold assaille them agayn on the morn,
and myght not⁵ resiste them. therfor in the nyght they wente 16
pryuelly out of the toun and wente to the montaines, and caryed
nothyng with them but theyr wyues and childeren. Alle their
other geer they lefte in the toun / Oure men that knewe no thyng
herof aroos erly and began to make redy and encorage eche other to 20
doo wel at thassault. they approched the walles alle armed, and
they herde noman / they entred in to the toun, and opened the
yates in such wyse that alle entred. thenne sawe they that they of
the toun were yssued and goon. they founde the Cyte ful of goodes, 24
in so moche that they were alle ryche, they trussed all / and bare as
moche as they myght in to thoost, & recounted^t theyr aduenture, of
whiche they were alle glad and ioyous, and thanked our lord. whan
the moneth of Marche was come, and that the season was more 28
attemperat, the people that was left in Anthyoche sawe that it
was tyme to departe / they spak to duc godeffroye & to therle of
fflaundres, & prayed^t them moche affectuously that they wold enter-
pryse & conducte them to Ihrlm for tacomplysshe their pilgre- 32
mage / the goyng forth of therle of thoulouse, the duc of normandye /
& Tancre, caused them moche to haue the wyll forth,⁶ for they
were goon to fore, and ledde with them grete nombre of pylgryms /
And they happened wel in the waye, and had therby grete prouffyte 36

Raymond
Pelet assailed
the city of
Tortuose,

which was
vigorously
defended
during the
day:

but at night
the inhabit-
ants left
secretly, and
fled to the
mountains.

Our men
entered the
next day,
and found
great riches.

The pilgrims
in Antioch
start in March
for Jerusa-
lem, led by
Godfrey and
the Earl of
Flanders.

[6 ff. 107, bk.]

¹ Orig. uamed.

² Fr. *Tortouze*.

³⁻³ Fr. "*telement que nos gens ne forfirent rien ou pou.*"

⁴ Orig. *feesh*.

⁵ Orig. *uot*.

- and grete honour. By thyse wordes were the barons gretely stered
and meuyd / They ordeyneð theyr affayres dyligently, and toke alle
their peple, as wel on horsbak as a foote, and wente so fer forth that
4 they cam to the lyche of surrye / They were / xxv. M / men all in They were
25,000 men,
all well
armed.
poyat and armed, eueryche after that he was / The good man and
valyaunt knyght buymont conueyed them theder with his men.
But it was not theyr entente ne wyll that he shold goo ony fertier,
8 ffor the cyte of anthyoche was newly conquerd, and theyr enemyes
were fast by / Therfor it behoued hym not to withdrawe hym ferre
fro it / but therfor he toke good hede continually daye and nyght /
But of his grete courage he had conueyed them theder / And there
12 toke his leue, and wepte moche at departyng. he recomaunded them
to god, & returned agayn to Anthyoche / And the hoost abode there. They wept
much on
parting with
Bohemond.
The lyche is a moche auneyent cyte and noble, & stondesth vpon the
ryuage of the see / That was the only cyte in surye of which them-
16 perour of constantinoble was lord / longe to fore oure men cam
theder was comen guyneuyers, of whom I spak long to fore that
was born at boloyne vpon the see syde. And arryued at tharse /
whyles that bawdwyn, broder of the duc, helde it. he was comen
20 to the lyche with his shippe, and supposed to haue taken the toun
by force / and folysshly he conteyned hym and assaylled it. They
of the toun yssued out lyghtly And toke hym, and yet helde hym
in pryson whan oure¹ barons cam theder. The Duc knewe that he
24 was born in the londe of his fadre / And that he had been in the
companye of therle Bawdwyn his brother. Therfor he demaunded
hym of the grete men of the toun / And prayde them entierly that
they wold delyuere them to hym / They durst not gayne saye hym /
28 but delyuereð hym and his felawship with his shippe. the Duc com-
maundid hym that he shold goo to the see, and alwaye coosteyng
by the hooste. he dyde it gladly / And saylled forth. Guinemers
was here held
in prison ;
Duke Golfrey
demanded his
release,
which was
granted.

How the duc asseged Gybelet, and of a trayson by
32 whiche he lefte the siege / ca. CLx.º

- t He hoost departed fro the lyche / whan oure Barons had
receyued theyr prysonners. They that were late departed ²fro [² leaf 102.]
Clylce, fro Anthyoche, & fro other cytees aboute, were alle comen
36 and arryued theder in suche wyse, that alle wente to gydre by the
see syde vnto a Cyte named Gybelet, whiche was fro the lyche The pilgrims
all go to-
gether to
Gibelet.

¹ *Orig. onre.*

about a / xij. myle / They abode there and assieged the Cyte / A
 baylly of the Calyphe of Egypte ¹helde this Cyte on the see side
 vnder the power of the Calyphe of Egypte¹ / This baylle yssued out
 by sauf conduyt, & spak to duc godefroy, to whom he offred vj. M. 4
 besauntes, and many grete yeftes aboue that for to departe, and
 reyse the siege fro thens. The duc wold in no wyse here thyse
 wordes / but sayde that it were treson and vntrouth, and god for-
 bede that I shold take suche hyre. he thenne departed when he 8
 sawe he myght not make his bargayn with the noble duc. After
 he sente his messagers to therle of tholouse, and offred to hym this
 grete somme of moneye / yf he myght fynde² the moyen to reyse
 the siege fro this toun. It was sayd that he receyued the moneye / 12
 and for to make the barons to departe / he founde a lesynge³ / ffor
 he dyde to be sayd to them, that he was wel acerteyned by mes-
 sagers and lettres / that the Soudan of Perse had so moche / angre
 and desdayne of this that Corbagat his conestable had be discon- 16
 fyted, and so moche peple of his slayn, that he assembled alle his
 power, And cam with grete peple for to fyght, and to destroye them
 alle that he coude fynde of the cristen fayth. Thise tydynges sente
 therle of tholouse by the bissshop of Albare to the duc⁴ a fore sayd- 20
 and to therle of fflaundes, and sente to them his lettres, by whiche
 he prayd them moche swetly and expresly, that they wold leue
 theyr siege and come dyligently to hym, in suche wyse that they
 myght be alle to gydre whan this peple cam. whan the Duc and 24
 other Barons herde this thyng, they were moche anguysshous and
 meuyd, ffor they supposed certaynly that alle this had be trewe.
 Anon they departed fro gybelet. by the cyte of valerne⁵ they
 wente / whiche was aboue the castel of margat. syth they cam to 28
 marelee / whiche is the first cyte of the londe of fenyece. whan they
 wente toward the northeest, fro thens they cam to the cyte of
 tortuose. There is an Isle / where somtyme was a Cyte / there
 abode the Shippes, theyr nauye. I wote not how many dayes after 32
 they hasted and cam to fore the Cyte of Archys, Tancre yssued
 oute of thoost and cam ayenst them / And tolde to them alle a
 longe the tromperye and the barat that therle of tholouse had don /

A bailiff of
 Egypt was in
 power here,

who tried in
 vain to buy
 off Godfrey
 and his men,

but was more
 successful
 with the Earl
 of Toulouse,
 who took his
 money,

and sent word
 to Godfrey to
 leave Gibelet
 and come to
 him.

Tancred re-
 vealed the
 treachery of
 the Earl of
 Toulouse to
 the pilgrims,

¹—1 "*tenoit celle cité. Ceste-cy estoit la première cité de la marine sur le pouvoir d'Egypte,*" viz., this was the first city on the sea-coast under the power of Egypt. Caxton has made a "bourdon" here by omitting all between the two *cités*. ² *Orig.* fyude. ³ *Fr. mençoenge.*

⁴ *Orig.* dne.

⁵ *Fr. Valenic.*

They were moche angry / therfore they lodged them a part fro
 them / that had doo broken theyr syege. The Erle knewe that he
 had¹ not the loue of the barons that were newe comen, therfor he
 4 sente to them messagers / that sayde to them in his name moche
 fayre wordes / And brought to them grete yeftes / wherfore in
 short tyme it happed that they were alle repeased and amyable and
 good frendes to gydre / sauf only Tancre, whiche acorded not with
 8 hym, but accused hym of many thynges. A fore the comynge of
 thise laste barons / the peple of therles of tholouse myght nothyng
 auaylle and prouffyte ayenst the Cyte whiche they had assieged.
 But now they had grete hope / that it shold now soon be brought
 12 to an ende / and accomplyshyd by thayde of them that were newe
 come / Neuertheles it fyll not so as they supposed, ffor alle the
 tymes that they contryued by ony engyne for tassaylle the walles
 alway it fyll contrarye to that they purposed / and they of the toun
 16 brake all theyr ourages / in suche wyse that they loste their costes
 and payne. It appered wel that our lord had withdrawen fro them
 his ayde and his good wyll. They within the toun slewe many of
 them without. There deyde tweyne noble and valyaunt knyghtes.
 20 That is to wete, Ancean of Ribemont / that alway dyde valyauntly
 where sommeuer he cam / And potom de baladon, an hye man and
 wel acqueynted with therle of tholouse. This siege displesyd ouer
 moche to alle them of thooste. And in especial to the footemen
 24 whiche had moche grete desyre taccomplysshe theyr vowe to Iheru-
 salem, & also whan the duc was comen they that had ben there to
 fore / began to withdrawe them fro the werke in suche wyse that
 euery man dyde nought, ffor it plesyd them wel that therle were
 28 greued and ennoyed that he myght departe and lede them forth
 with the other barons.

who were
 very angry.
 [16. 108, l.k.]

The Earl
 finally made
 his peace
 with all, ex-
 cept Tancred.

The pilgrims
 besieged Ar-
 chis in vain,

and lost
 many valiant
 men.

How thoost murmured of the spere founden in
 Anthyoche / & of the grete myracle that happed
 32 in the presence of alle the hoste.

Capitulo CLXj°

t Here was renewed a word by whiche the comyn people & /
 also somme of the barons whiche² began to doubte of the
 36 spere / that was founden in Anthyoche, lyke as ye haue herde to
 fore, ffor somme sayde certaynly that it was the very spere that

The people
 began to talk
 against the
 spere found
 in Antioch.

² "which," interpolated by Caxton.

Some believed it to be the true spear that pierced our Lord.

[leaf 109]

others were incredulous.

The man who found it came before the barons,

and asked for the trial by fire.

This man, Peter Bertilmewe, passed the ordeal apparently in safety;

opened the Syde of oure Lord on the crosse / And that was with his precious blood bydeweck. And by reuelacion of oure lord had be founden by an holy good man for to recomforte his people whiche had grete necessaryte and nede. Other ¹sayde that it was 4 not but fals barat / tromperye and abuse / ffor therle of tholouse had fonden this & contryued / for to meue the peple to drawe and gete syluer of theyr offrynges / And this altercacion was meuyck by a preest named Arnold², chappellayn,³ and moche acueynted with 8 the noble duc of nonmandye. he was wel lettred / but he was not of good lyf. he was ouer malycious and pourchassoure of discordes / As ye shal here afterward in this book. (33) This rumour was grete in thoost, as I haue sayd. The man that had fonde the spere herde 12 the doubte of the peple / And cam to fore the barons moche hardily, And sayck to them in this maner / " Fayr lordes, doubte ye nothyng that this werke hath ben by barat ne by tromperye, For theryn hath be none / But it is comen of god / And certaynly for 16 the comfort of the cristen peple. Seynte andrew appered to me by the wyll of our saueour Ihesu crist, whiche deuysed to me alle the maner, how I haue founden it / And for to shewe to yow / that this that I saye is trowth / I praye you that ye make a grete fyre 20 and merueyllous / And I shal entre in to it / And holde the spere in my hand, and shal passe and goo thurgh hool and sauf." whan they herck this they acorded alle therto. The fyre was made and brennyd lyght, which was greete & merueyllous. And this was on 24 the blessyck good fryday / And it plesed them that this thyng should be thus preuyd the same day that our lord was smeton to the herte with the same spere / he that thus offred hym self thus, and enterprysed for to preue it was named Peter bertilmewe, ⁴clerk / 28 and but litil lettred, after that it coude be vnderstonde without forth,⁴ and was a moche symple man / Thenne was alle thooste assembled aboute the fyre / Peter cam forth & kneled down for to recommande hym vnto god / whan he had made his prayer / he 32 toke the spere And entred in to the fyre / And passeck thurgh it, and was nothyng on hym perysshed ne hurte that ony man coude see or knowe. whan the peple sawe this alle they ranne for to kysse hym / And made to hym moche grete ioye. Of this doubte thenne 36

² Fr. *Ernoul*.

³ *Orig.* chppelayn.

⁴⁻⁴ Fr. "*clerc assez peu lettré, selonc ce que l'en pouit congnoistre par dehors,*" viz., an illiterate enough clerk, according to what could be judged by his outward appearance.

they wende veryly that it had be quenched, But yet soured a
 gretter error and murmur than to fore / ffor it was not longe after, but soon after
 he died,
 but that this Clerke deyde / thenne sayde somme that by than-
 4 guysse of the fyre he toke his deth / And that shold be thocasion
 therof. The other sayde that he yssued oute al hool and sauf fro
 the fyre. But it was the wylle of oure lord syth the trouthe was
 knowen that he shold deye thus, or peradventure the prees that
 8 cam vpon hym was so grete whan he yssued out of the fyre / that [¶ Il. 109, bk.]
 he was therby hurte that he deyde / In this maner murmured yet and the
 people still
 murmured.
 the peple among them.

Of thambassade of Egipte comen with our men in to
 12 thooste of pylgryms / & of the reuerence that
 was don to them / ca° / C / lxij°

s Omme messagiers that were sente in to Egypte by our barons
 atte requeste of them that cam vnto Anthyoche fro the Calyphe
 16 of Egypte, had he retheyned and holden there by force and barat
 wel a yere / But now they were returned, And with them were
 comen the messagers of the Calyphe / which brought to our barons
 fro hym wordes moche dyuerse & moch chaunged fro that they had
 20 sente to them to fore Anthyoche, ffor thenne he sente to them that
 they shold conteyne them vgorously ayenst the Sowdan of Perse.
 And they shold haue of hym grete ayde of gold, of syluer, and of
 vytaylles. Now had he chaunged moche his langage, ffor he sente
 24 them worde that he thought that he dyde moch grete thyng for
 them / yf he suffred that the pilgrims myght goo to Iherusalem
 .ij. C / to gydre / or .iiij. C / alle vnarmed. And whan they had
 made theyr prayers and don theyr pylgremage to retorne sauffy
 28 agayn. whan oure barons herd this, they had herof grete desdayne /
 And sayde to the messagers, that they shold retorne agayn to theyr
 lord / and telle hym that by his licence ne leue wold they not goo
 to Iherusalem vnarmed one after another. But they shold goo
 32 maulgre hym / alle to gydre in bataylles reinged / and the baners
 reysed and deployed / Now I shall say to you why the Calyphe of
 Egypte was reysen in so grete pryde / whan our men had discom-
 ftyed Corbagat to fore Anthyoche, The power of the Soudan of
 36 Perse was moche affebled, in such wise that none of his neyghbours
 doubte hys / ne fere to make warre agaynst hym, ffor he had
 alwaye the werse. By whiche occasion it happed that a conestable
The messen-
 gers into
 Egypt now
 returned,
 bringing
 word that
 only 200 or
 300 pilgrims
 at a time,
 and those
 unarmed,
 could go to
 Jerusalem.
 The Crusa-
 ders sent
 word back
 that they
 would go
 altogether,
 and in battle
 array.

of the Calyphes of Egypte named¹ / had taken the Cyte of Iherusalem fro the men of the soudan of Perse, whiche had holden it .xxxviiij yere. Therefore sawe nowe the Calyphie that he was at his aboue / by the disconfytire that our men had don to Corbagat. 4 And had wende that he shold not haue had nede of ony ayde / Therfor he despysed now our peple.

The Caliph of Egypt now despised our people.

[² leaf 110] ²Of an ambassade fro themperour of constantinoble comen to our pylgryms / & of thanswer to the 8 sayd ambassade / ca Clxiiij^o.

Messengers from Constantinople came, complaining because Holmond held Antioch contrary to his covenant,

o N that other syde were comen messagers fro themperour of Constantinoble, whiche complayned moche on buymont³ / and also on the other barons, ffor they sayde that all the barons were 12 becomen his men, And had sworn vpon the holy ewangelyes that alle suche Cytees and Castellys by them conquerd / whiche had be vnder the power of Constantynoble shold be rendred to hym as his owen thurgh out alle the londe / to Iherusalem. Now buymont 16 dyde contrarye this whiche helde Anthyoche / and the other Barons that had gyuen it to hym. Thus spak they of the couenautes / But they spak not of alle / ffor withoute faylle trouthe it was that they had couenaunted this / but themperour had promysed to them 20 that he shold folowe them with his grete hoost / And shold furnysshe to them grete plente of vytaylles by see. he was the fyrst that had broken the couenaunt and promesses, ffor he had not don that one ne that other / And he myght wel haue don it / And 24 therfor they were not bounden to holde his couenautes made by oure barons, by cause he helde not that he had promysed / ffor the lawe wyll not that a man shal holde couenaunt to hym that holdeth not his. Thus answered the barons to them. And therfor sayde 28 they that the yefte that they made to buymont of the Cyte of Anthyoche ought to be ferme and stable, And so wold they mayntene it to hym and to his heyres for euer / whan the messagers herd this, they moche prayd the barons that they would tarye theyr 32 goyng to Iherusalem til that themperour were comen / ffor they sayde that without faulte he wolde come to fore thentree of Iuyll, And brynge with hym moche grete plente of peple / And yf they wold doo thus moche for hym, he shold conne them grete thanke / 36 And shal gyue to eche of the barons many grete & ryche yestes /

forgetting that the emperor had not kept his part of the bargain.

The barons reminded them of this,

and then the messengers said that the emperor would surely come.

¹ Lat. *Emircius*.

³ *Orig.* bnymont.

& also shal departe largely to the gentil men & to the footemen. whan our barons herd this they sayde that they wold counseylle them to gydre and drewe them a part. Therle of tholouse acorded
 4 wel to this that they shold abyde so grete an ayde as was the puyssaunce of themperour / And sayd he supposed¹ certaynly that he shold come / as it was sayd. but the other supposed² that he sayd so for to kepe the barons and³ other men atte siege til the cyte were
 8 taken / ffor it shold be moche deshonour and fowl for ¹hym to [1 ff. 110, bk.] departe fro thens without accomplysshynge⁴ that whiche he had enterprised. The other barons² acorded⁵ nothyng therto, but wolde that they shold goo dyligently assiege the holy cyte of
 12 Iherusalem for to doo theyr pylgremage & accomplysse theyr vowe / For whiche they had⁶ suffred⁷ so many tranaylles³ and deseases, For they knewe moche wel the delaye of themperour / and⁸ his fayr wordes full of tromperyes and deceytes. Therfor it
 16 was not theyr oppynyon⁴ for to truste ony more his couert dissimylacions⁴ / Thus sourded⁸ a grete debate bytwene the barons, And⁹ myght not acorde / of whiche it happed that he that helde the cyte of trypple whiche had offred to them so moche good by couenaunt
 20 that they shold departe fro the siege / and goo out of the londe. whan he knewe that the barons were emonge them self in discorde, he wold no more offre to them ony thyng / but enterprised⁹ so grete hardynes that he wold fyghte ayenst them / The barons acorded
 24 therto / and¹⁰ lefte the Bisshop of Albare for to kepe the lodgys. And¹¹ whan they had so doo, they wente so alle in bataylles ordeyne¹² toward trypple / whan they cam there they fonde the lord of the toun and the Cytezeyns out with grete plente of
 28 men on horsbak and¹³ afoote where they had ordeyned theyr bataylles and abode our peple / whiche they doubted not moche. For they had¹⁴ seen that the Erle of tholouse had¹⁵ holde siege to fore this Cyte, And¹⁶ had¹⁷ no thyng preuayled, wherfor they preyed our
 32 men moche the lasse than they dyde byfore. But whan oure men approuched¹⁸ so nyghe that they¹⁹ sawe them²⁰ / anon they ranne on them moche fiersly²¹ in suche wyse that they loste anon .vij.C / of theyr men whiche oure men slewe. And²² of oures were slayn but²³
 36 .xiiij. There helde they the feste of ester or pasque, the x day of Apryll.

² *Orig.* barous.³ *Orig.* tranaylles.⁴⁻⁴ Lat. "*ne ejus labyrinthis et ejus ambagibus iterum involuerent.*"⁵ *i. e.* our men (the Crusaders).⁶ The Turks.⁷ *Orig.* fiersly.⁸ *Orig.* hnt.

How the comyn peple complayned them / of this that
they wente not hastily to Iherusalem.

ca^o. Clxiiij^o.

o Wr barons that had disconfyted thise men / Retourned in to 4
theyr lodgys with alle theyr gayne / Thenne recommenced¹
and began agayn the playnte and the clamour moche grete that the
peple made by cause they wente not hastily to Iherusalem. all they
cryed with hye vois that they shold departe fro the siege / so long 8
contynued theyr crye that the valyaunt Duc Godeffrey / Therle
of Flaundres, The Duc of Normandye and Tancre sayde that they
[² leaf 111] ²wold doo the requeste of the peple afoote. And thenne recuyllē^t
theyr tentes and pauyllons, brent theyr lodgys, and departed. 12
It displeyē^t moche therle of tholouse / he prayde them moche affec-
tuously to abyde. but it myght not be. ffor they them self that
fyrst were comen with hym were wery, and anguysshous of the
siege, And strayt helde they the way toward trypple. whan therle 16
of tholouse sawe that he myght none other wise cheuisshe ne accom-
plysse his empryse / he wold not abyde there allone, & he had
right, But dislodged hym / and folowed the other / whan they were
a .v / myle fro trypple / they lodged them. the baylly that helde 20
the cyte and the countre about in the name of the Calyphe / sente
theder to them his messagers / he had moche leyē^t doun his pryde /
ffor as I sayd to you to fore / he wende to haue faughten peer to
peer / his messagers knewe wel that he was to feble, and that it 24
was folye. He thenne desyred and moche requyred that oure men
wold take of hym right largely / and goo out of his power. The
mater was so demened that he gaf / xv. M. besauntes, and delyuerd
to them alle the prysonners that he had of our pilgryms. And 28
about that he gaf to them grete yestes and ryche presentes, as
horses, mulet-, Cloth of sylk, and vessel of dyuerse facions. And
they promysed to hym that they wold doo none harme to the
Cytees that he had and helde / That is to wete, archys, trypple, and 32
Ybelyn, ne to their appartenauntes. And he hym self sente to them /
oxen / Kyen, sheep, and moche grete plente of other vytaylles, to
thende that they shold not destroye his londe / Thenne cam in to
thoost somme surryens whiche dwellyē^t upon the mount of lybane, 36
whiche is nyghe vnto thyse Cytees toward the est moche hye /
They were of oure fayth wyse men and trewe, And were come for

The people
again com-
plained of the
delay in going
to Jerusalem.

The Earl of
Toulouse was
displeased
that the
other barons
heeded the
people.

The whole
army went
forward, and
encamped
before
Tripple.

whose bailif
gave them
15,000 besants
and great
gifts, to leave
his cities
unharmd.

Some Chris-
tian Syrians
from Mount
Lebanon now
came into
the army.

¹ *Orig.* recommenceē^t.

to see our barons for to salewe and feste them. The good men of
 thoost called them, and desyred of them affectuously / that they
 wolde teche them the moost strait way & easiest for to goo to
 4 Iherusalem. They toke aduys and counseyllled to gydre, and
 behelde alle thynges that in suche a caas behoued, and cam to our
 barons, and sayd to them that they counseyllled to holde the waye
 by the see coste for many reasons / Fyrst, for the surete and com-
 8 forte of theyr shippes / ffor in the nauye were not only the shippes
 of guyneuers that cam fro fflaundes, but ther were shippes of
 gene / of venyse, of Cypres / of Rhodes, and of other yles of grece /
 charged with vytaylles and marchaundyses whiche dyde moche grete
 12 good in thoost. The surryens wente to fore for to conduyte the
 hoost. the baylly of trypple delyuerd ¹ to them also men that knewe [¶ If. 111, bk.]
 wel the countrees and the londe. They passed alle the see syde
 and the cyte of ybelyn / and lodged vpon a Ryuer that renneth
 16 there in a place / whiche is named Mans / And for tabyde the feble
 peple that were not comen ne arryued. they sojourned there a day.

These coun-
 seled our
 men to take
 the route
 along the sea
 coast.

[¶ If. 111, bk.]
 The army
 followed this
 advice, and
 arrived at
 Ybelin.

Of the grete dyligence that our men made for to
 approche to Iherusalem / & of thalyaunces of
 20 somme turkes made vnto them. Capitulo CLXV:

t He thyrde day they cam to fore the Cyte of Baruth, And
 lodged them vpon a Ryuer that ran to fore the toun / The
 baylly of the toun gaf to them grete good, And made do come
 24 plente of vitayll and good cheep, for to spare the trees & the
 fruytes of the contre. On the morn cam they to the Cyte of
 Sayette, there they lodged them vpon a Ryuer therby. he that
 gouerned and kepte the Cyte wolde not doo thyng ne bounte to
 28 them / I wote not wherin he trusted, but he sente out many of his
 men for to doo hurte to thoost, and for to atteyne certayn knyghtes /
 which were lodged by for tassaylle them / but our men toke theyr
 horses and ran on them vygorously / And slewe of them I wote
 32 not how many. And the other fledde in to the cyte, And had
 nomore talente to atteyne our peple / in suche wyse that our men
 rested them in pees that nyght / On the morn for to reste and
 refresshe the mene peple / they departed not thens / But sente oute
 36 for fourage many men a foote, and certayn men of Armes to kepe
 them in to the contre and vyllages about. They brought largely

Three days
 after they
 came to
 Beirut.

The Governour
 of Sayette
 attacked our
 army, and
 lost many of
 his men in
 the skirnish.

¹vytaylles and horses¹ wyth grete quantite of beestes, grete and
 smale, and cam agayn without lesyng of ony thyng, alle to gydre
 sauf only a knyght² named Gaultier de ver / he wente by his valy-
 aunce ouer ferre / ffor he retorned neuer agayn, ne neuer was ⁴
 knownen where³ he becam / they were all moch sory for hym in
 thoost / The day aftir passed they by a moche sharp & aspre way,
 & after descended by a destrayt in to a playne. and on the right
 syde they lefte this auncyent Cyte named Sarepte, wherin helyas ⁸
 the prophete was in. After they pessed a water whiche is bytwene
 Sur and Sayette. They wente so fer that they cam to this noble⁴
 cyte of Sur. There they lodged them by the noble fontayne, and
 pytte of water lyuyng lyke as scripture sayth. They lodged this ¹²
 nyght in gardyns ⁵moche delectable. whan it was daye they sette
 them forth on theyr Journeye. And passed by a ⁶strayt moche peryl-
 lous, whiche is bytwene the montaines & the see. They descended
 in to the playnes of the Cyte of Acres there vpon, and by a water ¹⁶
 rennyng they sette vp theyr pauyllons / he that had the charge of
 the toun made them to haue vytaylles at resonable prys, ⁷and made
 acqueyntauces good and honorable in this maner, that yf oure
 people myght⁷ take the Cyte of Iherusalem, and dwelle there after ²⁰
 xx. dayes in the Royamme, in suche wyse that they were not put
 oute of it by force / or yf they myght disconfyte in the felde the
 puyssaunce of egypte / that fro thenne forthon they shold yelde
 and gyue ouer the Cyte of Acres / without makyng of ony resist- ²⁴
 ence. The pylgryms wente fro thens on the lyft syde / they lefte
 galylee bytwene the mount⁸ of Carmely⁹ and the see / they cam in
 to Cezaire, whiche is the second Archebisshoprich of the londe of
 palestyne. they lodged them vpon a water that yssueth oute of the ²⁸
 palus or maryses, whiche ben by the toun. there helde they theyr
 penthecost or wytsonyde / thre dayes after thentre of Iuyn they
 abode there. on the .iiij. day they toke their way. On the right
 side they lefte Iaphe / And by a grete playn and euen waye they ³²
 cam in to the Cyte of Lide, where the bodye of the glorious martir
 seynt george lyeth. In thonoure of whom / Iustynen, that was

In foraging
the knight
Gaultier de
Vere was lost.

The next day
the army
went on, and

encamped
near a noble
fontain.

[leaf 112]

At Acres they
got good
victuals at a
reasonable
price.

They cele-
brated Pen-
tecost at
Cæsarea, and
went on the
the third of
June.

¹⁻¹ Fr. "*victuailles et à hommes et à chevaux.*" ² Orig. kuyght.
³ Fr. *qu'il devint*, what became of him. ⁴ Orig. uoble.
⁶ Fr. "*par ungs destroiz moult perilleux,*" viz., by a very narrow and
 dangerous pass.
⁷⁻⁷ The sense is ruined by Caxton's omissions. Fr. "*et fist accointances
 bonnes et honorables à noz barons, et aussi fist a eulx teles comenances que se ilz
 poroient,*" etc. ⁸ Orig. monnt. ⁹ Fr. Carmel.

- Emperour of Rome, made there a moche / fair chirche and ryche /
 But whan the turkes herde tydynges that our men cam / they bete
 it doun and brente the tymbie werke, whiche was moche grete /
- 4 For they doubtet that oure pilgrims shold take them for to make
 engyns to caste stones, and castellis to assaile with / thenne herde
 our barons saye that ther fast by was a moche noble Cyte name^t
 Rames. they sente the erle of Flanndres with / v. C / horsmen to
- 8 fore the toun for to knowe what semblaunt they wold make / None
 yssued out whan they approached it. they cam ner / and founde
 the yates open. And entred in to the Cyte. And founde neyther
 man ne woman. For the nyght to fore they had herd tydynges
- 12 how oure pilgrims cam, & ladde to the montaynes wyues and
 childeren / and alle their howshold / whan therle knewe herof he
 sente to the barons how the mater was, and counseyled them to
 come in to the toun. they were moche glad of thyse tidynges /
- 16 they made deuoutly theyr prayers at the tombe of seynt George /
 And after cam in to the Cyte, whiche was al ful of wyne, of whete,
 of oylle, and of other vytaylles to them necessarye / they abode
 there .iii. dayes / they chose ther ¹a bisshop of the cyte / and ²was
- 20 a normant name^t Robert, whiche was born in tharchebisshopryche
 of Roen / They gaf to hym entierly the two Cytees for euermore,
 that is to wete, Lyde and Rames, and the countree and vyllages
 about them / ffor they gaf it to honoure god and seynt George for
- 24 the fyrst gayne of the same holy londe.

The Turks
burnt the
church of
Lydia at the
approch of
the Chris-
tians,

who entered
the city of
Rames, and
found it
deserted.

Here they
abode three
[11. 112, bk.]
days, and
chose a
bishop, to
whom they
gave Lydia
and Rames.

How the Cristen men of bethlehem receyued wel
 Tancre and his rowte, And sette his baner on the
 chirche of our lady. Capitulo CLxvj^o.

- 28 t He turkes beyng in Iherusalem herde wel tydynges of the
 conyng of our pylgryms / wel knewe they certaynly that alle
 theyr entencion was to come to the holy cyte, ffor whiche thyng
 they were princypally meuy^t and departed fro the countrees.
- 32 whan they herde this they were moche esmeuyd / And sayd that it
 was reason to deffende it³ / The Cristen men that were in bethle-

The Turks in
Jerusalem
were much
alarmed on
hearing of
the pilgrim's
approach.

² *Orig. aud.*

³ Here a whole chapter, and part of a second has been omitted by Caxton's French text. This missing chapter gives details about the arming and fortifying of Jerusalem by the Turks, when they heard of the approach of the Crusaders; of the great cruelties inflicted upon the Christians of Jerusalem;

The Christians of Bethlehem offer to deliver that town to the pilgrims.

Tancred and 100 men went to receive it,

and saw the holy places with great joy.

They could hardly sleep this night, so anxious were [1 leaf 118] they to go on to Jerusalem.

hem sente certayn messagers to the barons, & desyred of them that they wold delyuere the toun in to their handes / if they wold sende men to receyue and kepe it. They sayd that it was reson to doo that they requyred. They toke an hondred men of Armes wel 4 horsed, noble, valyaunt, and hardy, and delyuerd to them Tancre for a Capytayn. They that cam to fetche them conduyted them in such wise that erly in the mornyng they entred in to the toun. Alle they of the Cyte clerkes and laye men receyued them honor- 8 ably and with moche grete ioye with procession brought them in to the chirche whiche standeth in the place, in whiche the gloryouse vyrgyne marye was delyuerd & chylded oure lord Ihesu criste, the saueour of the world. they sawe the crybbe in which was leyde in 12 to reste the swete childe that made heuen & erthe / whan our peple sawe thyse holy places they were moche ioyous, and had grete tendrenes in theyr hertes / The Cyterzeyns of the toun for signe of ioye And for demonstraunce that oure lord and his dere moder 16 oure lady shold gyue to them vycторыe, toke the baner of Tancre / and sette it on hye vpon the chirche of oure lady / They that were lefte in thoost had moche grete desyre to see and vysyte the holy places that were nygh by / as it was sayd. ffor for the loue of god, 20 & for to honoure hym were they departed fro theyr countree / and had suffred many annoyes and grete trauaylles. And they myght not slope this nyght, suche brennyng desire had they forto see the cyte, ¹ which shold be thende of theyr trauaylle and thacomplysshe- 24 ment of theyr vowe. Them thought longe er the day cam, and them semed that thys nyght was moche lenger than the other / ffor ² to a coragous desire ther is not haste ynough.

Of thardaunt desire that the peple had for to see 28 Iherusalem / And how thoost approched and were lodged by ordenaunce. Capitulo C/Lxvij^o.

The common people of the army could no longer restrain themselves,

Yth that it was knowen certaynly in the lodgys that the Duc³ hadde receyued this nyght the messagers of bethlehem, And 32 that he had sente his men in to the toun. The peple afoote abode neuer for leue of the barons / ne myght not suffre til the daye was and, especially, of the taxes laid upon them, which were so heavy that the Patriarch was obliged to go to Cyprus for aid in paying them.

² Fr. "*car à courage desirant, ne haste l'en mie asses,*" viz., for one can never hasten enough to satisfy a desiring (or eager) heart. ³ Orig. Dnc.

come, but begun to calle alle the nyght for to goo vnto Iherusalem. but started on alone, and unprotected.
 whan they were goon a whyle forth / One of the noble men of
 thooste named Gaste de bedyers had moche grete pyte of this
 4 peple that they shold be slayn in the waye. And therfore he toke
 his hors, and toke .xxx / men of Armes with hym wel horsed, and
 ordeyned in arraye, And thought that he wolde goo nygh to Iheru- Gaste de Bedlers fol- lowed to pro- tect them, and to find booty if possible.
 salem for to see yf they myght fynde out of the toun beestes and
 8 other gayne for to take and lede away with hym. Alle thus as he
 thoughte¹ / it fylle thus in partye, ffor whan he cam nygh² the
 toun he fonde Oxen / & kyen largely in the pastures / and but fewe
 that kept them. they fledde away whan they sawe our³ men come
 12 Gaste and his men began to gadre the beestes to gydre and droof
 them hastely toward thoost / but the herdmen and kepars of them
 made a grete crye / In the toun were turkes hardy, and desyryng⁴
 to doo armes / They armed them dilygently, & ronne hastely after He was vigorously attacked by some Turks.
 16 for to rescowe the proye / gaste & his men sawe them come, &
 knewe well that they were not strong ynough for the turkes / ther-
 for they lefte this that they brought, & mounted vpon an hye mon-
 tayne, therby moche angry of this mesaventure. whan they had
 20 abyden a whyle vpon this montayne, They behelde in to the valeye /
 And sawe Tancre come fro bethlehem retornyng to thoost with
 an / C. men on horsbak. whan Gaste sawe them he smote his hors
 with his spores & cam to hym / and tolde hym of his mesaventure Tancred, returning from Bethle- hem, came to his aid, and discomfited the Turks.
 24 and moche anguysshous, and sayd that the turkes were not ferre /
 they ran alle to gydre after them and ouertoke them er they myght
 come in to the cyte. In theyr comyng they discomfyted the turkes
 5that they that myght fledde in to the Cyte / The remenaunt they [5 ll. 113, bk.]
 28 slewe, And oure men recoueryd theyr proye, And brought it in to
 thoost with grete ioye / Alle they that were in the lodgys assembled
 about them. And demaunded of them ententyfly fro whens this
 proye cam. They answerd that they had take it to fore the yates.
 32 of Iherusalem / whan they herde named the holy Cyte of Iheru-
 salem, and knewe certaynly that it was so nygh / thenne began they
 tendrely to wepe / And fylle down on theyr knees, and rendred
 thankynges to oure lord with moche grete syghes, of this that he
 36 had so moche loued them, and conduyted that they myght see
 shortly the ende of theyr pylgremage / that is to wete, the holy Cyte
 of Iherusalem, whiche oure lord so moche louyd, that he wold dye

¹ Orig. thonghte.² Orig. uygh.³ Orig. onr.⁴ Fr. "desirans de faire armes," eager to fight.

Some went far enough to see the walls of Jerusalem.

All were now reconciled to their labours and trials.

therin for to saue the world. Grete pyte was it to see and¹ here the teres & the cryes of this good peple. They departed in this same maner. And wente so forth that they sawe the towres and the walles of the toun / Thenne lyft they vp theyr handes toward⁴ heuen and dyd of theyr hosen and shoes, men and wymmen / and kyssed therthe / who that had seen this / though he had had an herke herte he shold haue be meuyd to pyte. ffo thens ferthon the waye greued them nothyng, but they wente moch lyghtly til they⁸ cam to fore the toun / There they lodged them all aftir thordenaunce and deuysse of the barons / whiche delyuerd to them the places. Thenne semed verytably that the worde of the holy prophete was entierly accomplysshyd, whiche sayd longe to fore. "Leua Iherusalem / &c." Aryse vp Iherusalem / and lyft vp thyn eyen, And beholde the puissaunce of the kyng thy sauour / which cometh² to ontbynde the and put the oute of the bonde wherin thou art.² O lord god, how the hie barons, the knyghtes, the gentylen of our¹² hoost, and alle the other generally, men and wymmen, were recomforted and reconcyled of the grete trauaylles and meseases that they had longe endured / whan they founde them to fore the holy Cyte of Iherusalem, And how eche of them had good wylle to conteyne²⁰ hym self in this nede and werke.

Of the situacion of Iherusalem and descripcion / and also of many other cytees, townes, & countrees / ther aboute. ca^o CLxvii^o 24

The holy city stands between two mountains. [4 leaf 114]

Near by is the casile of Emmaus.

Routhe it is that the holy Cyte of Iherusalem stondesth bytwene two montaynes, wherof dauid sayth in the psalter,³ "Fundamenta eius in montibus sanctis" / The fondementes of it ben in the holy montaynes / toward the west is the see and the londe²⁸ of the philistees, xxiiij mile vnto port Iaphe / and that in the next part of the see / Bytwene bothe is the castel of Emaus, where as oure lord after his resurexion appered to two discyple. There is modyn the cyte and the fortresse of the machabews. There is the³² place & temple, where abymelech the holy preest gaf to dauid and

¹ *Orig. aud.*

²⁻² Fr. "*deslier et mettre hors de lien ou tu es,*" i. e. to loose thee, and free thee from the bonds in which thou now art.

³ This Latin quotation was inserted by the French translator; it is not in the original text.

to his squyres the loues of breed to etc that were offred vpon the table of our lord, wherfor saul dyde do slee hym / and the other admynstratours of the chirche and men of the toun / There is lyde
 4 where seynt Peter heeled a lame man named Eueax,¹ and had leyen / viij. yere paralytik / There is also Iaphe, as I haue sayd, where seynt Peter reysed a dede woman named thabyte² / There was seint peter herberowed in a tanuers hows, that tanned leder
 8 whan he receyued the message fro Cornelle, whom he baptysed, as is sayd in thactes of the apostles. toward the eest is the flome Iordan / And the deserte is by yonde where the holy prophetes were woont to repayre / There is the vale sauage,³ whiche is name^d
 12 the dede see / whiche was a moche fayr and delectable cowntre, lyke a paradys, to fore that oure lord made do synke .v. Cytees / Sodome and the other / as is sayd in Genesys / On this syde
 Iordan is the cyte of Iherycho, that Iosue wan more by prayer than
 16 by bataylle. Theder wente oure lord Ihesu Criste / and made a blynde man to see / There is galgala, where helyzeus the proophete dwellyd. Toward the south is the cyte of Bethlehem, where our lord was born, and leyde in the crybbe emonge the beestes. There
 20 by is tecua, the cyte where Amos and Abacuc the prophetes were born / Toward northeest is Gabao,⁴ where atte prayer of Iosue the sonne rested, til he had vaynquysshed / the batayll / There is Sceirs,⁵ where as our lord spak to the woman of Samarye. There
 24 is bethel, where as the peple of Israhel worshipped the calf of god ayenst the wylle of oure lord / There is Sebaste, whiche is name^d seynt Iohan de sebaste. There is the sepulcre of seynt Iohan baptist / helizeus and Abyas the prophetes were there buryed / It
 28 was sommetye named Samarye.⁶ The Cyte of naples is there / which somme tyme was named Sychem. And it was there where Symeon and leuy, sones of Iacob, for to venge theyr suster, whiche had ben enforced, slewe them of the toun / and⁷ brente alle
 32 the cyte.

Here is Lydia where St. Paul healed Eueas.

Here is where St. Paul received the message from Cornelius.

On this side of Jordan is the city of Jericho.

There is Sychar where our Lord spake to the woman of Samaria.

There is the Sepulchre of John the Baptist.

Here Simeon and Levi burnt the city of Sichem.

¹ Fr. *Aeneas*.

² Caxton has here omitted a line or two after "*Thabile*." Fr. "*et estoit pleine d'aulmosnes et de bonnes oeuvres, et la rendit aux veufves femmes et aux povres gens à qui elle faisoit moult grant bien*,"—Lat. "*Tabitham plenam operibus bonis et elymosynis, defunctam suscitavit, et sanctis ac viduis resignavit vivam*."

³ Fr. *li vau sauvage*, Lat. *vallen sylvestrem*.

⁴ Lat. *Gabaon*.

⁵ Fr. *Sichors*.

⁶ Caxton has omitted "*pour le mont de Somer qui est illeques encore nomme L'en toute cette terre*," viz., from Mount Somer which is situated here, all this country is still named.

⁷ *Orig.* aud.

How Iherusalem had many names after dyuerse lordes
therin ¹rennyng, and yet of the situacion wel at
a longe / ca^o. Clxix^o

[1 fr. 114, bk.]

Jerusalem is
the chief city
of Judea.

i Iherusalem is the chyef cyte of Iudee / It is withoute medowes 4
and withoute Ryuers, ne no brooke ne welle. It was first
called^t Salem / & after Zebus² / After in the tyme what tyme were
caste out the Iheruhescies,³ whan dauid^t had^t regned^t / vii. yere in
Ebron / he grewe⁴ and amended moche this cyte / And^t wold that 8
it shold be the chyef and hede place of alle the Royamme / Thenne
was it named Iherusalem. To fore that dauid assaylled^t the tonn /
he toke the towre of Syon / whiche was named^t the cyte of Dauy^t.
Thenne made dauyd the cyte to be made about the place whiche 12
was named Mellon. Ioab made the remenaunt of the tonn / After
whan Salamon regned^t in Iherusalem / It was named^t Iherosolima,
That is to saye, Iherusalem of Salamon. As they seye that made
thystories / Aftir the deth of Ihesu criste, Titus the sone of vas- 16
pasian was a moche grete prynce of Rome, And assieged this cyte
with a grete hoost / & toke it by force / and^t destroyed it, and^t
threwe it down to thertle / Aftir cam Elyus Adrian the fourth 20
Emperour after hym / and called it after his name elye / ffor he
redefyed it moch wel / ⁵first it stode in an hangyng of an hylle,⁵
⁶in suche wyse as toward theest and south it was sette in the
roundnesse of the tertre of the mount of Syon,⁶ And of another
moumt name^t Moria. The temple only and^t the toure name^t 24
Anthone⁷ was on the toppe of the tertre. But the same Elyus
made alle⁸ the Cyte to be born and^t redefyed^t right on the toppe or
sommel of the tertre, in suche wyse that the place where oure lord^t
was crucyfied / and the holy sepulchre, where his blessid body was 28
leyed^t in, whiche to fore were without the Cyte, were then enclosed^t
within the walles. The Cyte was not ouer grete, ne ouer lytle. It
was more long than brood / hit is on the four quarters enuyronned
with depe valeyes, toward the eest is the valeye of Iophat⁹ / There 32
stondeth a moche fayr chirche made in thonour of the glorious

David im-
proved it
greatly, and
gave it its
name.

After the
death of
Jesus Christ
Titus con-
quered and
destroyed it.

In rebuilding
Jerusalem
the Holy
Sepulchre
was brought
within the
walls.

The city is
longer than it
is broad.

² Fr. *Jebus*. ³ Fr. *Gebusées*, Lat. *Jebuseo*. ⁴ Fr. *creut*, i. e. increased.

⁵⁻⁵ Fr. "*premierement elle estoit assise en un pendant*," at first it was situated on the brow of a hill.

⁶⁻⁶ Fr. "*si que vers soleil levant et vers midi estoit assise el roiste del monte de Syon*," so that towards the east and south, it was situated on the steep side of mount Sion.

⁷ Fr. *Antoine*, Lat. *Antonia*.

⁸ Fr. *fist porter*, caused the city to be moved.

⁹ Fr. *Josaphat*.

vyrgyne Marye, where it is sayd that she was buyed. & ther is shewed yet the sepulchre. Ther vnder is the rennyng water of which seynt Iohn euangelyste sayth / that Ihesu Criste passed /
 4 Toward the southe is a valeye named Ennon, there is the felde that was bought¹ with the pens that Iudas sold oure lord fore, which is made in sepulture of pilgrims / & named acheldemach. toward the weste is a parte of the valeye where as the piscyne² is, whiche was
 8 a grete thyng whan the kynges of Iude were there : and it stratcheth vnto the Cysterne, whiche is called the lake of the Patriarke. By the old Cymetyer whiche is in the caue, named the Lyon, toward the north-eest, may men goo vp playn to the Cyte. There is
 12 shewed the place where seynt Stephen the prothomarter was stoned of the Iuys, whan he prayd vpon his knees for them, that so pytte hym to deth / And so deyed a very marter.

Here is the sepulchre of the Virgin Mary.

[? leaf 115]

Here is the place where Stephen the martyr was stoned by the Jews.

Here thystorye deuyseth of many merueyllyus edyfyces conteyned in the same Cyte of Iherusalem.
 16 And who made them. Capitulo Clxx^o

s O, as I haue sayd, two montaynes ben enchainyd within the walles of Iherusalem, a lital valeye is bytwene them both,
 20 whiche departed the toun as in the myddle / Syon is toward the weste / on the sommete or toppe thereon stoneth the chirche which is named Syon / And after there is a tour of dauyd, whiche is the dongeon of the toun / made of moche stronge werke, walles and
 24 barbycans there be many that ben aboute the toun.³ Trouthe it is that to fore oure pylgryms cam in to this holy lande, the place where our lord was crucifyed, whiche was named caluarye. And there where the very crosse was founden, And where our sauour
 28 Ihesu Criste was taken down of the crosse, And enoynted with precious oynementis / & envoluped in whyte linnen cloth, this places were straye as lytil chapellys / But after that oure cristen men had the power, them thought that the chirche was made ouer strait and

Two mountains are enclosed within the walls of Jerusalem.

The true crosse was found on Calvary, where our Lord was crucified.

¹ *Orig.* beught.

³ Here several lines are omitted by Caxton, which were probably unintelligible in the text which he translated. Lat. of the missing lines: "*In eodem quoque sed in deverso quod ad orientem respicit, sita est sanctae Resurrectionis ecclesia, forma quidem rotunda, quae quoniam in decliua praedicti montis sita est, ita ut cliuus eidem imminens et contiguus ecclesiae tectum habet, erectis in sublime trabibus et miro artificio in modum coronae contextis apertum et perpetuo patens, unde lumen ecclesiae infunditur necessarium. Sub quo hiatus intulo Salvatoris positum est monumentum.*"

They walled
it all in
newly.

On the slope
of Mt. Moriah
standeth the
temple.

On the west
of the temple
are two gates.
[⁵ If. 113, bk.]

Towards the
east is the
Golden gate.

Within this
enclosure
dares no man
dwelle.

In every
corner were
oratories
where the
Saracens
used to pray.

lytil wneere so grete and noble thynges were. Therefore they made it al newe walled about with good strong werke and hie, which conteyned and enclosed within it the fyrst chyrche,¹ and the holy names that I haue named / Toward the parte of the oryent is the 4
other mount named mona.² On the hangyng therof as who beholdeth toward the south stondesth the temple, whiche the laye peple calle it Templum domini. There as Dauid bought³ the place for to sette in the Arke of oure lord. And Salamon his sone made 8
there the temple by the commaundement of God / At the begynnyng of this booke we sayde to you, that Omar the sone of Captap dyde make the forme in this manere / There is a place square longe as moche as an Archer may shote at twyes, And as brood / closed 12
with good walles / stronge and hie / And there toward the weste ben two gates by whiche men entre, ⁵That one is named Speciosa / where seynt peter heeled hym that was lame fro his birth, and satte to fore the gate for to demaunde Almesse. That other gate had no 16
name toward the north east. Toward the thoryent is another gate named the Golden gate / Toward the south is the hows Ryall / whiche is the temple of Salamon. vpon eche of thyse yates, By whiche men entre in to the toun, And on the cornes⁶ ben hie 20
towres / vpon whiche the prouostes⁷ were woonte to goo vp at certayn howres for to warne and somone the peple to praye and saye theyr orysons / and to honoure our lord after theyr custommes / Somme endure yet, & the other ben falle. in the cloysture of this 24
place, ther dar noman dwelle / ne noman is suffred to entre but bare foot and clene washen / ffor there ben porters sette at alle the yates that take hede therof / In the mydle of this place, whiche is thus closed, is another place, more hie and square, toward the 28
weste men goo vp therto in two places, by degrees or stappes / and in lyke wyse toward the southe. But toward the south goth noman vp, but by one place / In eueryche of the angles or corners were woont to be oratoryes, where the sarasyns made theyr orysons and 32
prayers / Somme endure yet / And many ben beten down / In the myddle of this hie place stondesth the temple, whiche is made .viii / square / And with out ben the walles couerd with tables of marble

¹ Owing to his misunderstanding of the passage above omitted, Caxton has also failed to understand this line. Fr. "*qui enclot et contient dedans soy la première église et les saints lieux que je vous ai nommés,*" which enclosed and contained the first church and the holy places which I have mentioned to you.

² Lat. *Moria*.

³ *Orig.* bought.

⁴ *Orig.* aud.

⁶ Fr. *angles*, corners.

⁷ Fr. *provoires*, priests, Lat. *sacerdotes*.

wrought with fyn gold moche rychely / The couerture aboue was
of leed alle round right wel made / eche of thyse places aboue and
bynethe is paved with moche fayre whyte stone / in suche wyse
4 when it rayneth, alle the waters of the temple, of whiche ther
falleth grete plente, falleth down cleene and cleer in the cysternes
whiche ben within the cloystre. There bytwene the temple and
the place which is emonge the pylers, There stondesth an hye Roche
8 and lowe bynethe a dyche or a fosse. It is sayd that the Angele¹
stondesth there on, whan he slewe the peple for the synne that
dauyd had nombred his peple, vnto the tyme that oure lord com-
maunded that he shold put the swerde in to the shethe. there made
12 Dauyd after an Aulter. To fore that oure men entred in to the
toun, it had been a certayn tyme all discoueryd / But after they
that holde it, they couerid it with a fayr whyte marble, & made an
aulter aboue where the clerkes dyde the seruyse of oure lord.

The roof is of
lead, and well
made.

Within the
temple is a
high rock

on which
David made
an altar.

16 ²How the turkes of Iherusalem, whan they knewe the [² leaf 116]
comyng of our hooste, stopped the pyttes and
fontaynes of the toun. ca^o Clxxi^o

He londe in whiche Iherusalem stondesth is named Iurye, by
20 t cause that whan the .x / lygnages / or trybus departed fro the³
heyer of Salamon / And helde them to Ieroboam / The tweyne
abode in Iherusalem with Roboam that were the trybe of Iuda⁴ /
And the trybe of beniamyn / And of the name of Iuda it is named
24 Iurye⁵ / It is named also palestyne for the phylystees. This Cyte
standeth as it were in the nauyll of the londe of Byhete or of
promysson / after the termes that were named by Josue / whiche
endure⁶ fro deserte of the mount of Lybane, and fro the grete flood
28 of Eufrates vnto the see. The place in whiche the cyte standeth
in is moche ayerye & drye / Ther be no waters in the toun but only
of the rayn ; ffor in wynter tyme whan it is acustommed to rayne
moche in the londe, it is receyuyd in to the Cisternes / of whom be
32 many in the toun / and they occupy⁷ this water in all thynges that
they haue nede of / Neuertheles somme scriptures saye that they
were woonte to haue fontaynes, whiche were without the toun, and

Jersalem is
in the land
of Iudea, no
called from
the tribe of
Juda.

The only
water in the
town is that
collected in
cisterns.

Formerly
there were
fountains in
the town

¹ Fr. *s'assist la*, sat there.

³ Fr. *l'oir*, the heir.

⁴ *Orig. Inda.*

⁵ Fr. *Judéc*, Lat. *Judaia*.

⁶ Fr. "*du desert et du mont de Libanc*," from the desert and from Mt.
Libanus.

⁷ Fr. *usent*, employ, use.

which were
stopped up
during the
wars.

ran in to hit / ¹But they were stopped by the warre¹ / The leste² of
alle the fontaynes was gyon, whiche Ezechyas the kyng stopped, lyke
as the scripture sayth. Gyon is now a place in the toun toward
the south, within the valeye that is named Ermon. There is a ⁴
chirche founded in the worship of seynt pretopt marter. There in
that same place was Salamon enoynted, as is red in the thirde book
of kinges. without the toun a two myle or thre ben founden somme
fontaynes, but they be but fewe / and they rendre but lytil water. 8

A mile from
the town is
the renowned
fountain of
Siloam.

In the partye toward the south, where as the two valeyes assemble /
is a fontayne moch renommed, whiche is named Syloe / our lord
commaundes³ to the blynde man that neuer had seen that he shold
goo wasshe hym in the water there of this fontayne, and he sawe ¹²
clerely & incontinent was made hool / this fontayne is but a lytil
myle fro the toun. It semeth that it boylleth a lytil / som tyme it
spryngeth not, somme saye that alwaye the .ij / daye the water
cometh agayn atte ferthest. whan the turkes of the toun knewe that ¹⁶

The Turks
stopped up
all the foun-
tains for five
or six miles
around.

[* If. 116, bk.]

oure men cam / they stopped the mowthes of thyse fontaynes & of
the Cysternes a fyue or .vj myle aboute / ffor they thought that the
pylgrims for lacke of watres sholde not mayntene theyr syege to
fore the toun / And⁴ without fawte that they had grete lack and ²⁰
mesease therby, as ye shal here folowyng: they that were within

Within the
city they had
great plenty
of water,
while the pil-
grims with-
out suffered
greatly.

the cyte had grete plente of water in Cisternes / and fro the fon-
taynes without cam grete haboundance by conduytes, whiche
descended in to .ij / pscynes right grete by the temple, that one ²⁴
endureth yet in to this day / and is named probatica piscina /
where as they were wonte to wasshe the flesshe of the sacrefyses /
of whiche the gospel speketh, and sayth that it had .v. porches
where the angele descended and meuid the water / And he that ²⁸
fyrst entred after the meuyng of the water was made hool of what
dysesease that euer he had. In that place oure sauour Ihesu Crist
heeled a lame man that had leyn there many yeres.

Of the nombre of them of thoost / of them of Iheru- 32
salem, and how oure men lodged them in the
siege to fore Iherusalem. Capitulo Clxxij^o

¹⁻¹ Fr. "*mais elles furent estoupées par la guerre,*" but they were stopped
up by war. ² Fr. "*la moindre, de toutes les fontaines.*"

³ *Orig. commannes.*

i N the yere of thyn carnacion of our sauour Ihesu Criste / The pilgrims
 Mlxxxxix in the moneth of Iuyn, the vij daye of the sayd^d encamped
 moneth, was lodged the hoost of cristiente to fore the holy Cyte of before Jeru-
 4 Iherusalem / The nombre of them that were there, as wel men and salem, June
 wymmen, were / xl / M. There were not men defensable of the 7th, 1099.
 foote men aboue / xx. M. On horsback were not passyng^d a / xv. C. Their number
 Alle the other were feble men, as seke men and wymmen, and^d also was about
 8 ol^d peple. within the toun were men able to bere Armes .xl. thousand, 40,000.
 whiche were comen in fro cytees and castellys ther aboute. And^d they
 were the best men of Armes, and chosen for the valyauntest that
 they coude fynde / After that oure men were arryued^d to fore the
 12 toun: They hadde a grete counseyl emonge them, And^d called^d the They held a
 Cristen men of the Countree for to demaunde of them in what syde council as to
 they myght beste assiege the Toun / They sawe wel that toward^d which side of
 thoryent, Ne toward^d the Southe they myght nought doo for the attack first.
 16 deepe valeys that ben there. Therefore they accorde^d to sette the They decided
 siege to fore the northeste / Wherefore it was so that fro the yate upon the
 named^d the yate of Seynt Steuen, whiche stondesth in the North-Est; North-East;
 vnto the other yate that standeth toward^d the weste / And^d is named^d and each of
 20 the yate of Dauy^d, were lodged^d alle the Barons and^d the other pyl- the great
 gryms. The valyaunt Duc of loreyne had^d the fyrst place / In the barons took
 second^d was therle¹ of fflaundes, In the thyrde was the duc of up his position
 Normandye / The fourth place held Tancre besyde a tour of a near the walls.
 24 Corner, whiche yet is named the tour of Tancre / And other grete [1 leaf 117]
 men were lodged there with hym. ffro this toure vnto the yate of
 Ocident comprysed^d therle of tholouse the place, and^d the people
 that were with hym / But after Tancre sawe that by cause the tour
 28 defende^d the yate so wel / and also for the valeye that was so
 nyghe he myght but lytil proufyte there, therefore by the counseyl
 of the wyse men that knewe wel the beyng of the toun he remeyud
 fro thens / and² wente on the tertre on whiche the cyte is sette on
 32³ bytwene the toun and the chirche of seynt Symeon³ / whiche is
 withoute the Cyte as far as an Archer maye shote at ones / There
 he lodged^d hym to thende that he myght beste greue the toun there.
 And^d for to deffende the turkes this sayd chirche, whiche is holy,
 36 ffor there sowped our lord with his discyples / and^d weeshe humbly

² *Orig. aud.*³⁻³ Fr. "*entre la ville et l'eglise qui a non Syon*," i. e. between the city and the church whose name is Sion, not "*Simcon*." Lat. "*inter urbem et ecclesiam quae dicitur Syon*."

This is the place where the Virgin Mary died.

theyr feet. There descended the holy ghoost in fyry tonges on witsoudaye. In the same place passed oute of this world the glorious vyrgyne Marye / whiche bare in her precious body the saucour of the world. ther is shewde the sepulture of seynt steuen. 4

How oure men began tassaylle Iherusalem / And of the grete dilygence that they dyde to make engyns for to take it / ca^o Clxxiiij^o

w Han the barons were thus lodged fro the yate toward north-este, as I haue sayd, vnto the tour on the corner which is vpon the vale of Iosaphat / And fro thens vnto that other corner of the cyte whiche is on the pendaunt of the same vale toward the south. thenne was it thyng euydente that the one half of the toun was wyth payne or vnnethe assieged. ffor fro thens that I haue sayd vnto the yate named mount Syon, the Cyte was no thyng assieged.

The fifth day after they took their positions an assault was ordered.

The fyft daye after that thoost was lodged to fore the Cyte / it was acorded comynly, and cryed thurgh alle the lodgys, that alle men shold be armed the best wyse they myght and come to thassault. They cam alle, and began moche strongly thassaylle aboute the toun. They hadde the hertes moche hardy, and brennyng desyres and wylle to doo the werke of oure lord / In theyr comyng on they toke the barbycannes that were right ayenst them.

[² If. 117, bk.] The Turks in the city were greatly alarmed at our boldness;

¹ And the turkes embatilled them within the grete wallys¹ / They of the toun were so effrayed of the grete hardynesse² and prowesse that they sawe with oure peple and had ouer grete fere, in suche wyse that they loste alle theyr hope for to deffende the toun, and was wel knowne afterward / that yf the talent of our men had endured, and that they had had skalyng laddres & castellys by whiche they myght haue approuched the walles of the toun,³ They had taken it certaynly. but whan thassault had endured fro erly mornynge that same daye vnto one of the klok of the same daye at after none / They apperceyued wel that withoute engynes they myght not doo grete hurte ne dommage to the toun / therfor they withdrew them abak, & purposed to come agayn to thassault, whan theyr engyns shold be better ordeyned. The barons toke counseyl among them for taduyse / how they myght fynde manere to make engyns for tassaylle the toun. ffor them semed that in alle 36

but the pilgrims soon perceived that without engines of war they could not take the city.

¹⁻¹ Fr. "et les Turcs embatirent dedans les grans murs."

³ Orig. tonn.

the countree shold not be founde trees ne wode ynowe for to make
 suche thynges as they sholde nede. But a valyaunt¹ man of the
 countre cam forth and told to them of a valeye .vj / or vij. myle
 4 thens, whiche was ful of trees and grete ynowghe for to make
 engyns / They sente theder grete nombre of Carpenters, And somme
 of the barons to conduyte them / Eche of them hewe down the
 tres, and dyde do brynge them in charyottes / Thenne made they
 8 come alle them of thoost that coude medle with suche thynges, and
 dyde do make engyns, perierers / Magonneauls, castellys, chattes /
 and wayes couerd, moche grete plente / The pylgryms that coude
 werke toke none hyre ne wages yf they had as moch as they myght
 12 entretiene and kepe them self / The other that were pour receyued
 theyr wages of the comyns / ffor of all the barons of thoost / ther
 was none that myght paye the costes of this werke sauf therle of
 tholouse. ffor he hym self allone sustained of his propre good all the
 16 werkemen without thaide of ony other. & also to many knyghtes
 that had despended theyr good dyde he gyue many grete yeftes.
 whyles that the barons were thus besy, that eueryche dyde do make
 his engyns for hym self / The other knyghtes & the mene peple ran
 20 vnto bussches and hedges / ffor to fetche stockes and roddes with
 grete dilygence for to make pynnes.² None was ydle, but alle men
 heelp to this werke. Ther was noman had shame ne despyte to
 doo thynges that myght auaylle; ffor they sayd well that alle theyr
 24 trauaylle and despences that they had don & made in alle theyr
 waye were nothyng worth yf this enterpryse for to take this toun
 were not wel accomplyshed.

They found
trees for their
engines in a
valley near
by.

All worked
diligently—
the rich gave
their time,
and the poor
were paid.

No man was
ashamed to
do anything
that might
help.

³How our peple were in grete meschyef at the sayd
 28 sieg, & how the turkes deserted them by cause
 they myght entre and yssue in and out of the
 toun. ca^o Clxxiiij

[³ leaf 115]

i N thoost had they grete mesease of thurst, ffor as I haue sayd
 32 to you the place where the cite stondesth in is moch aerye &
 drye, withoute fontaynes, withoute wellys & pyttes of water spryng-
 ynge / ffor they of the toun, whan they herd saye / that oure peple
 cam, they fylled somme pyttes that were ⁴withoute the toun nygh
 36 to the Cysternes where as was rayn water⁴ / and they had couerd

They suffered
greatly from
lack of water.

¹ *Orig.* valyaunt. ² Fr. *cloyes*, i. e. hurdles, wattles, not "pynnes."

⁴ Fr. "*Lors de la ville pres. Les citernes mesmes ou il avoit eau de pluie.*" Caxton divided his sentence here wrongly, and spoiled the sense.

The Christians of the country told them of fountains and cisterns near the city.

The sufferers from thirst grew more and more intense.

All their animals died for lack of water.

[² If. 118, bk.]

Great numbers of men also died.

and stopped them, to thende that the pylgryms sholde haue none ease of water / But the cytezeyns of bethlehem, and they of a lytil cyte called tecua, that knewe the countre al aboute / tolde and enseygned to them somme fontaynes / brokes, pyttes, and Cisternes. 4
 ther was grete prees and grete mesease / suche tyme there was, that whan the pour peple myght brynge theyr barellis & vessellys ful of troubled water and thycke, They sold it rychely in thooste / The fontayne of syloe, of whiche I haue spoken to fore, myght not 8
 suffyse them, ffor it spryngeth not alway, and yet that was not right good. Thanguysse of thurste grewe moche of the heete that was in Iuyn / And of the trauaylle that they suffred, and for the duste that entred in theyr mowthes / whan two or thre had founden 12
 ony water rennyng or welle / alle ran theder / in suche wyse that it faylled anon / The men a foote were not in so grete desease as they that had horses / ffor they ledde them somtyme thre or foure myle ferre for to watre them, & yet vnnethe founde they ynowgh. there 16
 were many that lefte theyr horses / and habandoned to goo where they wold, and other beestys for defaulte of water. ye shold haue seen mules, Asses / Oxen, Kyen, and horses goon withoute garde or kepar in the felde / Atte laste, whan the beestys had long languys- 20
 shed / they deyde / wherof cam grete stenche in thoost, wherof the ayer was corrupte ouer peryllously / The peple was not in lasse anguysshe there for thurste, than they had ben to fore at Anthyoche for hongre. / Oure men were acustomed for to seche pasture for theyr 24
 horse moche ferre fro the toun in vyllages ther about. The turkes of the toun¹ marked it, and yssued where as the siege lay not / and cam ayenst them and slewe many, and toke away theyr horse / And brought them in to the Cyte. Many escaped that fledde vnto 28
 thooste. Euery daye lassed the ²nombre of the pylgryms by many suche aduentures / and by grete Infyrmyte and sekenesses that were in thooste / and by many other causes, wherof many deyed / And in the place of them cam none other / But they in the toun 32
 encreced and grewe euery day, ffor to them cam newe ayde & grete refreshementes of men and vytaylle that myght entre and yssue by the yates beyng oute³ of the siege.

How the turkes enforced them to make merueylleous 36
 engyns ayenst⁴ the owres, And of the meschyef

¹ Orig. tonn.

³ Orig. onte.

⁴ Fr. "*encontre les nostres*," against our men.

that they dyde to the cristen men that dwellyd
in the toun. ca^o Clxxv^o

- m Oche were our barons in grete payne for to make & adresse the
4 engynes. The mene peple payned them ententyfly to seche
and purchasse suche ayde and helpe as they myght / They that
were in the toun fayned nothyng, but made¹ grete cure and grete
entente to make other engyns ayenst oures. they toke good hede to
8 the Instrumentes that oure men made for tassaylle them. And
they adressyd as good or better to defende them / ffor they had
gretter plente of tymbre within the toun than they hadde that were
without. the toun was moche wel garnysshed of alle thynges that
12 they neded to fore that our peple cam. they had grete plente of
Cordes, stones² wel fetyced, and other thynges more than they
neded. the cristen men of the toun were more trauaylled and
charged with thyse werkes than any other men. And also they
16 were beten cruelly, And somme they slewe. And with alle thyse
mesauentures³ ⁴they bare them on honde that they were traytours,⁴
and descouered theyr counseyl to theyr enemyes / there was none of
the cristen men that durst goo vpon the walles / But yf he were
20 charged or laden with stones or tymbre, and yf they had ony vytaylles
in their howses it was take from them, in suche wyse that they
suffred many meseases / whan one had nede of ony tree⁵ / anon
they bete down the hows of a crysten man / for to haue a lytil
24 pyece of tymbre. yf they taryed a lytil to come at the hour assygned,
anon they were beten and hurt ouer sorowfully. they were brought
to so moch sorow / that there were but fewe / but they had leuer to
haue been deed than a lyue. they durst in no wyse yssue out of
28 their howses without commaundement.

The Turks
in Jerusalem
also made
engines of
war,

for which
they had a
great abun-
dance of
material.

They made
the native
Christians do
all the heavy
work,

and treated
them cruelly.

- ⁶In this tyme arryued a shippe of Genewys⁷ atte [6 leaf 119]
porte of halappe / and how theyr messagers cam
in thoost, and how to the barons they made
32 theyr requeste. Capitulo / Clxxvj^o

¹ Fr. "Mettoient grant cure," took great pains.

² Fr. "pierres toutes fetices," i. e. stones cut the proper size.

³ Orig. mesauentures.

⁴ Fr. "les mettoient sus qu'ilz estoient traitres," they accused them of being traitors.

⁵ Fr. *just*, timber.

⁷ Fr. *Genevois*, Genoese.

a T the Siege of Jerusalem the pylgrims conteyned them as I
 haue sayd / Thenne cam a messenger that brought tydynges /
 that somme shippes of the Genewes¹ were arryued atte porte of
 halappe, And moche requyred the barons of thoost, they that were 4
 come in the shippes, that they wold sende to them somme knyghtes
 for to conduyte them vnto thooste. The Barons prayde therle of
 tholouse, whiche was most rychest of them / that he wold sende
 theder somme of his men / he dyde that they requyred, And sente 8
 a knyght of his named wyldemart Carpynele, and delyuerd to hym
 .xxx. horsmen / and .L / men a foote / After that they were
 departed / the barons sayde to therle that he had sente ouer fewe
 men, and prayd hym that he wold sende yet moo; he agreed wel, 12
 And sente Remon pelet and Guyllamme de Arsbran with .L /
 horsemen. But er they had ouertaken this wyldemart / whiche
 wente alway forth til he was come bytwene Lyde & rames in the
 playnes that ben there / ther mette hym .vj. C turkes on horsbak 16
 which ran vpon hym rudely. At this fyrst recountre they slewe
 four of oure horsmen, & moo of them a foote / yet our men were
 not disconfyted / but helde them to gydre, And warned eche other
 to doo well. In this tyme, whyles they fought to gydre / Thyse 20
 two knyghtes that cam after, and theyr companye sawe this scar-
 nuche, and so moche hasted that they cam and ioyned with our
 other men. Thenne began they to doo wel, in such wise that they
 disconfyted the turkes and put them to flyght, and slewe .ij. C. 24
 turkes of them / Of our men were slayn two valyaunt knyghtes, for
 whom alle the other were sory, that one was named Gylbert² de
 treue, And that other Achart³ de mountuille. whan our men had
 thus disconfyted the turkes, they cam to Iaphe, where they were 28
 receyued with moch grete ioye. the maronniers of Gene receyued
 them moche honorably / whyles as they sojourned there, and dis-
 charged theyr shippes for to aduyse and ordeyne how they myght
 come in the hooste. Sodayly or ony man toke hede of hit, the 32
 nauye of them of egypte, whiche was more redy in the porte of
 Sklauonye,⁴ sawe theyr tyme for to hurte our peple, cam to fore
 Iaphe. whan oure men and the genewes apperceyued this / hastily
 they descende^d to the see / fyrst they ⁵ essayed for to deffende 36
 them / but they, whan they sawe that there cam so moche peple
 that they myght not resiste them, they disgarnyshe^d theyr shyppes

Some Genoese
ships arrived
at the port of
Aleppo.

The Earl of
Toulouse sent
some men to
conduct these
new-comers
to the army.

On the way
they had a
skirmish
with the
Turks.

An Egyptian
fleet now ap-
peared in the
harbour.

[⁵ ff. 119, bk.]

¹ Fr. *Geninois*, Genoese. ² *Orig. de trene, but Fr. "de Treve."*

³ Fr. *Achart de Montnelle.* ⁴ Fr. *Escaloine.*

as faste as they myght, and bare away cordes, cables and^d saylles, The Genoese dismantled their ships, and the other takle, and bare it and leyde it in the fortesse. One shippe of the genewes, whiche was goon for somme gayne vpon the
 4 see / cam alle laden with grete gayne / and wolde¹ arryued^d at the porte of Iaphe / but they of the shippe knewe wel fro ferre that the nauye of the turkes helde the porte. Therfor they caste about and tordned theyr saylle, and wente to the Lyche / The cyte of Iaphe
 8 was thenne alle deserte and voyde of peple, ffor the cytezeyns of the toun trusted not wel in theyr fortesse / Therfor they were goon a litil byfore that our men cam, of which it happe^d that oure men kepte nomore than the tour / And^d whan they sawe theyr tyme, they
 12 made them redy, and^d sette theyr thynges all in ordenaunce, and wente theyr waye and cam in to thoost, where they were receyued^d then came in a body and joined our army. They were joyfully received. with grete ioye / ffor the maronnens of gene were moche good^d Carpenters, & coude wel make engynes & other Instrumentes of
 16 warre, in suche wyse that syth they were comen / the barons began more delyerly, and the better theyr enterpryses to brynge to an ende.

How alle the pylgryms, eueryche after his estate
 20 payned them to make thengyns for thassault.

ca^o. Clxxvij^o.

t Hey that abode in thoost dyde theyr power for tadresse their engyns / ffor the duc godefroy, the duc of normandye, & therle of
 24 fflaundres had a valyaunt man which was moch wise & iuste named Gace² de veer / he had^d the charge for to take hede to the werkm^en / This man dyde do make theyr werkes Iustly and^d wel / The barons conduyte^d the men a foote for to gadre to gydre the Roddes
 28 and bowes of trees for to make wittes and pynnes for to couere the engyns, And^d also to hewe the grete tymbre and^d brynge it to the hoost to the werkm^en / they toke the hydes of the beestes that deyde and stratche^d them vpon thengynes for to kepe & defende
 32 them fro fyre / In this partye toward^d the northeast the barons entremedled vygorously, as I haue sayd, for to assaylle fro the tour of the angle or corner vnto the west gate / Tancre tranaylle^d also moche, and the other knyghtes that were there lodged for taduyse
 36 how the cyte myght be wel assaylled on theyr syde. On the syde toward^d the ³south / there was therle of tholouse and^d his peple. he The barons assail the city on the north-east. [³ leaf 120]

¹ Fr. *vouloit arriver*, wished to land. ² Fr. *Gace de Bear*, Lat. *Beart*.

Gulliam
Ebryac di-
rected the
work of the
Genoese
sailors.

was moost ryche of them / and therfor he had the moost peple that wrought. They of Genes were drawn alle to hym / whiche had a Capytayn, a moche excellent werkman named Gylliam¹ Ebryac. he made them to haste moche the werke, and to amende it / Thus 4 was alle thoost occupyed in this werke four monethes all hool / They had so moche employed that eueryche of the barons had doo made right that whiche he had begonne and entreprysed. Therfor they counseyllled emonge them, & ordeyned at a day sett to goo to 8 thassault / But for as moch as therle of tholouse and tancre had be grete Rancour and wrath / and somme of the other Barons and knyghtes that loued not wel to gyder for dyuerse reasons / The barons, by the admonestacion of the bisshops, wolde that of alle 12 debate shold be good peas / and that eche shold pardone other all euyll wyll and talente / by cause that our lord shold helpe them the better in doynge and accomplyshyng his worke. And yf it happed them to dye, the surer myght they attende the deth. 16

The work is
finished, and
all quarrels
settled.

Of the fayr processions that oure pylgryms made to
thende that god shold gyue them vycторыe / and
how they pardoned eche other theyr mal talentes
and euyll wylls / ca°. Clxxviij 20

They go in a
procession
bearing all
the reliques
of the army.

t He daye was ordeyned and taken by comyn acorde of alle, that procession shold be made, & the relyquyes shold be borne suche as were had in thoost. They shold alle goo vnto the mount of Olyuet, And they shold mayntene them this day in fastyng, In 24 repentaunce of theyr synnes / and in orysons and prayer vnto our lord to thende that he wold haue pyte of his peple / and receyue² in gree theyr seruyse, in suche wyse that by them his herytages myght be recouerd fro the handes of his enemyes which helde it 28 in their possession / Peter theremyte on that one part, and arnold³, the chappellayn of the Duc of Normandye / whiche was a grete clerk and wyse, of that other parte, made the sermon to the peple. They exhorted them by swete wordes to enterpryse vygorously the 32 werke of oure lord / wherin it were better to deye than to lyue. The mount of Olyuete is ayenst Iherusalem in the eeste partye, about a myle fer fro the toun / ffor the vaal of Iosaphat is bytwene bothe. there assembled our lord, his discyples, and styed³ and ascended vp 36 to fore them alle in to heuen the day of thassension / and wente vp

Peter the
Hermit, and
Arnold,

preach to the
peple.

[3 ff. 120, bk.]

¹ Orig. Gnylliam.

² Fr. "receüst en gré leur servicc."

in a clowde which toke hym / whan alle the peple had ben there in
 grete wepynges and prayers / and alle the debates appeased that
 were among them / they descended fro the hylle in to the chirche
 4 of mount syon, whiche is by the Cyte, as I haue sayd, in the side
 toward the southe on the toppe of a tertre / The sarasyns of the
 toun that were in the toures and vpon the walles of the toun,
 merueylled moche. what this myght be that oure men made there /
 8 and where they myght see the presse nygh to them within shotte.
 They cessed not to shote arowes, and quarellys in suche wyse that
 they hurted somme. Thenne addressyd they crosses vpon the
 walles / and in despyte of our sauour, and in reproche of oure
 12 fayth, spytte on them, and made other shames and fowle thynges
 whiche be not for to be sayd. The people² of our lord, which
 were in holy wylle for to serue hym / sawe wel thise thynges that
 the turkes made / theyr desyre grewe and encreaced moche in theyr
 16 hertes for tauenge the shame of our³ lord Ihesu Criste / whan they
 had made theyr orysones and prayers in the chirche of mount Syon /
 The day was to them ordeyned and named for to make thassault by
 comyn acorde / Thenne they retourned to theyr lodgys, yf ther was
 20 any thyng to be maide on theyr engyns, anon it was accomplysshid /
 for euery man toke good hede aboute hym that no thyng faylled
 that shold be necessarye to make thassault ayenst theyr enemyes.

All the people
weep and
pray.

The Turks
on the walls
insult the
Christians
and their
religion.

The day is
set for the
assault.

How oure men sodenly transported in the nyght
 24 theyr engyns vnto the other part of the toun for
 tassaylle on that side. Capitulo / Clxxix:

w Han the day approched that they had named for tassayle the
 Cyte / the nyght to fore, the valyaunt duc godeffroy, the erle
 28 of fflaundes / and the duc of normandye sawe that this partye
 of the Cyte that they had assieged was moche wel garnysshed of
 alle maner of engyns, and the moost defensable men⁴ of the Cyte
 they had sette there. Therefore they doubted more this part, than
 32 any other / The noble men had herupon counseyll / They knewe
 wel that they myght not endommage the toun there. And enter-
 pryed a thyng of a right grete affayre and of moche grete trauallye /
 for alle thengynes that they had by them, And the castel to fore

¹ Orig. aud.

² Orig. peole.

³ Orig. onr.

⁴⁻⁴ Fr. "*les hommes les plus defensables*," their most capable men. Lat. *viris fortibus*.

The night
before the
leaders of the
army changd
the plan of
assault.

[1 leaf 121] and carry their engines to the north-east side, which was not so well defended.

They draw up a great castle to the walls.

The Turks were astonished in the morning at this change.

Each of the great barons brought his engines up near the walls.

the sydes were Ioynd^d to gydre, they bare ¹them alle. On that other syde whiche is bytwene the gate of seynt stephen & the tour of thangle / that is toward the northeest / ffor them semed & it was trouthe, that by cause that the cyte had not be assieged on that syde that ther shold^d be the lasse defence / wherof it happed^d that they woke al the nyght as wel they as theyr peple, in suche wyse that theyr engyns were alle ioynd and reysed vp byfore day or er the sonne aroos, in the places where they ought to be. The castel was so approuched the walle / and was moche hyer, in so moche that they that were therin were almoost as hye as one of the toures / and knowe ye for certayn / that this was noo lytil trauaylle, ffor fro this place where they were fyrst lodged^d vnto the place where they sette their engyns was nygh half a myle. And^d the thynges were so wel and so hooly ordeyned, that to fore the sonne rysyng all thyng was redy at them. on the mornyng the turkes byhelde on the walles and^d toures, And merueylled what this myght be that our men so trauaylled all the nyght / they sawe that the lodgys of the Duc and^d of the other barons aboute hym were remeuyd. They sought them about that other side of the toun, And founde² them there, where as they had sette no garde. when they sawe thengyns and the castel dressyd / they merueylled ouer moche, how they myght doo this werke in so lytil tyme. ffor this cause they doubted moche the more them that had^d thus enterprysed^d and^d accomplyshed^d so sodeynly in the nyght about that syde of the toun / the barons that were lodged^d as ye haue herd^d to fore / were not ydle, but reysed^d their engyns eueryche in his parte / And therle of thoulouse had made tapproche the walles a castel that he had made with moche grete trauaylle bytwene the chirche of mount Syon and^d the Cyte / the other that were nyghe the corner, whiche is called the tour of tancre, redressyd^d a castel of tree moche hye. Thyse thre castellys that were about the toun were nyhe alle of one facion, ffor they were alle square / the sydes that were toward^d the toun were double / in suche wyse that one of the panes³ that was without / myght be aualed vpon the walles, and thenne it shold^d be lyke a brydge. But for alle that the side was not vnclosed ne discourd^d, But it was hool for to deffende them that were in the castel.

² *Orig. fonnde.*

³ *Lat. latus.*

How the day folowyng our peple made a merueyllous¹
 assault, And how the turkes defended them sub-
 tyllly and wel. Capitulo Clxxx^o

- 4^{2t} He daye begonne strongly to wexe clere / Thenne, as it was [21 ff. 121, bk.]
 enterpryse^d and deuysed^d, our men were alle armed for tap- At daybreak
 proche the walles. They alle were and had one purpoos. That is our men were
 to wete,³ or they wolde take the toun vpon thenemyes of our lord^d, armed for the
 8 And delyuer the ordures of the mescreauntes fro the holy places, or assault.
 ellys in this seruyse they wold^d rendre their sowles to hym that
 made them. Ther were none that had wylle to drawe aback fro
 this werke / the old men forgate their age / the seke men they
 12 maladyes, the wyues and childeren enterpryse^d in theyr hertes⁴ to The old men,
 doo grete thynges. Alle generally payned them to drawe forth the sick, and
 the castelles, to ioyne them to the walles in suche wyse that they even the wo-
 myght approche them that defended it; they of the toun cessay^d men and chil-
 16 not to drawe and shote Incessantly grete plenty of arowes and deren were all
 quarelllys, ⁵And with theyr engyns caste grete stones / the moyen eger to help.
 peple with theyr handis⁵ threwe fro the walles and towres / their
 entente was therewith to make oure men to withdrawnen fro the
 20 walles / The good cristen men that doubted nothyng to deye couerd
 them with targes & sheldes / thise & other habyllemens they sette
 to fore them, for to kepe them fro the stones & shotte. they that Those within
 were within the castellis of tree lefte not to shote & caste stones the wooden
 24 vpon the turkes Incessantly. And other had grete leuers and castles shot
 plente of ropes and Cordes with whiche they laboured and payned at the Turks
 them to drawe forth the castellys / they that were put for to throwe incessantly.
 the stones and to occupye thengyns were not ydle, but had theyr
 28 thynges wel adressy^d, and threwe to them that defended the toun
 grete stones moche asprely, and trauaylled moche for to do thyng
 that myght greue their enemyes / But they that wold haue put
 forth the castellys myght not doo that they wold: for ther was a
 32 dych moche depe to fore the barbycane, ffor whiche they myght not
 make theyr engyns ioyne to the walles. the strokes of the stones⁶
 that were throwen on the walles dyde not moche harme to the walles
 of the cyte, ffor the turkes had sakes ful of heye & of coton, And

¹ *Orig.* merueyllons.³ *Orig.* wete.⁴ *Orig.* lertes.⁵⁻⁵ Fr. "*Les grosses pierres jettoient à leurs engins, les menues et maniables aux mains,*" viz., they threw the large stones with their engines, the smaller and more easily handled stones, with their hands.⁶ *Orig.* stones of.

The Turkes
protected
themselves
well.

[² leaf 122]

The assault
lasted from
morning to
evening time.

Those within
threw fire
and burning
oil on our
men,

who quenched
the fires
with water
and vinegar.

Our men
returned to
camp to eat
and rest.
The towns-
people left a
watch on the
walls—

grete peces of tymbre bounden with cables of shippes, whiche henge
a longe by the walles and^r towres / in suche wyse that whan the
stones of thengyns smote thyse softe thynges / the strokes were lost
and made no hurte to the walles. On that other syde the turkes 4
within the toun had^r moo engyns adressy^d than we had without /
& more quantite of other artyllerye, of Arbalestres withoute¹ com-
paryson that we hadde / by whiche they slewe many of the pil-
grims, & it myght not be but that our peple were ²sore aferd. 8
Thus was thassault moche grete & peryllous fro the mornyng vnto
euensong tyme / and duryng thassault it cessed neuer of Arowes
and^r stones fleyng more thycke, than was in a / M. yere to fore /
There were so many that ofte the stones mette & hytte eche other 12
in thayer / in suche wyse that they brak and^r flewe in pyeces.
Thassault was in thre places. And the barons payned them sore to
greue the turkes / men myght not wel knowe whiche partye had
the better / Oure pylgryms were put to grete payne to bere erthe 16
for to fyll the dyche, to thende that the castellys myght ioyne to
the walles / They within threwe fyre moche thycke in to the
castellys / men myght see many arowes brennyng,³ brondes, pottes
ful of sulphre / of oylle / and other thynges, nourysshing to fyre. 20
⁴The stones to brak that the pyeces flewe thurgh out the sydes /⁴
And^r it myght not be but that many were hurte that were aboue for
tassaylle / hyt seme^d many tymes that alle shold^r falle to the
ground. but our men quenchy^d the fyre with water and vyneger / 24
and had^r redy pynnes for to stoppe the holes / and^r also for to holde
to gydre theyr castellys moche Iustely, in suche wyse that theyr
contenaunces were in alle thynges good and hardy.

The nyght departed the sayd assault, Our peple with- 28
drew them / and how they watched wel theyr en-
gyns / and the turkes the toun / Capitulo Clxxxj^o.

t His grete assault & peryllous, that so long endured^r the derk
nyght departed. Our men retorned to theyr lodgys for to etc 32
and^r reste, they lefte grete watche aboute theyr engyns / by cause
the turkes shold not brenne them, and they of the toun made grete
watche to kepe theyr walles, ffor they / doubted^r moche that oure
peple, whom they had^r seen so vygorously assaylle / and^r defende 36

¹ Orig. wthoute.

³ Orig. brennyug.

⁴⁻⁴ Fr. "leurs porrieres y frappaient si grans coups quelles s'envoloient par my les costes oultre."

them, myght by nyght come vp on the walles by laddres and entre
 in to the toun. Therfor they peyned them to make good watche
 alle this nyght / and to goo round about the walles and serche the
 4 towres / The stretes also made watche within the toun with grete also in the
 streets, for
 fear of trea-
 son.
 nombre of people, by cause of fere of trayson. They sette heron¹
 grete entente, ffor it was for the sauacion of theyr lyues / theyr
 wyues, theyr childeren, & alle theyr goodes hoolly. Our peple that
 8 were in the tentes and in the lodgys had not theyr hertes in reste,
 but they remembryd² of thassault that had be / Euery man ^[? lf. 122, bk.] remem-
 bryd hym what he had don, And hym semed that he had left
 many thynges vndon that he ought to haue don. And moche
 12 desired they alle to come to the poynt for to doo prowesse. the
 daye taryed long er it cam as they thought / them semed that they
 had no greef ne ennoye of the trauaylle that they had suffred that
 day. They had grete hope in theyr hertes / that assone as they
 16 shold come agayn to gydre for tassaylle, that they by the helpe of The pilgrims
 had great
 hopes that
 the next day
 they would
 be successul.
 our lord they shold haue the better. And they were in grete
 anguysshe / by cause them semed to be in more mesease in their
 lodgys than in thassault.

20 How our peple retorned agayn on the morn to thas-
 sault / And of the sorceryes³ that they wold haue
 charmed one of our engyns. Capitulo Clxxxij^o

t He sprynge of the daye appiered, the peple Incontinent were
 24 awaked. Eche wente to the place where he had ben the daye At daybreak
 every one was
 in his place
 again;
 to fore / Thenne sholde ye haue seen somme renne to thengynes
 and other goo vpon the castellys for to shote with bowes and
 arabalestres. And many abode vnder for to drawe the sayd cas-
 28 tellys forth. Nowe were they of the toun anon redy for to defende
 vygorously ayenst the assayllers. There deyed ynowgh on bothe
 sydes as wel of stones as of quarellys / but not for that, the other
 lefte not /. but gretely they dyde theyr deuoyr / ne neuer was never was
 seen less
 cowardice in
 so perillous a
 work.
 32 founden lasse cowardyse in so peryllous affayre & werke. One
 thyng happed that ought not to be forgotten / that is, that our men
 had an Instrument called Caable, so strong and⁴ so wel made that
⁵it threwe thre grete stones attones.⁵ And dyde moche hurte in

¹ *Orig.* beron. ³ Fr. *sorcieres*, Sorcerers, witches: not "sorceries."

⁴ *Orig.* aud.

⁵ Fr. "*elle getoit trop grosses pierres*," it threw very large stones instead of three large stones.

The Turkes
brought two
old wyches
and three
maidens to
charm the
engines of
our men.

Our men
threw stones
and killed
the three
maidens.

[² leaf 123]

the toun where it atteyned. the turkes sawe wel that they coude not breke it / ffor it threwe fro so ferre that their engins myght not come ther to / therfor they dyde do come vpon the walles .ij. old¹ wyches or enchaunteresses, whiche shold charme this engyne / and 4 they had with them iij maydens, for to helpe to make theyr charme / Alle they of oure hooste behelde them moche ententyfly / ffor they made their enchantement vpon the walles / they abode so longe there that thengyne threwe the stones / & atteyned the two old 8 wyches and the thre maydens in such wise that they were smeton alle to pyeces, and fyl down deed fro the walles, of whom the sowles wente forthe to helle. Thenne oure peple made an hu and a crye so grete / And¹ 2 so grete ioye therof / that euery man of them was 12 refresshyd² of this good strook / They of the toun were our sorowfull and moche abasshed, in suche wyse that they semed³ that they had loste alle theyr good ewr and fortune for the losse of thyse two wyches that thus were slayn. 16

Of the despayr of our peple at the sayd assault. And how they were recomforted by a knyght vnknowen, and euydent myracles.

Capitulo / Clxxxiiij^o 20

i N this poynt endured⁴ thassault vnto after myddaye / that men knewe not whiche of them had the better / Our men began to wexe wery / ⁴And thassault tourned them to annoye and grief / ffor they had longe don alle theyr power / And the werke was not 24 moche amended, but were falle in a desperaunce / in suche wyse that they had talente to leue the castell of tree, whiche was nygh al to broken of the stones and shotte / and wolde drawe abak the other engyns that smoked⁵ of the fyere that the turkes had caste 28 therin, therefore⁵ wold they prolonge thassault til on the morn / And herof to doo thus they had good wylle. ⁶Theyr enemyes aperceuyed this / that they lefte thassault⁶ thus, & were reysek⁶ in

Our men
began to wax
weary,

and their
engines were
smoking
with fire.

¹ *eurent*, had, omitted.

³ *Orig.* seed.

⁴ Fr. "*et leur torna l'affaire à ennui*," and the affair began to annoy them.—This is a good sample of Caxton's "literal" translations.

⁵ *Orig.* herfore.

⁶⁻⁶ Fr. "*leurs ennemis s'estoient aperceuz qu'ilz se lassoient moult chierement*," i. e. their enemies perceived that they were becoming seriously tried. Caxton has mistaken *se lassoient* (were becoming fatigued), for *laissoient* (were leaving).

to grete pryde. They mocquet^t oure peple, & sayd to them many
 fowle and^t shamefull wordes, and^t more asprely defended them self /
 and^t hurte^t thengyns. In moche feble poynt was the conduyt of
 4 oure pylgryms. And yf ne had be the debonayrte of oure lord^t /
 whiche by myracle comforted^t them, like as ye shal here. ffro the
 mount¹ of olyuet appiered a knyght whiche was not knowen ne
 neuer myght be founden. This knyght began to shake and meue
 8 his shelde, whiche was moche cleer and^t shynnyng^t. And^t made
 signe to our peple that they shold now retorne,² and^t come agayne
 to thassault / The Duc godeffroy was in his estage of the castel,
 And eustace his broder with hym, for to deuise and ordeyne there
 12 that ought be don, & to kepe that holde whiche moch was good. as³
 sone as he sawe this signe that this knyght made, he began to call
 all thet peple agayn with a moch hye voys, & cryed & affermed that
 yf they wold retorne the toun shold be taken / herof it happed that
 16 by the debonayrte of oure lord^t, whiche put in the hertes hardy-
 nesse / In suche wyse that they cam agayn with so grete ioye,
 as that euery man had^t be in certayne of the vycторыe. So grete
 4hardynes was come in to their hertes / that they were entierly
 20 refresshyd / as they that in al that day had suffred no trauaylle /
 and^t one thyng happed whiche was grete meruaylle / ffor they that
 were hurte peryllously / and^t⁵ laye in theyr beddes / sprange vp
 anon and reprysed^t theyr harnoyes and^t armes in suche wyse that
 24 more dylgently and^t of greter herte than the other / [they] began to
 assaylle. The Barons of thoost that were Capytayns of the peple
 for to gyue ensample to other men / put them self alway to fore /
 where the grettest daungiers were / were founden the moost hye
 28 men of thoost / by whiche the mene peple were the more hardy /
 The wymmen that myght bere no armes ran with theyr pottes ful of
 water thurgh thoost / and gaf to all them that were wery of assayl-
 lyng to drynke / And moche admonested them by fayr wordes for
 32 to doo wel / And^t to serue our lord vygorously. Oure pylgryms had^t
 so grete ioye in theyr hertes that they laboured and toke the werke
 so hertely, that within the⁶ space of half an hour they fylled the
 dyche. And^t a barbycan, whiche was moche stronge / in suche wyse
 36 that they brought the castel vnto the walle.⁷ The turkes of the
 toun had hanged, as I haue sayd, with cordes long pyeces of tymbre

The Turkes
 mocked them
 with foul
 words.

At this
 moment a
 knight ap-
 peared on
 the Mt. of
 Olivet shak-
 ing a shining
 shield.

Our men now
 took heart,
 and renewed
 the assault.
 [* If. 123, bk.]

The great
 barons ex-
 posed them-
 selves gal-
 lantly to the
 greatest
 dangers.

The men
 worked so
 diligently
 that in half-
 an-hour the
 ditch was
 filled.

¹ *Orig.* mount. ² *Orig.* retorne. ³ *Orig.* a5. ⁵ *Orig.* aud.

⁶ Fr. "*l'espace d'une heure*," within the space of an hour.

⁷ Fr. "*Et avoient prinse*," omitted by Caxton in translating.

Two great pieces of timber were cut down from the walls,

which our men used to strengthen their castle.

a long the wall for to receyue the strokes of the stones / Emong all other there were two grete pyeces of tymbre moche longe, of whiche our men that were in the castel cutte the cordes in suche wyse that they fylle to the ground. They that were vnder toke them with 4 grete perylle / and drewe them ner the castel for to helpe to staye and sette vnder the brydge of the castel whan it shold be aualed / ffor the side of the castel that shold be lete falle vpon the walle / was of feble tymbre / in suche wyse / that yf thyse two pyeces of 8 tymbre had not be / the men of Armes mocht not haue passed on it.

How therle of thoulouse assaylled vygorously toward the south & of thardaunt desire that eche man 12 had to doo wel. ca° C lxxxiiij.

On the other side, the Earl of Toulouse

had brought his castle up to the wall.

[³ leaf 124]

The Christians fought with great boldness and hardiness,

in the hope that our Lord would help His soldiers.

Hyles as they conteyned them thus vygorously in the partye toward the northeest / the erle of thoulouse and the other that were with hym on the side toward the south assaylled there 16 with grete strengthe: they had fylled a dyche, in whiche they had laboured, I wote not how many dayes, in suche wyse that by force they¹ had drawn theyr castel, so ferre forth that it was nyghe the walle / In suche wyse that they that were aboute² in the last stage,³ 20 myght smyte the turkes with their glaues that defended the tour. A man coude not thynke thardaunt desyre, ne so grete anguysshe as eueryche⁴ of the cristen men had in his herte for to do wel in this assault / one thinge there was that gaf to them moche grete 24 courage / And merueylously grete hardynesse / ffor a man that was an heremyte on the mount of olyuete had promyse^d to them moche certaynly / that that same daye shold be taken the holy cyte of Iherusalem. Ne they had not forgotten the demonstraunce that the 28 knyght made to them / whan he shoke his shelde, ne neuer after was seen. they had moch hope of the vycторыe by thise signefyaunces that were shewed to them. It semed that thassaultes were bothe in one poynt in eyther syde that I haue name^d. They dyde 32 bothe right wel / And certaynly it appeere^d wel that oure lord wol^d helpe his souldyours, and brynge theyr pylgremage to an ende, whiche so longe had suffred so many maners of mesease for to doo to hym seruyse. 36

¹ *Orig.* that they.

² Fr. "*au derrrenier estage*," on the top story.

⁴ *Orig.* eneryche.

Of the pryse and takyng of Iherusalem / And how
 the Duc godeffroy entred fyrst vpon the walles.
 And who folowed after. Capitulo Clxxxv^o

- 4 t He people of the duc godeffroy and the other barons whiche
 were with hym, as I haue sayd, fought moche asprely ayenst
 theyr enemyes on theyr syde / & delyuerd to them a moch mar-
 ueyllous assault. They had don so moche that theyr enemyes
 8 wexed wery / and weryly and slowly defended them / ¹Oure men
 were drawn forth, and the dyches fylled, the barbycans taken, and
 in suche wyse they cam playn to the walles / ffor they within
 entremeted not moche, but launched and shotte vpon the walles¹ /
- 12 The duc commaunded to his peple that were vpon the castel, that
 they sette fire in the pokes of coton & in the sakes of heye that
 henge on the walles / They dyde his commaundement / thenne
 aroos a smoke so blacke and so thycke that they myght notlyng
 16 see. The wynde was northeeste, and blewe vpon the Turkes that
 were at defence vpon the walles, in suche wyse that they myght not
 opene theyr eyen ne theyr mowthes, But by force they muste
 avoyde the place that was delyuerd to them to deffende / The
 20 valyaunt Duc Godeffroye, whiche² soynously entended to the werke,
 apperceyued first that they were departed / thenne he commaunded
 that they shold drawe diligently the .ij/ pyeces of tymbre that were
 fallen fro the wall / as ye haue herd to fore / this was don anon, in
 24 suche wyse that the two endes of the two trees were leyd vpon the
³castel, And the two other endes vpon the walle / Thenne com-
 maunded that the syde of the castel that myght be late down /
 shold be late down vpon the two pyeces of tymbre / And thus was
 28 the brydge made good and strong vpon the tymbre of theyr
 enemyes / The fyrst that entred and passed by the brydge vpon
 the walles was the Duc Godeffroy of boloyne / and Eustace his
 brother with hym. After thyse tweyne cam two other knyghtes /
 32 that were also bretheren, whiche also were fyers, noble & hardy.
 That one was named lutol, and that other gylbert. They were
 borne in tornay / Anon ther siewed them grete nombre of knyghtes

The Turks
 began to wax
 wery, and to
 defend them-
 selves slowly.

The Duke
 commanded
 fire to be set
 to the bales
 of cotton on
 the walls.

The Turks
 then had to
 withdraw.

[³ If. 124, bk.]

Godfrey now
 let down the
 bridge of the
 castle,

and passed
 over on the
 walls, fol-
 lowed by
 Eustace his
 brother.

¹⁻¹ Fr. "*li nostre s'estoient tirez avant, les fosses avoient empliz, les barbecans prises, si que de plein venoient aus murs; car ceulz dedans ne s'entremettoient mais guaires de trarre, ne de lancer par dessus les murs, ne par les archieres.*" The last part of this sentence, Caxton has thoroughly misunderstood, and has completely inverted the sense.

² Fr. *soignusement.*

and of peple a foote, whiche ranne moche thycke, as moche as they myght susteyne / Anon the turkes apperceyued that our men were entred in to the toun, and sawe the baner of the duc vpon the wallys. And were disconfyted and gaf ouer the toures, and descended 4
The Turks yielded the towers.
 in to the toun, and put them in to the strait and narowe stretes for to defende them / Oure peple sawe that the duc and grete partye of the knyghtes were now entred / and that they had taken I wote not how many towres / they abode no commaundement, but adressyd 8
The Knights mount the walls, without waiting further orders.
 laddres to the walles and wente vp. It was commaunded a good whyle to fore that euery ij knyghtes shold haue a laddre, Therfor ther were grete nombre in thoost whiche anon were adressyd¹ vp. The duc ranne moche dylygently vpon the walles / and sette the 12
All the great barons entered the city,
 people as they cam in the towres. he moche hasted for to take the fortresse. Anon, after that the duc was entred, entred in the duc of Normandy, Therle of fflaundes / Tancre the valyaunt, Therle of seynt poul / Bawdyn deltors,² Gace de barce³ / Gaste de bedyers, 16
 Thomas de fere / Gyralt de Roussylon / Lowys de Monco / Conam lybres / Therle Remboul of Orenge, Conain de Montagu, Lambert his sone, and many other knyghtes whiche I can not name / whan the valyaunt Duc knewe certaynly that they were in the toun / he 20
and the gates are opened to everybody:
 called them, and commaunded that they shold goo hastely to the yate, named the yate of seynt Stephen / And that they shold opene it / whan it was open / Alle the people cam in with moche grete
this happened on Friday, about noon.
 prees, In suche wyse that there abode but fewe withoute / But alle 24
 were comen within the toun /. This was vpon a frydaye, aboute None / It is a thyng for to be beleuyd, that oure lord dyde this by grete sygnefyaunce, ffor on this daye and⁴ about that hour suffred he deth on the crosse right cruel in the same place, for the Redemp- 28
 cion of man. Therefore wold the swete lord that the peple of his trewe pylgryms shold⁵ gete⁶ this toun,⁷ and delyuer it oute of the seruage and thraldom of the hethen men, and make it free vnto Cristen men, that his seruyse myght be had therin and encreced. 32

Of the mayntenynge of our peple entred in to the toun toward the northeest / And therle of thoulouse, herof alle ygnorant, assaylled alle way /

ca° Clxxxvj° 36

¹ Fr. *dreciés*, i. e. set up.

² Fr. *Baudoin de Ullorc*.

³ Fr. *Gastes de Bearz*.

⁴ *Orig. auk.*

⁵ Fr. "*à ce jour*," on this day, omitted.

⁷ *Orig. tonn.*

t He valyaunt duc godeffroy of buyllon / the knyghtes, and the
 other men of armes that were with hym, descended fro the
 walles all armed in to the toun / They wente to gydre thurgh the
 4 stretes with their swerdes in their handes, & glayues, alle them that
 they mette they slewe & smote right doun, men, wymmen and
 childeren, sparyng none. There myght no prayers ne cryeng of
 mercy auaylle. They slewe so many in the stretes / that there were
 8 heeps of dede bodyes, and myght not goo ne passe but vpon them
 that so laye deede. The foote men wente in the other partyes of
 the toun by grete rowtes, holdyng' in theyr handes grete polaxes,
 swerdes, malles and other wepens, sleyng' alle the turkes / that they
 12 coude fynde / ffor thei were the men of the world whom our men
 had grettest hate vnto, and gladlyest wold put to deth / They were
 thenne comen vnto the mydle of the Cyte. Therle of tholouse ne
 his men knewe nothyng yet that the toun was taken, but assaylled
 16 moche fyersly the toun ayenst syon / The turkes that defended
 them ayenst hym apperceyued not that our peple were in the toun.
 But whan the crye and the noyse of¹ them that men slowe began
 to growe / The turkes behelde and sawe fro the walles / And
 20 knewe wel the baners and Armes of the cristen men, And were
 moche abasshed. They lefte alle theyr deffences, & fledde there
 where they supposed best to be saued, And by cause that the
 donegon of the toun whiche was by, and was the grettest strengthe
 24 of the cyte, Alle they that myght entre entred therin / And shette
 faste the doores on them / The erle of tholouse made the brydge of
 his castel auale vpon the walles / and entred there in the toun, he
 hym self / and the Erle of dye, yso[c]ar, remon pelet, guyllem de
 28 sabram / the bisshop of albare / & the other barons moche hastely,
 & wende that they on that part of the toun had be the first that
 had entred. thenne they wente doun of the walles / And alle the
 Turkes that they founde² in the³ stretes and in the howses they
 32 brought to deth and slewe doun right / ffro than forthon myght
 none escape, ffor whan⁴ they that fledde to fore Duc Godeffroye
 and his rowte, mette with other rowtes of oure peple, whiche smote
 them doun and slewe them without mercy / I may not reherce ne
 36 can not to you the faites of euery man by hym self / But there was
 so moche blood shedde that the canellys and ruisseheals⁵ ronne
 alle of blood / and alle the stretes of the toun were couerd with

All the in-
 habitants are
 slaughtered
 without
 mercy.

The Earl of
 Toulouse
 knew nothing
 as yet of the
 capture of the
 city,

but entered
 from this
 side, and met
 Godfrey's
 men in the
 middle of the
 city.

[31f. 125, bk.]

The streets
 ran with
 blood.

¹ Fr. "*de ceux qu'on occioit*," of those that were being killed.

² *Orig. fouade.*

⁴ superfluous.

⁵ Fr. *ruissecauls.*

It had been
a great pity,
had they not
been the
enemies of
our Lord.

dede men, In suche wyse that it was grete pyte for to see, yf it had
not be of thenemyes of our lord Ihesu Creste.

How .x/ M. turkes were slayn in the temple / And of
the grete tresour that Tancre founde in the sayd 4
temple / ca° Clxxxvij°.

Many fled to
the inner
Temple.

Tancred
followed,

and found
therein great
spoils.

i N to thynner part of the temple were fledde moche grete peple
of the toun / ¹ by cause it was the moost seynorously and rial
place of the toun.¹ And the sayd place was fast shette and closed 8
with good walles / of towres and yates / But this auaylled them
but lytil, ffor incontinent Tancre, which ladde a grete partye of
thoost with hym / ranne theder and toke it by strengthe, and slewe
many therin / And it was sayd that Tancre founde therin grete 12
hauoyr / and gold / syluer, precious stones and cloth of sylk. He
made alle to be born a way. But after, whan alle was sette in
reste / he rendryd all / And made it al to be brought in to the
comyn. The other barons, that had enserched the toun / and slayn 16
alle the turkes that they encountred, herd saye / that within the
cloysture of the temple were fled alle the remenaunt of theyr
enemyes / They alle cam to gydre theder / And founde that it was
trewe. Thenne commaunded they to theyr men that they shold 20
entre in to the place, and put them alle to deth. And so they
dyde / It was wel couenable thyng that the hethen men and fals
mysbyleuyd, whiche had fowled and shamefully had maculated
with theyr mahometry and fowle lawe of machomet, shold abyde 24
there theyr fals rytes / And that theyr blood shold also be shedd,
where as they had spred the ordure of mescreaunce. It was an
hydeouse thyng to see the multitude of peple which were slayn in
this place. They them self that had slayn hem were sore ennoyed 28
so for to beholde them, ffor fro the plante of the foot vnto the heed
was none other thyng but blood / Ther was founde that within the
closyng of the temple we²re slayn .x/M/ turkes, withoute them
that leye in the stretes and other places of the cyte. Thenne the 32
mene peple of the pylgryms ran serchyng the lanes and narrow
stretes. whan they fonde any of the turkes that had hyed them,
were it man or woman, anon he was put to deth / the barons had
deused to fore that the toun was taken, that euery man shold haue 36
the hows in the toun that he toke and fyrst seased / and it shold

[² leaf 126]
10,000 Turks
were slaugh-
tered in the
enclosure of
the temple.

¹⁻¹ Lat. "eo quod locus in parte urbis esse videretur secretior."

be his with alle appertenautes; Wherfor it was so that the Barons sette vpon the howses that they had conquerd theyr baners / The lasse knyghtes and men of Armes theyr sheldes; the men a foote 4 sette vp theyr hattes and theyr swerdes, ffor to shewe the tokenes, that the howses were thezme taken and seased, to thende that none other shold come in to it.

The knights and barons took possession of the different houses.

Of the fayr ordenaunces that the Cristen men made
8 to fore they wente for to vname them, after the
toun was taken / Capitulo Clxxxvijj^o

Han the holy Cyte was thus taken, and alle the sarasyns that
w coude be founden were slayn, the barons assembled them to
12 gydre to fore they vnarmed them / and commaunded to sette
men in the towres for to make good watche, and kepe the toun.
And sette porters for to kepe the yates, that noman from without
shold come in to the toun without leue vnto the tyme that they had
16 ordeyned and chosen a lord, by comyn acorde, that shold holde the
toun, and gouerne¹ it at his wylle. It was not merueylle if they
doubted² yet, ffor alle the cowntre was ful of sarasyns, And myght
peradventure assemble and sodenly come and smyte in to the toun
20 yf thier were not good watche and hede taken. thenne departed
the barons, and disarmed them and toke of theyr harnoyes in theyr
hostellys / and wesse theyr handes and feete moche wel / and
changed theyr clothes / Thenne began they goo bare foot, and in
24 wepynges and teeres, vnto the holy places of the Cyte / where oure
sauour Ihesu Criste had ben bodyly. they kysed the place
moche swetly where as his feet had touched / the Crysten peple
and the clergye of the toun, to whom the turkes had many tynes
28 don grete shames for the name of Ihesu Criste, cam with procession /
& bare suche relyquyes as they had ayenst the barons: and brought
them, yeldyng thanks to Almyghty God, vnto the Sepulchre / and
there it was a pytous thyng to see how the peple wepte for ioye
32 and pyte / And how they fylle doun a crosse to fore the sepulchre /
³It semed to eueryche of them that eche sawe there the bodye of
our⁴ lord there deed. there were so many teeres and wepynges that
euery man thought certaynly oure lord was there / whan they cam
36 in one of the holy places, they coude not departe, but yf it were for
thardaunt desire that they had for to goo in another. They had so

The Christians now commenced to ordain the affairs of the city.

They all went in solemn procession to the holy places,

and fell down weeping before the Sepulchre.

[3 ff. 126, bk.]

¹ Orig. goneerne.

² Orig. donbted.

⁴ Orig. onr.

They had
great joy that
our Lord had
suffered them
to see this
day.

They gave
great gifts to
the churches,

and thanked
our Lord
devoutly for
his goodness.

Many of the
pilgrims who
had died on
the way ap-
peared to
their com-
rades.

[¹ leaf 127]

moche ioye and gladnesse of this honour, that our lord had gyuen them the grace to see the day that the holy Cyte was delyuerd fro thenemyes of Ihesu Cryste by theyr trauaylles / in such wyse that they rought not ne sette not by the remenaunt of theyr lyues. 4

They offred and gaf largely to the chirches, and to men of the chirche / and made vowes to yeue yestes in their countrees, whiche thenne sette lytil by temporal thynges / ffor them thought that they were atte yates and entree of paradys, ffor neuer in this world 8 myght gretter ioye entre in to the herte of a man / than was in them in sechyng and goyng to the holy places where our sauour Ihesu Criste had ben. One shold haue had a moch harde herte, and lytil pytous, that had seen this syght / and myght haue holde 12 hym fro wepyng / whan thyse barons and alle the other peple had made thus glad chiere of this that they had accomplysshyd their pylgremage, The Bysshoppes, and generally alle the peple of the chirche, myght not departe fro the chirche of the sepulcre, ne fro 16 the other holy places. They prayd our lord moche deuoutly and ententyfly for the peple, and rendred grete graces and thankynges vnto Ihesu Criste of this that he had suffred them to see thyse holy places, where the fayth of Cristendom was fyrst gyuen / In this 20 daye happed certayn thyng that was seen of many men in the Cyte of Iherusalem, that was, the valyaunt man Aymart, the besshop of puy, whiche was dede in Anthyoche / lyke as ye haue herd to fore / many noble men whom men ought to byleue, affermed 24 certaynly that they sawe hym first mounte and goo vpon the walles of the tonn, & that he called other to come aftir hym / Of many other pilgryms also, that were to fore by the waye deed / It was certayne that they appiered to many / men the daye whan they 28 vysyted the chirches of the Cyte. By thyse thynges may wel be knowen that our lord loueth this holy cyte aboue alle other, And that this is the hiest pylgremage that may be, whan deed men ben reyseid by the wylle of oure lord for taecomplysshe theyr pyl- 32 gremage / whan oure lord Ihesu Criste aroos fro deth to lyf, the gospel sayth that the same day aroos many bodyes of them that had ben deed, and appiered to many in the cyte / This myracle 1 was renewed this day by Ihesu Criste, by this cyte whiche had 36 ben longe holden in the seygnorye of the paynems / whan it was vnder them that serued the lawe of machomet. So grete noyse was thurgh the toun of the ioye that was made, that they remembred not the grete trauaylle that they had suffred by alle theyr 40

waye / Thenne was accomplysshed alle euydently this that the
 prophete sayd / ¹Enioye ye with Iherusalem / and make ye ioie
 within them that ye loue.¹ Then was accomplished the saying of the prophet.

4 How the Cristen men, that had charged their message
 for their delyueraunce to peter theremyte, knewe
 hym / ca. Clxxxix.

a S many pour cristen men as had dwellid in the toun / which
 8 had seen Peter theremyte four or fyue yere to fore / whan
 they delyuere to hym lettres for to bere to our holy fader the pope,
 and to the barons of ffrance / to thende that they myght sette²
 remedye for theyr affayres, they knewe hym emonge the other. The poor Christians of Jerusalem recognize Peter the Hermit, and give thanks to him who has delivered them by his energy.
 12 thenne they cam to hym, and fyl down³ to his feet and wepte for
 ioie / And moche gretely thanked hym of this that he had so wel
 performed his message, ne they cessed not to yeue preysyng and
 lawde to our lord that had gyuen suche counseyl to the barons and
 16 to the peple, by which they had performed such an hye werke,
 which was aboute the hope of alle men, sauf by thayde of oure lord /
 Alle the gree and thanke they gaf to Peter theremyte, whiche so
 vygorously had enterprysed for to delyuere them by thelpe of our
 20 lord fro the caytyfnes and seruage dolorous, in whiche they had ben
 so long holden by the cruelte of the sarasyns, lyke as ye haue herd
 to fore. The Patriarke of Iherusalem was goon in to Cypres / for The Patriarch of Jerusalem was in Cyprus, and
 to demannde Almesse and ayde of the cristen men there, for to
 24 helpe and socoure the cristen men of Iherusalem to paye the cruel
 taillages that the turkes had sette vpon them, ffor he doubted yf
 they faylled of their payment / that they wold bete and throwe
 doun theyr chirches or put to deth the beste of theyr peple, lyke as
 28 they had don many tymes / to fore. This good man, the Patriarke,
 knewe nothyng of this good aenture that oure lord had don of the
 delyueraunce of the toun / But supposed to haue come and to haue knew nothing of what had happened.
 founden⁴ it in suche seruage as it was whan he departed.

32 How they clensted the toun of the dede bodyes / Of
 many other ordenaunces.⁵ And how the turkes [⁵ cf. 127, bk.]

¹⁻¹ Mistranslation: Fr. "*esjoyesiez-vous avec Jerusalem, et faites joye dedans, ceulx qui l'aimes,*" Lat. "*Laetamini cum Hierusalem, et exsultate in ea omnes qui diligitis eam.*"

² Orig. settte.

³ Orig. donn.

⁴ Orig. foudeu.

rendred the dongeon vnto the erle of tholouse.

Capitulo Clxxxx^o

After the barons had visited the Holy Places they met together,

w^t Han the barons and the other pylgryms had made theyr prayers and vusyted the holy chirches thurgh the Cyte of 4 Iherusalem / The hye men of the hoost assembled, and sayd that it was a peryllous thyng yf the toun were not voyded of the dede bodyes, and purged of the blood and ordure. ffor in short tyme the ayer shold be corrupt / by whiche sekenesse and Infyrmynes myght 8 ensiewe and folowe / There were somme turkes yet that were not slayn, but were kepte in yrons. to them was commaunded this werke for to bere the bodyes out of the toun / but by cause they were but fewe of them / and myght not suffyse to doo it shortly. 12

and set about cleansing the town lest a pestilence arise.

they toke the poure men of thoost / and gaf to them good hyre for to helpe taccomplysse this werke / whan the barons had this deuyse^d thyse thynges, they wente in to theyr howses and made moche grete ioye / they gaf largeli to ete & drynke / ffor the toun 16 was replenshed of alle goodes, in suche wise that they were to fore poure fonde in the howses alle thyng that was nedeful to them, wherof they had endured to fore grete anguysshe and penurye, ffor they fonde the cysternes alle ful in alle the howses. On the thyrth 20

On the third day they held a market to dispose of their spoils.

day was ordeyned that market shold be holden in the toun / And that they shold bye and selle suche thynges as they had conquer^d in the Cyte. They were moche refreshy^d and restek, ffor¹ they abode now no trauayll. They forgate not our lord, whiche had 24 brought them in so grete honour as for taccomplysse his werke by them / And by comyn acor^d of the prelates, of the barons, and of alle the people was ordeyned, that this daye, in whiche Iherusalem was goten and conquer^d, shold euermore after be holden feste and 28 holy day / in remembraunce of the cristen men to thanke and preyse our lord / and also praye to our lord for the sowles of them that thyse thynges had accomplyshed.

Some Turkes who were still in the dongeon of the Tower David surrendered,

A grete partye of the turkes that were in the dongeon of the toun named the tour dauid² / sawe 32 wel that alle the cyte was taken / And that they had [no] more hope of rescows ne socour ayenst our men. Therfor they-requyred by messagers therle of tholouse whiche was next to them / And dyde do be sayd to hym, yf they myght departe with theyr wyues, children, 36 and suche goodes as they had in the tour / they wold go theyr waye /

¹ Fr. "*car ilz n'atendoient mais nul travail*," for they did not expect any more trouble and work.

² *Orig. danid.*

- and delyuere¹ ouer the tour / he agreed and acorded it to them. and were given a safe conduct of the city. [2 leaf 128]
 And² so they departed / And he dyde them to be conduyted sauflly vnto Escalonne. Thus was the tour yolden / They that had the
 4 charge for to purge and voyde the dede bodyes oute of the toun dyde it ententyfly and dyligently / in suche wyse that in shorte In a short time the city was well cleaned.
 tyme this thyng was alle don. ffor they beryed them in depe pyttes withoute the toun the moost parte / The remenaunt they
 8 brente in to ashes, that the cendres with the wynde was blowen away. Thenne were our men in good sewrte and ease within the touu to goo and walke thurgh the stretes and other places, and dyde dayly goo in pylgremages, that vnnethe myght they departe thens,
 12 They abode so gladly there. In this manere, as ye haue herd, was taken the holy cyte of Iherusalem. In the yere of thyncarnacion of oure sauour Ihesu criste / M.lxxxxix. the .xv / daye of the moneth of Iuyll on a fryday at the hour of none / The / iij. yere after that In this manner was taken Jerusalem on Friday, the 15th of July, 1099.
 16 the pylgryms had enterpryse^d this viage. Tho was pope of Rome Urban, And Henry Emperour of the Romayns. Alexis emperour of Constantynople, And phylp kyng of ffrance.

Howe the hye barons of thoost assembled for to chese
 20 a kyng of Iherusalem, And thoppynyon of the clergy vpon the same. Capitulo. Clxxxxj^o.

- 1 Yke as ye haue herd, the pylgryms whiche had grete nede of reste soiourned in the toun. The barons deuysed the affaires The barons arranged the affairs of the town.
 24 of the cyte. In moche grete ioye were they there vij dayes / On the viij daye assembled alle the barons for to chese one of them, to whome the garde, gouernaunce / and kepyng of the toun shold be delyuer^d, and the seygnorye of the holy cyte, and the charge of On the eighth day they assembled to choose a king.
 28 the Royamme entierly / as it was reason and right. They made theyr prayers and orysons, And with alle theyr herte called the holy ghooste, that he wold counseyll them that daye, and to yeue to them grace to chese suche a man as were worthy and couenable
 32 to susteyne the faytes³ of the Royamme /. whyles as they were in this affayre, and moche entended with good fayth ther about, An hepe of clerkes assembled, whiche had not good entencion, but thought on malyce by pryde and couetyse / They cam where as the There was a meeting of the clerks at the same time, with a bad intent.
 36 barons were assembled, And sente to them for to speke to them a short word or two / They suffred them to come in. whan they were

¹ *Orig.* delynere.³ *Fr. fais*, i. e. the responsibility, burden.

comen in / One of them spak in this manere / "Fayr lordes, we
 [1 fr. 128, bk.] haue vnderstanden / that ye be assembled here for ¹to chiese a kyng
 that shal gouerne this londe, whiche thyng plesith vs moche. And
 we holden it for right wel don / yf ye doo it in the manere that ye ⁴
 ought to doo it, ffor without doubte the spyrituel thynges be more
 digne and worthy than the temporall / Therefore we saye to you,
 that the moost hie thynges ought to goo to fore / And thus wolde
 we that ye shold doo / And thordenaunce shold not go forth other ⁸
 wyse than it ought to be. Now thenne we praye you and requyre
 you in the name of oure lord, that ye entrenete not you to make a
 kyng / til that we haue chosen a patriarke in this toun that can
 gouerne the cristiente. yf it plesse you that this be don fyrst, it shal ¹²
 be good and weel for you. And we shal thenne holde hym for
 kyng that ye shal gyue to us. but if ye wylle do otherwyse / we
 shal not holde it for good, ne wel don / But we shal discorde / And
 after that ye doo shal not be ferme" / This worde semed outward to ¹⁶
 haue ²somme apparence of weel / But it cam of euyl purpoos. Ther
 was therein but deceyt and trecherye / Of this complot / and barate /
 was mayster & capytayne, a bisshop of Calabre, born of a Cyte /
 whiche was named lamane. ³This bisshop acordeð moche to one ²⁰
 Arnold, (33) of whome I haue spoken to fore, whiche was ful of des-
 loyalte. he was not yet subdeken, and was a preestes sone, and of
 so euyl and fowl lyf / that the boyes and garsons had made songes
 of hym thurgh thoost. and yit not with stondynge alle this the ²⁴
 bisshop of Calabre, ayenst god and reson, wolde haue made hym
 patriark, ffor they knewe ouermoche euyl, therfor were they both
 accorded to gyder. ⁴They had made a bargain bytwene them that as
 sone as this Arnold shold be patriarke the sayd bisshop shold haue ²⁸
 tharchbissoprych of bethlehem. But oure lord ordeyned this thyng
 in another maner as ye shal here / Ther were in thoost many clerkes
 of euyl contenance, that lytle entended to the seruyse of our ⁵lord,
 they lital preysed relygyon and honneste / ffor syth the tyme that ³²
 the valyaunt bysshop of puy was dede, which was legat of our holy
 fader the pope, the bisshop william of Oreuge was in his place,
 whiche was a relygyous ⁶man, and moch doubted ⁷our lord / but

They sent
word to the
barons that a
patriarch
should be
chosen before
a king,

if not, they
would not
accept the
new king.

Arnold and
the Bishop of
Calabria had
made a bar-
gain between
them

that Arnold
should be
patriarch of
Jerusalem,
and the other
the Arch-
bishop of
Bethlehem.

² Fr. *apparence de bien*.

³ Caxton's text gives *Laturane*; the correct reading is *Maturane*. Lat. *Marturanensis*. See p. 284, l. 2.

⁴ *Orig.* gydr.

⁵ *Orig.* onr.

⁶ *Orig.* relygyons.

⁷ *Orig.* doubted.

he abode not longe after / ¹but was deed in suche wyse lyke as ye
 haue herd¹ / Thenne was the clergie without pastour and garde /
 And lete them falle in euyl lyf / The Bisshop of Albare conteyned²
 4 hym holyly in this pylgremage, And somme other that were noble.
 But the comyn of the clerkes made it alle ylle.

Many of the clergy led an evil life on this pilgrim-age.

²How the duc Godeffroy was chosen kyng of Iherusalem, and how he was presented to our lord in
 8 his chirche of the holy sepulere.

capitulo Clxxxxiij^o

t He wordes that the Clerkes had³ brought to the barons in theyr
 electyon was not moche preysed, but aretted⁴ it to grete folye /
 12 ne therfore letted⁵ not to doo that they had⁶ bygonnen. To thende
 thenne that they myght knowe the better the couynes of alle the
 barons. they ordeyned⁷ wyse men that shold⁸ enserche the lyf of
 eueryche of them and the maners. They dyde do come to fore
 16 them suche men as were moost pryue of the barons / and toke eche
 of them a parte by the leue of theyr lordes. And toke of them
 theyr othes to saye the trouthe of that they shold be examyned that
 was of the lyf and manere of theyr lordes withoute lesynge⁹ and
 20 fayllynge of the trouthe. Thus it was acorded¹⁰ emonge them. It
 was a grete thyng whan the lordes abandouned¹¹ them self tensesche
 theyr lyues / But the wyse men that made this enquest were trewe
 men, and helde alle thyng secrete that as ought not to be knowen /
 24 Many thynges were sayd to them of whiche they toke but lytil
 hede. Emonge alle other thynges they that were moost pryuee of
 the duc Godeffroye / whan they were demaunded of his maners and
 his tetches,¹² they answerd¹³ that he had¹⁴ one manere right greuous and
 28 ennoyous, ffor whan he herd masse and the scruyse of oure lorde,
 he coude not departe out of the chirche, but sente after payntours
 & glasyers¹⁵ (34) vnto the clerkes & gonerours¹⁶ of the chirches / he
 herd gladly the ryngyng of the belles, and¹⁷ entendeth moche yf
 32 they discorded / so long that it / displeyd¹⁸ moche to his felawship

The barons paid no attention to the message of the clerks,

but investigated the lives of the different barons to find a suitable man for king.

The only complaint of Duke Godfrey was that he was too fond of church going.

¹⁻¹ Caxton has here omitted several words, owing to his obscure French text, which was unintelligible. A. gives the correct version, "*ainz fu morz; Enterrez fu en l'eglise de Marran, si comme vos oistes,*" but he died. He was buried, as you have heard, in the church of Marran. ³ *Orig.* lesyuge.

⁴ Fr. *tetches*, qualities, characteristics.

⁵ *Orig.* gonerours.

⁶⁻⁶ Fr. "*et trop y entendoit telement que mainte foyz de-plaisoit,*" and spent so much time in this way, that often he displeased, etc.

and seruautes. And oftymes his mete appayred by cause of his
 long¹ taryeng in the monasteryes and holy places / whan the wyse-
 men herd this, and^t that this was the grettest vyce that coude be
 founden in the duc. they had moche grete ioye / ffor they thought 4
 wel that he dyde this for the loue of oure fayth and for thonour of
 our sauour / whan they had herd alle that they wold enquiry of
 the Barons / they spak to gydre / And grete partye of them were
 acorded upon therle of tholouse, if it had not be for one thyng / 8
 ffor alle they of his countre, that were moost pryue with hym,
 thought that yf he were chosen kyng that he shold abyde there
 and reteyne the peple of his countrey. And yf he were not chosen
 he shold some retorne in to his countrey fro whens he cam / and^t 12
 [2 ff. 129, bk.] ²that desyred they moche. Therefore men wene that they were
 forsworn wyllngly, And sayde vpon hym somme euyl tatches of
 whiche he had no blame / Neuertheles he had neuer Intencion to
 retourne to his londe, as it appered after / ffor euer after he abode 16
 in the seruyse of our lord, whiche he had enterprysed / whan the
 barons herde all the tetches after many wordes they acorded al vpon
 Godeffroy of boloyne / And named hym to be kyng / and^t was lad
 with alle the peple with grete ioye vnto the chirche of the holy 20
 sepulere / And presented to oure lorde. Euery man was glad grete
 and smal / ffor he was the man that had the hertes of alle the
 comyn peple.

When the
 good men
 heard that
 this was his
 greatest vice
 they were
 much pleased.

After some
 talk about
 the Earl of
 Toulouse,

they all
 agreed upon
 Godfrey of
 Boulogne.

How the duc godeffroy, after his election, requyred 24
 therle of tholouse that he shold delyuer to hym
 the tour dauid. ca^o Clxxxxiiij.

i N this maner was the duc godeffroy chosen to be kyng, and
 lord of the holy Cyte of Iherusalem. Therle of tholouse helde 28
 the grettest³ fortresse of the toun, whiche was called the tour dauyd /
 The turkes had delyuerd⁴ it to hym lyke as ye haue her^t to fore /
 It is sette in the hyst parte of the Cyte toward the weste, strongly
 walled with square stones, and ther on men may see ouer al the 32
 Cyte entierly. whan the Duc sawe this tour was not in his power,
 It semed to hym that he had not the seynorye / whan the grettest
 fortresse of alle the countre was not in his possession. Therfor he
 demaunded therle of tholouse, in the presence of the barons, & 36
 prayd hym debonayrly that he wold delyuer it to hym. Therle

He demanded
 immediately
 that the Earl
 of Toulouse
 should give
 up his tower
 which he
 held;

¹ Orig. loug.

³ Orig. gtettest.

⁴ Orig. delynerd.

answerd that he had conquerd¹ it, and thenemyes of oure lord had
 yolden it to hym / And therfor he helde it / But he had concluded
 to goo in to his countre at ester / And thenne he wold delyuer it
 4 with a good wyll. But in the mene whyle he / wold kepe it /
 This requyred he for to be more honoured, and in the gretter surete.
 The duc ansuerd playnly, that yf he had not the toure / he wold
 leue all, ffor how myght he be lord of the countre whan another
 8 had gretter power and gretter strengthe in his londe than he.
 Thus² were they in debate. The Duc of Normandye and therle of
 flaudres³ helde with the duc godeffroy / Of the other barons ther
 were⁴ that counseyllid, that he shold doo his wil with therle of
 12 tholouse.⁴ They of therles countre⁵ attysed and counseyllid hym
 that he shold not leue the tour, by cause⁶ they wolde gyue hym
 occasion by⁷ this discorde to retorne in to his countre / Atte laste
 they acorded that the fortresse shold be put in the hande of the
 16 bysshop of Albare vnto the tyme that they were acorded what shold
 be doo therin. whan he had it / within a short tyme after he
 delyuerd it to the duc. It was demaunded hym why he had so
 delyuerd it / Thenne he answerd that it was taken from hym by
 20 force. It was not knowen for trouthe whether it was taken from
 hym by constraynt / or yf he delyuerd it with his gree and wyll.
 whan therle of tholouse sawe this / he was moche angry. ⁸And
 hym semed that the barons were not wel content with hym lyke as
 24 they ought to be,⁸ consydering that by the way he had don to
 them many grete bountees and good seruyses, whiche they remembryd
 not, as it was sayd / ffor desdayne herof, And by atyement that
 his knyghtes made to hym, he enterprysed to retourne in to his
 28 countre,⁹ And descended vnto the flome Jordan / And there bayned
 hym / After he ordeyned his affayre for to departe out of the londe.

who promised
to make it
over to God-
frey when he
should start
for home.

Thereupon
arose a great
debate.

[7 leaf 130]

Finally God-
frey got pos-
session of the
tower.

And the Earl
of Toulouse
left the
country.

Of a Patriark chosen and elect in Iherusalem / And
 how ther was founden a part of the very crosse.

32

Capitulo Clxxxxiiij.

¹ *Orig.* conqnerd.² *Orig.* Thns.³ *Orig.* flaudres.⁴⁻⁴ *Fr.* "Qui conseilloyent que l'en feist la voulenté au conte de Toulouse."⁵ *Orig.* countre.⁶ *Orig.* canse.⁸⁻⁸ "Lui fut avis que les barons ne s'estoient pas contentuz vers lui, comme ilz devoient," viz., it was his opinion that the barons had not behaved towards him as they should.⁹ *Orig.* countre.

The Bishop of Maturane stirred up discord between the barons and the people.

t His euyl man of whom I haue spoken to fore / the bisshop of maturane, was ful of grete malyce an^d of desloyalte / And payned hym moche in alle maners to sette discorde bytwene the Barons and the people / ffor they sayde / that the Barons wold not 4 suffre that a patriark shold be chosen by cause they helde the rentes of the chirche / And wold not delyuer them / he fonde moche peple that byleuyd hym an^d acorded to hym, in suche wyse that by thayde of them / ayenst the wyll of other / & also by thayde of 8 the duc of normandye / to whom he was moche pryue / & had be at his table in all this werk, he chose for patriark this arnold that was his felaw in alle euyl condicions / & by force they sette hym in the seete of the patriarche in the chirche of the sepulcre / This 12 was ayenst reason & ayenst alle right / Therefore it happed ne fyll not wel to hym ne to that other / Thenne it happed that a parte of the very Crosse was founden in therthe by the Chirche of the sepulcre in a secrete place / ffor the cristen men that were in the 16

[1 ff. 130, bk.]¹ toun to fore it was taken, in so grete meschyf as ye haue her^t, doubted that the turkes wold haue taken it fro them. Therefore had they hyd it moche surely, and fewe knewe of it. But a good man, a suryen, whiche that knewe it / discoverid it to the barons. 20

A part of the true cross is found.

And whan they had doluen and dygged a good whyle / they fonde it in a cheste² of syluer, lyke as he had to them sayd and deuysel. Thenne was the ioye moche grete / an^d they bare it a procession in syngyng vnto the temple. all the peple wente after, which wepte 24 for pyte, As moch as if they had seen our sauour Ihesu criste yet langynge on the crosse / They alle helde them for moche recomforded of this grete tresour³ that our lord had thus discoueryd.

Then was there great rejoicing.

How the duc godeffroy payned hym to amende the 28
Royamme of his good constitucions and estatutes.
c^o Clxxxxv^o.

All were delighted that Godfrey was chosen king.

g Rete ioye was it thurgh the londe of this, that the valyaunt duc godeffroy was chosen kyng. Alle they obeyed hym with 32 good herte. he amended dylygently alle the discordes thurgh the londe, And alle the other thynges that had nede of amendement, in suche wyse that his power grewe fro day to day moche appertely / Of hym shal I saye in shorte wordes the very trouthe / he regned 36 not but one yere / an^d that was moche grete dommage / ffor he had

² Fr. "*chasse d'argent*," i. e. reliquary of silver.

³ *Orig. ttesour.*

the wylle, wytte, and power to doo grete good in the Royamme for
 tenfeble thenemyes of oure lord Ihesu Crist, and for tenhaunce and
 exalte the Cristen fayth / But our lord called hym fro this world to
 4 hym, to thende that the malyce of it shold not chaunge his herte in
 thonour wherin he was / he was born in the Royamme of Fraunce
 at boloyne vpon the see / whiche was somtyme a Cyte / And nowe
 it is but lytil more than a castel. he cam of hie and noble folke
 8 and good crysten peple. his fader was named eustace, noble &
 pyssaunt erle in that countre, whiche had doon many hie werkes
 & bountees vnto our lord & noble werkes vnto the world / his
 moder was a noble lady of gentillesse / more noble of herte than of
 12 hyenes of lygnage. She was named yde, & was suster to the duc
 of Loreyne, whiche was named godeffroy bouce. he deyde withoute
 heyer. Therfor he lefte alle the duchye and the Countreye to his
 neuwe whiche bare his name, And adopted hym in to sone and
 16 heyr / Therefore he was duc of Loreyne whan ¹his vncl was deed /
 he had thre brethren, whiche were moche wise men and good
 knyghtes / and also moch fathful and trewe / That one was Bawd-
 wyn, therle of Rages / whiche after hym was kyng of Iherusalem /
 20 The second was named Eustace, whiche bare the name of his fader,
 And was Erle of boloyne / The kyng Stephen of Englund toke his
 daughter to wyf, whiche was namde Maulde.² The barons of
 Surve sente for this Eustace for to make hym kyng after the deth
 24 of his broder bawdwyn, whiche deyde withoute heyer. But he
 wold not goo / ffor he doubted the barats & discordes of the londe
 whiche he knewe wel. The fourth broder was william, a good
 knyght and a trewe. ³ne he discorde not in the bounte of his
 28 bretheren³ / Bawdwyn and Eustace folowed theyr lord and broder
 in the pylgremage to Iherusalem. the fourth broder guylliam abode
 in his countre for to kepe the londe. Alle the four bretheren were
 of moche grete valeur. But the duc Godeffroye lyke he was the
 32 oldest, so bare he away the prys and auantage of the other / as he
 that was ful of vertues, of bountes, and was moche noble and right-
 ful withoute couetyse / he dredde and lonyd oure lord aboue alle
 thyng / he honoured relygyous men and good, he was moche ferme
 36 and constant of his worde / he despysed merueyllously bobaunces,
 pompes / and dishonestees, and hated them / he was in almesse

He was a
 man of great
 wit and will
 and power.

He was born
 at Boulogne
 in France.

He was his
 uncle's heir
 to the Duchy
 of Lorrain.
 [1 leaf 131]

He had three
 brothers,
 Baldwin,

Eustache,

and William,

but Duke
 Godfrey had
 the finest
 character of
 the four.

² Fr. *Mahaut*, Lat. *Mahaldem*.

³⁻³ Fr. "*ne se discordait mie à la bonte des ses frères*," i. e. he was just as good as his brothers.

He prayed
long with
many tears.

He was great
of body, hand-
some, and
well skilled
in arms.

large and plentyuous,¹ gladly he herd the seruyse of our lord, and moche wel vnderstonde it. And in his prayers and orysons prayng our lord / he was right longe / And fylle ofte in wepyng haboundantly teeris. And vnto alle men he was pytous and amyable. By this it semed wel that oure lord louyd hym, wherof he was worthy to haue the grace of the world. And so he had certaynly / he was grete of body, not of the grettest² / But of mene gretnesse, more stronge than an other man / his armes grete and wel³ quartred, the breste moche brode and large, and vysage wel made and coloured, heeris aboute⁴ / And in his harnoys and armes wel enducte and acustomed, that it semed that hit greued ne coste hym nothyng to to bere them.

12

Of the sayng of the countesse of boloyne, moder of the sayd duc, that she sayde of her thre oldest sones was verified. Capitulo Clxxxv.

o Ne thyng⁵ is sayd for trouth. And it happed in the tyme of the yongthe of thyse four bretheren, whiche ought not to be lefte vnremembryd ne forgotten / The Moder of thyse four⁶ bretheren of whom I haue spoken, was an holy woman / and entendable to good werkes. It was nothyng merueylle though oure lord spak by her mouth a propheeye, ffor it happed on a daye that her thre oldest sones, whiche were yong and smale, playde eche with other / And as they chaced eche other in their playe / alle thre fledde vnto their moder / where she satte / and hydde them vnder her mantel / Their fader Eustace cam there where the lady was, And he sawe her mantel meue, where the children playde vnder it / he demaunded the lady what it was. She answerd that she had thre grete prynces / The fyrst of them shold be a duc, The second sholde be a kyng, And the thyrde an Erle. ffor Godeffroye was / duc⁶ of⁷ Loreyne after his vncler, And had also after the Royamme of Iherusalem. But he was neuer crowned, ne wold not be callyd kyng. The second was bawdwyne, whiche had after hym the sayd Royamme, and was crowned / The thyrde was Eustace, which after the deth of his fader was erle of boloygne. now late vs retorne for

[⁵ fr. 131, bk.]
The mother
of these four
brothers
was a holy
woman.

As they
played
around her
one day,
she prophe-
sied that the
first should
be a Duke,
the second a
King, and
the third an
Earl.

¹ Orig. plentyuous.

² Fr. "mais de moyenne grandeur."

³ Fr. "bras avoit gros et quarréz." *Quarréz* signifies literally square, i. e. stout, not well quartered.

⁴ Fr. *blons*, blond.

⁶ Orig. duc.

⁷ Orig. ef.

to speke of the valyaunt Duc Godeffroy, ffor moche honour¹ may be sayd of hym / And also of the valyaunces don by hym. Much honour may be said of Duke Godfrey.

Of the waging of a bataylle that was bytwene² the
4 duc godeffroy and an hie baron of Almayne.

ca° Clxxxxvij°

e Mong³ all other hie feetes that he dyde, I shal recouthe to you one withoute lesyng / hit was so certaynly that one of
8 the hiest barons of Almayne, a grete and strong knyght / valyaunt and noble, ⁴siewed the duc godeffroy, whiche was his cosyn, in plee⁴ in the court of themperour of Almayne / to whom they were
12 of his londe that he helde in the duchye of Loreyne. And this baron sayd that it was his right, & apperteyned to hym. So longe wente the plee forth by dayes & respytes, that they of the court inged that it shold be determyned by waginge of the bataylle, &
16 named to them a day to fyght for it. At the daye named they cam in to the felde Armed and aparylled of that they ought to haue / Thenne Bisshops and good men laboured moche, And other
20 manere that were there payned them moche, for to seke moyen and manere how the pees myght be made / And shewde to them how they were of⁵ one blood and lygnage, And that they ought⁶ to deporte them tenterpryse thyng of whiche muste nedes falle to one of them shame & dishonour.⁶ They payned them moche, one
24 & other / but in no manere coude they fynde the peas to be made bytwene them / Thenne began the bataylle bytwene thysse two barons moche fiers and sharp, ffor they were bothe good and strong knyghtes. They smote to gydre right vygorously / This bataylle
28 endured so long that the valyaunt duc godeffroy smote that other so grete a strook with his swerde that it flewe in pyeces / In suche wyse that there abode nomore in his hande therof but half a foote longe aboute the crosse of the swerde / The barons that behelde the
32 felde, sawe how the duc⁷ had broke his swerde and had the werse, & were moche sory & wroth therof / And cam to themperour, &

He had a dispute with a high baron of Germany about part of his heritage.

They decided to settle it by single combat,

[5 leaf 132]

which was fought fiercely and vigorously until Godfrey broke his sword.

¹ *Orig.* honour.

² *Orig.* lytwene.

³ *Orig.* Mong.

⁴⁻⁴ Fr. "*tira en plait*," i. e. brought suit against him. ⁵ *Orig.* ef.

⁶⁻⁶ Fr. "*et quilz s'en deportassent d'entreprendre chose parquoy il convenist que l'ung*," etc.—misunderstood by Caxton.—It should have been translated, "and that they should desist from undertaking an affair in which one or the other would be brought to shame." ⁷ *Orig.* dnc.

they prayd hym swetly that he wold suffre that ¹they myght comene of the peas bytwene them¹ / he graunted it gladly / The frendes spak to gydre and acorde^d vnto a peas, whiche was ynough resonable. But they lefte somewhat of the dukes right / whan they ⁴brought this acorde and pees to them / The Duc in no wyse wold here herof, But² began the bataylle more cruel and fiers than it was to fore / That other that had his swerd hool, doubted ne fered not moche the strokes of the duc, whiche had but a tronchon³ / but ⁸ranne vpon the duc and oppressid hym that he had no leyzer to reste hym, til the duc began to thynke and to take herte / Thenne he dressyd hym on his steroppes / And smote his aduersarye with the pommelle of his swerde that he helde / vpon the lyfte temple ¹²suche a strook thurgh the helme that he fyl doun astonyed, that it semed that he was deed / ffor he remeuyd no foote ne hande / Thenne the noble duc a lyght doun and descended fro his hors / and threwe a way his tronchon³ of his swerde ; And toke the swerde fro ¹⁶hym that he had beten doun, and mounted vpon his hors agayn / Thenne called he the barons / that had made and brought to hym to fore the peas / and sayd to them : “ ye, lordes, suche maner of peas as ye offred to me right now / is now to me agreable, and am ²⁰redy nowe to take and abide / ffor though I haue the dommage and losse, Atte leste I haue no shame ne dishonour / And it plesyth me wel to gyue & departe of my right, to thende that I slee not this whiche is my cosyne.” whan the barons her^t this, alle they began ²⁴to wepe. The peas was made, suche as he sayde / he had more honoure and loos⁴ / for the pees to whiche he adressyd hym so swetly, than of alle the prowesses that he had in this bataylle, In whiche he dyde many. 28

Some friends then arranged for a compromise, but Godfrey was not satisfied, and continued the combat with his broken sword,

and thus disabled vanquished his adversary.

And then as a victor accepted the terms which he had thought dishonourable when vanquished.

[⁵ If, 132, bk.] ⁵ Of a fayr feat of Armes that the duc dyde in a bataylle that the Emperour of Almayne had ayenst them of Saxone. Capitulo Clxxxviij^o.

Another great prowess I will relate. a N other feat of prowess I shal recounte to you, lyke as it ³²happed, without lesynge. The peple of Saxone, whiche ben the mooste felle and moost cruell of alle them of Almayne, had desdayne and despyte tobeye to themperour / And sayde that they wold doo nothyng for themperour henry. But sayde that they ³⁶

¹⁻¹ Fr. “*qu'on parlast de paix entre eux*,” that peace might be arranged between them. ² *Orig. Bnt.* ³ *Orig. trouchon.* ⁴ Fr. *los*, praise, Lat. *laudis*.

wold haue a lord vpon them self, whiche shold obeye to none other. And made an hye noble man of the countre, whiche was emonge them, an Erle named Raoul, for to be kyng vpon them, by whom they wold be Iustised and gouerned. whan themperour herd this he was moche wroth / and desired moche to be auenged of so grete outrage. Therfor sente he for alle the barons of thempyre, and assembled moche grete court / and made to be sayd and shewed in the presence of them alle the pryde and rebellyon of them of Saxone, wherof he demaunded debonayrly counseyl and theyr helpe. They acorded alle that this thyng was for to be auenged asprely. They habandouned bodye and power to themperour for thlamendynge of this trespas. They departed, and eche wente in to his countre. Themperour somoned his hooste as strongly as he myght at a castel on the marche of Saxone. whan they were entred in to the londe, theyr enemyes sayde that they wolde fyghte ayenst them, ffor they were prowke and fiers, in suche wyse that they sette but lytil by the power of themperour / whan they knewe that they must fyght / they ordeyned theyr bataylles / ffor they had moche peple / And¹ had ynowe / Theinne demaunded themperour / of whom they were acorded that shold bere thaygle / which is the fawcon² of thempyre / They choos to fore alle other for to doo that, the valyaunt duc of Loreyne, worthy and moost sufficient to do it. They reputed it for a moche grete worship that he was thus chosen by comyn acord of them alle / Neuertheles he with sayde it, and refused as moche as he myght. But he muste nedes take it on hym³ / This daye cam⁴ / and that one partye approuched that other in suche wyse that they assembled fiersly / ther were many men put to deth, ffor they were merucillously wroth eche ayenst other. whyles thus as the bataylle was grete and fyers in many places, the duc Godeffroye, that conduyted the bataylle of Themperour, espyed a grete Rowte of men, wherin was this Raoul, whiche was lorde⁵ of saxone / ayenst them⁶ the duc dyde do assemble the peple of themperour. The duc knewe this Raoul, and smote the hors with his spores ayenst hym. And with the gonfanon that he bare / Iusted ayenst hym in⁷ suche wyse that he bare hym thurgh the bodye and slewe hym, that he fylle down deed in the place. And Incontinent he redressyde and reysed on

They made one Raoul their king.

The Emperor of Germany assembled his men at a certain castle.

Godfrey of Lorraine was chosen to bear the eagle.

They met the Saxons in battle,

[5 leaf 134]

and Raoul was slain by Godfrey.

¹ Fr. "*si en firent assez*," viz. "so they made plenty of them (*i. e.* of battalions)."
² Corruption or mistranslation for Gonfanon. Fr. *gonfanon*.

³ *Orig.* hyin.

⁴ *Orig.* cain.

⁶ *Orig.* thein.

⁷ "*telement qu'il lui envoya parmy le corps oultre.*"

heygthe his baner alle bloody / his peple sawe that they had loste
 theyr lord, and anon were disconfyted / Somme fledde, & somme
 fyllen down vnto the feet of themperour, and put them in his mercy /
 Alle the gentilmen and other gaf good hostages for tobeye euer
 after to hym, and be at his commaunment / Many other prowesses
 made the valyaunt duc godeffroye / but it behoueth not to put
 them alle in this historye, ffor my purpose now is for to recountre
 of the holy londe by yonde the see, and not of them on this syde,
 but of them of whom ye may vnderstande that he was in his
 countre noble and a valyaunt knyght. Of his largesse ayenst oure
 lord I shal saye to you one thyng, by whiche ye maye vnderstande
 the other. In the duchye of Loreyne was a castel, whiche was
 moost renommed and chyef of thonour of buyllon / And bare that
 name / whan he shold meue to goo in his pylgremage by yonde the
 see, he gaf this castel as the mooste noble and hiest of his herytage
 vnto oure lord in Almesse, in to the chirche of Iyege, for to abyde
 there for euermore.

The rest surrendered to the Emperour.

Godfrey gave generously to the church,

when he started on his pilgrimage.

How the valyaunt duc godeffroy augmented the holy
 chirche, And how he wold neuer¹ bere crowne.

ca. Clxxxxix. 20

Yth that he had thus by election the Royamme / like as a
 deuoute and a relygyous man as he was, he lound moch holy
 chirch & the seruise of our lord. by conseyll of the bisshops & of
 other wise clerkes that were in thoost / he ordeyne¹ fyrst in the
 chirche of the sepulcre of our lord, and in the temple, clerkes for to
 serue, & establysshed chanonnes, & gaf to them grete rentes &
 large herytages, ²of which they shold take theyr prebendes.² & he
 wold that the chirches in thoo partyes there shold be ordeyne²
 after the establementis / vses, and custommes of the grete chirches
 of fraunce³ / He began moche hyly / & wel had accomplysshed, yf
 our lord had gyuen to hym lenger lyf / He had brought with hym
 oute of his countre relygyous Monkes, whiche sayde and songe
 theyr ⁴howres and seruyse al a longe the waye as he cam. he gaf
 to them an Abbaye in the vale of Iosaphat, and establysshed them
 there, And endowed them there moche Ry^{chely} with good rentes

He loved the service of our Lord,

and ordained the churches in Palestine as they were in France.

[⁴ If. 134, bk.] He endowed an abbey for monks very richly.

¹ *Orig.* nener.

²⁻² Fr. "*ou ilz devoient prendre leurs prebendes*," from which they should draw their revenues.

³ *Orig.* francee.

and reuenues¹ / And gaf to them grete pryueleges. he was a very
 relygious and deuoute man, And had his herte moche large vnto
 holy chirche, And gaf therto many grete thynges. when he was
 4 chosen to be kynge / alle the barons requyred hym that he wold do
 hym be crowned, and receyue thonour of the Royamme as hyly as
 the other kynges in Cristendom doo / he answerde / that in this
 holy cyte, where our sauour Ihesu Criste suffred deth, and had
 8 born a crowne of thornes vpon his heed for hym and for the
 synners / he wold neuer bere, yf it playsyde god, crowne of gold ne
 of precious stones, but hym seme that it was ynowe of that
 coronacion that he had the daye of his passion for to honoure alle
 12 the kynges Cristen that shold be after hym in Iherusalem / ffor this
 cause he refused the crowne. Ther ben somme men that wyll not
 accompte hym emong the kynges of Iherusalem / but me thynketh
 that therfore he ought not to be lasset ne dymynued of his
 16 honoure, but the more and hyer exalted and enhaunced; ffor he
 dyde not this for despysyng of the sacrament of holy chirche, but
 he dyde it for teschewe the bobauce and pryde of the world, and
 for the grete mekenes & humylyte that he had in his herte / wher-
 20 fore thenne I saye not only that he was not kynge, but he was
 gretter than ony kynge that holdeth ony Royamme syth that the
 holy londe of Iherusalem was conquerd.²

When he was
 chosen king,
 and about to
 be crowned,

he refused,
 saying that
 he would not
 be crowned
 with gold
 where our
 Lord had
 worn thorns.

How the turkes of Arabe and of Egypte made theyr
 24 somauce for to come in to Surye tassaylle our
 cristen men / ca. CC.

n Ewly when the cyte was taken / yet er that the Barons were
 departed, cam tydynges in to the toun of Iherusalem, & trew
 28 they were / that the Calyph of Egypte, which was the mooste
 pyssaunt and myghtiest of all the londe of thoryent, had somoned
 alle his pwer, knyghtes, gentilmen, and alle other that myght bere
 armes / in suche wyse that he had assembled a grete hooste
 32 merueyllously; ffor he had grete desdayne and despyte of this that
 so lytil peple, whiche were of a straunge londe and ferre country,³
 were so hardy and durst come in to this londe and Ro⁴yamme, and
 had taken the cyte whiche he had conquerd vpon his enemyes / he
 36 made come to fore hym his conestable, whiche was prynce of his
 hoost: he was named Elafdales. To this man he commaunded

The Caliph of
 Egypt had
 summoned a
 great army
 to invade
 Palestine.

[4 leaf 135]

The com-
 mander of
 the army
 was named
 Elafdales,

¹ Orig. reueynnes.

² Orig. conquerd.

³ Orig. countrey.

that he shold take all this peple with hym & goo in to Surye / And renne vygorously vpon this peple, that were so folyssh and out-
rageous, that had torned his peas¹ and made warre to *his* peple. Therfor he commaunded² hym that³ he shold efface and destroye 4
them alle / In suche wyse that neuer worde be spoken of them³ /
This Elafdales was of Ermenye born, And was called Cimireenx⁴
by another name. Of the Cristen men he was comen / But for the
Rychesse that was gyuen hym, and for the lecherye that he fonde 8
emonge the mescreautes / he renyed our lord and Cristen fayth
for to become sarasyn. This same man had conquerd the Cyte of
Iherusalem vpon the turkes, and sette it in the puyssaunce of his
lord the same yere that the cristen men had besieged it, And had 12
not yet holden it .xj/ monethis whan thoost of the pylgryms toke it
vpon them, and rendred it to Cristiente / hit was a thyng that it
moche displaysyd his conestable that his lord had hold it so short
a whyle / And enjoyed nomore his conqueste: ffor this cause he 16
enterprysed in hym this werke / and for to renne vpon oure peple.
And hym thought it but a lytil thyng and a light for to doo,
consydering the grete plente of peple that he had for to disconfyte
them that had taken the Cyte. He cam in to Surye, & brought 20
with hym alle the power of Egypte. he had grete pryde in his
herte by cause of the grete people that he had / And was moche
angry toward our men / But our lord, that can sette wel counseyl in
alle the purpos of men / ordeyned this werke all in another maner 24
than he deuysed / he cam with alle his men to fore the Cyte of
Escalone. There they lodged them, and pourprised grete space of
ground. with them were ioyned alle the dukes of damaske, and
they of arabe that were in thoo partyes / moche grete peple / 28
Trouthe it is that to fore er oure peple entred in to the londe /
They of Egypte and the turkes of arabe louyde not to gydre /⁵but
doubted⁶ moch thencreacyng of the one and other⁵ / But after,
they accompanyed them togydre to come vpon oure men, more for 32

born in
Armenia, of
Christian
blood, but a
proselyte to
Mohammed-
anism.

He had
already once
conquered
Jerusalem
from the
Turks,

and was now
coming to
reconquer
it for his
master.

The Egyp-
tians and the
Turks loved
each other
not,

¹ The MS. which Caxton followed reads "*trouée sa paix*," which makes no sense, and was rendered *turned his peace* by him. The correct reading is "*qu'il avoit brizié sa pes*," that it had broken the peace.

² *Orig.* commaunded.

³⁻³ Lat. "*et populum praesumptuosum delect de superfeie terrae, ita ut non memoretur nomen illius ultra.*"

⁴ B. *Cimirculx*, A. *Emirculx*, Lat. *Emirius*.

⁵⁻⁵ Fr. "*ains doubtoient moult le croisement les ungs des aultres*," but each feared greatly the growth and increase of the other. ⁶ *Orig.* doubted.

hate of oure peple, than for loue that they had emonge them self.
 They were alle to gydre to fore Escalone, And they there concluded
 to come after to fore Iherusalem for tassiege the toun¹ / ffor they
 4 supposed veryly, that oure barons durst in no wyse yssue out ayenst
 them in bataylle.

but united
their forces
to come
against
Jerusalem.

²How our Cristen men, whan they knewe thyse tyd- [² If. 135, bk.]
 ynges, cryed to god for mercy / and for to haue
 8 the vycторыe. ca. CCj^o.

w Han thýse tydynges were spradd thurgh the cyte of Iherusa- The Chris-
tians were
greatly
alarmed at
this news,
 lem, Alle the peple were gretely affrayed, grete and smale /
 By comyn acord of the bisshoppes they cam ³wullen and barfote³
 12 in the chirche of our lord. There were alle the peple, and cryed
 mercy to oure⁴ lorde with syghes and teeris, And besought Ihesu
 Criste moche swetly that his peple, whiche he had kept and and prayed
the Lord to
protect them.
 defende vnto that day / he wold delyuer fro this peryll, ne suffre
 16 that the cyte and holy places that they late had rendred and yeuen
 to his name and to his seruyse, and that he wold not that they
 shold be remysed agayn and habandouned in ordure and fylthe,
 and in the desloyalte of the hethen men. ffro thens they wente a
 20 procession,⁵ syngynge with moche grete pyte, vnto⁶ the temple of
 oure lord. There dyde the bisshops and the clerkes the seruyse /
 And the laye peple prayde with moche good herte and pytous /
 whan this was don, the bisshops gaf to them the benediction / And
 24 after they departed, The duc ordeyne⁷ barons and knyghtes that
 shold kepe the cyte. After this he yssued out, and therle of The Duke
assembled
his men,
and went
forth as far
as Rames,
 fflaundes / And cam in to the playnes of Rames. The other
 Barons abode in Iherusalem / The cytezeyns of napples had sente
 28 to feteche eustace, broder of the duc, and Tancre for to come theder
 to them, & they wold yelde to them the cyte. They were goon by
 the commaundement of the duc, and garnysshed moche wel the
 toun with peple and vytaylle, of which the countre was moche
 32 fertile / therfor they abode there, and knewe nothyng of thyse
 tydynges / But the duc sente for them, And they cam hastely / sending for
Eustache
and Tancred,
who were in
Tripole.
 and were with the other barons. whan the duc and the erle of
 fflaundes⁷ arryued atte Cyte of Rames, they knewe wel the trouthe

¹ *Orig.* tonn.

³⁻⁵ Fr. "*en lange et nuz pies.*" The Lat. gives only "*nudis pedibus.*"

⁴ *Orig.* oure. ⁵ Fr. *en procession.* ⁶ *Orig.* vuto. ⁷ *Orig.* fflaundes.

He also sent
back to Jeru-
salem for the
other barons,

certainly that this admiral was lodged to fore Escalonne with so grete peple that the contre was couerd. Thenne sente they hastily messagers in to Iherusalem vnto the other barons, which abode and awayted the certaynte of this thyng / And he bad them hastily to 4 come alle, sauf suche as shold kepe the cyte / And shold brynge alle the peple moche hastily, as for to fyghte ayenst grete plente of theyr enemyes.

[1 leaf 136]

How our men assembled and ordeyned theyr bat-8
aylles for to ¹fyghte ayenst the turkes. And
how the turkes were disconfyted.

Capitulo / CCij^o

who came
speedily to
the place
where he
was.

t Herle of tholouse & the other barons that were with hym 12
knewe the certaynte how they enemyes cam vpon them with so
grete power / therfor they gadred to gydre alle theyr men that were
in Iherusalem, and yssued out and come to them moch dilygently
in to the playnes, where the duc² was, atte a place named now 16
ybelyn. whan they were alle assembled / they nombred theyr peple
and fonde / xijC. horsmen / and of footemen / ixM. whan thoost
of our men had been there one day or therabout, after euensonge,
whan it began³ to wexe derk / they espyed a fer a greet prees that 20
cam takyng vp the countrey, and couerd grete partes of the playnes /
Oure men had supposed certaynly that it had be thoost of the
sarasyns / And merueylle^t moche how they cam ayenst them at
that hour. Thenne they sente oute .ij.C / horsmen armed lightly, 24
& wel horsed, for to see more nygh what peple they were that cam &

Our men now
saw an im-
mense body
of animals
approaching,

how many were of them ; they roode forth a good paas, and whan they
approached them / they knewe that it were Oxen, Kyen, and mares /
ther were so many of them, ⁴that them semed there were no moo in 28
alle the world, and that it myght suffyse⁴ for alle the peple ther
about. with thyse beestes were comen men on horsbak, whiche
kepte them from thenys, And commaunded to the herdmen what
they shold doo. They that were sente forth by the barons retorned 32
and sayde that ther was none other but beestes. Thenne alle oure
men ran theder / The kepars of them fledde that myght / Somme

which they
captured.

² Orig. dnc.

³ Orig. began.

⁴—⁴ Fr. "il leur estoit avis que s'il n'en eust plus en toute cette terre, si deüssent ilz souffire." Caxton has omitted the *si*, viz., if there were no more in all this country, etc.

ther were that were taken, whiche tolde the trouthe of the turkes,
 In suche wyse that it was wel knowen, that this grete hooste of
 sarasyns were lodged but .vij / myle from them. And that theyr
 4 purpoos was to come on them and to slee them alle. Our barons
 were thenne certayn of the bataylle / And deuysed emonge them /
 ix. bataylles / And commaunded that thre shold goo to fore on that
 one syde. For the playnes were greet. And thre shold go in the
 8 mydle / and thre shold come behynde / Of the sarasyns myght
 noman knowe the nombre / ffor ther was so grete plente that euery
 daye they encrease and grewe of the contre about / whiche ranne
 to them in suche wyse that it was not for to be estemed / whan our
 12 men had goten this grete gayne that I spak of, that is to saye of
 alle the beestes / they had grete ioye and ioyously restyd them
 that nyght; but they that had the charge made good watche upon
 1 thooste. On the morn whan the sonne was rysen, the duc dyde do
 16 crye that euery man shold arme hym and goo to his bataylle, and
 after wente forth a soft paas² right theder where they thought to
 fynde theyr enemyes / they had stedfaste hope in our lord / to
 whom is a lyght thyng to make that the lasse in nombre vayn-
 20 quysse the more & gretter / they of egypte, & the other mescre-
 autes that were with them, cam in moche grete desraye vnto the
 place that they sawe oure peple alle in the playne.³ whan they
 sawe and knewe that our men had noo talente to withdrawe them
 24 ne eschewe them, but cam for to seche them / they began moche to
 doubte. whan they sawe that oure men had taken and pourprised
 so grete a place on the playns, wel supposed they that they had ben
 mochemore people and in greter nombre. But the trouthe was
 28 suche as I haue sayd / Our men were but fewe on horsbak and a
 foote. the grete company of beestes, as I haue sayd, were with
 them⁴ / whan they drewe forth on / the beestes wente with them /
 the turkes wende that they had ben alle men Armed and had ouer
 32 grete fere and drede / the grettest men and they that men supposed
 shold best haue born the fayte⁵ of the bataylle, they began to with-
 drawe them lytil and lytil and lefte theyr bataylles the one after
 the other & fledde all pryuely. whan the lasse knyghtes of the
 36 turkmans apperceyued this / ⁶they neuer toke hope on them,⁶ but

They learned
 that the
 Saracens
 were only
 seven miles
 distant.

They then
 arranged
 their men
 in nine
 battalions.

They rested
 quietly all
 night,

[If. 136, bk.]

and went
 forth early in
 the morning
 to meet their
 enemies,

so arranged
 that they
 seemed to
 have an
 immense
 army.

The Egyp-
 tians fled in
 fear.

² Fr. *tout le pas*, briskly.

³ Fr. *tout à plain*, plainly.

⁴ Fr. *quant ceulx se tiroient*, when these advanced.

⁵ Fr. *fais*, burden, responsibility.

⁶⁻⁶ Fr. "*ne priurent oncques nul despit sur eulx.*"

On this day
was lost the
Bishop of
Maturane.

When the
barons saw
their victory

they gave
thanks to
God.

[? leaf 137]
They found
immense
riches and
spoils in the
heathen
tents,
and returned
laden to
Jerusalem.

torneð their horses & smote with their spores, & fledde enery man where he supposed best to saue hym / On this daye was he lost / that had sette al his herte for to sowe & purchasse discordes ouer al where he was bylenyd. Noman wote wher he becam / this was the 4 bisshop of maturane. Somme men sayde that the duc had sente hym for to fetch the barons that were lefte in the cyte / and whan he retorned Sarasins shold haue take hym & slayn hym, or brought hym in pryson. what sommeuer cam of hym it was no grete harme, 8 so that he were effaced out of this holy company / whan oure Barons sawe that our lord had foghten for them, And that he had put in the hertes of the turkes so grete fere & drede / that they were fled without smytyng of stroke, they had grete ioye and 12 rendred graces and thankynges to oure lorde deuoutly; they had counseyl that they shold not folowe them withoute araye thurgh the felde / ffor they were quer grete nombre of peple vnto the regarde of them. And yf they happed to relye¹ and gadre to gydre 16 agayn, they myght perauenture put oure men to the werse. Oure men rode alle in ordenaunce vnto the tentes of the hethen men, ffor they that fledde 2loked neuer behynde them / There founde oure men so grete plente of Gold, of Syluer, of Robes, of Iewellys, 20 and of vessell, that the leest of them had ynowgh / Thus gadred they alle that they fonde there / & retorned and wente agayn to Iherusalem enery man laden and charged with despoilles, thank- yng and preysing our lord, by whom was comen to them this vyc- 24 torye / honour, and gayne. Thenne made they within the cyte moche ioye & grete / As doon the vaynquers and conquerours³ whan they departe theyr gayne.

How somme of our⁴ barons wolde retorne home after 28
they had don theyr pylgremage / ca° CCiiij°

i N this maner they conteyned them in the Cyte of Iherusalem /
The two valyaunt men that had ben long tyme in the seruyse
of our lord, and had perfourmed theyr pylgremage, that is to wyte 32
the duc of Normandye / And therle of fflaundes / they toke leue
of the other barons and toke theyr waye for to retorne in to theyr
country / they cam by shippe to Constantinople / Themperour
alexys which had seen them to fore receuyed them with moche 36

The Duke of
Normandy
and the Earl
of Flanders
start for
home.

¹ Fr. "se ratiassent," if they should rally.

³ Orig. conquerours.

⁴ Orig. onr.

- fayr chiere, & gaf to them moche fayre yeftes at theyr departyng' /
 After they cam in to theyr countre hool and ioyous / That one of
 them, that was the duc of Normandye / founde the thyng alle
 4 chaunged otherwyse in his countre than he lefte it / for whyles he
 was in mayntenynge this holy pylgremage, lyke as ye haue herd, his
 oldest broder deyde without heyer of his body, wylliam Rous,
 whiche was kyng of englond by right / And after the customes of
 8 the countre the Royamme was fallen to this duc of normandye ;
 but his broder whiche was yonger, named Henry, cam to the
 barons of the countrey and made them to vnderstande¹ / that the
 duc his broder was kyng of Iherusalem / And had no talente / ne
 12 purposed neuer to retorne on this syde the montaynes. By this
 lesynge they made hym kyng of Englonde, and they becam his
 men. whan his broder returned fro the holy londe, he demaunded
 of hym his herytage entierly / And he wold not delyuere it to hym.
 16 The duc made redy a grete nauye / and gadryd as moche peple as
 he myght in normandye and other places, and passed the see / he
 arryued by force.² His broder that was kyng cam ayenst hym
 with alle the power of the lande / The bateyilles were al redy for
 20 tasseble. But the noble and wysemen sawe that it shold be ouer
 grete³ hurt & damage yf thyse two bretheren shold fyght thus. [3 ff. 137, bk.]
 Therfor they spak of pees, and made it in this manere / that the
 sayd henry shold holde the Royamme / but he sholde gyue euery
 24 yere to his brother a greet somme of good / of whiche he made
 hym sure / And thus returned the duc agayn, and cam in to his
 londe. after it happed that the kyng whiche had somme castellys in
 normandye to fore that he had the Royamme⁴ of Englonde / them
 28 wolde he kepe as his herytage / The duc demaunded them. And
 he wold not delyuere them / thenne the duc assieged them, and
 toke them by force. whan the kyng herd this / he was moche
 angry, he assembled grete peple and passed ouer in to Normandye /
 32 his brother cam ayenst hym / And they fought to gydre at tynche-
 bray⁵ / ther was the duc disconfyted and taken, his broder put hym
 in pryson, wherin he deyde / Thenne had this henry alle to gydre
 the Royamme of Englonde, and the duchye of Normandye / Therle

The Duke of
Normandy
found great
changes.

His eldest
brother
William
Rufus had
died without
heir.

His younger
brother
Henry had
by treachery
obtained the
kingship.

A compro-
mise was
effected
between the
two brothers,

which was
soon broken,
and a battle
was fought
at Tinche-
bray.

Henry was
victorious.

¹ *Orig.* vnderstande.

² Fr. "*il arriva en Angleterre à force,*" he arrived in England with an army.

⁴ *Orig.* Royamue.

⁵ The Latin does not specify the name of this place, which is added by the French translator. Fr. *Tanchebray.*

The Earl of
Toulouse
went to Con-
stantinople
on a visit.

Tancred
stayed in
Palestine
with Godfrey,

and governed
wisely the
lands allotted
him.

of thoulouse cam vnto the lyche in surye / there lefte he his wyf,
the Countesse, and wente vnto Constantynople, And shold hastely
retorne / Themperour made to hym grete ioye and receyued hym
moche wel / and gaf to hym grete yestes / And after cam agayn to 4
his wyf hoole & sauf / to his felawship in Surye, but it was two
yere after, as ye shal here / The due godeffroy was in Iherusalem /
wel gouerned he the Royamme whiche oure lor^t ha: k gyuen to
hym, he reteyned with hym the Erle Garnyer¹ of grece / And 8
other Barons, suche as he myght have. Tancre the valyaunt abode
with hym, to whom the Duc gaf for to holde in herytage the cyte
of tabarye, whiche stondesth on the laye of Geme.² And with that
alle the pryncipalite of Galylee with the Cyte, whiche was woned 12
to be named porphire, And nowe named Cayphas, and alle thap-
pertenances of thyse thynges / Tancre helde thyse londes so wel
and so wysely, that he was alowed of god / & honoured of the
world / he founded chirches of this countrey³ moche rychely / he 16
gaf to them grete rentes / and endowed them with Aournementes
fayr and of grete valure. Specially the chirche of Nazareth, of
tabarye, and that of mount Tabor, he lefte them in hie estate and
in moche ryche poynt. But the barons that after hym haue be 20
lordes of the countrey haue taken from them ynough of their ten-
ours / This Tancre was wyse and trewe / And delyted hym to doo
wel to the chirches / as it appereth after whan he was prynce of
Anthyoche. For he enhaunced the chirche of seynt peter, and the 24
pryncipalite and seignorye of anthyoche made he moch tenece &
enlarged, as ye shal here.

[4 leaf 138]

⁴How buymont and bawdwyn beyng certayn of the
pryse and conqueste of Iherusalem wolde accom- 28
plysse theyr pylgremage / Capitulo / CC.iiij.^o
w Hyles that the Royamme of Iherusalem was in such estate /
Buymont⁵ the prynce of Anthyoche, And Bawdwyn Erle of
Rages, broder of the due godeffroy, had herd certayn tydynges that 32
⁶the other barons that helde them to gydre as bretheren for the
accompayne of theyr pylgremage, had by thayde⁶ and helpe of our

Bohemond
and Baldwin
receiue the
news of the
conquest of
Jerusalem,

¹ Fr. *Garnier de Gres.*

² Fr. B. *Gene : A. Genesar.*

³ *Orig. countrcy.*

⁵ *Orig. Bnymont.*

⁶⁻⁵ Fr. "*que les autres barons quilz tenoient a freres, pour la compaignie du pelerinage, avoient, par l'aide,*" viz., that the other barons whom they considered as brothers in this pilgrimage had, by the aid, etc.

lord Ihesu Criste conquerd vpon the turkes and recouerd to oure
 fayth the holy Cyte of Iherusalem / by whiche they had accom-
 plysshyd^t their vowes and their pylgremages. Therfor they assem-
 4 bled on a day named for to goo to the holy sepulcre, to thende ¹that and decide
to accomplish
their own
vows. they were assayllet^t of their vowes.¹ And desired^t moche for to
 see the Duc and^t the other Barons, to whom they wold^t gyue ayde
 yf they had nede / that is to wete of their bodyes / of theyr goodes
 8 and^t of theyr men that were vnder them. Thyse two hye men were
 not at the takyng of the holy Cyte of Iherusalem, ffor by the
 wylle of the pylgryms that one of them abode in Anthyoche / And^t One was in
Antioch, and
the other in
Rages. that other at Rages, for to kepe soynously / and defende the
 12 turkes fro thyse ²two Cytees whiche were fer fro Cristiente.² Eche
 man had^t to doo ynowgh in his countrey. But they lefte alle for to
 come to the other / Buymont cam fyrst fro his cyte with a moche
 fayr company, grete nombre of men of Armes on horsbak and^t a
 16 foote. he cam vnto a Cyte vpon the see, named valerne, on the
 castel of margat / there he lodged hym maulgre them of the cyte.
 Bawdwyn cam fro his countrey sone after and so moch iourneied
 after, that he ouertoke the prynce buymont to fore this Cyte / And
 20 there they assembled^t / In that same tyme were arruyed pylgryms were also
joined by
some other
pilgrims. of ytalye at the lyche in surye. Emong them was a good man
 wyse and wel lettred, Relygyous and of grete honneste, named^t
 daybart, Archebisshop of Pyse / Another was in his company,
 24 Archebisshop of puylle, of a Cyte named^t Aciane.³ Thyse men with
 theyr meyne cam in the companye of thyse two barons for to passe
 more surely vnto the Cyte of Iherusalem. Of them was moche en-
 crece^t thoost of thyse two prynces / in suche wyse that they were
 28 wel .xxv / M. on horsbak and^t a foote. Thus thenne helde they
 theyr waye by suche manere / that they fonde no Cyte but of theyr
 enemyes / wherfore they passe^t with moch grete payne / They
 suffred moche in theyr way for lack ⁴of vytaylles, ffor they fonde [+ if. 138, bk.]
 32 none for to bye. And^t suche as they brought fro theyr countrey
 was fayllet^t. They had^t grete colt^t / & so grete rayne that nothing
 myght endure; it was so merueylous. It was in the moneth of
 Iuyl,⁵ whiche is moche rainy customably in that countrey / ffor
They suffered
much on the
way from
cold and rain,

¹—1 Fr. “*afin quilz fussent absouz de leurs veuz,*” that they might be absolved from their vows—assayled is probably a misreading for *assoyled*.

²—2 Fr. “*deux cités qui tiennent grant lieu à la xpiente,*” viz., two cities which occupy a great place in Christendom.

³ B. *Aticne*: A. *Arriene*. Lat. *Episcopus Arricnensis*.

⁵ Caxton follows his corrupt French text here. That it is a mistake can

also from
lack of food.

At last they
arrived in
Jerusalem,

where all the
town received
them with
great joy.

There they
celebrated
Christmas.

this cause many deyed of mesease in that companye, ffor in alle this
longe way, they myght fynde none that wold selle to them ony
vytaylle, sauf they of Tryple, and they of cesaire. They had grete
scarcete¹ of vytaylles for theyr horses / Atte laste by the mercy of our 4
lord they cam to Iherusalem / There were they receyued with moch
grete ioye, of god, of the barons, of the clergie, and of alle the peple.
They vusyted the holy places of the cyte in teeris and grete sorowes
of herte / they fylle down flat and stratched in the chirches / they 8
kysed and etc² therthe that our lord had bought² / After they cam
in to theyr hostellys / where alle they of the toun made to them
grete ioye / whan the hyc feste of the natuyte of our lord Ihesu
Criste approached, Alle the prelates and barons yssued out of Iheru- 12
salem & wente to Bethlehem / There helde they theyr Cristemas.
There behelde they gladly and moche ententyfly the holy crybbe,
wherin the sauour of the world laye bytwene the beestes, deuoutly
made they theyr prayers & orysons in the place / whiche is as a lytil 16
dyche where the swete lady that was moder and vyrgyne after that
she had chylded / wrapped her sone with lytil and smale clothys, &
gaf hym souke of the Mylke of her pappes.

How our Cristen men chosen a very Patriarke in 20
Iherusalem and assigned to hym rentes /

ca^o. CCv^o.

v N to this tyme had the See of Iherusalem ben without³
pastour and patriark that duely and truly had entred / It was 24
wel thenne v monethes that the cyte was conquerd / Thenne assem-
bled the Barons for to counseyle to haue suche a man that were
worthy of honour & myght to bere the faytes / Ther were wordes
ynowgh / The somme wolde haue one / and other wold haue an- 28
other. Atte laste by the counseyl and good wyll of alle they chees
this Daybart, Archibisshop of pyse, whiche was but newly come.
They constituted and sette hym in the siege of Patriark / ffor he
that had be made by this baratour arnold, of whom I haue spoken 32
4 to fore, lyke as he was made ayenst right and reson, In lyke
wyse he retorned agayn to nought / whan this good, wise man was

The barons
now assem-
bled to choose
a patriarch
for Jeru-
salem.

Their choice
fell upon
Daimbart,
Archibishop
of Pisa.

[* leaf 139]

easily be seen by the context. The "July" should of course read "De-
cember."¹ *Orig. sarcefe.*

²⁻² Fr. "*La terre que nostre Seigneur avoit marchée.*" Caxton confounds
marcher (to walk) with *marchier* (to buy), to bargain. It should be, *the earth*
where our Saviour had walked. ³ *Orig. without.*

sette in his dignyte / The duc godeffroy and the prynce buymont
 cam to fore hym / whiche had gyuen to hym this honour as for to
 be the vycayre of Ihesu Criste in that londe, and thanked and
 4 preyed alle to gydre oure lord / whan this was don they assygned
 rentes to the newe Patriark, suche as his predecessour, whiche
 was a greeke, had holden. And other greter aboue that, in suche
 8 wyse that he myght honorably mayntene a good and honest com-
 pany of peple / Thenne bawdwyn and buymont toke leue of the
 duc and of the other barons, and descended vnto flom Iordan,
 and there bayned them / ffor thens they wente by the Ryuer syde
 til they cam to tabarye. Thenne passed by the londe name
 12 Fenyce / And lefte cesayre on the right syde. After they cam to
 the Cyte name manbec.¹ After helde they the see syde and so
 moche exploited that they cam al hool and sound to Anthyoche.

Rentes were assigned to him suitable to his rank.

Baldwin and Bohemond now took leave and went to their homes.

How by thatyusement of somme men a grete debate
 16 sourded bytwene the duc and the patriarke of
 Iherusalem / ca^o CCvj^o

He custonne of somme men is suche / that they may not
 t suffre the peas emoug the peple, where they may sette dis-
 20 corde / By thatyusement of suche maner folke sourded a debate
 bytwene the duc and the patriarke /² ffor the patriarke demaunded
 of hym the chyef tour of the toun, whiche is named the toure
 dauyd, and the fourth part of Iherusalem² / aboue that he wold
 24 haue the cyte of Iaphe and alle thappertenautes, ffor he sayde
 that they were the droytes and rightes of his chirche of the sepulcre /
 whan this debate had a whyle endured bytwene them. the duc
 whiche was humble and mesurable & moche doubted our lord / on
 28 candlemas day, in the presence of alle the clerye & all the peple,
 he gaf the iiij part of Iaphe moche debonayrly to the patriarke and
 to his chirche to holde for euermore. After this whan it cam to
 the day of Eester, to fore all them that were assembled at this
 32 feste / he gaf in to the honde of the patriark, the fourth part of
 Iherusalem & the tour dauyd with alle the appertenautes / Alway

A dispute arose between the new patriarch and the Duke.

Finally the Duke promised to give the patriarch the fourth part of Jerusalem, and the city of Jaffa.

¹ Fr. *Malbec.*

²⁻² Fr. *Car le patriarche lui demandoit la sainte cité de Jherusalem, et la maîtresse forteresse de la ville, qu'on nomme la tour David, oultre plus.*" The patriarch demanded the whole of the city of Jerusalem, not "a fourth" as Caxton translates. Lat. "*domino patriarcha reposcente ab eo civitatem sanctam Deo ascriptam, et ejusdem civitatis praesidium,*" etc.

forseen by couenaunt that the duc¹ shold¹ holde thyse cytees and¹ the londes aboute vnto the tyme that by the ayde of oure lord¹ he had conquerd vpon the turkes two other Cytees / By whiche the Royamme myght be enlarged. And yf it happed that he deyde in 4
 [2 lf. 139, bk.] the ² mene whyle without heyer, Alle thyse thynges withoute contradiction shold come in to the houde of the patriarke / and to the chirche. The trouthe was suche as I haue sayd, But it is ouer grete merueylle, ffor what reson this holy man that was so wyse, 8
 demanded thus thyse cytees of this noble man, the duc, as I haue sayd. They that knewe the state of the londe / helde and reputed¹ them self for lasse, whan they vnderstode this werke and couetyse in the chirche, and merueylled¹ therof / ffor the barons that had¹ 12
 conquerd the cyte gaf it to the duc so frely / that they wold¹ not / that ony man luyng shold haue no right aboute hym, but that he shold holde it hym self entierly without making to ony other ony
 obeysaunce. 16

as soon as he should have conquered two other cities from the Turks.

Every one marvelled that the patriarch should make this demand.

Hier recounteth thystorye how the fourth parte of Iherusalem cam vnto the patriarke of the same / ca^o CCvij^o:

a Lway it is certayn, that fro the tyme that the latins entred in 20
 to the Cyte, And yet of more Auneyente / the patriarke of Iherusalem had the fourth part of the cyte of Iherusalem / And helde it as his owen / how this happed, and by what reson / I shal saye to you shortly / ffor the trouthe therof hath ben serched. It 24
 is founden by thanneyent historyes, that whyles this Cyte was in the hondes of the hethen peple / It myght neuer haue peas that longe endured, But was ofte assieged¹ of hethen prynces that were about it, ffor eche of them wold conquere³ it and put it in his seyg- 28
 norye / Therfor they toke ofte the proyes, and mesdyde and trespaced to the Cytezeyns of the toun / They brake the towres & walles moche oultrageously by theyr engyns, And for the oldenes of the walles / the Cyte was disclosed and open in many places / 32
 In this tyme the Royamme of ⁴Egypte was more ryche and more

From this time on, the patriarch had a fourth part of the city.

Jerusalem was never a peaceful city,

but was always being besieged.

¹ Orig. dnc.

³ Orig. conquere.

⁴⁻⁴ Fr. "*Egypt estoit plus riche et plus puissant et d'avoir et de sens.*" Saxton has here made a common paleographic error by reading *sens* instead of *sens*, and then making one word of it with the *de*. Lat. "*Cum igitur ea tempestale, Aegyptorum regnum viribus et dicitis, sed et prudentia Sacculari cacteris quae in Orient, vel in Austro erant regnis esset praestantius.*"

puyssaunt of hauoyr and good^d and^d defence^d than any other of the Royammes of Turkye / ffor the Calyphe helde thenne Iherusalem and the londe therabout, and with his grete hoost that he sente 4 theder he conquerd alle surye vnto the Lyche, whiche is by anthyoche. Thus ha^d he encreced^d his empyre. he establyssh^d his bayllyes in the cytees that stonde on the see syde, And^d in them also on the londe / Thenne commanded he that alle sholde paye 8 hym trybute, & ordeyned & deuysed what he wold haue of euery cyte. after this he wold that the cytezeyns shold make agayn the wallis of euery ¹Cyte / And^d mayntene in good poynt the towres / and redresse alle aboute suche as neded / by the aduys of his men. The Caliph of Egypt had possession of it at one time. He decreed that the walls should be rebuilt. [leaf 140]

13 And^d after theyr establysshement / The bayly of Iherusalem commaunded^d to them of the toun to repayre theyr walles and^d sette them entierly in poynt lyke as they to fore had ben. Thenne ordeyned he and deuysed how moch euery strete of the toun shold 16 make. By grete cruelte and malyce he commaunded that the captyfs cristiens that were in the cyte shold make the fourth part of the walles / They were so pour and so greued of tayllages and excises, that vnnethe they had among^d them alle wherof to repayre 20 two towrettys / They sawe wel that he sought occasion for to destroye them alle / Therfor they assembled and cam moche humbly to fore the bayly / and fyl at his feet, And moch requyred in weping / that he wold comande them to doo thyng that they 24 myght doo, ffor this that he ha^d commaunded them to doo was ouermoche ouer theyr power / That Inhumayn baylly, whiche was ful of cruelte and of pryde, louy^d not the Cristen men, and^d menaced^d them moche fiersly / And sware that yf they accomplisshyd not the 28 commaundement of this lord the Calyphe, he wold do smyte of theyr heedes as traytours / whan they her^d this / they were moche aferd / and^d on that othersyde they sawe wel that they myght not bere the charge that he leyde on them / therfor they dyde so moche 32 atte laste by the prayer of somme turkes / whiche ha^d pyte on them, that the Baylly gaf them respyte, til that they had sent to themperour of Constantynople, and to requyre hym for the loue of god that he wold sende his almesse to performe this horrible werke, for 36 to delyuer them fro the peryll of deth in whiche they were coudempned yf it were not by them made. The poor Christians were ordered to rebuild a fourth of them. They prayed in vain to be released on account of their poverty. So they finally sent to the Emperor of Constantynople to beg for help.

Of the same mater / ca. CCviii.

Messengers
went to tell
their mis-
fortunes to
the Emperour,

t He messagers cam fro them to themperour in to constantynople / they seyde to hym the trouthe of their message, how they were in subiection, and what mescases, what fylthes the turkes made them to suffre. And fynally they muste alle deye yf he socoured them not / all they that herde them began to wepe for compassion / therne was emperour a valyaunt man, wyse, & of grete corage named constantyn, and surname monamaques. he gouerned moche vygorously thempyre. whan he herd the requeste of the poure cristen men he was meuyd with grete pyte in his herte / and sayd that he wold helpe them gladly, and shold gyue to them so largely of his good that the iiij part of the wallis which was [2 If. 140, bk.] commanded them to make shold be accomplysshyd, but he promysed them wel that he shold doo nothyng but by couenaunt. That is to wete that yf they myght pourchace of the lord of the londe, that within the partye of the cyte that shold be closed with his money, none shold dwelle but cristen men / on this condicion wold he doo it / and other wyse not. In this fourme he delyuerd to them his lettres patentes, And sente to his bayly of Cypre / that yf the cristen men of Iherusalem myght pourchace of the Calyph of Egypte this that ye haue herd, that of the rente that he ought to haue in that londe, he shold lete make the fourth part of the wallys of this holy Cyte. The messagers that had thus don their message Retorned vnto the Patriarke and to them that had sente them / And recounted to them truly how they had don and sped / They ansuerd that it shold be hard to be had, not withstondyng they muste essaye, ffor they myght passe in none other maner. they sente good messagers and trewe to this grete lord the Calyph of Egyte / Our lord helpe hym in such wyse that thei fonde in hym this that they sought ; & shortly to say / he delyuerd to them a good chartre sealið with his seal, & confermed with his propre hand, that so cloyng the / iiij / part / he graunted to them the fourth part of Iherusalem.⁵ The messagers retorned. They that had sente them made to them grete ioye whan they knewe how they had achede their message. The baylies of Cypre passed in to Surye / And they made the fourth part of the walles with the goodes of them-

who was
named
Constantine
Monamaques.

He promised
to help them,
if this fourth
part of Jeru-
salem should
be given to
them exclu-
sively.

The Caliph of
Egypt gave
them a
charter to
this effect.

¹ Orig. ceisten.

³ Orig. fourue.

⁴ Orig. fourth.

⁵⁻⁵ Fr. "que par ce faisant leur octroya la quartre parte de Jerusalem," viz., that by so doing he delivered to them the fourth part of Jerusalem.

perour, lyke as he had commaunded. And this werke was made in the yere of thyncarnacion¹ of oure lord .M.lxiij. thenne was calyphe & kynge of egypte bommentor / And this was / xxxvj. yere to fore
 4 the cyte was conquerd. vnto this tyme the cristen men were lodged in the toun emonge the turkes comyuly one by another, but fro thens forth that the Calyphe had commaunded, the fourth part of the toun was delyuerd to them / Thenne were the cristen men
 8 moche eased, ffor whan they dwellyd emong the turkes, they that were theyr neyghbours / dyde to them grete ennoyes and shames / But whan they were by them self / they dyde them not so moche / yf they had ony debate emonge them self it was brought to fore
 12 the patriark. ffor fro thezne forth was in that part of the toun none other iustice but he / thus gouerned he it as his² oune. his iiij part is bounded as I shall saye to you. ffro the yate that the sonne goth down, whiche is named the yate dauid by the tour of the angle,
 16 otherwyse named the tour tanere. The walles that they made within is bounded fro³ the chyef way⁴ that goth fro that gate vnto the⁵ change, And fro thens agayn vnto the west yate / In this space stondesth the mount of Caluarye where our sanyour Ihesu
 20 Criste was crucified / & the holy sepulere / where he laye deed in, and out wherof he aroos fro deth to lyf / The hows of the hospytal, Two abbayes, one of monkes & another of nonnes / The hows of the patriarke / And the Cloysture of the chanounes of the sepulere.

This was done in the year 1063.

Then was the lot of the Christians in Jerusalem much easier.

[* leaf 141]

This fourth part of the Christians included the most holy places of the city.

24 How the duc Godeffroy for to augmente the Cristi-
 ente / assieged one of the townes of the turkes /
 ca^o. CCix^o.

i N this tyme after that alle the Barons that were come in pyl-
 28 gremage were departed fro the londe, and returned in to theyr countrees, The valyaunt duc, to whom the Royamme was delyuerd / & tanere whiche was abiden with hym, they were almost alone in the partes. they were moche pour of good and of
 32 men. vnnethe myght they make, whan they dyde all theyr power, thre honderd men on horsbak, and two thousand a foote / The Cytees that the pylgryms had conquerd were ferre a sondre / And none myght come to other without grete peryll of theyr enemyes /

Godfrey and Tancred were now very poor, and had but few men.

¹ *Orig.* thyncarcion.

² Fr. *comme sicne*, as his own.

³ Fr. *est bornéc de*, i. e. is bounded by, not from.

⁵ Lat. "*ad mensas nummulariorum.*"

The villages that were about the cytees whiche were called casians¹ therin dwellyd the turkes that were theyr subgettis, and obeyed to the lordes of the cytees / but these turkes hated nomen more than they dyde the cristen men, and pourchaced incessantly alle the 4 harme & euyl that they myght. whan they fonde ony of our men allone oute of the way / gladly they murdred them. And somtyme they ledde to the Cytees of the sarasyns for to selle them / yet thought they of gretter meschyef and folye / ffor they wold not ere 8 ne laboure theyr londes to thende that the lordes and men of the cytees shold not take theyr rentes / and desired them self lyuer to suffre mesease / rather than our² peple shold haue ony good or auaylle. The Cristen men were not well assured within the Cytees / 12 ffor they had but fewe people / And there cam thenys by nyght that Robbed theyr houses, and slewe them in theyr beddes / And bare away alle theyr thynges. By this occasion many there were of the Cristen men / that lefte theyr fayr tenementes³ and houses in 16 the Cytees, and returned pryuely in to theyr countreyes / ffor they hadde grete drede / that the Turkes, whiche that dwellyd aboute them / sholde assemble somme daye, and take the townes by strengthe & destresse, and destroye them for euer in such wys³ that 20 neuer sholde be memory of them. ffor hate of them ⁴that thus wente was establysshyd fyrst in that londe, that who that helde a yere longe in peas his tenement and his londe / he shold neuer after ansvere therof to ony other, by cause ther were many that for fere 24 and for cowardise lefte alle theyr thynges and fled away. After whan the country was better assured / they cam agayn, and wold haue recouerd them / but by this lawe that was thus establysshyd they were neuer herl. whyles that the Royamme was thus in grete 28 pouerte / the valyaunt duc godeffroy, which had moche grete courage and good hope in our lord, enlarged his Royamme. he assembled as moche peple as he myght / And wente for tassiege a Cyte nygh to Iaphe on the see Syde, named Arsur. But he fonde it wel garnys- 32 shed of vytaylles, of men of Armes, and other engyns. And ther were therin turkes many, hardy and defensable. The hoost of the Cristen men that were withoute / were but fewe and suffretous by cause they had no shippes by whiche they myght defende the waye 36 of the see, where they myght entre & yssue whan it plesyd them / ffor this thynges the duc was constraigned to leue the siege, and

The Turkes did every-thing possible to injure them.

They would not plant their lands, so that the Christians should have no profit.

Many Christians left and went home.

[4 ff. 141, bk.]

Duke Godfrey, notwithstanding, enlarged his kingdom steadily.

He besieged Arsin in vain,

¹ Fr. *Casiaux*, not in the Latin original. ² *Orig. onr.*

³ Fr. *teneures*, tenures, holdings.

departed thynkyng to come agayn to the same place / whan the tyme shold be more couenable / ¹And that he were better pourueyed of men / wherof he had nede for to take the toun.¹ And so but determined to try it again when he had more men.
 4 had he don yf our lord had gyuen hym long lyf in this world.

How the turkes brought presentes to the duc godeffroy at the sayd siege and of theyr deuyses to gydre / ca: CCxº

8 i T happed, in this siege of whiche I haue spoken, a thyng that ought not to be forgotten. ffro the montaynes of the londe of Samarye, in whiche is the londe of Napples, cam summe turkes whiche were lordes of Casians therabout, and brought vnto the
 12 valyaunt duc godeffroy ²presentes of brede, of wyn, of dates, and of other fruyte.² It myght wel be that they cam more for tespye the beyng and contaunce of our men than for other thyng. they prayde so moch the men of the duc that they were brought to
 16 fore hym / Thenne they presented to hym suche as they had brought / The noble duc, as he that was humble and without bobounce, sat in his payllon on the ground, & lened vnto a sak full of stuff / There abode he a part of his peple that he had sente in
 20 fourage. whan they that had made thyse presentes / sawe the duc sytte ³so lowe, they merueylled them ouermoche, and began to demande of the peple that vnderstode theyr langage, where fore it was so, that so hye a prynce of the weste, whiche had troubled alle
 24 thoryent, and had slayn so many men, and taken and conquerd so puyssaunt a Royamme, conteyned hym so pourely, ne had not vnder hym tappytys ne clothes of sylk, ne habyte of a kyng on hym. ne had not aboute hym sergeantes or knyghtes holdyng naked swerdes
 28 or haches or axis danoyes, by whiche alle they that sawe hym shold doubt and fere hym / but satte so lowe⁴ as he were a man of lytil affayre. The valiaunt duc demaunded of them that knewe & vnderstode theyr langage what they sayde / It was tolde & answerd of this
 32 which they merueylled. Thenne⁵ he sayd that it was no shame to a man mortel to sytte vpon therthe / ffor theder muste he retorne

The Turks of Samaria brought presents to Godfrey,

who received them sitting on the ground.

[3 leaf 142]

They marvelled greatly at his simplicity and humility.

Their astonishment was told to Godfrey.

¹⁻¹ "*et que les hommes fussent mieuz pourueuz de ce que mestier fust à prendre la ville,*" viz., and when his men were better supplied with what was necessary to take the city.

²⁻² Lat. "*deferentes secum exenia panis et vini caricatum quoque, et urac passac.*" ⁴The original is here damaged. ⁵ Orig. Theneu.

They departed, filled with admiration for the Duke.

after his deth, and lodge there in his body and become erthe. whan they herd this answeare, they that were comen for tespye and^r essaye what he was / began moche for to allowe and preyse his wytte and his humilyte. They departed fro thens / sayeng that he was shapen 4 and^r lyke for to be lord of alle that londe, and to gouerne the peple / that was so withoute pryde / And knewe pouerte and the fragilyte of his nature so wel. This word was spradd ouer al by them that had^r herd hym. he was so moche dradde and^r doubted^r of his enemyes / 8 that enquyred^r of his affayres / whiche founde not in hym but vygour, Rayson and mesure, without any pryde or outrage.

How buymont was taken in goyng to Meletene /
whiche cyte the lord of the same wold yelde to 12
hym. ca^o. CCxj^o.

Gabriel, lord of Melitene, was much afraid of an invasion of Persians,

i N the Royamme of Iherusalem they conteyned them thus as ye haue herd^r. Tenne it happened^r that a ryche man of ermenye named Gabryel was lord of the cyte of meletene, which 16 stondeth by yonde the Ryuer of Eufrates in the londe of mesopotayne. This gabriel doubted moche that the turkes of Perse shold come on hym / ffor the men that they helde / ran ofte on hym / in suche wyse that he myght not wel suffre it / Therefore he toke coun- 20 seyl, And sente messagers to buymont, prynce of Anthyoche / that they shold^r saye to hym in his name, that he shold^r haste hym in to his londe / ffor he wold^r gyue ouer to hym his Cyte by certayn couenauntes resonable ynough whiche he sente to hym. he louyd^r 24

and decided to give his city over to Bohemond.

[I. ff. 142, bk.]

Bohemond started to receive this gift.

¹ buymont / And sayde that he had leuer that buymont had his cyte by his agrement, than the turkes sholde take it from² hym ayenst his wyll / whan Buymont herde thyse tydynges, as he that was hardy hasted^r hym moche for to make hym redy, And^r toke with 28 hym a good company, and^r went forth on his way / he passed^r the Ryuer of Eufrates and^r entred^r in to mesopotayne / And^r was nyghe the Cyte of meletene / ffor whiche he wente for to receyue / whan a puyssaunt amyral of the turkes named domsmayn³ / that had 32 certainly the very knowleche of his comynge, And laye in a wayte for hym / and ranne vpon hym sodenly, and his men beyng^r alle out of arraye and dispourueyed^r / They that abode were alle slayn / ffor ther were ouer grete plente of turkes / The other fledde, Buy- 36 mont was taken and reteyned, and they ladde hym the handes

On the way he was attacked by the Turkes and taken prisoner.

² *Orig.* froin.

³ *Fr. Danisman.*

- bounden with cordes / And his feet chayned with yron / Of this
 aenture mounted the turke in grete pryde / And trusted moche in
 his hoost that he ledde / that he cam to fore the cyte of meletene,
 4 and assieged it, by cause he suppose^t that they wold^t haue delyuert^t
 it without taryeng^t / But somme of them that escaped^t fro thens
 where the prynce was taken cam fleyn^g in to the cyte of Rages.
 They told^t to therle Bawdwyn this grete mesaenture that was fallen
 8 to them / whan the valyaunt Erle herd^t this / he was moche angrye,
 And had^t grete pyte of the prynce / whom he helde for broder for
 the companye of the pylgremage. And by cause they had theyr
 countrees so nygh to gydre ¹ It shold haue displesyd hym¹ yf the
 12 turkes shold conquire this cyte that buymont shold^t haue had.
 Therfor he somoned^t hastely alle his men that he myght haue on
 horsbak and a fote, and toke with hym that was necessarye for
 suche a vyage and wente toward^t thoo partyes. wel a thre daye
 16 iourneye was Rages fro meletene. he had^t sone passed this waye in
 suchewyse that he was nyghe the cyte. But the say^t donysmayn
 knewe wel the comyng of therle and durst not abyde ne fyght
 with hym, But lefte the siege and departed^t and ledde forth with
 20 hym buymont faste bounden and straytly. whan Bawdwyn herde
 that he durst not abyde hym / but fledde to fore hym / he ran after
 with his men and chaced^t hym thre dayes longe / whan he sawe
 that he myght not ouertake hym / he retourned in to the cyte of
 24 Meletene. Gabryel the lord of the toun receyued hym with moche
 grete ioye with alle his men, and made to them good chere, And
 after gaf ouer the cyte to hym by the same couenauntes that he had
 offred^t to buymont.² whan he had ³don this he returned⁴ home
 28 agayn to Rages.

The Turks
elated went
on to besiege
Melitene,

but Baldwin
went quickly
to the relief
of Bohemond.

The Turks,
hearing this,
left the siege
of Melitene,
and fled.

Baldwin
chased them
three days,

and then
returned to
Melitene,
which sur-
rendered to
him.

[³ leaf 143]

How the duc⁵ godeffroy assembled⁶ alle his peple,
 And entred in to Arabye, And of the gayn that
 he made, And of his deth. Capitulo CCxij^c

- 32 g Odeffroy the valyaunt Duc and his men that were lefte with
 hym for to kepe the Royamme began to haue moche grete
 mesease / and suffre suche pouerte that vnnethe it may be deuysed.
 Thenne it happed that good^t espyes and trewe brought to hym

Godfrey and
his men were
in great dis-
tress,

¹⁻¹ Fr. "moult leur eust displeu se ilz conquissent les cités," viz., it would
 have displeased them much, etc.

² Orig. bnymont.

⁴ Orig. reborned.

⁵ Orig. duc.

⁶ Orig. asseinbled.

tidynges that in the partyes of arabye on that other syde of flom Jordan were moche ryche peple whiche doubted nothyng. And therefore they dwellyd out of fortresses. yf they were surprised there shold be moch grete gayne wonne / The valyaunt Duc that so 4
 and made a foray into Arabia to find food and money. moche had suffred toke with hym peple a foote and on horsbak as many as he myght, sauf the garde of the Cyte. Thenne entred he so deynly in to the londe of his enemyes. There gadred he many grete proyes, that is to wete, horses / beufes, Kyen and sheep, And 8
 There they got great spoils. ryche prysonners brought he grete plente. Thenne retorne he toward Iherusalem / Somme turkes ther were hie and pyssaunt of them of Arabye whiche were moche hardy, and noble in Armes, And had grete prys. Emonge all other ther was one that had longe 12
 desired for to see the duc Godeffroye of boloyne / & wold fayn knowe yf it were trewe that was said of his force & strengthe / & acqueynte hym with his peple of ffrance, of whom he had herd so moche / that were come fro the occident vnto thoryent / And had 16
 conquerd so many londes / And sette them in theyr subiection. About alle other he desired to see duc godeffroy and knowe yf it were truth that was sayd of his prowesse & his strengthe / he dide 20
 One of the lords of Arabia came, out of curiosity, to visit Godfrey, to come vnto the duc. he salewed hym moche lowe enclynyng lyke as is theyr customme. And after he prayd and desired of the duc moche humbly / that it wold plesse hym to smyte with his swerd a Camel that he had brought moche grete. ffor as he sayde it shold 24
 and asked him to show him some feat of strength. be grete honour to hym iu his countre / yf he myght recoune ony of his strokes that he had seen hym self. The duc knewe wel that he was come fro fer to see hym / And dyde that he requyred hym. he drewe his swerd / and smote the camel on the neck where it was 28
 grettest, And smote it of as lyghtly as it had been a sheep. whan the turke sawe this / he merueyelled ouer moche. In such wyse 32
 [ff. 148, bk.] that he was all abasshed / whan he had a litil bethought hym / he sayd in his langage, I see wel, sayd he, that the duc hath a good 32
 swerd & wel trenchant & cutting / But I wote neuer yf he coude smyte so grete a strook with another swerde. The valyaunt duc demaunded what he sayde. And whan he knewe, he began to smyle a lytil / And after sayd, that he shold delyuer to hym his 36
 owen swerde. The turke dyde so. the duc thenne smote therwith another Camel, In suche wys that he made the hede to flece of moche lyghtlyer than of the other / thenne merueyelled ouer moche the turk, And sayde that it was more by the strengthe of the Arme than by 40
 Godfrey smote the head off from a camel, at one stroke of the sword.

the bounte of the swerd. he had wel preynt that it was trewe that
 was sayd of the Duc in his Countrey. Thenne he gaf to the
 duc many fayr Jewellys of gold and of ryche stones, and moche
 4 acqeynted with hym. And after retourned home in to his countre.
 The velyaunt duc cam vnto Iherusalem with alle his proye / & the
 trusses & fardellys of his geyn, which wer so grete that all the men
 of his companye were ryche. In that moneth of Iuyll the velyaunt
 8 duc godefroy whiche was gouernour of the Royamme of Iherusalem
 had a maladye and sekenes moche grete / Alle the phisiciens of the
 contre were sente for. They dyde alle that in them was possible /
 But alle auaylled not, ffor the payne encreysed alway more. After
 12 this he sente for men of relygion, as prelates / curates & other good
 & deuoute men, for to haue counseyll of them for the helthe of his
 soule / he was moche wel confessyd and veray repentaunt with
 grete wepynges / And in his right mynde with grete deuocion¹
 16 departed out of this world / Certaynly we ought to thynke that the
 soule was brought vp with angelis to fore the face of Ihesu crist.
 he deyde the .xiiij day of Iuyll the yere of thyncarnacion² of oure
 lord .M / i / C / he was entiere and buryed in the chirche of the
 20 holy sepulchre vnder the place of the mount of Caluarye / where our
 lord was put on the crosse / That place is kept moche honestly for
 to entere and burye the kynges vnto this day.

The astonish-
ed Arabians
gave Godfrey
great gifts.

Godfrey was
taken ill on
his return
from this
expedition.

All the
physicians
of the land
were of no
avail.

He died the
13th day of
July 1100,
and was
buried under
Mount
Calvary.

Thus endeth this book Intitled the laste siege and conquest of
 24 Iherusalem, with many other historyes therin comprysed / Fyrst of
 Eracles / and of the meseases of the cristen men in the holy londe /
 And of their releef & conquest of Iherusalem / and how Godeffroy
 of boloyne was first kyng of the latyns in that royaume & of his
 28 deth, translated & reduced out of ffrensche³ in to englysshe⁴ by me
 symple persone Wylliam Caxton to thende that euery cristen man
 may be the better encoraged tenterprise warre for the defense of
 Cristendom, and to recouer the sayd Cyte of Iherusalem in whiche
 32 oure blessyd sauour Ihesu Criste suffred deth for al mankynde,
 and roose fro deth to lyf / And fro the same holy londe ascended in
 to heuen. And also that Cristen peple one vnyed in a veray peas /
 myght emprise to goo theder in pylgremage with strong honde for
 36 to expelle the sarasyns and turkes out of the same that our lord
 myght be ther seruyd & worshipped of his chosen cristen peple in
 that holy & blessyd londe in which he was Incarnate, and blissyd

Thus endeth
this book,

[4 leaf 144]
translated
out of French
by me,
William
Caxton;

¹ Orig. denocion.

² Orig. thyncarnacion.

³ Orig. ffrensche.

it with the presence of his blessyd body whyles he was here in
 erthe emonge¹ vs / by whiche conquest we myght deserue after this
 present short and transitorye lyf, the celestial lyf to dwelle in heuen
 eternally in ioye without ende, Amen / Which book I presente vnto ⁴
 the mooste Cristen kyng, kyng Edward the fourth, humbly
 besechyng his hyenes to take no displesyr at me so presумыng,
 whiche book² I began in marche, the xij daye, and fynysshyd the
 vij day of Iuyn / the yere of our lord .M.CCCC.lxxxj, & the xxj ⁸
 yere of the regne of our sayd sauerayn lord kyng Edward the
 fourth, & in this maner sette in forme & enprynted the xx day of
 nouembre the yere a forsayd in thabbay of westmester, by the sayd
 wylliam Caxton.

which book
 I present
 unto King
 Edward IV.

I began it on
 the 12th of
 March, and
 finished it
 the 7th of
 June, 1481.

12

¹ *Orig.* emonge.² *Orig.* booke.

NOTES.

Note 1, p. 4. This Edward was Edward IV., who died April 9th, 1483.

Note 2, p. 5. "*My lord Prynce and my lord Rycharde, duc of yorke and norfolke,*" mentioned here by Caxton, are the two young princes who were so cruelly murdered in the Tower by Richard III. in 1483.

Note 3, p. 19. William here gives the story of the capture of the Cross as believed in his time, and still received by the Catholic Church; Chosroes' trophy, however, was not the whole of the Cross, as only part of it was left in Jerusalem by the Empress Helena, at the time of its discovery. The rest was sent to Constantinople, when it was again divided, one half being inserted by Constantine in the head of a statue of himself, while the other half was sent to Rome and deposited in the church Santa Croce, in Gerusalemme, which received its name from the sacred relic. In 614, Chosroes carried off the piece that had been left in Jerusalem to his capital, Ctesiphon; fourteen years afterwards, in 628, Heraclius brought it back. The feast of the Elevation of the Cross still commemorates the day of its restoration.

Note 4, p. 19. The Cosdroe of William of Tyre is Chosroes, or Khosru II., called *Parviz the Conqueror*, who ascended the throne in 590, in the midst of a civil war, and was assisted in maintaining his position by Mauritius, Emperor of Rome. When Phocas killed Mauritius in 602, and seized the imperial power, Chosroes decided to avenge his ally, and attacked Phocas, taking Jerusalem in 614. Heraclius, who succeeded Phocas as emperor, invaded Persia in return, and conquered Chosroes, who was killed soon after, on the 29th of Feb., 628, but by the hand of his own son. William's authority for his version of the whole story was the Arabian Said Ibn Baktrik.

Note 5, p. 20. William refers here without doubt to Zacharias, patriarch of Constantinople, who was at this time taken prisoner, and carried into Persia by Chosroes. Theophanes of Byzantium tells us in his *Chronographia*, that this Zacharias was a contemporary of St. John of Alexandria, called Eleemosynarius,—the St. John Elymont from which the church in Jerusalem was named. According to Theophanes, Zacharias himself brought back the Cross from his captivity, and died soon after. According to others, Modestus, the successor of Zacharias, was patriarch when the Cross was reinstated. The Catalogue of Nicephorus states that Zacharias was bishop (or patriarch) from 609 to 631, which would give him three years after his return from captivity in 628.

Note 6, p. 22. This is the great and famous hero of the Arabian Nights of our childhood, Haroun al Raschid, or Ressit. His name is more properly Harûn er Raschid, *Aaron the Orthodox*. He was the fifth of the Abasside Caliphs of Bagdad, was born at Ray, Feb. 15th, 766, and died in 808. He was the most accomplished, eloquent, and generous of all Mohanmedan princes. Ascending the throne at the age of twenty-two, he soon ruled the greater part of the Eastern world. The

account of his relations with Charlemagne has, however, no trustworthy historical basis.

Note 7, p. 24. Hyart, the Idraot of Tasso's *Jerusalem Deliver'd*, a prince of Damascus, and uncle of Arnida, whom Tasso sends to the camp of the Christians to seduce their chiefs.

Note 8, p. 36. According to Paulin Paris, the first church of St. Mary de la Latyne was constructed between 1014 and 1023, by some Amalfians, permission having been granted them by the Sultan of Egypt. It was built near the church of the Holy Sepulchre, in the street of the Paumiers, and was called *Latyme*, because the Latin instead of the Greek rites were used: a monastery was added to it to receive the pilgrims, and a hospital for the sick. Godfrey of Bouillon and others gave it large donations. This was the origin of the Knights Hospitallers of the order of St. John of Jerusalem, called later Knights of Rhodes and Malta.

Note 10, p. 37. For this conversation between Peter and Simeon there is no historical authority. It is not found in any of the known sources, and seems to have been introduced by William for rhetorical effect.

Note 11, p. 40. This Gilbert (who is known in history as the Anti-Pope) held the Seat from 1080 to 1101, under the title of Clement III., but has never been numbered among the legitimate popes.

Note 12, p. 47. This *Gautier without knowleche* is called in English Walter the Pennyless, his French title being not *Gautier sans Savoïr*, which Caxton translates *Gautier without knowleche*, but *Gautier sans Avoir*. P. Paris says that, far from being a term of reproach, the title *Sans Avoir* was often applied to sons of noblemen to distinguish them from their older and wealthier brothers: Albert of Aix calls him *Walterus cognomento Zenzavehor*; Tudebodus, *Gualterius sine habere*; Foucher of Chartres, *Gualterius sine pecunia*; Foulques d'Anjou, *Gualterius sine Aereo*; and William of Tyre, *Waltarius sine Habere*. The *Dictionnaire des Croisades*, Migne, tome 18, says that his true name was Gautier d. Perejo, that he was a nephew of Gautier de Perejo, who died *en route* for the Holy Land in Bulgaria. Gautier sans Avoir succeeded his uncle in command of 15,000 men, who with eight knights formed the advance guard of Peter the Hermit. Gautier was killed in 1097, during the siege of Nicæa.

Note 13, p. 54. These speeches of the Grecian ambassador to Peter are quoted almost verbatim by William from Albert of Aix.

Note 14, p. 56. Soliman, son of Kuntul Misch, and a direct descendant of Seljuk, passed into Asia Minor in 1074, at the head of an army of Turks, carrying his conquests as far as Nicæa. His eldest son, Kilidge Arslan, called also *Soliman the Younger*, and *David*, is the *Solyman* here mentioned. William of Tyre makes him a nephew of the Soudan of Persia, and confounds the father and son.

Note 15, p. 62. There was at this time a universal uprising against the Jews, especially in Germany, due, without doubt, to the general state of exaltation. At Spiers, Worms, and Treves, as well as at Cologne and Mayence, there were terrible massacres, at least a thousand being slain in Mayence alone. In England the feeling was also very bitter against them, and notwithstanding Richard's efforts to protect them, large numbers were slain in Lincoln, Stamford, and Lynn, and also in York after Richard's departure.

Note 16, p. 79. Caxton's *Eutytes* is a corruption for Eutyches, founder of the sect of the Eutycheians, presbyter and archimandrite at Constantinople. He affirmed that after the union of the two natures, human and Divine, Christ had only one nature, that of the Incarnate Word, and that therefore His human body was essentially different from other human bodies. At the Council of Chalcedon, in 451, this theory was declared heretical, and it was affirmed that two natures were united in Christ, but without any alteration, absorption, or confusion. Eutyches died in exile.

Note 17, p. 79. Discretus is a corruption or mistranslation for Dioscurus,

bishop of Alexandria, from 444 to 454. He also was condemned for heresy at the Chalcedon Council.

Note 18, p. 95. Belpheet is known in Oriental history as Alp Arslan, Sultan of Persia, born in 1030. He was celebrated for his justice, his courage, and his generosity. His features were noble and fine, and his character gentle and good. His glory and power were so great that he is said to have had at one time 1,200 subject princes around his throne.

Note 19, p. 115. Without doubt Caius Julius Solinus, a Latin historian and grammarian of the third or fourth century, author of a book called *Collectanea Rerum Memorabilium*, a collection of the memorable things to be found in different countries. His work is divided into seventy chapters. The best ancient edition is that of Salmasius, the best modern, that of Mommsen, Berlin, 1864. He lived after the time of Pliny, and copied him so closely that he is often called Pliny's ape.

Note 20, p. 122. Guynevers is a corruption of Guinemers, as can be seen from the Latin form of the word, *Guinemerus*.

Note 21, p. 124. William has made a mistake in his statement in respect to Rages. This is not the Rages where Tobias went for the money of Gabael, as that city is in Persia, five miles south-east of Teheran.

Note 22, p. 125. The name of this Greek prince, who ruled Edessa, was Theodore. It is given thus in the history of Matthew of Edessa.

Note 23, p. 148. Latyns, a corruption for Tatinus or Estatin, called Tatinus the Noseless. He was a prefect of the palace of the emperor of Constantinople; Anna Comnenus calls him Tatikios, and says that he was a Saracen by birth. He is called Tatice L'Esnasé in the *Chanson d'Antioche*.

Note 24, p. 152. When the Crusaders arrived in Asia Minor, the situation of the Mohammedans was exceedingly favourable for the accomplishment of their purpose; all was confusion, and civil conflicts prevailed everywhere; the power of the Seljuks was greatly broken, several pretenders were quarrelling for the Sultan's throne, and the emirs or governors of provinces, having made themselves independent, were waging war with each other. Several subject Christian princes—Armenians—had risen in arms in Taurus, and on the banks of the Euphrates in Mesopotamia. On the south, the Caliph of Egypt had just commenced a general war against the Seljuks, and was advancing towards Palestine. The Emir of Nicæa was fighting against the Prince of Mitilene; the Emir of Aleppo was besieging his neighbours of Damascus and Emessa; and the Emirs of Sebasta and Mosul were engaged in war with the Armenian leaders, who were awaiting the arrival of the Crusaders with great impatience. For a further account of the situation, see von Sybel's *Geschichte des Ersten Kreuzzuges*.

Note 25, p. 167. Steven paid dearly for this desertion of the Holy Cause; and although he arrived safely in France, was so reproached and condemned by both his subjects and his wife, that he was forced in order to satisfy public opinion, and to retrieve his character, to return to the Holy Land and fulfil his vows. He shared the misfortunes and perils of the Lombard, German, and French pilgrims, who were led by the Archbishop of Milan, the Duke of Bavaria, and the Duke of Bourgoigne. Arriving safely in Antioch, he was received by Tancred, and went on to Palestine, where he was killed in 1102 at the battle of Ramla. William, in recounting his death, observes that God had permitted him by a glorious death to atone for his previous sin and cowardice.

Note 26, p. 189. Some of the most influential men departed in this way, by night; among those that are not given by name were Lambert le Pauvre, son of Conon of Montaigne, and Godfrey's own nephew, Guillaume de Grantemesnil, Aubery his brother, Guillaume Charpentier, and Guy Trosselle. They were called hereafter the rope-runners, or *funambuli*, in derision, and were regarded as most ignominious cowards and sinners: William refused to name them, because they were blotted out of the Lamb's Book of Life for ever.

Note 27, p. 190. Guy Croseaulx, a corruption of Guy Trosseaulx, or Guy Trosselle.

Note 28, p. 201. William follows Raymond of Agiles in his story of the finding of the lance, who tells of infinite signs and wonders from heaven. As usual, William omits the greater part of these, and speaks very cautiously of the whole matter: he evidently is not a great believer in miracles. All of the different historians mention this miracle. Paulin Paris, in a note to his edition of William of Tyre, speaks of an early tradition that the lance with which St. Mercury pierced Julian the Apostate was preserved in the crypt of this church of St. Peter.

Note 29, p. 202. This man, who accompanied Peter the Hermit to Kerbogha, is called in French Herluin. He can speak Turkish, and Tudehodus calls him Drogomandus. Albert of Aix does not mention him, because he wishes Peter to have all the honour of the embassy.

Note 30, p. 211. This is not supposed to have been the real Greek fire, as used in ancient times in the Levant. William says, "*Et ignem, solito excutientes artificio, subjiciunt in stipulam,*" they simply set fire to the bundles of hay, and made a dense smoke.

Note 31, p. 219. Monsieur Littré, in his dictionary, accepts this origin of the word *hasard*. It did not come, however, from William of Tyre, but is an interpolation of some French translator, who put in "*Sachiez que là fu trovez et de là vint li jeux des dez qui einsint a non.*"

Note 32, p. 233. This Cham, or *Caym*, as other French editions give it, is our Ham: Chanaan is naturally his son Canaan, and Aracheus is the son of Canaan, who is called in our English Bible the Arkite. The Latin version of William of Tyre states that he was the seventh son, *septimus filiorum Chanaan*.

Note 33, pp. 238, 280. There seems to have been a difference of opinion as to this Arnold of Rohes or Roches. William of Tyre dislikes him, and loses no opportunity of speaking slightly of him, in this agreeing with Raymond d'Agiles and l'Abbé Guibert; for a rehabilitation of his character, see *Description des Tombeaux de Godefroid de Bouillon*, etc., by the Baron de Hody, Bruxelles, 1855.

Note 34, p. 281. Mistranslation by Caxton, which is very curious. The French reads, "*Ainz demandais des peintures et des verrières, aux clers et aus provoires, Mout ois volentiers les estoires. et les vies des sainz et trop entendoit.*" This last sentence is not in the original Latin, but was interpolated by some French translator. As can be easily seen, it was the paintings and the stained windows, not the *painters* and *glaziers*, that he desired, and he sat a long time listening to the stories and lives of the saints. Paulin Paris remarks that this passage proves the early use of stained glass.

VOCABULARY.

- Abandoned (himself), v. pret., p. 102, 109, exposed himself
- Abasshed, p. 129; *abasshyd*, p. 55; O.F. *éba[h]isser*, extended from stem of Fr. *ébahir*, confused, disconcerted
- About, adv., p. 185; A.S. *abutan*, round about
- Abide, vb. trans., p. 138; A.S. *ābīdan*, pret. sing. *ābād* = Goth. *usbeidan*, to await, to expect
- Abode. See *Abide*
- Abourne, adj., p. 286; O.F. *auborne*, *alborne*, whitish yellow, auburn
- Abyden, v. int., p. 195, remained
- Abye, v. t. pret., p. 274, *aboughte*; A.S. *abyrgan*, to pay the penalty of, to atone for
- Abylliments, p. 183. See *Habylliments*
- Abyte, n., p. 27; O.F. *habit*, external dress, the costume appropriated for a particular use or vocation
- Accompte, v., p. 291; O.F. *aconter*, to reckon as, to hold to be
- Accorded to, v., p. 120; O.F. *accorder*, to be reconciled to or with
- Achyeuyd, v., p. 2, achieved, p. 197; O.F. *acherer*, to accomplish, to achieve
- Accounted, v., p. 197; O.F. *aconter*, to relate, to narrate
- Acowarded, v., p. 64; O.F. *couarder*, *coarder*, to make afraid
- Acquoynted hym with, v., p. 123, O.F. *s'accointier de*, to make oneself acquainted with
- Adcertayned, pp., p. 140; O.F. *acertainer* from *ā* + *certain*, to make certain
- Addressement, n., p. 44; O.F. *adricement*, according to Cotgrave, a directing or guiding in the nearest course
- Admonested, p. 43, admonished
- Admyral, n., p. 152; O.F. *admiral*, *amiral*, originally from the Ar. *Emir*, an Emir or prince under the Sultan
- Adomaged, v., p. 40; O.F. *ā* + *domager*, *domagier*, damaged, injured
- Adressyd, p. 123, 259; O.F. *adrecier*, set up, directed
- Aduowe, v., p. 105; O.F. *avouer*, acknowledge
- Afeblysshe, p. 219; O.F. *afeblir*, to enfeeble
- Affectuonsly, adv., p. 219; F. *affectueux*, affectionately
- Affraye, n., p. 44, 57, disturbance, broil, fear
- Affrayed, v. t., p. 293; O.F. *afrayer*, *affrayer*, *esfrayer*, etc., frightened, terrified
- Affyance, p. 131, trust, confidence
- Affye, p. 214; O.F. *afier*, to trust, to confide in
- Aftirst, adj., p. 51, superlative of *after*, the last, the hindmost
- Aitre, p. 25; O.F. *aitre*, churchyard porch
- Alalonge, adv., p. 3, exactly, truly, at length
- Alledge, v. tr., p. 147, 230, etc.; O.F. *alleger*, *alegier*, to lighten, mitigate, allay
- Almesse, n., p. 35, 252; A.S. *aelmesse*, *aelmyss*e, alms
- Alowed, v., p. 55; F. *alouer*, praised
- Alyed, p. 222; O.F. *alier*, united, allied
- Ameuyd, v., p. 197, moved, influenced
- Amytee, n., p. 225; F. *amitié*, friendship
- Anguysshously, adv., p. 58; O.F. *anguissus*, *angoisseux*, fiercely, strenuously
- Annoyes, n., p. 113; O.F. *anoi*, *anni*, *enui*, discomfort, vexation, trouble
- Aourned, p. 122; O.F. *adorner*, adorned

- Apparayllement, n., p. 46; F. *apparaill-ements*, equipments
 Appayred, v. pret., p. 282; O.F. *empirier*, injured, spoil
 Appert, adj., p. 82; O.F. *appert*, capable
 Apperte, adj., p. 90; open, present
 Appertenautes, n., p. 275; O.F. *apertenance*, appurtenances
 Apperteyned, v. pret., p. 40; Fr. *appartenir*, belonged, appertained
 Appertly, adv., p. 284, plainly, openly
 Appese, v. tr., p. 61; O.F. *apaisier*, to appease
 Approchement, n., p. 155, from v. approach; O.F. *aprochier*, approach
 Araged, p. 112; O.F. *rager*, *ragier*, mad
 Artted, pp., p. 281; O.F. *areter*, assigned, ascribed
 Armures, n., p. 46; O.F. *armure*, armor
 Arayed, v., p. 46; O.F. *areier*, *aroyer*, to array, arrange, or dispose in order
 Arreche, v., p. 75; A.S. *aræcan*. Cf. Mod. Ger. *erreichen* = to attain, get at, to strike
 Arryved, pp., p. 261; *arriver*, landed (the word has here its primitive meaning)
 Asondre, adv., p. 30; A.S. *on sundran*, asunder
 Aspre, adj.; O.F. *aspre*, severe, cruel
 Assaylles, n., p. 141; O.F. *assailler*, assaults
 Assieged, v. pret., p. 19; O.F. *assegier*, besieged
 Astonyed, pp., p. 288, either from A.S. *astunian*, or from O.F. *estoner*, *estuner*, *estomer*, probably of A.S. origin, stunned
 Aswage, v., p. 54; O.F. *asouager*, *asuager*, assuage
 Attemperat, adj., p. 116, moderate
 Atteyne, v., p. 243; O.F. *attaindre*, attain, reach, strike
 Attysed, v. pret., p. 117; O.F. *atisier*, urged on, instigated
 Atyusement, n., p. 121, instigation, enticement
 Aualed, v. trans. pret., p. 119, 180; O.F. *avaler*, lowered
 Auctors, n., p. 135; O.F. *autor*
 Aune, adj., p. 305, own
 Aulter, p. 253, aultres, p. 25; O.F. *alter*, *auter*, altar
 Auysed, p. 102; O.F. *aviser*, to notice, observe
 Anowe, n., p. 149, vow
 Avowed, p. 126. See *Aduowe*
 Avoyde, v., p. 271, to quit. For derivation see *Voyde*
 Awbes, n., p. 209, albs, a white linen vestment, and also a close-fitting vestment worn by officiants at mass, of black or other colour.—Cot. See the Lay Folks' Mass Book, p. 167
 Ayerye, p. 253, airy
 Bandon, n., p. 165; *to have bandon* = to have full and free permission
 Barat, n., p. 236; Fr. *barat*, origin uncertain; trickery, deceit
 Barayn, adj., p. 116; O.F. *barain*, *brahain*, *brehaing*, sterile
 Barbycane, n., p. 156; Barbycam, n., p. 251; O.F. *barbican*, supposed to be of Arabian or Persian origin, introduced into Europe by the Crusaders; cf. *Barbican*, a casement or hole in a parapet or wall to shoot out from; some think it also a sentry scout-house or hole. See Cotgrave, Ar. Pers. *babkhanah*
 Barellys, n., p. 119; O.F. *baril*, barrels
 Bataylles, n., p. 56, 138, etc.; O.F. *bataille*, from *battere*, *battiere*, battalions
 Baylliage, n., p. 125, a bailiwick
 Bayly, n., p. 24, 125, etc.; O.F. *baili*, earlier *bailif*, a derivative of *bail*, a bailif
 Beestes, n., p. 48; beestys, p. 48; O.F. *beste*, *bête*, beasts
 Befylle, v., p. 20; A.S. *befeallan*, befel
 Behoued, p. 110, pret. of *behoove*; A.S. *behofian*, behooved
 Behoueful, adj., p. 44, needful, fit
 Berde, n., p. 36; A.S. *beard*, beard
 Besaunt, n., p. 35, 165; O.F. *besant*, M.L. *Bezantium*, from *Byzantium*, a gold coin issued by the Emperors of Constantinople, in the Middle Ages
 Besy, adj., p. 153; A.S. *bysig*, busy
 Besynes, n., p. 162, *busy* and *ness*, business
 Bette, v., p. 47; A.S. *beðtan*, beat
 Benffes, pl. of *beef*, p. 33; O.F. *boeuf*, *boef*, *buef*, beeves
 Bihalve, p. 89, behalf
 Bobaunce, p. 27; O.F. *bobance*; cf. M.L. *bombicus*, from L. *bombus*, boasting, pride

- Bote, v. pret., p. 113; A.S. *bitan* = Goth. *beitan*, to bite
- Bowe turquoys, n., p. 102, a Turkish bow
- Brede, n., p. 135; A.S. *breáð*, breadth
- Brende, v. pret., p. 51; A.S. *baernan*; pret. *baernde*, burnt
- Brent, v., p. 20. See *Brende*
- Brokes, n., p. 258; A.S. *broc*, brooks
- Bruyt, n., p. 138; O.F. *bruit*, report, rumor, noise
- Busslement, n., p. 131, abbreviation for ambushment; O.F. *embuschement*, ambush
- Busynes, n., p. 53, 108, etc.; O.F. *buisine*, *buisine*, trumpets
- Bycam, v. pret., p. 124; A.S. *becumen* = Goth. *bikwiman*, became
- Bye, v., p. 61; A.S. *byegan*, pret. *bohte* = Goth. *bugjan*, atone for
- Bygonne, v. pret., p. 53; A.S. *beginnen*; pret. *began*, begun
- Byheded, pp., p. 52; A.S. *behéáfðian*, beheaded
- Byleve, p. 38; A.S. *be* + *liefan*, believe
- Byse, n., p. 124; F. *bise*, North-east or North
- Bytwene, prep., p. 121; A.S. *betweón*, between
- Byyonde, p. 46; A.S. *begeondan*, beyond
- Caable, n., p. 267; F. *chaable*, L.L. *cadabula*, *quadabulum*. Gk. *χαρβολή*, a machine of war for throwing stones and demolishing walls
- Caityfnes, n., p. 37; O.F. *caitif*, *chetif* + nes; wretchedness, misery
- Canellys, n., p. 273; F. *canal*, canals
- Carriage, p. 51, caryage, p. 52, n.; O.F. *carriage*, *chariage*, the act of carrying, also that which is carried, the burden
- Castelles, n., p. 2, castellys, p. 99; O.F. *chastel*, a rolling gallery, flanked with towers for attacking a fortified place, called sometimes a chat, castel
- Cautele, n., p. 186; O.F. *cautelle*, caution, subtlety, cunning, fraud
- Cendres, n., p. 279; O.F. *endre*, cinders, ashes
- Chaa, v. pret., p. 2; A.S. *ceósan*, pret. *ceás* = Goth. *kiasan*, to choose
- Chaa, n., p. 64; A.S. *chace*, *cace*, v. sub. chase
- Chalyces, n., p. 36; O.F. *chalice*, *calicc*, *calix*, chalice
- Champayns, n., p. 212; O.F. *champagne*, plain, field
- Channones, n., p. 290; O.F. *canone*, *chanone*, *chanoine*, canons or prebendaries
- Charged, v. pret., p. 213; O.F. *chargier*, *cargier*, loaded
- Charyotte, n., p. 33; O.F. *chariot*, dim. of *char*, a two-wheeled waggon
- Chattes, n., p. 257; O.F. *chat*, a frame of heavy timber, with projecting pins or teeth, hoisted upon battlements to be dropped on assailants
- Chees, p. 45, pret. of *choose*
- Chere, n., p. 218; O.F. *chere*, *chiere*, cheer
- Chenysshe, v., p. 151; O.F. *chevir*, to accomplish, get, provide
- Chiere, n., p. 276. See *Chere*
- Childed, v., p. 111; A.S. *cildian*, gave birth to
- Childeren, n., p. 46; A.S. *cild*, children
- Choo, v., p. 131, pret. of *choose*
- Chylded, v., p. 246. See *Childed*
- Cirurgens, n., p. 114; O.F. *cirurgien*, *serurgien*, surgeons
- Claymeth, v., p. 134; O.F. *claimer*, *cleimer*, *clamer*, call or name
- Closure, n., p. 135; O.F. *clousure*, afterwards extended under influence of Lat. *claustrum* to *clousure*, L. *clausura*, enclosure
- Cloysture, p. 252. See above.
- Cole, vb., p. 88, to cool
- Comene, v., p. 288, to talk of a weighty matter in counsel (Palsgrave), to discuss, treat of
- Commysed, v., p. 21; O.F. *commis*, pp. of *commettre*, committed, perpetrated
- Compleyned, vb., p. 186; O.F. *complaindre*, to lament, to bewail
- Conduyte, v., p. 34, 181, etc.; F. *conduit*, pp. of *conduire*, to conduct
- Conduytes, n., p. 254; O.F. *conduit*, conduits, tubes, canals
- Conestable, n., p. 132, 236; O.F. *conestable*, general-in-chief of an army
- Conne, v., p. 162; A.S. *cann*, *can*, pl. *cunnon*, to be able
- Contened, v., p. 31; O.F. *contenir*, to conduct one's self
- Conteyned them, p. 37. See above
- Contre, n., p. 48, *contreje*, p. 63, *countree*, p. 48; O.F. *countree*, *contrée*, country

- Convalesce, n., p. 219, convalescence
 Coosteyeng, pres. part., p. 235; O.F. *costeier*, to sail along the coast, to go along by the side of
 Corne, n., p. 252; Fr. *corne*, a corner or projecting point
 Corromped, pp., p. 217; O.F. *corrompre*, L. *corrumpere*, corrupted
 Corrouers, n., p. 154; O.F. *coureor*, *coureur*, runners, messengers
 Costeyeng, p. 139. See above.
 Couenable, adj., p. 274; O.F. *convenable*; earlier, *convenable*, suitable, proper
 Couine, n., p. 19, 151; O.F. *covine*, *covine*, from *covenir*, manner, condition, appearance
 Counterpeysed, vb., p. 69; O.F. *contrepeser* = to weigh in the balance, to consider
 Courage, n., p. 178; O.F. *corage*, *courage*, heart, mind, thought, desire
 Courreurs, n., p. 159. See *Corrouers*
 Creancers, n., p. 44, creditors
 Creance, n., p. 24, 152; O.F. *creance*, faith, confidence
 Creneul, n., p. 181; O.F. *crenelle*, dim. of *crena*, an embrasure, a battlement, one of the open spaces of a battlemented parapet which alternate with the merlons or cops
 Creuache, n., p. 102; O.F. *crevace*, a crack, fissure, cleft
 Crochette, n., p. 103; F. *crochette*, dim. of *croc*, a hook
 Crose, n., p. 40; O.F. *croce*, crozier, a bishop's staff
 Croysyng, v. sub., p. 3, the putting on of the cross
 Crybbe, n., p. 246; A.S. *crib*, *cryb*, a crib, a manger
 Culpe, n., p. 120; O.F. *culpe*, *coupe*, *colpe*, fault, guilt
 Culuer, n., p. 219; A.S. *culfre*, *culufre*, probably a corruption of Lat. *columba*, a dove, a pigeon; used by Spenser
 Cursour, n., p. 111; O.F. *corsier*, *coursier*, a war-horse, a runner
 Custrellis, n., p. 204; O.F. *coustelle*, a sabre with two edges
 Cymetyer, n., p. 251; O.F. *cemetiere*, a cemetery
 Dampned, p. 79, damned
 Daunger, n., p. 192; O.F. *danger*, *danger*, difficulty, hesitation, power
 Debate, n., p. 49; O.F. *desbat*, *debat*, contention, strife
 Debonair, adj., p. 50; O.F. *de bon air*, courteous, affable
 Debonairly, adv., p. 22, courteously
 Decevalle, n., p. 81; O.F. *decevaile*, deception, treachery
 Deduyt, n., p. 118; O.F. *deduit*, diversion, sport, pastime
 Defaulte, n., p. 52; O.F. *defaute*, a fault, a failure
 Deffended, pp., p. 24; O.F. *defendre*, forbidden
 Deffeted, pp., p. 21; O.F. *defeter*, defeated
 Defowled, pp., p. 36; O.F. *defoler*, trampled underfoot
 Degrees, n., p. 252; O.F. *degré*, steps
 Delne, v., p. 201; A.S. *delfun*, pret. *dealf*, pl. *dulfon*, pp. *dolfen*, to dig, excavate
 Delytable, adj., p. 118, 130; O.F. *delitable*, delightful, delectable
 Delyuer, adj., p. 205; O.F. *delivre*, free, prompt, nimble
 Delyuerid, pp., p. 124; O.F. *delivrer*, freed, delivered
 Delyuerly, adv., p. 133. promptly, actively
 Demayne, n., p. 106; O.F. *demaine*, *demeine*, var. of *domain*, power, dominion
 Demened, v., p. 28, 31, 37; O.F. *demener*, conducted, managed, treated
 Demonstraunce, n., p. 246; O.F. *demonstrance*, demonstration, proof
 Départed, v., p. 251; O.F. *departir*, divided, separated
 Deporte, v., p. 26; O.F. *deporter*, to protect, take care of
 Desheryted, pp., p. 43; O.F. *desheriter*, disinherited
 Despences, n., p. 162; O.F. *despences*, expenses, expenditures
 Desperpled, p. 64; O.F. *desparpailier*, etc. = to scatter, to disperse
 Deployed, pp., p. 239; F. *de + ployer*, unfolded
 Desraye, n., p. 295; O.F. *desarrei*, *disarroi*, *disroi*, disarray, confusion
 Destourmed, p. 75, probably a corruption for destourmed; O.F. *destourner*, to hinder, avoid, turn from
 Destrat, n., p. 244; F. *destreit*, *destroit*, a narrow passage
 Destrobled, v., p. 30; O.F. *destourbler*, var. of *destourbier*, troubled

- Deuoyr, n., p. 65; Fr. *devoir*, duty, or service
- Deyche, n., p. 270; A.S. *dic*, a ditch
- Deyde, p. 43, pret. of *Deye*
- Deye, v., p. 32; M.E. *dien*, *dyen*, *deyen* = Goth. *diwan*, pret. *dan*, to die
- Disanere, v., p. 189, *dis* + *anchor*; A.S. *ancor*, to weigh anchor
- Discharged, v., p. 147; O.F. *descharger*, *deschargier*, *discarricare*, discharged, fired
- Disconuenyentes, n., p. 52; O.F. *desconvenance*, inconveniences, discomforts
- Disconeryd, pp., p. 253; O.F. *descouvrir*, uncovered
- Displaysyd, v., p. 60; O.F. *desplaiser*, displeased
- Disponveyed, adj., p. 308; O.F. *depourvi*, needy, deprived of
- Dispoylls, n., p. 135; O.F. *despoilles*, spoils
- Distourblyng, n., p. 48. See *Destrobled*
- Dolorous, adj., p. 277; O.F. *doloureux*, mournful, dismal
- Dommage, n., p. 26; O.F. *damage*, *domage*, damage, harm
- Domyned, v., p. 2; O.F. *dominer*, ruled, controlled
- Dongeon, n., p. 251; O.F. *donjon*, the inner tower, keep, or stronghold of a castle
- Doubted, v., p. 108; O.F. *douter*, feared
- Doughtres, n., p. 25; A.S. *dohtor*, daughters
- Drad, adj., p. 5, 124; A.S. *draedan* (only in comp.), dreaded
- Dressed, v., p. 227; O.F. *dresser*, *drecier*, set up, arranged, prepared for action
- Dröef, v., p. 48, pret. of drive; A.S. *drifan* = Goth. *dreiban*, drove
- Droncardys, n., p. 150; *drunk* + *ard*, drunkards
- Droytes, n., p. 301; O.F. *droits*, rights
- Duchemen, n., p. 51; Dutchmen, *i. e.* Germans
- Duellid, v., p. 21, pp. of dwell (A.S. *duellan*, dwelt)
- Dychte, v., p. 114; A.S. *dihtan*, pret. *dihte*, to dress, to clean
- Dylyure, v., p. 39. See *Delyuerid*
- Dymynued, v., p. 291; O.F. *diminuer*, to diminish
- Eeryng, v., p. 29. See *Ere*
- Effrayed, v., p. 113, 140; O.F. *effrayer*, frightened
- Egally, adj., p. 144; F. *égal*, equally
- Eght, adj., p. 47, eighth
- Elis, n., p. 93, eels?
- Ellys, adv., p. 109; A.S. *elles* = Goth. *alis* = L. *alius*, else
- Embussshed, v., p. 125; O.F. *embuscher*, *embuscher*, *embruissier*, to place in ambush
- Embussishment, n., p. 125, an ambushment
- Empesshement, n., p. 89; O.F. *empeschement* = hindrance
- Empeyred, v., p. 42; O.F. *empirier*, to injure, damage
- Empryse, v., p. 1, 21; F. *empris*, pp. of *emprendre*, to undertake
- Enchassed, v., p. 121; O.F. *enchacier*, *enchasser*, *encachier*, chased
- Endeoyre, v., p. 1, 4; O.F. *in* + *derer*, *devoir*, to endeavor
- Enducte, adj., p. 286; probably a synonym for accustomed. ? trained
- Endure, v.; O.F. *endurer*, to persist
- Enforced, v., p. 249; O.F. *enforcer*, *enforcier*, violated, ravished
- Enforced, v., p. 134; same origin as above; strengthened
- Enforced them, v. ref., p. 25, 98; same origin as above; to encourage one's self, to put forth one's greatest exertion
- Enhabited with, adj., p. 130; O.F. *inhabiter*, inhabited by
- Enhauced, v., p. 22; O.F. *enhancer*, *en* + *hancer*, *enhancier*
- Ennoyed, v., p. 125, annoy + ed, O.F. *anoi*, *enoi*, *enui*, troubled, vexed
- Enpayred, v., p. 158. See *Empeyred*
- Empesshe, v., p. 107; O.F. *empeschier*, to hinder
- Entente, n., pp. 19, 93; O.F. *entente*, attention, heed, intention
- Entented, v., p. 52, etc.; O.F. *entendre*, to be busy, attend to, occupy one's self with
- Ententifly, adv., p. 21, 137, diligently
- Entermeted of, v., p. 53; O.F. *entremettre*, to concern one's self with, to have to do with
- Enticed, v., p. 20; O.F. *enticer*, *enticer*, *en* + *teche*, persuaded, enticed
- Entierly, adv., p. 105, entier + ly; O.F. *entier*, entire, whole
- Entreated, v., p. 22; O.F. *entraiter*, *entraitier*, to treat, to behave towards

- Entredeux, loc. adv., p. 83; O.F. *entredenz*, of two minds, undecided
- Entreprised, v., p. 44; from *entrepris*, pp. of F. *entreprendre*, undertook
- Entretiened, v., p. 22; Fr. *entretenir*, supported, taken care of
- Enuyronned, v., p. 47; O.F. *environer*, *environner*, *en* + *viron*, surrounded
- Entysed, v., p. 62. See *Enticed*
- Erable, adj., p. 135; O.F. *arable*, L. *arabilis*, prob. confused with the M.E. *to ear*, arable
- Ere, v., p. 306; A.S. *erian* = Goth. *arjan* = L. *arare*, to plow, to till
- Eschewe, v., p. 128; O.F. *eschuer*, *eschiver*, to avoid
- Esclaues, n., p. 204; O.F. *slave*, slaves
- Escumours, n., p. 120; *pirates* O.F.; see Escumerie = piracy, of German origin
- Eshewe, v., p. 43. See *Escheve*
- Esymayed, v. int., p. 210; O.F. *esmaier*, Goth. *magar*, daunted, filled with fear
- Esperance, n., p. 160; O.F. *esperance*, hope
- Estandart, n., p. 150; O.F. *étendard*, standard-bearer
- Ester, n., p. 241; A.S. *éastra*, Easter (given by Beda)
- Estoremestes, n., p. 138; O.F. *estorements*, soldiers' equipment, arms
- Estour, n., p. 211; O.F. *estor*, O.H.D. *sturm*, vb. *sturman*, attack, contest
- Eurous, adj., p. 4; O.F. *heureux*, *eureux*, happy, lucky
- Ewr, n., p. 268; O.F. *heur*, luck
- Excusacion, n., p. 66; O.F. *excusacion*, excuse, apology
- Exploited, v., p. 196; O.F. *exploiter*, *exploitier*, achieved, accomplished
- Exploites, n., p. 126; O.F. *exploit*, *exploit*, achievements, performances
- Eyen, n., p. 134. pl. of eye, eyes
- Facions, n., p. 23; O.F. *façon*, *fazon*, etc., fashions, manners, ways
- Faite, n., p. 173; O.F. *faix*, burden, charge, weight
- Faitis, n., p. 273; O.F. *fait*, deeds
- Fardellys, n.; O.F. *fardel*, *fardeau*, L. *fardellus*, said to be of Arabic origin, bundles, packs
- Fawcon, n., p. 289; O.F. *faucon*, banner = *gonfalon*. *Falco* = *vexillum* in Med. Lat.
- Fayned, v., p. 259; O.F. *feindre*, to make a false appearance, pretend
- Fayte, n., p. 62. See *Faite*
- Feaulté, n., p. 30; O.F. *feaulté*, *feaute*, etc., fealty, faithfulness
- Feeldes, n., p. 61; A.S. *feld*, fields
- Feerd, adj., p. 204, abb. of *afeerd*; A.S. *āferan*, *ā* + *færan*, frightened, afraid
- Feers, adj., p. 188; *fiers*, 124; O.F. *fers*, old nom. form of *fier*, fierce, bold, savage
- Fel, adj., p. 40; A.S. *fel*, *felo*. Cf. O.F. *fel*, O.D. *fel*, grim, fierce, ruthless
- Felaw, n., p. 128; Ice. *félagi*, a companion, comrade
- Felawship, n., p. 44, fellowship
- Felly, adv. used adjectively, p. 107; same origin as *Fel*, and same meanings
- Felonous, adj., p. 113; O.F. *felon* + *ous*, wicked, malignant
- Feotemen, n., p. 123, footmen
- Fer, adv.; A.S. *feorr* = Goth. *fairra*, far
- Ferde, v. pret., p. 122; A.S. *faran*, to fare
- Ferdfulness, n., p. 31; A.S. *fær*, fear
- Ferre, adv., p. 33. See *Fer*
- Feste, n., p. 278; O.F. *feste*, feast
- Fetyted, adj., p. 259; O.F. *faitis*, *faitice*, well made, neat, properly cut
- Feuerer, n., p. 156; O.F. *Fevrier*, February
- Fenytes, p. 125; a misprint or corruption for *fruytes* = fruits
- Flawe, n., p. 33; literally a flake, but probably a corruption for *fléau* = scourge, of which it is a translation
- Flowred, v., p. 3; O.F. *florir*, to flourish
- Folyly, adv., p. 143; O.F. *folie* + *ly*, foolishly
- Fondament, n., p. 21; O.F. *fundement*, *fondement*, foundation
- Forgate, v. pret.; A.S. *forjitan*, pret. *forgeat*, forgot
- Forleton, n. adj., abandoned
- Fosse, n., p. 253; F. *fosse*, a ditch
- Fourage, n., p. 55; O.F. *fouage*, forage
- Fourhussed, v., p. 204; O.F. *fourbiss*, *furbir*, M.L. *forbare* = A.S. *feormian* for *feorbian*, *furbian*, to furbish, scour, polish
- Fourriers, n., p. 131; O.F. *foriers*, foragers, forage-merchants
- Fowle, adv., p. 33; A.S. *fūl* = Goth. *fuls*, foully
- Fowly, adv., p. 192, foully

Fowragyng, n., p. 48, foraging
 Franchyses, n., p. 33; O.F. *franchise*, liberties
 Fyers, adj., p. 19. O.F. *fiers*, fierce
 Fynably, adj.; *fine* + *able* + *ly*, finally
 Fysshe, n., p. 135; A.S. *fisc*, pl. *fiscas* = fish
 Fyxed, v., p. 44; O.F. *fixer*, *fichier*, *ficher*, fixed
 Gadryd, pp., p. 297; A.S. *gaderian*, gathered
 Garnyson, n., p. 177; O.F. *garnison*, garrison
 Garnysshed, v., p. 124; O.F. *garniss*, *garnir*, Germ. stem; fortified, garnished
 Garson, n., p. 280; O.F. *garson*, a boy, a servant
 Gaynable, adj., p. 85, tillable
 Gaynsay, v., p. 62; by abbreviation, from A.S. *agein seyen*, to speak against
 Geer, n., p. 234; A.S. *gearwe*, gear, property
 Gliestes, n., p. 119; A.S. *gaest*, *gest*, etc. = Goth. *gasts*, guests
 Glayues, n., p. 97, 273; O.F. *glave*, *glaiue*, *glaves*, a weapon made of a cutting blade at the end of a stick or staff
 Gobet, n., p. 191; O.F. *gobet*, *goubet*, dim. of *gob*, a morsel, lump
 Gonfanon, n., p. 289; O.F. *gonfanon*, L. *gonfano(n)* = A.S. *gūthfana*, gonfanon or banner
 Gossib, n., p. 20; A.S. *godsib*, sponsor
 Gree, n., p. 277; O.F. *gre*, *grei*, etc., to accept in gree, means to accept kindly, or with favour
 Greues, n., p. 29; O.F. *grief*, *gref*, *greu*, etc., afflictions, grievances
 Guarysshyd, v., p. 167; O.F. *guariss*, *guarir*, cured, healed
 Guerdon, n., p. 182; O.F. *guerdon*, M.L. *widerdonum*, Gm. *wider lonum*, a reward
 Gybet, n., p. 25; O.F. *gibet*, a gibbet, a gallows
 Habyllled, adj., p. 19; O.F. *habiller*, clad, dressed
 Habyllmens, n., p. 104; O.F. *habillement*, clothes, habiliments
 Haches, n., p. 307; O.F. *hache*, axes
 Happed, v. pret., p. 141, 198; Ice. *happ*, happened

Harberowed, v., p. 249, same origin as *Herberous* = O.F. *herbergier*, to give shelter to, to harbor
 Hardynes, n., p. 63; hardy + ness; O.F. *hardi*, O.H.G. *harti*, *herti*, hardiness
 Harnoy, n., p. 137, 138; O.F. *harnas*, *harnois*; of Celtic origin; harness, armour
 Haubergyers, n., p. 168; makers of hauberks
 Hauberks, n., p. 204; O.F. *hauberc*, *halberc*, Gm. *halsberc*, *halsberge*, hauberk
 Hauene, n., p. 231; A.S. *haefen*, a haven, harbour
 Havoyr, n.; Fr. *avoir*, property, riches
 Heelpe, v. pret.; A.S. *helpan*, pret. *healp*, pl. *holpon*, to help
 Heer, n., p. 36; A.S. *hær*, hair
 Heeryng, pres. part., p. 4; A.S. *hiéran*, *hëran*, *hyran* = Goth. *hausjan*, hearing
 Henge, v. pret., p. 211; A.S. *hongian*, hung
 Herberous, n., p. 207, O.F., G. or Scand. origin; H.G. *heri* + O.H.G. *bergan*, a camp, lodging
 Heremyte, n., p. 3; L.L. *eremita*, hermit
 Hethenes, n., p. 23; A.S. *hæthen* = Goth. *haiþenis*, pagans, heathen
 Hether, adv., p. 60; A.S. *hider*, sometimes; *hidres* = Goth. *hidre*, hither
 Hewing, pres. part., p. 147; A.S. *heávcan*, pret. *heow* = Goth. *haggvan*, to cut, to inflict cutting blows
 Heyer, n., p. 302; O.F. *heir*, *eir*, *oir*, an heir
 Heygthe, n., p. 289; A.S. *heáthu* = Goth. *hauþitha*, height
 Heyr, n., p. 126. See *Heyer*
 Holpen, pp., p. 106. See *Heelpe*
 Hool, adj., p. 125, whole
 Hourdeys, n., p. 140; O.F. *hourdeis*, from the Gm.; cf. Goth. *haurds*, M.H.G. *horden*, *hort*, palisades of wood placed on the tops of towers
 Hu, n., p. 268; O.F. *hu*, *hui*, a cry or shout
 Hydles (in), p. 194; A.S. *hýdels*. See *Wiclif*, Deut. xxvii., secretly
 Inconuenient, p. 231; O.F. *inconuenience*, a disagreeable situation, misfortune
 Indigne, adj., p. 5; O.F. *indigne*, unworthy

- Intituled, pp., p. 18; O.F. *intituler*, entitled
- Journeye, n., p. 34; O.F. *ournée*, a day's journey
- Justed, v., p. 289; O.F. *jouster*, to joust
- Lustised, v. pret., p. 289; O.F. *justicier*, judged
- Iusticer, n., p. 29; O.F. *justicier*, a judge
- Knowleche, n., p. 64; *know* + *leche*, assibilated form of *leke*; Icel. *leikr*, *leiki* = A.S. *lāc*, knowledge
- Knowleched, v., p. 123, abbreviation for acknowledged
- Kyen, n., p. 33, pl. of cow, kine
- Kynred, n., p. 29; A.S. *cynn* + *ræden*, kindred
- Labourable, adj., p. 112; O.F. *labor* + *able*, that which can be tilled
- Laddre, n., p. 272, ladder
- Largesse, n., p. 22; O.F. *largesse*, generosity, bounty
- Lasse, adj., p. 44; A.S. *laessa*, less
- Lassed, adj., p. 164; O.F. *lasser*, *lassare*, wearied, fatigued
- Late, v., p. 48; A.S. *lātan* = Goth. *lētan*, to let
- Launced (on), sb., p. 82; O.F. *lancier*, to attack
- Lawe, n., p. 22; A.S. *lagu*, religion, law
- Laye, adj., p. 42; O.F. *lai*, lay
- Laye, n., p. 141, 154; A.S. *lagu*, lake
- Layete, n., p. 43; *lay* + *ty*; O.F. *lai*, laity
- Layser, n., p. 37; O.F. *leisir*, *loisir*, etc., leisure
- Lecherye, n., p. 32; O.F. *lecherie*, *lechir*, M.H.G. *lecken*, lechery
- Leed, n., p. 253; A.S. *leád*, lead
- Leap, v., p. 113; A.S. *hlépan* = Goth. *hlaupan*, to leap
- Lese, v., p. 114, partly from A.S. *losian*, but chiefly a var. of *lesen*; A.S. *leósan*, to lose
- Lesyng, n., p. 244. See *Lese*, losing
- Lesyng, n., p. 236, 281; A.S. *leasing* = Icel. *lausung*, falsehood, lying
- Letted, v., p. 146, 281; A.S. *lettan* = Goth. *latjan*, to strip, retard, hinder
- Lener, adv.; A.S. *leóf* = Goth. *liubs*, used in the expression "to have liefer," to prefer
- Leyser, n., p. 160. See *Layser*
- Leyzer, n., p. 5. See *Layser*
- Lodgys, n., p. 110; O.F. *logis*, M.L. *laubiá*, of Gm. origin, camp
- Longed, adj., p. 53, contraction for belonged
- Loos, n., p. 288; O.F. *laus*, *los*, praise, fame
- Lygnage, lynage, n., p. 26, 29; O.F. *lynage*, family, race, stock
- Lyttier, n., p. 113; O.F. *litière*, a litter
- Lyuess, n., p. 58, pl. of *life*; A.S. *lif* = Goth. *leif*, lives
- Maculated, pp., p. 274, stained, spotted
- Mahometry, n., p. 274; Mahomet + *ry*, Mahomedanism
- Mahommerye, n., p. 157, 162; O.F. *Mahomérie*, a mosque
- Maistres, n., p. 23; O.F. *maistre*, masters
- Males, n., p. 51; O.F. *male*, *malle*, bags or sacks
- Malle, n., p. 273; O.F. *mal*, *mail*, a mall, or heavy hammer
- Malles, n., p. 210, same origin as word above = blows
- Maluerte, n., p. 203; O.F. *malheurte*, misfortune
- Mangonneaul, n., p. 257; O.F. *mangonel*, a mangonel, or engine for throwing stones
- Marchaunte, v., p. 115; O.F. *marchander*, to buy and sell, to trade
- Marchauntes, n., p. 39, merchants
- Marche, n., p. 289; partly A.S. *mearc*, partly from O.F. *marche*, frontier, border
- Marched (on), v., p. 136; A.S. *mearcian*, to border on
- Mareys, n., p. 139, 228; O.F. *mareis*, *marais*, *marois*, a marsh
- Marryd, v.; O.F. *marrir*, Gm. *marrjan*, to injure
- Marueyilles, n., p. 55; O.F. *merveille*, marvels, wonders
- Maulgre, prep., p. 55, 117; O.F. *maugre*, *malgre*, in spite of
- Maymed, v., p. 194; O.F. *mehaing*, *mahain*, to disable, maim
- Maytene, n., p. 61, conduct, behaviour
- Medle, n., p. 53, 97; from verb *medle*, a hand-to-hand fight, a *mêlée*
- Medled (with), v., p. 115; O.F. *medler*, *mesler*, to concern one's self with, to deal with
- Medlyng, n., p. 49, 155; *medle* + *ing*, contention in battle, fighting

- Meubles, n., p. 32; O.F. *meuble*, furniture, movable property
- Meuble, adj., p. 5; movable
- Meschief, n., p. 161; O.F. *meschief*, misfortune, calamity
- Mescrauntes, n., p. 3; O.F. *mescreaunt*, infidels, unbelievers
- Mesense, n., p. 25, 153; O.F. *meseise*, *mesqise*, *mes* + *aise*, discomfort, trouble
- Mesfeates, n., p. 29; O.F. *mesfait*, bad actions, misdeeds
- Meshapped, v., p. 167; *mis* + *happen*, *minus* + Icel. *happ*, to happen ill, to go wrong
- Messenger, n., p. 18, 163; O.F. *message*, messenger
- Messagier, n., p. 239. See *Messenger*
- Mesurable, adj., p. 301; O.F. *mesurable*, moderate, temperate
- Meyne, n., p. 136, 177; O.F. *megnie*, *menie*, suite, members of a household
- Monethe, p. 41, 183; A.S. *moneth*, *monoth* = Goth. *menoth*, month
- Moo, adj., p. 52, more
- Mounture, n., p. 141; O.F. *monture*, a mount, a saddle-horse
- Mowe, vb., p. 185, be able
- Moyen, adj., p. 59; same derivation as below; literally, medium, but used here in the sense of *common*
- Moyens, n., p. 119; O.F. *moien*, *meien*, means
- Muletis, n., p. 122; O.F. *mulet*, mules
- Muraylles, n., p. 21; O.F. *muraille*, walls
- Murdred, v., p. 35; A.S. *myrthrian* = Goth. *maurthran*, killed, murdered
- Murdrier, n., p. 32; same origin as above, murderer
- Musardes, n., p. 203; O.F. *musard*, vagabond
- Musardye, n., p. 179, vagabondage
- Myllenes, n., p. 51; A.S. *mylen*, *myln* = O.F. *moulin*, mills
- Mynnysshid, v., p. 145; O.F. *menusier*, *menuisier*, to diminish
- Mysaentures, n., p. 54; O.F. *mesaventure*, ill luck, mischance
- Mysbeleue, n., p. 152; A.S. *mis* + *belief*, false opinion, heresy
- Myschiefs, n., p. 25. See *Meschief*
- Myscreauntes, n., p. 23. See *Mescrauntes*
- Natnyute, n., p. 3; O.F. *nativeté*, nativity
- Nauyll, n., p. 253; A.S. *nafela* = Goth. *nabalo*, the navel, the middle
- Ner, adv., p. 108, near
- Neraught, v. pret., p. 149, *neg.* combined with reckon; A.S. *recan*, pret. *röhte*, not to heed, or pay attention to, or care
- Nette, adj., p. 25; O.F. *net*, neat
- Neueus, n., p. 136; O.F. *neveu*, nephews
- Noye, v., p. 104; by aphæresis from annoy, to damage, injure
- Noyous, adj., p. 140, injurious, troublesome
- Noyse, n., p. 23, 138; O.F. *noise*, L. *nausea*, disturbance, noise
- Nyce'ly, adv., pp. 187, 233; *nice* + *ly*; O.F. *nice*, L. *nescius*, foolishly
- Nyle, n., p. 85. See note, p. 85
- Obeysaunt, adj., p. 2; O.F. *obeissant*, obedient
- Occisyon, n., p. 62; O.F. *occision*, slaughter, the act of killing
- Occyent, n., p. 55; O.F. *occident*, the Occident, the West
- Oost, n., p. 55; O.F. *host*, *ost*, the army
- Orguyel, n., p. 20; O.F. *orgoil*, *orguel*, etc., of Teut. origin; cf. O.H.G. *urgilo*, *ur* + *gel*, pride
- Orguyllous, adj., p. 19; O.F. *orgueilleux*; cf. A.S. *orgellic*, same origin as *orguel*, proud, haughty, ostentatious
- Orisons, n., p. 26; O.F. *oraison*, orisons, prayers
- Oroysons, n., p. 269. See *Orisons*
- Ostages, n., p. 50, 127, etc.; O.F. *ostage*, hostages
- Ottroye, v., p. 5; *octroyer*, to grant, to give
- Querste, adj., p. 161, superlative of *over*; A.S. *ofer*, the highest
- Ought, v., p. 124, pret. of to owe; A.S. *ähte*
- Oultrages, n., p. 49, 120; O.F. *outrage*, outrages
- Outbynde, v., p. 248, *un* + *bynde*, to loosen
- Ouurages, n., p. 237; O.F. *ouvrage*, works
- Oynementis, n., p. 251; O.F. *oignement*, *oigner*, *oindre*, ointment, unguent
- Paas, n., p. 133; O.F. *pas*, pace
- Palfroye, n., p. 46; O.F. *palfroi*, a saddle-horse
- Palus, n., p. 244; Lat. *palus*, marsh

- Pavente, n., p. 39; O.F. *pavement*, *paviment*, pavement
 Pane, n., p. 264; O.F. *pan*, a piece, division, part
 Panenye, n., p. 150; O.F. *paiennie*, heathendom
 Parfygt, adj., p. 122; O.F. *parfait*, *parfit*, perfect
 Parteyes, n., p. 18; *partie*, parts, countries
 Paryll, n., p. 151; O.F. *peril*, peril
 Pasque, n., p. 241; Fr. *Pasques*, Easter
 Pauyllon, n., p. 46, 165; O.F. *pavilion*, pavilion, tent
 Paynem, n., p. 145; O.F. *paienime*, a pagan, a heathen
 Payssyble, adj., p. 81; O.F. *paisible*, peaceable
 Peas, n., p. 51; Fr. *paix*, peace
 Pecked, v., pret., p. 142; A.S. *pycan*, picked
 Pees, n., p. 43. See *Peas*
 Pendaunt, n., p. 188; O.F. *pendant*, a slope, a hanging
 Penyble, adj., p. 209; O.F. *penible*, capable of enduring hard work, pains-taking
 Percid, v., p. 201; F. *percer*, *percier*, pierced
 Perierer, n.; O.F. *pierrieres*, an engine for throwing stones
 Perylle, n., p. 35. See *Paryll*
 Peyned, v. ref., p. 64; O.F. *peiner*, to make an effort, to give one's self great trouble
 Pieres, n., p. 3; F. *pair*, peers
 Pierye, n., p. 78; O.F. *pierreries*, precious stones
 Piscyne, n., p. 251; O.F. *piscine*, a pool
 Playsyr, n., p. 5; O.F. *plaisir*, *plesir*, pleasure
 Plom, n., p. 184; O.F. *plom*, *plomb*, plumb
 Popelican, n., p. 94; O.F. *poplican*, a heretic
 Popeliquans, n., p. 80; same as above
 Potes n., p. 113; F. *patte*, of Gm. origin. Cf. Low Gm. *pote*, Gm. *Pfote*, paws
 Pourchassed, v., pp. 22, 23; O.F. *porchacier*, etc., *captiare*, obtained, gamed
 Pourchassoure, n., p. 238; O.F. *purchaceor*, one who acquires or obtains. ? pursuer, seeker after
 Pourprised, v., p. 139; O.F. *pourprise*, *porprise*, seized, occupied
 Poursue, v., p. 39; O.F. *pursuer*, *pour-suivre*, to pursue
 Poursyewe, v., p. 60. See *Poursue*
 Pourveyaunce, n., p. 36; O.F. *porveiance*, *porveance*, care, foresight
 Pourueyed, v., p. 160; O.F. *porreier*, *pourvoir*, provided
 Prechid, v., p. 18; O.F. *prechier*, *precher*, preached
 Prees, n., p. 133; O.F. *presse*, a press, a crowd
 Prenable, adj., p. 135; O.F. *prenable*, that which may be taken
 Preuyleges, n., p. 24; O.F. *privilege*, rights, privileges
 Preysed, v., p. 36, 145; O.F. *prisier*, *priser*, prized, estimated highly
 Prime temps, n., p. 165; O.F. *printemps*, the spring-time
 Prise, n., p. 130; O.F. *prise*, the taking, the capture
 Priue, adj., p. 106; O.F. *privé*, private, intimate
 Proef, n., p. 40; O.F. *prove*, *proeve*, *preuve*, proof
 Promysson, n., p. 253, promise
 Propice, adj., p. 40; O.F. *propice*, propitious, suitable
 Prothomarter, n., p. 251; Fr. *protomartyr*, M.L. *protomartyr*, from Gk. *πρωτόμαρτυρ*, the first martyr.
 Prouffred, v., p. 163, 164; O.F. *proferer*, proffered
 Prouffyt, n., p. 122; O.F. *profit*, profit
 Prouostes, n., p. 41; A.S. *práfost*, provosts
 Puissaunt, adj., p. 19, powerful
 Puyssaunce, n., p. 61, 124; O.F. *puissance*, for power
 Pyece, n., p. 259; O.F. *piece*, piece
 Pyetous, adj., p. 204; O.F. *piteux*, compassionate
 Pyked, v. pret., p. 63; A.S. *pycan*, to pick or strike with an instrument
 Pykoys, n., p. 63; O.F. *pecois*, *pyquois*, etc., a sort of dart
 Pyler, n., p. 253; O.F. *pilier*, a pillar
 Pylle, pyle, v., p. 55, 60; O.F. *pillier*, to pillage
 Pynnes, n., p. 257; A.S. *pinn*, pins
 Pytte, v. pret., p. 251; A.S. *potian*, to put
 Quarellys, n., p. 263; O.F. *quarrel*, arrows having a four-edged head
 Quyt, adj., p. 60; O.F. *quite*, quit
 Quyte, u., p. 17. See *Qyt*

- Raced, v., p. 34; O.F. *raser*, freq. of L. *radere*, to destroy, to put; used with *out*
- Rainson, n.; O.F. *Rançon*, *rençon*, ransom
- Rawnson, n., p. 224. See *Rainson*
- Recomforte, v., p. 27, 63; Fr. *reconforter*, *re* + *comfort*, to give new strength to
- Recouere, v., p. 43; O.F. *recouvrer*, to recover
- Recountred, v., p. 195; O.F. *rencontrer*, to encounter
- Recuperacion, n., p. 4; O.F. *recuperation*, recovery
- Recuyelled, v., p. 213; O.F. *recueillir*, gathered, collected
- Redde, v. pret., p. 5; A.S. *rædan*. read
- Reedefye, v., p. 27; O.F. *reedifier*, to rebuild
- Refreshhyd, v., p. 50; O.F. *refraischir*, *refreschier*, refreshed
- Reherchyng, v., p. 2; O.F. *reherser*, *re* + *herse*, recount, relate
- Releuyd, v., p. 208; O.F. *relever*, lifted up, raised
- Relyed, v., p. 56, 296; O.F. *rallier*, united, rallied
- Remuled, adj., p. 93. See note, p. 93
- Remyse, v., p. 1, 293; F. *remis*, stem from *remettre*, to put back
- Rendrid, v. p. 51; O.F. *rendre*, returned, rendered
- Renged, adj., p. 108; O.F. *renger*, *reng*, O.H.G. *hring*, arranged, drawn up in line
- Renomed, adj., p. 200; O.F. *renommer*, renowned
- Renomme, n., p. 5, 37; O.F. *renommée*, renown
- Renye, v., p. 25, 45, etc.; O.F. *renier*, to deny, renounce
- Repeased, pp., p. 128; O.F. *rapaisier*, appeased
- Repreef, n., p. 25, 28; O.F. *reprover*, *reprover*, reproof
- Repreuyd, v., p. 123; same origin as repreef, reproved
- Reprysed, v., p. 262; F. *repris*, pp. of *reprandre*, taken back
- Respyted, v., p. 150; O.F. *respiter*, delayed, postponed
- Resseyue, v., p. 106; O.F. *recever*, *receivre*, to receive
- Retched (not), pret., p. 83, an assibilated form of *reck* = *cared* (not)
- Reteyne, v., p. 89; O.F. *retenir*, to retain
- Retrayte, n., p. 220; O.F. *retraite*, place of refuge
- Reuerrye, n., p. 174, 197; O.F. *resverie*, *resver*, a fit of obstinacy
- Reuested, v., p. 205; O.F. *revestir*, to clothe, to put on
- Rial, adj., p. 274; O.F. *roial*, *regal*, *royal*, royal, magnificent
- Rightwys, adj., p. 37; A.S. *rightwis*, righteous
- Roted, v., p. 145; from the noun root, A.S. *rūt*, rooted
- Rought, v. pret., p. 276; A.S. *rēcan*, pret. *rūhte*, to reckon, heed, care
- Rousee, n., p. 208; O.F. *rosée*, dew
- Rowte, n., p. 47; O.F. *route*, a troop, band
- Royame, n., p. 60; O.F. *royaume*, kingdom
- Ruissheauls, n., p. 273—probably a corruption of 'ruyseaulx, ruisseaux'—brooks or gutters
- Ryuage, n., p. 112; O.F. *rivage*, bank, brink
- Ryall, adj., p. 252. See *Riall*
- Sad, adj., p. 38, 202; A.S. *saed*, sober, serious, wise
- Salewed, v., p. 40; O.F. *saluer*, saluted, greeted
- Saucly, adv., p. 41; O.F. *sauf* + *ly*, safely
- Sauf, prep., p. 21, except
- Sauf, adj., p. 48, safe
- Sauf conduyt, n., p. 236; O.F. *saufconduit*, safe-conduct
- Saufly, adv., p. 56, safely
- Saufte, n., p. 104, safety
- Scaffholde, p. 63; O.F. *eschafault*, *eschafaud*, scaffold
- Scarnuche, n., p. 97, 121; O.F. *escarmouche*, It. *schermugio*, skirmish
- Scarsenes, n., p. 144, scarce + ness, scarceness
- Scarsete, n., p. 230; O.F. *escarsete*, origin uncertain: scarcity
- Scysmc, n., p. 41; O.F. *scisme*, *cisme*, schism
- Seased, v., p. 106, 274; O.F. *saisir*, *seiser*, M.L. *sacire* till 8th cent.; after, *sasire*, to be put in possession of, seize
- Seche, v., p. 35; A.S. *secan*, pret. *sōhte*, Goth. *sokjan*, to seek
- Seece, v., p. 52; O.F. *cesser*, to cease

- Selde, adv., p. 193, seldom
 Sensours, n., p. 32, censers
 Serriage, p. 58, 277; O.F. *servage*, servitude
 Sewed, v., p. 58; O.F. *suir*, *sewir*, *sevir*, *suivre*, followed, chased
 Sewr, adj., p. 48; O.F. *seür*, sure
 Sewrte, n., p. 58; O.F. *seürté*, security
 Seynourously, adj., p. 274; O.F. *seignoureux + ly*, magnificent
 Shadde, v., p. 33. See *Shedde*
 Shamely, adv., p. 120; A.S. *sceámelic*, shamefully
 Shedde, v., p. 270; A.S. *sceádan* = Goth. *skaidan*, to shed
 Shewde, v., p. 201. See *Shzwyd*, showed
 Shewyd, v., p. 4, showed
 Shippis, n., p. 34, 63, pl. of ship; A.S. *scip* = Goth. *skep*, ships
 Sholder, n., p. 45, shoulder
 Sholdre, n., p. 45. See *Sholder*
 Shytte, v., p. 48; A.S. *scyttan*, shut
 Siewed, p. 62, 195. See *Sewed*, followed
 Signefyaunce, n., p. 270; O.F. *signefiance*, sign
 Skalyng ladders, n., p. 256, scaling ladders
 Skarmoche, n., p. 210. See *Scarmuche*, skirmish
 Skorches, n.; O.F. *écorce*, bark, skin
 Slee, v., p. 54; A.S. *sléan* = Goth. *slahan*, to slay
 Slowe, vb., p. 73, pret. of slee, slew
 Smeton, v., p. 19; A.S. *smītan*, pret. *smāt*, pp. *smīten* = Goth. *smeitan*, to smite
 Socours, n., p. 35; O.F. *sucurs*, *secours*, aid
 Sodenly, adv., p. 58; O.F. *sodain + ly*, suddenly
 Sommyers, n., p. 46, 51; O.F. *sommier*, beast of burden
 Somoned, v., p. 50; O.F. *somener*, *semondre*, summoned
 Sonde, n., p. 185; A.S. *sand*, sand
 Sorouful, adj., p. 42; A.S. *sorqful*, sorrowful
 Souldye, n., p. 126; O.F. *soldie*, pay, salary
 Souldyour, n., p. 126; O.F. *soldier*, one who receives pay
 Soudan, n., p. 136; O.F. *souldan*, *soudan*, M.L. *sultanus* or *soldanus*, a Mohammedan ruler
 Sowles, n., p. 200; A.S. *sāwel*, *sāwol*, etc., soul
 Sowne, v., p. 53, 104; O.F. *soner*, *suner*, sound
 Sowped, v., p. 255; O.F. *souper*, M.D. *soppe*, *sop*, supped
 Soynously, adv., p. 271; O.F. *soigneux + ly*, M.L. *sonia*, *sunnia + osus*; of Gu. origin, carefully
 Spede, v., p. 63; A.S. *spēdan*, to be successful
 Spores, n., p. 154; A.S. *spora*, spurs
 Sprad, v., p. 18, to spread
 Stage, n., p. 270; O.F. *étage*, a story
 Stalled, v., p. 2; A.S. *steallian*, installed, placed, set
 Stedes, n., p. 46; A.S. *stēda*, steeds
 Stered, v., p. 235, stirre.
 Steroppes, n., p. 288; A.S. *stirap*, *stiger-up* = stirrups
 Stooles, n., p. 209; O.F. *estole*, stoles, robes
 Strayt, adj., p. 47, 135; O.F. *estreit*, *estrait*, narrow
 Stryf, n., p. 51; O.F. *estrijf*; of Gu. origin, strife
 Styed, vb., p. 262, pret.; A.S. *stigan*, to inount, to ascend
 Subget, adj., p. 20; O.F. *snjet*
 Sued, v., p. 183. See *Sewed*
 Suffrable, adj., p. 221; O.F. *souffrable*, *souffrir*, capable of endurance
 Suffre, v., p. 29, 115; O.F. *souffrir*, *souffrir*, to suffer
 Suffrete, n., p. 144; O.F. *soufreté*, want
 Suffyse, v., p. 30; O.F. *suffis*, stem from *souffire*, L. *suffire*, to sulfice
 Surplys, n., p. 209; O.F. *surplis*, *surpelis*, a surplice
 Suspension, n., p. 207, a var. of *suspicion*, from suspicion
 Sustre, n., p. 46, sister
 Swote, n., p. 111; A.S. *swāt*, sweat
 Syghes, n., p. 36, var. of *sike*, *sik*; cf. Sw. *such* = Dan. *soh*, sigh
 Syres, n., p. 60; O.F. *sire*, sirs
 Syth, adv., p. 51, since
 Taillage, n., p. 277; O.F. *taillage*, toll, tax, tribute
 Takle, n., p. 261; M.D., L.G. *takel* = Sw. *takel* = Dan. *tackel*, tackle
 Tappet, n., p. 184; A.S. *taeppet* = L. *tapetum*, F. *tapis*, carpet, tapestry
 Tapre, n., p. 36; A.S. *tapor*, taper

- Tapyte, n., p. 313. See *Tappet*
 Targe, n., p. 63; O.F. *targe*, a shield
 Taryed, v., p. 54; *taryen*, developed through influence of *targen*, to wait for, to delay
 Tatche, n., p. 282; O.F. *tache*, *teche*; (origin uncertain), defect, vice
 Tayllage, n., p. 24. See *Taillage*
 Tere, n., p. 127; A.S. *teár*, *taér* = Goth. *tagr* = O.L. *lacruma*, *lacrima*, tear
 Tereitorye, n., p. 233; O.F. *territoire*, used by Caxton in the sense of *tertre*
 Tertre, n., p. 182; O.F. *tertre*, a little hill
 Tetche, n., p. 281. See *Tatche*
 Theuys, n., p. 231; A.S. *theof* = Goth. *theubs*, thief
 Throte, n., p. 151, throat
 Thye, n., p. 113, thigh
 Tierce, adj., p. 183; O.F. *t.iers*, hour half-way between sunrise and noon
 Tofore, adv., p. 42, before
 Torette, n., p. 129; O.F. *tourrette*, dim., turret, a little tower
 Tourette, n., p. 99. See *Torette*
 Towres, n., p. 50; A.S. *tur* = O.F. *tour*, towers
 Trauailed, v., p. 22; O.F. *travailler*, to work, to labour
 Trauaylle, n., p. 24, labour, pain
 Trayson, n., p. 61; O.F. *trahison*, *traison*, treason
 Trecherye, n., p. 280; O.F. *tricherie*, *tricher*, treachery
 Trewe, adj., p. 19, true
 Trewes, n., p. 43, pl. of *trew*; same origin as above, truce
 Tromperye, n., p. 236; O.F. *tromperie*, deception
 Trusses, n., p. 213; O.F. *trousse*, a bundle, a pack
 Trybus, n., p. 253; O.F. *tribu*, tribes
 Trycherye, n., p. 60. See *Trecherye*
 Trychour, n., p. 127; O.F. *tricheor*, traitor, cheat
 Twyes, adj., p. 252, twice
- Unprenable, adj., p. 196; F. *un* + *prenable*, impregnable
 Utterist, adj., p. 30, superlative of A.S. *ut*, doublet of *outerest*, outermost, extremest
- Valyaunce, n., p. 287; O.F. *vailance*, a deed of valour
- Vaward, n., p. 157, reduction of *vantward*, short for *avant* + *ward*, advance-guard
 Veray, adj., p. 2, 169; O.F. *verai*, *vrai*, etc., true, real
 Veri, adj., p. 25. See *Veray*
 Very, adj., pp. 3, 19. See *Veray*
 Viage, n., p. 44; O.F. *voiage*, *viage*, etc., voyage
 Vnnethe, adv., p. 33; A.S. *uneáthe*, not easily, hardly, scarcely
 Voyde, adj., p. 21; O.F. *voide*, *vuide*, empty
 Voyded, v., p. 20; O.F. *voidier*, *vuider*, to empty
 Vycayre, n., p. 301; O.F. *vicaire*, vicar, substitute
 Vyletees, n., p. 40; O.F. *vilité*, insults
 Vysytyng, pres. part., p. 4; O.F. *visiter*, to examine, inspect, visit
 Vytaylle, n., p. 47; O.F. *vitaille*, *victuaille*, victual, food
- Waast, n., p. 144; O.F. *wast*, *gast*, L. *vastus*, confused with M.E. *weste*; A.S. *westen* = M.H.G. *wueste*, waste
 Warantise, n., p. 45; O.F. *warantise*, *guarantise*, warrant
 Weder, n., p. 36, weather
 Weeshe, v., p. 255, to wash
 Wellys, n., p. 257, wells or springs
 Wende, v., p. 97. See *Wene*
 Wene, v., p. 39; A.S. *wēnan*, pret. *wende* = Goth. *wēnjan*, to be of the opinion of, to think
 Wete, v., p. 108; A.S. *witan*, pret. *wiste* = Goth. *witan*, to know, to become aware of
 Wexc, v., p. 55, to grow, to wax
 Weyed, v., p. 205; A.S. *wegen* = Goth. *gawigan*, to weigh
 Whilis, adv., p. 133; abbreviation of A.S. *thāhwile*, the while that, while
 Wode, p. 36, 257; A.S. *wudu*, supposed to be of Celtic origin, wood
 Wood, adj., p. 112; A.S. *wōd* = Goth. *wōds*, mad, raging
 Woonte, adj., p. 39, contracted from *woned* = Gm. *gewohnt*, accustomed, wont
 Worship, n., p. 116, respect, worship
 Wote, p. 296, pres. ind., of *witen*, 1st pers. *wot*; 2nd *wost*; 3rd *wot*, know
 Wreton, pp., written
 Wullen, adj., p. 293; A.S. *wyllen*, *wul* + *en*, woollen

Wysedomme, n., p. 4, wisdom
 Wyst, v. pret., p. 57. See *Wete*

Yate, n., p. 47, gate

Yefte, n., p. 55, gift

Yeldyng, pres. part., p. 275, yielding

Yeris, n., p. 2; A.S. *geár*, *gēr* = Goth.
jēr, years

Ynowe, adv., p. 54; A.S. *genōh*, adv.
 neut. acc. of adj., enough

Ynowgh, adv., p. 34, same as *Ynowe*

Ynowhe, adv., p. 19, same as *Ynowe*

Yolden, pp. See *Yeldyng*

Youen, pp., given

Yow, pron., p. 25; A.S. *eów*, you

Yssned, v., p. 33; *issue*, pp. of O.F.

issir, *eissir*, to issue, to come out, to
 descend from

Yu, pron.; A.S. *gē*, *ge*, ye

INDEX OF NAMES.

- Aaron Ressit*, p. 22, 23, the Caliph Haroun al Raschid, fifth Abasside Caliph, b. 766, d. 808
- Abacuc*, p. 249, Habakkuk the prophet
- Abyas*, p. 249, corruption for Abdias; Lat. Abdiae, Fr. Abdies; the prophet Obadiah
- Abymelech*, p. 248, Alimelech
- Acharye*, p. 20, Zacharias, patriarch of Jerusalem, 609—631. See 'Pat. Graec.,' tom. 86
- Adryan*, p. 94, Adrian I., Pope from 772—795, son of Theodore, a Roman gentleman
- Alexandre*, p. 94, patriarch of Constantinople
- Alexes Conius*, p. 71; Alexys, p. 296. Alexius Comnain = Alexius Comnenus I., Emperor of Constantinople, 1081—1118, successor of Romanus Diogenes
- Alysaundre*, p. 2, Alexander the Great, King of Macedon
- Amanaix* (Guillen), p. 46; Guillem de Amaneux, p. 84; Guyllem Ameneux, p. 206; Guillaume Amanjeu d'Albret, Gascon nobleman
- Amos*, p. 28, 249, Amos the prophet
- Ancean*, p. 136, 226, etc., Accien, prince of Antioch, called *Garsian* in the 'Chanson d'Antioche.' Tudebodus and Robert the Monk call him *Cassianus*, Foucher de Chartres, *Gratianus*, William of Tyre, *Alexianus*; Abulfeda calls him *Baghistan*, while he is known in other Oriental historians as *Akby Syran*. His title among English historians is *Baghasian*
- Arnold*, p. 238, 300, etc., Arnoul or Ernould de Rohes, family tutor of Robert of Normandy, having educated Cecilia, Robert's sister; a man of great influence, but called Arnolph Mala Corona, on account of his dissolute and unclerical habits. See 'Palgrave,' IV. p. 554.
- Arracheus*, p. 233, seventh son of Canaan, the founder of the City of Archis
- Arrius*, p. 94, Arrius the heretic, supposed to have been a native of Cyrenaica, in Africa. He was excommunicated by the first Nicene Council, and banished to Illyria
- Arstran* (Guillaume de), p. 260
- Arthur*, p. 2, King of the Britons
- Assche*, Aske, Henri d', p. 74, 100, etc., a German knight; Bongars calls him Henricus de Asca. He was buried in Turbessel, where he died of an epidemic. William of Tyre says that he was a knight celebrated by birth as well as by bravery
- Assougur*, p. 137, paleographic error for Assongar, the Sultan of Aleppo, father of Sanguin, and great-grandfather of Noureddin. His real name was Acsecar Cacim Eddaulah
- Aubmable* (Steven d'), p. 92, Aubuale, p. 206. Etienne d'Aubemarle, in English, "Steven of Albemarle and Holdernesse"; "*le fils au Comte Odon*," the 'Chanson d'Antioche' calls him. He was the grandson of Etienne, Count of Champagne, and son of Odo, the Champenois, whom his usurping uncle Thibaut of Blois had disinherited. His mother was Aalis of Normandy, sister of William the Conqueror. He died in 1126
- Aumellac* (Reynart d'), p. 206
- Ayerne*, p. 94, Irenæus, father of the Emperor Constantine

- Aymart*, p. 45, 276, etc., Adhemar de Monteil, Bishop of Puy, Papal Legate among the Crusaders
- Balac*, or *Balak*, p. 129, 223, etc., Emir of Serorge, prince of the family of Ortoc, who possessed many places on the Euphrates, and reigned in Mesopotamia and Aleppo
- Baladon* (Potou de), p. 237, Fr. Pons de Baladin, a great friend and companion of the Count of Toulouse
- Balduc*, p. 225, Blanduc, p. 127, Bauduc, p. 129, a Turkish Emir, lord of Sinosata
- Barce* (Gace de), p. 272. See *Centon de Lear*
- Barneville* (Rogier de), p. 92, Rogier de Barneville, p. 97, etc.; according to Bongars, a gentleman of Normandy; Barneville sur Mer is a very ancient chateau in the department of La Manche. Roger de Barneville is called by Raymond d'Agiles, *Miles clarissimus et rarissimus omnibus*. He was killed by an arrow near Antioch
- Bartelmeve* (Peter), p. 201, 238, etc., Pierre Bartelmy, a priest of the diocese of Marseilles, finder of the Sacred lance. He was attached to the suite of Raymond St. Gilles
- Basilie*, p. 70, Basil II., Emperor of Greece from 976—1025
- Baugenel* (Raoul de), p. 46, Raoul de Baugencé. He accompanied Hugh the Great to the Holy Land, whose daughter Mahaut he married for his second wife
- Baudwyn*, p. 45, 77, etc., Baldwin, brother of Godfrey of Bouillon, second king of Jerusalem, third son of Eustache de Boulogne and Ida. He had been destined for holy orders, and had held many prebends in the churches of Rheims, Cambrai, and Liege, but marrying Godechilda or Gandechilda, daughter of Ralph de Soeny and Isabelle de Montfort, he cast off the sacerdotal habit. See 'Palgrave,' IV. p. 547.
- Beart* (Centon de), p. 46, 84. Gace de Barce, p. 272. Gaston, fourth Vicomte of Béarn, called Gastus de Berdeiz by Albert d'Aix; killed in 1130 by the Moors of Spain. His blood flows in the veins of the Bourbons
- Beaways* (Regnault de), p. 111, Bauuans, p. 206
- Bedyers* (Gaste de), p. 84, 111, 247, 272, etc.
- Belphet*, p. 33, 36, Alp Arslan, or Abulfath, Sultan of Persia from 1059—1072
- Beniamin*, p. 253, youngest son of Jacob
- Bernard*, of Valence, p. 216, 226, Bishop of Tarsus, made patriarch of Antioch in 1099
- Blois*, Steven, Earl of Chartres and Blois, p. 91, etc. See *Chartres*
- Boce* (Godefroy), p. 285, Godefroi le Bossu, Duke of Lorraine, so called because he was humpbacked, uncle of Godfrey of Bouillon
- Boloyne* (Godefroy of), p. 3, 64, etc., Godfrey of Bouillon, second son of Eustache of Boulogne and Ida, b. 1061, d. 1100. He was of the lineage of Charlemagne, through Mahaut de Lorraine, his grandmother
- Boloyne* (Eustache of), p. 121, etc., Eustache de Boulogne, father of Godfrey of Bouillon
- Boloyne* (Eustace of), p. 206, etc., brother of Godfrey of Bouillon, eldest son of the Eustache above mentioned; married after the First Crusade, Mary of Scotland, daughter of Margaret and Malcolm
- Bommensor*, p. 305. El Mustansir, Caliph of Egypt, from 1035—1095
- Borgh* (Bawdyn de), p. 111, 112, 206, etc., also called Bourg, Bort, Borgh, Bors, Bourgh, by Caxton; cousin of Godfrey of Bouillon, and son of Hugh, Count of Réthel, one of the seven peers of Champagne, ancestor of the house of Burgundy
- Boure* (Thomas de), p. 206, misreading or corruption for Thomas de Fere. Lat. Thomas de Fera. See *Thomas de Fere*
- Broyes* (Reygnald of), p. 58. Michaud conjectures that he is perhaps Renaud de Breis, one of the knights in Peter the Hermit's army. He was slain before Nicæa
- Bureau* (Godefroy), p. 57, Godefroy Burel d'Etampes, one of the knights in the army of Peter the Hermit

- Burgoyne* (Gelphe of), p. 117
- Buymont*, Prince of Tarente, p. 46, 76, 77, etc., Bohemond, Prince of Tarentum in Italy, son of Robert Guiscard, originally from Hauteville in Normandy
- Canaham*, p. 233, Canaan, son of Ham
- Canderon* (Bawdyn), p. 99, originally from Bassigny in Champagne; William of Tyre calls him *nobilis et magnificus vir in armis strenuus*. He was killed at the siege of Nicæa
- Cannac* (Aubery of), p. 80
- Captap*, p. 252, Lat. Catab, father of Omar
- Cariantes* (Johan), p. 27, a Greek, living in Jerusalem at the time of the First Crusade
- Carpynelle* or *Campinelle* (Wyllemart), p. 260, Gandemar Carpinelle, from Languedoc, although in the suite of Godfrey
- Caryn* (Herman of), p. 80. According to Bongars he was a Norman nobleman, who accompanied Bohemond to the Holy Land. Palgrave (IV. 551) calls him Herman de Cogny
- Caym*, p. 233, Ham, second son of Noah
- Chamont* (Gale de), p. 111, or Giles de Chamont. This family is mentioned in 'Camden' as from Cornwall
- Charlemagne*, p. 3, Charleimagne the Great
- Charpentier* (Guylleme), p. 72, etc., William, viscounte of Milun, called the Hammerer or the Carpenter. Guibert de Nogent says of him that he pillaged his villages and burghs to get the money with which to start for the Holy Land. Robert le Moine tells us that he was of royal lineage, and related to Hugh the Great. He was called the Carpenter from his vigorous style of fighting — "Ensy comme Carpentier aloit carpentant." — 'G. de Bouillon,' l. 18, 042
- Chartes* (Ogan of), p. 80
- Chartres* (Foubert de), p. 224, 225
- Chartres*, Steven, Earl of Chartres and Blois, p. 91, etc., son of Thibaud III., Count of Blois and Champagne. He was a brother-in-law of Robert of Normandy, whose sister he had married. He was a man of wisdom and prudence, and was made president of the council of war, which directed the military operations of the Crusade
- Cherisy* (Gerard), p. 46. Geart de Cherysy, p. 111, a knight of Picardy, who accompanied Godfrey of Bouillon to the Holy Land. History calls him Querisé, Kerisi, or Quierizi. Rogier ('Noblesse Française aux Croisades') says that he belonged to an ancient and knightly family near Soissons
- Cimirieux*, p. 292, misreading for Emirius. See *Elofdales*
- Colemant*, p. 47, Coloman, King Hungary, had just mounted the throne as the armies of the First Crusade crossed his country. He was called *Bibliophilus* from his love of books. Thurocz, in his 'Chronicle of Hungary,' gives this portrait of him: "Coloman was hideous and ignoble in appearance, but artful and crafty in mind. He was hairy, humpbacked, blind in one eye, lame, and a stammerer."
- Conasylles*, p. 221, corruption for Covasiles, an Armenian, whose real name was Kogh Basil, according to von Sybel; Paulin Paris calls him Covasiles; Albert d'Aix gives his name as Corrovasilus; William of Tyre calls him Covasilio
- Conayn* of Brytayne, p. 92, Conayn the Breton, p. 206, an illustrious knight of Brittany, son of Alain Fergant
- Constantyn*, Monamaques, p. 304, Emperor of Constantinople from 1042—1053
- Corbagat*, p. 194, 196, etc. Kerbogha, Sultan of Aleppo at the time of the First Crusade. He besieged Antioch. He is called Corbaran by the French poems on the Crusades
- Cornelle*, p. 249, the Centurion, Cornelius, mentioned in Acts x.
- Cosdrove*, p. 19, 20, etc., Chosroes, or Khosru II., son of Hormizd IV., King of Persia; called "Parvez" the Conqueror. He was killed in 628 by the treachery of his own son, after a glorious reign of thirty-eight years
- Creçon* (Rembault), p. 188. The *Creçon* a corruption for *Creton*. The person here designated was Rainbaud Creton d'Estournel. Estournel is a village

- about a league from Cambrai. Graindor de Douai gives us a portrait of this Raimbaud Creton. Ordericus Vitalis says that he mounted the ladder fourth at the assault of Antioch. He returned safely from the Holy Land, and was killed at the siege of Montmorency in 1101. The family is called indifferently, Estourmel or Creton, but since 1500 Estourmel has prevailed
- Croseaulx* (Guy de), p. 190, a paleographic error for Trosselle—Guy de Trosselle
- Cuuytly* (Guillaume de), p. 231, corruption for Cumilly. The Latin gives Cumliaco; another variant is Cimilli
- Daher*, p. 27, Daher, surnamed Ledimilah, son of Hakem Bianrillah, Sultan of Egypt from 1021—1036
- Dancelle* (Doene), p. 72, corruption for Dreue de Neele
- D'Anse* (Robert), p. 112, 121, Robert de Hanse, according to Palgrave, a Norman from Caen, who accompanied Bohemond to the Crusades
- Dansique* (Henry), p. 46; D'asque, Henry, p. 65, etc. See *Assche*
- Dares*, p. 2, a Trojan priest, said to have lived at the time of the Trojan war, to whom was attributed an account of that war. A work in Latin, purporting to be a translation of this account, and entitled, 'Daretis Phrygii de Excidio Trojæ Historia,' was much read in the Middle Ages, and ascribed to Cornelius Nepos; but the language belongs to a much later period than the time of Nepos. Dederick, who has given an excellent edition, is inclined to ascribe the work to a Roman of the sixth or seventh century
- Dasque*, Godefrey, p. 65, 67. See *Assche*
- Davyd*, p. 2, David, King of Israel
- Daybart*, p. 299, 300, corruption for Daimbart, Archbishop of Pisa; made patriarch of Jerusalem by the Crusaders
- Deltors* (Bawdyn), p. 272. Caxton makes the best of the text of his faulty original here, which gives Baudoin de Ultore. The Latin text shows this to be a corruption for Bauduin de Bugh; Lat. Balduinus de Burgo
- Discretus*, p. 79, paleographic error for Dioscurus, the heretic patriarch of Alexandria in 451
- Domedart* (Gaultier de), p. 206
- Donysmayn*, p. 309, Danismain, a Turcoman Emir
- Ducar*, p. 136, Durcas, Sultan of Damascus
- Duchelond* (Herman of), p. 100
- Dutar*, p. 136, corruption of Ducar, same as above
- Dyctes*, p. 2, Dictys Cretensis, a Grecian historian, who wrote probably about the time of Nero, although tradition assigns him to a much earlier period. The main interest of his work consists in the fact, that it was the source from which the Homeric legends were introduced into the Middle Ages
- Dye* or *Dys* (Ysachar, Erle of), p. 206, 273, Isachar, or Isard Count of Die, a Provençal nobleman
- Ebriac* (Guylham de), p. 262
- Edward*, p. 4, Edward IV., King of France and England
- Elafdales*, p. 292, Emirrius, or the Emir Al Doyousch, called also El Aflel, took Jerusalem from the Turks in 1098
- Eliopolitans*. p. 27, Emperor of Constantinople. See *Romayn*
- Elyus* (Adrian), p. 250, Aelius Hadrianus, Emperor of Rome after Titus
- Emycon*, p. 62, 64, Emicio, leader of one of the bands of Crusaders. Röricht, 'Zur Geschichte der Kreuzzüge,' calls him *Graf Emicho von Leinungen* from Nahegau, and says that he was disliked on account of the persecution of the Jews in the middle Rhenish cities, which was vigorously carried on by him
- Emyrferyus*, p. 168, 175, etc., Phyrus or Phirus, the renegade Christian who delivered Antioch to Bohemond. According to Michaud (I. 157), he embraced Christianity and followed the Crusaders to Jerusalem. His ambition not being satisfied, he returned to Mohammedanism, and died abhorred by both Christians and Moslems. He is called Mufero in 'La Gran Conquista,' which also says that he was an Armenian. Some historians give him the name Adrian; Abul Faradge calls him Kuzebach, and says that he

- was of Persian descent. Anna Comnena assigns to him an Armenian origin. William of Tyre, as we see, calls him Emir Feruz, while Sanuti gives his name as Hermiroferus. In the 'Chanson d'Antioche' he figures as Dacien, while von Sybel gives his true name, probably, as Feruz az Ferrad
- Emytes*, p. 240, corruption for Emires. The Latin gives Emireius, the Egyptian Emir who captured Jerusalem from the Persians
- Eneanz*, p. 249, Eneas, the man mentioned in Acts ix. 34, who was healed by Peter
- Eutyses*, p. 79, Eutyches, Archimandrite of Constantinople, condemned for heresy in 451, at the Council of Chalcedon
- Eracles*, p. 18, etc.
- Eusebec of Cæsarea*, p. 124. Eusebius of Cæsarea—b. 276, d. 340—known as the father of ecclesiastical history
- Ezechyas*, p. 254, Hezekiah, King of the Jews, from 717 B.C. to 688 B.C.
- Fedre* (Thomas de), p. 111, Thomas de Fferre, p. 46, 272, etc., Thomas de la Fere, Sire de Marle. He belonged to the house of Coucy; he was a most famous fighter, who filled the Orient with the renown of his valour. He married Ida of Hainault. M. Michaud calls him Thomas de Feu. He was the son of Enguerrand de Couci, whose motto Palgrave gives in IV. 559, *Roi ne Duc, ne Prince je suis; Je suis le Sire de Couci*
- Fergaunt* (Alayn), p. 92, Alain Ferguant the sixth Duke of Brittany, father of Conan
- fflaundres* (Robert of), p. 84, 206, etc. Robert of Flanders was the leader of the Frisons and the Flemings. He was the eldest son of Robert the Frison, a brave and dashing nobleman, called the "Lance and Sword of the Christians" by the Christians, and the "son of St. George" by the Saracens
- ffoca Cezar*, p. 20, Nicephorus Phocas, Emperor of the East from 602—610. He was a Cappadocian of humble origin. A revolution caused Mauritius to abdicate, and Phocas became emperor. He was an ignorant, brutal, and deformed man, and was deposed by his successful rival, Heraclius, in 610
- Forestes* (Guillem erle of), p. 84, 99, etc. According to Van Hasselt, he was a Belgian nobleman
- Fyzt Christen* (Robert), p. 80
- Fyzt Gerard* (Robert), p. 206
- Fyzt Godeffroy* (Raoul), p. 206
- Fyzt Raoul* (Hunmfrey), p. 80
- Gable*, p. 124, Gabael of the Bible, cousin of Tobias
- Gabryel*, p. 308, a wealthy Armenian. Albert of Aix calls him Gaveras
- Gaultier*, Sans Avoir, p. 48, 49, etc. Walter the Pennyless, one of the leaders of the First Crusade. (See note on this subject.)
- Gawnt* (Bawdwyn of), p. 99, etc. Bauduin de Gant or de Gand, called Bauduin le Grand, Baudouin second lord of Alost. He perished at the siege of Nicæa
- Gawayn*, p. 2, Gawain or Gauvaine, a knight of the Round Table, nephew of King Arthur
- George* (St.), the Martyr, p. 244, born in Cappadocia of noble parents. He fell a martyr under Diocletian at Lidda, or, according to some, at Nicomedia. He is the patron saint of England, and of Genoa and Venice. His popularity in England dates from the time of Richard Cœur de Lion, who successfully invoked his aid. His greatest achievement in life was the conquest of a dragon by which he delivered a king's daughter from death
- Ghalehot*, p. 2, Sir Galahad, one of the knights of the Round Table, son of Sir Lancelot and Elaine
- Gilbert*, p. 40, Archbishop of Ravenna, the anti-Pope who deposed Pope Gregory VII. He was known as Clement III., and occupied the Holy See from 1080—1101. He is not numbered among the legitimate popes
- Godechan*, p. 59, 61, etc., Gottschalk, a German priest of the Palatinate, who preached the Crusade in Germany, and started after Peter the Hermit with 20,000 men. According to Röh-

- richt, he was called in derision, "Der Falsche Schalk Gottes"
- Graterille* (Guylleim de), p. 195: Gratemeyn, p. 197, 199, etc.; William of Grandmenil or Grantemesnil, the second son of Robert, founder of the Abbaye St. Evreult. He was attached to the house of Robert Guiscard, whom he had followed into Apulia, and whose daughter Mabile he married, thus becoming a brother-in-law of Bohemond. He quarrelled with Bohemond, and left his service for that of Godfrey, under whom he served in the First Crusade. He ran away during the siege of Antioch with his two younger brothers, Yves and Alberic, and returned to Apulia, where he died soon after
- Grece* (Garnyer de), p. 206, 298, etc., Garnier de Grès or de Gray, from Franche Compté, one of the nobles who accompanied Godfrey of Bouillon to the Holy Land. In the Historical Gallery of Versailles he is called de Gray. In a MS. of the Arsenal he has the title, Garnier de Gresse. Wilken (I. p. 102) writes it Werner von Greës. He died a few days after Godfrey of Bouillon, and was buried in the Basilica of St. Mary, in the Valley of Jehoshaphat
- Gregory*, p. 40, Gregory, the seventh pope of Rome, died May 25, 1085. He greatly extended the power of Rome; through his pretensions he involved himself in violent disputes with the Emperor of Germany
- Guennes* of Denmark, p. 147. Sweno, son of the King of Denmark, was attacked while bringing succour to Godfrey of Bouillon, by Solyman. He was killed on the field of battle. This hero figures in Tasso's 'Jerusalem Delivered'
- Guylam*, p. 109, brother of Tancred
- Gutier*, p. 115. Gandeschilde, or Godechilda, daughter of Ralph de Soeny and Isabel de Montfort, and wife of Baldwin, brother of Godfrey of Bouillon. She accompanied her husband on the First Crusade. She died, and was buried in Meraasch in Asia. Fröbese calls her Godehild von Conches
- Guychart* (Robert), p. 46, etc., Robert Guiscard, Norman Duke of Apulia and Calabria, 1015—1085, sixth of the twelve sons of Tancred de Hauteville in Normandy
- Guylamme*, p. 226. Paulin Paris conjectures that this is the same William who distinguished himself at the siege of Marrah. The 'Chanson d'Antioche' states that he was from Montpellier
- Guynemer*, p. 121, Guy Nevers, p. 122, etc., Guinemers of Boulogne, a celebrated pirate captain. He was taken prisoner by the Emperor of Constantinople, and kept in prison in Laodicea. Godfrey of Bouillon restored him to liberty
- Guyon*, p. 197, Guyen, p. 198, Guy the Seneschal, brother of Bohemond, and attached by a brilliant marriage to the fortunes of Alexis, Emperor of Constantinople, according to Anna Comnena
- Handeron* (Bawdyn), p. 99. See *Canderon*. Handeron, a corruption of Canderon or Csuderon; Lat. Calderon
- Hanse* (Robert the), p. 80. Lat. Robertus de Anxa. See *D'Anse*
- Harry*, p. 40, 42, 279, Henry IV., Emperor of Germany
- Hecam*, p. 24, Hakim Biamrillah, Caliph of Egypt, 996—1021, third of the Fatimite Caliphs
- Hector* of Troy, p. 2, eldest son of Priam
- Hellom*, p. 202; Fr. Herluin, the interpreter who accompanied Peter the Hermit on his embassy to Kerbogha
- Helyas*, p. 244 Elijah the Prophet
- Helyzeus*, p. 249, Elisha the Prophet
- Henawde* (Bawdwyn. erle of), p. 45, 208, Baldwin, Earl of Hainault, a Flemish nobleman who went with Godfrey of Bouillon to the First Crusade
- Henry*, p. 297, Henry I., King of England
- Herman*, p. 62, 200. See *Duchelond*
- Hetam*, p. 27, a corruption for Hecam
- Homar*, p. 19, 20. See *Omar*
- Homer*, p. 2, the poet Homer
- Huon le Mayne*, p. 71, 206, 208, etc., Hugh de Vermandois, younger brother of King Philip of France. He was the second son of Henry I. and Anne,

- daughter of Jaroslaw, Duke of Russia. He became Count of Vermandois by his marriage with Adelaide, daughter of Count Herbert. He was called Hugh the Great (Huon le Mayne), either because he was the brother of the king or from his great size
- Hyart*, p. 24, Lord of Rames, bailiff of Hakim; the Hidraot of Tasso's 'Jerusalem Delivered'
- Iaphet*, p. 115, son of Noah
- Ieroboam*, p. 253, Jeroboam
- Incita*, p. 49, Duke of Bulgaria
- Iohan*, p. 78, John, son of Alexis Comnenus
- Iohan*, p. 215, John, patriarch of Antioch, reinstated after the conquest of Antioch
- Iohan Eleymont* (St.), p. 36, patriarch of Constantinople
- Ionen*, p. 115, Javan, fourth son of Japheth
- Iosue*, p. 1, 249, 253, Joshua
- Iude*, p. 124, St. Jude, author of one of the books of the New Testament
- Iustynen*, p. 244, Justinianus, surnamed the Great, Emperor of Constantinople, 527—565. He was born in Illyria, and married the celebrated and beautiful actress Theodora. He is especially famous as a legislator
- Latyns*, p. 148, corruption for Tatyns, which is in turn a corruption of Tatinus.
- Launcelotte de Lake*, p. 2, Lancelot du Lac, chief knight of the Round Table
- Levy*, p. 249, Levi, one of the twelve sons of Jacob
- Lucan*, p. 2, Marcus Annæus Lucanus, grandson of Seneca, born Nov. 3rd, 39 A.D. Most eminent Roman poet of the Silver Age
- Lutol*, p. 271. See *Tornay*
- Lymbres* (Gonam), p. 272, corruption for Conain le Breton
- Lylle* (Galles de), p. 99, Galon de Lille, killed with Baldwin of Gand at the siege of Nicæa. An arrow laid him low as he was mounting to the assault. The two received burials worthy of great and noble men
- Lyon* (Pope), p. 79, Leo I., called Leo the Great, Pope from 440 to 461
- Lyonel*, p. 2, Sir Lionel, brother of Sir Launcelot, son of Ban, King of Benwick, a hero of the Arthurian legends
- Machabeus* (Judas), p. 2, Judas, called Maccabæus or the Hammerer, title given to Judas Asmonæus, the first great hero of the Jewish revolt against Antiochus Epiphanes. He was killed in 110 b.c.
- Machomet*, p. 18, Mahomet
- Marcyen*, p. 79, Marcianus, Emperor of the East from 450 to 457. He was a native of Thrace, and became emperor by marrying Pulcheria, widow of Theodosius
- Marie*, p. 20, daughter of the Emperor Mauritius of Rome, and wife of Khosru II., Sultan of Persia
- Maturane* (Bishop of), p. 280, 284, 296, etc.
- Maulde*, p. 285, Maude, daughter of Eustache of Boulogne, wife of King Stephen of England
- Mauryce*, p. 20, Mauricius Flavius Tiberius, Emperor of the East from 582 to 602. He abdicated in favour of Phocas
- Maxyme*, p. 24, Maxinus, patriarch of Jerusalem in the time of Constantine
- Modeste*, p. 19, Modestus, colleague of Zacharias, and his successor as patriarch of Jerusalem in 514. It is not certain how matters were arranged, whether Zacharias was brought back from Persia and became a colleague of Modestus or not. Three homilies of Modestus are still preserved. He was especially severe against the use of unguents by women
- Mollac* (Reynard de), p. 217, corruption for Aumellac. See *Aumellac*
- Montagu* (Conon de), p. 74 (Aconon de), p. 131, etc., one of Godfrey de Bouillon's companions in the First Crusade. He was a Belgian by birth, son of Gozelon, Count of Boulogne, and Ermentrude of Haranzey. Conon's wife was Ida, said to be sister of Godfrey of Bouillon. He died at the siege of Dolheim, April 30th, 1101
- Montagu* (Euenam), p. 206, corruption for Conon
- Montagu* (Lambert de), p. 206, 272, son of Conon

- Montagu* (Gossolyn de), p. 131, 132,
Goscelin, son of Conon de Montagne
- Montague* (Guemes), p. 140, corruption
for Conon
- Montcler* (Guyllebert de), p. 112
- Montpellyer* (Guylle de), p. 84, 206, etc.
William of Montpellier, accompanied
Raymond of Toulouse and Adhemar
to the Holy Land
- Montygneux* (Umfrey of), p. 80. The
Latin gives *Hunfredus de Monte
Scabioso*
- Moucoux* (Loys de), p. 206, Louis de
Moncon or Monson, called by Albert
d'Aix, *Mirabilis in opere militare*, was
one of those who entered Jerusalem
first. According to Dansey ('Eng.
Crusaders') a family of this name
settled in England soon after the
Conquest. From this family the
present Lord Monson is said to
descend
- Nabugodonosor*, p. 134, Nebuchadnezzar,
King of Assyria, 604—647 B.C.
- Nelle* (Dreues de), p. 172, Drogo de
Neel. He was among the prisoners
released by Alexius on condition that
Godfrey of Bouillon should discontinue
pillaging his country. He was lord
of Nesles, or Neelles, and Faloy. Lat.
Drogo de Nahalla. He followed
Hugh the Great, shared his captivity,
and distinguished himself at the siege
of Nicæa. According to Albert d'Aix,
Drogon was the son of Yves de
Nesles. The Castellany of Bruges
belongs to this family. See 'Croisies
Belges,' p. 142
- Noe*, p. 115, Noah
- Noradyn*, p. 137, Nouredin Mahmud,
Malek al Adel, the scourge of the
Christian settlements in Syria and
Palestine, b. 1116, d. 1174. He is
one of the great heroes of Moslem
history
- Normandy* (Robert Duke of), p. 45,
91, etc., Robert Duke of Normandy,
son of William the Conqueror, sur-
named in French history *Courte heuse*.
He mounted the walls among the first
at the assault of Jerusalem. He died
a prisoner in England in 1130 or '31.
He mortgaged his Duchy of Normandy
to King William, his brother, for
10,000 pounds in order to obtain the
funds for the First Crusade
- Nycesores*, p. 28, corruption for Nycefores,
Nicephorus, patriarch of Jerusalem
- Nychofores* (Bothoniat), p. 71, Nice-
phorus, Emperor of the East, 802—
811. He succeeded Ireneus, and was
the first Grecian emperor
- Nycoose*, p. 165, etc., an Armenian
- Olyver*, p. 3, Oliver, one of the paladins
of Charlemagne, the devoted friend
and companion-at-arms of Roland,
Charlemagne's nephew
- Omar*, p. 19, 20, 252, etc., Omar, son of
Captaph, the second successor of
Mahomet. He was for ten years the
head of the Moslem Empire, and died
in 644
- Orenge* (Raybout, erle of), p. 84, etc.,
Rembout, Earl of Orange, one of the
great Provençal noblemen in the First
Crusade
- Orenge* (Bishop of), p. 84, etc., William,
Bishop of Orenge. He died at the
siege of Marran, p. 228
- Oreste*, p. 24, Orestes, patriarch of
Jerusalem in the time of Hakim,
whose uncle he was
- Orleans* (foucher d'), p. 58, one of the
few knights in Peter's army. Slain
before Nicæa
- Ovyde*, p. 2, Ovid, the Latin poet
- Panrace*, p. 165, 221, etc., Pancratius,
an Armenian prince, in his youth
King of Northern Iberia. He joined
the Crusaders in the hope of retrieving
his fortunes. See *Michaud*, I, 120
- Paris* (Robert of), p. 109, Robert of
Paris
- Pelet* (Remon), p. 234, 260, etc., Pabes,
p. 206, Peles, p. 84. Raymond Pelet,
a Provençal nobleman, called "The
Crusader Vicomte of Narbonne." He
was also Count of Miqueil and Alais,
thus belonging to one of the most
distinguished families of Languedoc.
He is the first ancestor known of the
Pelets of Narbonne, of whom there
are still several branches
- Perceval*, p. 2, Knight of the Round
Table
- Perche* (Routrout, erle of), p. 45; Erle
of Perse, p. 206; Rotheron of Perse,

- p. 92; Rontron, second Earl of Perche, who accompanied the Duke of Normandy. He commanded a corps of troops at the siege of Antioch, according to 'Chroniques Belges,' V, 101. He lost his life in 1144, while besieging the tower of Rouen with the Count of Anjou
- Perseus*, p. 115, a hero of Grecian mythology, son of Danaë and Zeus. He is said to have founded Tarsus in Cilicia, and appears on the coins of that city, as well as on coins of Pontus and Cappadocia
- Peter the Hermit*, p. 36, 37, 38, etc., born in Acheris, near Amiens, in the diocese of Laon. He returned from the Holy Land in 1102 with the Count of Montaigne. After his return he built the Abbey of Neufmoutier at Huy, on the right bank of the Meuse, in honour of the Holy Sepulchre. Anna Comnena says that he was called Petrus Cucullatus, because he wore a cowl
- Peter* (of Narbonne), p. 226, made Bishop of Albare
- Peter*, p. 201. See *Bartelmeve*.
- Phyllip*, p. 279, Phelip, p. 216, Philippe, p. 42, etc., Philippe I., King of France
- Porsesse* (Guy de), p. 46; Guy du Puysett, p. 97, Guy de Porsesse; Lat. Guido de Porsesso, a French nobleman from Champagne. Porsesse is near Vitry
- Pretopt* (Saint), p. 254, corruption for Saint Procope; Lat. *Sanctus Procopius*
- Pryncipat* (Rychard the), p. 80, 112, etc., a Norman nobleman, Lord of Principata, son of William Fier-à-bras, Robert Guiscard's brother
- Puyssat* (Euerard du), p. 46, 206, according to Bongars, a nobleman from the neighbourhood of Chartres.
- Pyrrius*, p. 70, Pyrrhus, King of Epirus, 318—272 B.C.
- Quyén*. See *Guyon*
- Quyllehain*, p. 285. See *William*
- Raoul*, p. 289, Rudolph of Suabia, killed in 1080 at the battle of Merseburg.
- Raymont*, p. 80, Raymond, brother of Richard the Principat, son of William Fier-à-bras
- Retel* (Count Huon de), p. 45, father of Baldwin, cousin of Godfrey of Bouillon
- Richard*, son of Erle Ranyol, p. 80, Richard, son of Earl Ramol, or Ranulf of Roussignol
- Richard*, Duke of York, p. 5, son of Edward IV., one of the unhappy princes killed in the tower by the orders of Richard, Duke of Gloucester
- Robert* (Bishop of Rames), p. 245, a native of Rouen in Normandy
- Roboam*, p. 253, Rehoboam, son of Solomon
- Rodahan*, p. 218, 220, Lord of Halappe
- Romanus Diogenes*, p. 33, 95, Emperor of Constantinople 1065—1071, a member of a powerful Cappadocian family, who had risen to distinction in the army. The queen-mother became enamoured of him as he was brought into her presence, condemned to death for treason, and released and married him. He was disastrously defeated by Alp Arslan on the banks of the Araxes, returned home dishonoured, and retired to the isle of Crete, where he died in misery
- Romayn*, p. 27, Romanus Eliopolitanis, Emperor of Constantinople from 1028 to 1034, called Eliopolitanis because he was born in Eliopolis. He usually has the surname of Argire
- Rosoye* (Robert of), p. 130, Robert, or Roger de Rozoi
- Roussylon*, p. 84, 206, etc. (Girault de or Gyrard de), Gerard de Roussillon, of the distinguished Provençal family of that name
- Rousygnol* (the erle of), p. 80, the Earl of Koussignol; Lat. Rosinolo
- Rybemont* (Ancean de), p. 206, 208, etc., Count de Valenciennes in Picardy, husband of Agnes de Roncey, daughter of Eblis de Roncey, great-grandson of the famous Bernier, who killed Raoul de Cambrai. Ancean (Anselme) is mentioned with praise by Albert d'Aix, Guibert de Nogent, and Raoul de Caen. He was killed at the siege of Archas. Michaud calls him the Count de Bouchain. He went to the Crusade with Bohemond
- Sabram* (Guyllém de), p. 273
- Salamon*, p. 253, Solomon, son of David

- Sangum*, p. 137, Emad Eddin Zenghi, Emir of Mussul and Haleppe, founder of the dynasty of the Atabeks of Syria, known generally as Zenghi. This name was corrupted by the Crusaders into Sanquin
- Sansadol*, p. 226, Sensadole or Sensadoine, son of Soliman. Bongars (I, 239) calls him Sensadonia filius Darsiani
- Sara*, p. 124, daughter of Raguel, who lived in Ecbatana. See Book of Tobit
- Scaruary* (Peter de), p. 112, corruption for Peter of Stadenois
- Sedechyas*, p. 134, Sedecias, Grecian form for Zedekiah, son of Josiah, King of Judah
- Selduc*, p. 30, Seljuk, grandfather of Togrul Bey, the first ruler of the Turks
- Selducees*, p. 30, the family or tribe of Selduc, Seljuks, a Perso-Turkish dynasty which produced eleven kings and lasted 138 years
- Semer*, p. 194; Fr. Soemer, Lat. Sigemar, p. 194; cousin of Henry d'Asche
- Seynt Pol* (Huge, the Erle of), p. 65, etc., Hugh, second Earl of Saint Paul, Count of Champ d'Avène, died in 1130 or 31
- Seynt Pol* (Everard of), p. 65; Seynt Poul (Enierran of), p. 230; Aniaran de St. Poul, p. 206; Engerran, or Engellan de St. Paul, son of Hugh. He died at the siege of Marrah, near Aleppo
- Solins*, p. 115, C. Julius Solinus, author of a geographical compendium about A.D. 238
- Solyman*, p. 56, 57, 58, etc., Kilidge Arslém, also called David, or the Sword of the Spirit, and Solyman the younger. He was the son of Solyman. He was Sultan of Nice at the time of its conquest by the Crusaders. William of Tyre makes him a nephew of the Sultan of Persia, and mistakes him for his father
- Sophony*, p. 21, Sophronius, a monk of Damascus, who became patriarch of Jerusalem in 634. He opposed the endeavours of Cyrus, patriarch of Alexandria, to secure general acceptance of monothelite views. The Emperor Heraclius issued an edict in 638 to put an end to the discussion. Sophronius was patriarch of Jerusalem in 638, when it was taken by the Caliph Omar
- Soun*, p. 23, the Sonna, or Mishna, the oral law of the Mahometans
- Sourdeval* (Robert of), p. 80. An ancient house of Normandy, bearing the name of the fief of Sourdeval, is situated between Vire and Mortain. According to Rogier ('La Noblesse Française aux Croisades'), Robert of Sourdeval was at the siege of Amalfi with Bohemond, and went with him to the Holy Land
- Stace*, p. 2, Publius Papinius Statius, a Roman poet who lived A.D. 45—96
- Symeon*, p. 37, etc., Simeon, patriarch of Jerusalem
- Tancre*, p. 80, 82, etc., Tancred of Sicily, son of the good Marquis Odon or William, and cousin of Bohemond on his mother Emma's side. He is immortalized by Tasso
- Tantyn*, p. 197; Tacius, p. 105, called in French *Estatin l'Esnasé*, Tatinus the Noseless, prefect of the palace of the Emperor of Constantinople. In the 'Chanson of Antioch' he is the nephew of the Emperor. Anna Comnena calls him Tatikius, and says that he was of Saracen origin
- Taresté*, p. 94, Tharadius, patriarch of Constantinople in 787
- Thabyte*, *p. 249, Tabitha, the young woman healed by Peter in Acts ix.
- Theophilus*, p. 134. According to a story taken from the so-called 'Recognitions of St. Clement,' there was a certain nobleman of Antioch of the name of Theophilus converted by the preaching of Peter, who dedicated his own house as a church, in which the Apostle fixed his episcopal seat. William has confounded him with the Theophilus of the book of Luke
- Thoby*, p. 24, the Tobias of the Apocrypha, son of Tobit and Anna
- Tholouse* (Raymond de St. Gilles, erle of Toulouse), p. 84, 96, etc., leader of the Provençal Crusaders with Adhemar de Monteil

- Thybauld* the old, p. 45. Thibaut, second son of Stephen, Count of Chartres and Blois; he died Jan. 1152
- Tornay* (Engelbert and Lethold of), p. 271, two brothers who mounted after Godfrey of Bouillon at the taking of Jerusalem
- Toul* (Bernard, erle of), p. 65, Bernard, a corruption for Reynard; Reynart, erle of, p. 112; Reignald of Toul, p. 206; Pieter, p. 65, brother of Reynard of Toul
- Tours* (Geffrey de), p. 227, Guelphe or Gouffier de las Tours
- Treue* (Gylbert de), p. 260
- Urban*, p. 40, 41, etc., Pope Urban the II., Eudes or Odo, pope from 1088 to 1099. He died fourteen days after the fall of Jerusalem, but before the news had reached Italy
- Vaspasian*, p. 250, Vespasian the tenth of the twelve Caesars, Roman emperor from 70 to 79
- Veer* (Gace de), p. 261, corruption for Gaston de Beart; Lat. *Gastonem de Beart*
- Venduel* (Clarembauld de), p. 72, 172
- Ver* (Gaultier de), p. 244
- Viator*, p. 41, corruption for Victor. This Victor was the third pope of the name. He was chosen in 1085, after Gregory's death. He did not consent to be consecrated until two years after, in May 1087. He died Sept. 16th, 1087
- William*, p. 285, fictitious brother of Godfrey of Bouillon
- Wylliam* Rous, p. 297, William Rufus, King of England 1067—1087—1100
- Yde*, p. 285, Ida, mother of Godfrey of Bouillon, sister of Godfrey le Bossu, Duke of Lower Lorraine

INDEX OF PLACES.

- Abydon*, p. 73, Abydos, town on the Hellespont at the narrows of the Dardanelles
- Acheldemach*, p. 251, the Aceldama of the Bible
- Aciane*, p. 299, corruption for Ariane
- Acre*, p. 244, St. John, d'Acre, modern Ptolemais, or Acca, a harbour of Syria at the foot of Mt. Carmel
- Adane*, p. 117, 218, to-day Adana, town of Cilicia in Asia Minor
- Adre*, or *Adria*, p. 69, town in Northern Italy, on the river Po
- Adryane*, p. 69, 79, 85, the Adriatic Sea
- Albane*, p. 225. See *Albare*
- Albare*, p. 226, 228, called Lanbare in the Chanson of Antioch, the El Barie of the Arabian chroniclers, to be found in Burckhardt's map of Syria under the name of El Bara; William of Tyre says that Albara formed part of the province of Apamia, and was a two days' journey from Antioch. The modern El Bara is between Apamia and Antioch, and about thirty-seven miles from the latter
- Alexandrye the Lasse*, p. 122; *Allexandrye the Lytyl*, p. 195; Alexandria the Less, or Alexandrette, on the coast of Palestine north of Antioch
- Allemaygne*, p. 65.
- Allemayne*, p. 40, etc., } Germany
- Almayne*, p. 288, }
- Alysaundre*, p. 79; *Alexandrye*, p. 23; the city of Alexandria
- Amene*, p. 134, corruption for *Aniene*; Lat. *Aniensis*
- Amiens*, p. 36, the city of Amiens in France
- Anamystre*, see *Mamstrye*, p. 118,
- Mamistra*, the modern Missis, formerly called Mopsuetis
- Anarazie*, p. 115, city of Cilicia, directly north of Antioch, the modern Anizarba, formerly the metropolitan city; Migne, *Ency. Ec.*, is in doubt about it, and cites different authorities on the subject
- Ancone*, p. 69, Sea of Ancona, part of the Gulf of Venice
- Andrenoble*, p. 76, or *Adrianople*, north-west of Constantinople; on the Maritza, the capital of Roumania
- Anthone*, p. 250, Antonia, one of the towers of Jerusalem, on the north side of the Temple
- Antibare*, p. 85, Antivari, modern name Antibaris, city of Dalmatia
- Antyoche*, p. 23, 34, etc., Antioch
- Antyoche the Lasse*, p. 112, chief city of Pisidia, also called Antiochetta
- Aperon*, p. 68, paleographic error for Ciperon
- Aquylee*, p. 85, Aquileia, ancient capital of the Carni, to-day Aglar or Aquileya, just at the head of the Adriatic Sea, north-west of Trieste
- Arabye*, p. 18, 19, etc., Arabia
- Archade*, p. 70, Arcadia
- Archys*, p. 233, 236, ancient Arclis, to-day Arca, between Tripoli and the sea
- Ariane*, p. 299, town of Ariano in the Apennines
- Arsur*, p. 306, to-day Arsuf, a town north of Joppa, in the pashalic of Damascus, said to have been built originally by Solomon; it still possesses a fortress and a mosque
- Artaysse*, p. 130, *Artayse*, *Artaysis*, p.

131, 132, etc., to-day Ertesi, about seventeen miles north-east of Aleppo
Asinepol, p. 70, Asinople
Asye, p. 55, 73, etc., Asia
Aufrique, p. 23, Africa
Ainaure, p. 218, corruption for Anavarzie
Auvergne, p. 43, Auvergne in France
Bagulars (Mt.), p. 70, the Balkan mountains
Bandras, p. 134, 137, etc., corruption for Baudas, the city of Bagdad
Bar, p. 84, Bari in Apulia, Italy
Bardare, p. 80, the ancient Achedorus, flows into the Gulf of Salonica, in Macedonia
Baruth, p. 243, modern Beirut, Palestine
Bavpere, p. 62
Bauyere, p. 49, 140, } Bavaria
Bellegrauce, p. 69, etc., mod. Belgrade, capital of Serbia, on the right bank of the Danube, at the confluence of the Save
Bethleem, p. 28,
Bethlehem, p. 245, 246, } Bethlehem
Blacz, p. 69, 70, the Wallachians
Blaquerne, p. 74, a palace in Constantinople
Boloyne, p. 235, etc., } Boulogne in
Bullogne, p. 1, } France
Bougres, p. 70, Bulgarians
Bougrie, p. 49,
Bougrye, p. 50, 69, etc., } Bulgaria
Bethnie, p. 79,
Bethyne, p. 34,
Bythyne, p. 55, 91, etc., } Variations of
Bythynie, p. 198, } spelling for
 Bithynia
Braas of St. George, p. 34, 35, etc., the Dardanelles, called the Braas of St. George on account of a monastery of St. George built outside of the walls of the city. It generally means only the narrow straits which separate Asia from Europe, but sometimes taken for the whole Propontis enclosed between the two straits: St. George was a Cappadocian warrior
Calabre, p. 92, Calabria
Calcedonie, p. 79; *Calcedoine*, p. 83, Chalcedon, city in Bithynia, near Constantinople: seat of the Council of 451
Calvarye, Calvary
Cappadoce, p. 34, Cappadocia, eastern-

most province of Asia Minor, very early Christianized, and belonged to the diocese of Pontus, erected by Constantine the Great
Carmely, p. 244, Mt. Carmel
Cartage, p. 23, Carthage
Castore, p. 80, Castoria, city in Macedonia
Celessurye, p. 34, province of which Damascus is the chief city
Cesaire, p. 300, } Caesarea, to-day
Cezaire, p. 231, 244, } called Seidjar
Chamele, p. 231, also called Emessa
Cinintot, corruption for Civitot, p. 55, town of Bithynia, on the Gulf of Mandania, called, to-day, Ghio or Gemlik
Ciperon, p. 68, now called Schoprony, in Hungarian, and Oedenburg in German, a town or small fortified place on the frontiers of Hungary
Cleremont, p. 42, Cleremont in Auvergne, France; the third Council of Pope Urban was held here, in Nov. 1095, attended by four archbishops and 225 bishops, besides an immense number of lower clergy and laity
Clony, p. 42, Abbey of Cluny in Burgundy, France, composed of Benedictine Monks, founded in 909
Cobar, p. 30, 31, to-day the river Khabur, on the frontier of Persia
Coleyne, p. 62, Cologne
Comans, p. 69,
Counthot, p. 105, corruption for Civitot
Cryme, p. 198. See *Lychonie*
Cylyce, p. 95; *Sylyce*, p. 123; Cilicia, one of the most important provinces of Asia Minor, corresponding partly to the modern Adana
Dalmace, p. 85, Dalmatia, between Hungary and the Adriatic Sea, on the eastern side of the sea
Damaske, p. 19, Damascus
Danemarches, p. 70, Danemarche the Mayene is Dacia Mediterranea, or Lower Moesia; the Latin gives *Dacia*, which was evidently mistaken for Dania, and translated accordingly by the French translator, whom Caxton follows
Dorylee, Dorylaeum, to-day called Eski Scheke, valley south-east of Nice, in ancient Phrygia

- Duchelande*, p. 226, etc., Germany
Dunoe, p. 62, 68, etc., the Danube
Duras, p. 70, 86, etc.; ancient Dyr-rhachium, to-day called Durazzo, a Turkish port on the Adriatic
- Ebron*, p. 250, Hebron
Eliopee, p. 133; this word is a corruption of Elyopie, the ancient Heliopolis or Baalbec. See *Mallec* or *Malbec*
Elye, p. 250, Ælia, name given to Jerusalem by Aelius Adrianus
Emaus, p. 248; there were two villages of this name, one, twenty-two Roman miles from Jerusalem, also called Nicopolis; and the Emmäus of the Bible, seven and a half miles from Jerusalem; according to McClintock and Strong, *Dict.*, the Crusaders called Emmaus, Meopolis, but confused it with a small fortress farther south on the Jerusalem road, now called Latrön
Ennon, p. 51, 254, Ennon
Epyre, p. 86, Epirus
Eraclee, p. 115, etc., to-day called Heracleia; called also Eregli, city of Lycaonia, between Iconium and Tarsus
Ermenye, p. 292, 308, etc., Armenia; Caxton also spells it *Hermony*
Ermon, p. 254, Hermon
Escalonne, p. 279; *Escalone*, p. 292, 293, etc.; city of Ascalon, on the coast south-west of Jerusalem
Espyre, p. 70, Epirus
Eufrates, p. 125, 165, etc., Euphrates
- Famosette*, p. 127, etc.
Fevyce, p. 233, 236, etc., Phœnicia
fflaundres, p. 120, 243, etc. Flanders
ffraunce, p. 3, 42, etc., France
ffryselande, p. 120, Friesland
Francone, p. 49, 62, Franconia, made a duchy in the 10th century; its capital city Nurenberg. It belongs to Bavaria to-day
Fynemyne, p. 148, 195, Von Sybel calls it Philomelium,—a place near Antioch in Asia Minor: also called by Spruner *Finimium*. Its modern name is Ak-schehr
- Gabao*, p. 249, Gibeon
Galace, p. 34, Galatia
- Galgala*, p. 249, small town south-east of Jericho, on the Dead Sea
Galylee, p. 298, Galilee
Geme, p. 298, a corruption of *Genesar*, the lake of Gennesaret
Gene, p. 243, 260, etc., Genoa
Geneves, p. 260, etc., Genoese
Grece, p. 64, Greece
Gybelet, p. 235, etc., the ancient Gabala, to-day known as Jebil, a town on the coast of Syria between Beirut and Tripoli
- Halappe*, p. 218, 219, etc., Aleppo
Haman, p. 231, the ancient Epiphania, to-day called Hamal
Hasart, p. 218, etc., town a little north of Aleppo, and called by Arabian historians Azaz, which name it still bears
Hatap, p. 221, the modern Aintab
Helle, p. 164, the river Orontes, called El Fer; Caxton by a mistake read it L'Enfer, and translated it by *Helle*
Hermony, p. 165. See *Ermenye*
Holande, p. 120, Holland
Hongrye, p. 47, 49, etc., Hungary
- Iadre*, p. 19, a city of Palestine
Iadre, p. 85, etc., Zara, a city of Dalmatia with a port on the Adriatic
Iaphe, p. 248, 301, etc., Joffa or Joppa, only sea-port of Judæa on the Mediterranean
Iheruhesees, p. 250, the Jebusees
Iherusalem, p. 20, etc., Jerusalem
Iherycho, p. 249, Jericho
Iophat, p. 250, }
Iosaphat, p. 256, } Jehoshaphat
Ister, p. 85, Istria
Iudee, p. 250, } Judæa
Iurye, p. 253, }
- Lamane*, p. 280. See *Maturane*
Lasse Asye, Asia Minor
Lide, p. 244, Lydda
Lintans, p. 62; *Lyntans*, p. 65; the river Leytha, a tributary of the Danube
Lombardy, p. 42, 69, etc.
Lorayne, p. 49, Lorraine
Lybane, p. 233, 242, Mt. Lebanon
Lycaone, p. 34, Lycaonia
Lyce, p. 34, Lycia
Lyche of Surraye, p. 235; *Lystes* of *Surye*, p. 34; *The Lyche*, p. 261; Lao-

- dicea; in one of the French manuscripts of William of Tyre, no. 8404, it is called *Le Chef de Surie*. This city still exists under the name of *Lakikieh*, according to *Michaud*
- Lychonie*, p. 113; *Licoine*, p. 114; another form is the *Cryne*, all mistranslations of the French *L'Icoine*, the city of Iconium, to-day called *Konieh* in *Lycaonia*
- Macedomone*, p. 92, }
Macedonie, p. 87, } *Macedonia*
Machedone, p. 70, }
- Machabews*, p. 248, the *Maccabees*
- Magonce*, p. 62, *Mainz* or *Mayence*, on the *Rhine*
- Malfe*, p. 36, modern *Amalfi*, a city of *Apulia* in *Italy*
- Mallec*, p. 133, *Malbec* or *Baalbec*, the same city as *Eliopee*, or *Heliopolis*
- Mulleville*, p. 48, 50, etc., said to be the modern *Semlin*; as the *Crusaders* did not know what to call it, it has been conjectured that they dubbed it *Malleville* on account of the sufferings which they endured
- Mamstre*, p. 218. See *Anamystre*
- Manbec*, p. 301, same as *Mallec*
- Marase*, p. 115, } *Marash*, formerly
Maraze, p. 122, etc., } called *Germanica*
- Marce*, p. 47, a corruption of the word *Maroe*, a river of *Hungary*
- Marclee*, p. 236, to-day called *Merkale*, the first city of *Phœnicia*, situated on the sea-side between the castle of *Margat* and *Tortuose*
- Marese*, p. 130, mod. *Marasch*, in *Cilicia*, not far from *Aleppo*
- Margat*, p. 236, 299, to-day *Markab* on the coast between *Giblet* and *Tortuose*
- Marran*, p. 226; *Macran*, p. 226; *Marran*, p. 229; modern name *Maarrah en Naaman*
- Mase*, p. 194, the river *Meuse*
- Mathale*, p. 194, town of *Mechelen*, near *Maestricht* in *Holland*; in French called *Machale* or *Machele*
- Maturane*, p. 280, town of *Martorano* in *Calabria*, *Italy*
- Maus*, p. 243, the ancient *Adonis*; to-day called *Nahr Ibrahim*: *Tudebodus* calls it *Braym*
- Mayene*, p. 70. See *Danemarches*
- Mees:ebors*, p. 62, town at the junction of the *Leytha* and the *Danube*, in *Lower Hungary*
- Meletene*, p. 308, 309, called also *Malatia*, between the *Euphrates* and *Mesopotamia*
- Mese*, p. 70, *Moesia*
- Mesopotayne*, p. 308, *Mesopotamia*
- Mona*, p. 252, corruption for *Moriah*
- Moria*, p. 250, *Mt. Moriah* in *Jerusalem*
- Naples*, p. 249; *Napples*, p. 293, etc.; *Napoli*, or *Nauplia*, or *Nabulus*, mod. *Nabloos*, supposed to be the same as *Shechem* or *Sichem*: it is about thirty miles from *Jerusalem*. A Council was called here in 1120, by King *Baldwin* of *Jerusalem*; the object, to reform the Church
- Narbonne*, p. 226, *Narbonne* in *France*
- Nycene*, p. 46, etc., *Nice*, or *Nicaea*, the ancient capital of *Bithynia*, on the eastern shore of lake *Ascanius*: modern name, *Isnik*
- Nychomede*, p. 93; *Nycomede*, p. 91; *Nicomedia*, ancient capital of *Bithynia*, situated on the north-eastern angle of the *Gulf of Astacus*, in the *Propontis*, now called *Bay of Ismid*. This city was built A.D. 264 by *Nicomedes I.*; *Diocletian* and *Constantine the Great* lived there. It is now the small town of *Ismid*
- Nyz*, p. 40; *Nyze*, p. 50, mod. *Nissa*, a fortified city of *Servia*, on the *Nissava*, south-east of *Belgrade*
- Olyvet (Mt.)*, p. 262, *Mt. Olivet*
- Oronte (Mt.)*, p. 135, mountain in *Antioch*
- Oronte*, river, p. 135, see next
- Orontes*, p. 133, ancient name of the river *Fer*, to-day called *El Aasay*, "the rebellious"
- Osterych*, p. 49, *Austria*
- Palestyne*, p. 263, etc., *Palestine*
- Pamphyle*, p. 194, *Pamphylia*
- Pelagoine*, p. 80, } *Province* in *Greece*
Pelagonne, p. 86, }
- Pernasus*, p. 135, *Mt. Parnassus*
- Perse*, p. 19, etc., *Persia*
- Phylstees*, p. 253, etc., *Philistines*
- Piside*, p. 111, *Pisside*, p. 112, *Pisidia*
- Playsance*, p. 42, Lat. *Placentia*, city of

- Piacenza in Italy. The first Council of Urban in 1095 was held here
- Porphire*, p. 298
- Puyfle*, p. 70, etc., Apulia, province of Italy
- Puy Notre Dame*, p. 42, city of Puy Notre Dame in Auvergne, France
- Rages*, p. 218, etc., the city of Edessa, called Rona and Arta by the Arabians, and Roh or Rhodes by the French of the Middle Ages. Poccocke says it is supposed to be the Ur of the Chaldees.
- Raguse*, p. 85, the ancient Rhaugia, Ragusium, or Ragusa, a fortified city of Dalmatia on the Adriatic
- Rames*, p. 245, etc., ancient Arimathea, to-day called Ramleh, or Ramla, sixteen miles north of Jerusalem, famous for the tomb of Samuel
- Ravendel*, p. 221; there are no traces of this castle to-day; M. P. Paris suggests that it may be the modern Rannana, between Turbesel and Rages
- Ravenne*, p. 40, Ravenna
- Redost*, p. 87, to-day called Rodasto, between Gallipolis and Constantinople
- Rhodes*, p. 4, 194, 243, etc., the island of Rhodes
- Rome*, p. 2, etc., Rome
- Rome*, p. 147, Roumania
- Rouge*, p. 229, Lat. *Rugiam*, to-day called Riha
- Salem*, p. 250, ancient name of Jerusalem
- Salenyke*, p. 87, Salonica
- Salerne*, Salerno on the Gulf of Salerno, south-east of Naples, Italy
- Samarye*, p. 249, etc., Samaria
- Samoloc*, p. 225, corruption for *Samosac*, or *Samosae*; to-day, according to P. Paris, Samizat on the Euphrates
- Sarepte*, p. 244, the Sarepta of the Bible
- Suyette*, p. 243, 244; Lat. *Sidonem*, ancient Sidon
- Saxone*, p. 288, 289, } Saxony
- Sessouque*, p. 140, }
- Scairs*, p. 249, a corruption of *Sichar*
- Scilice*, p. 116. See *Cylyce*
- Sebaste*, p. 249, mod. Sébastieh, the reputed burial-place of St. John the Baptist, a village of Palestine, 6 miles north-west of Nabloos
- Sexton*, p. 73, the city of Sestos, on the European side of the Hellespont
- Serorge*, p. 129, } Town near Edessa,
- Sorarge*, p. 223, } to-day called Sarug
- Sororge*, p. 224, }
- Sklavonye*, p. 260, etc., Sclavonia
- Sodome*, p. 249, Sodom
- Spalete*, p. 85, to-day, Spalatro, a fortified city of Dalmatia
- Spayne*, p. 167, Spain
- Stralyce*, p. 48, 69; this town has not yet been definitely recognized, although Albert d'Aix calls it Sternitz, which is a city of Sordica, to-day called Sofia
- Sur*, p. 244, Tyre
- Surrye*, p. 19, }
- Surrye*, p. 33, etc., } Syria
- Syloe*, p. 254, Siloam
- Sympole*, p. 76,
- Syon*, p. 250, etc., Sion
- Tabarye*, p. 298, 301, Tabarieh on the Lake of Gennesaret; Lat. *Tiberiandensem*
- Tabor (Mt.)*, p. 298, Mt. Tabor
- Tarce*, p. 95, }
- Tarse*, p. 115, } Tarsus in Cilicia
- Thaarses*, p. 92, }
- Tarente*, Tarentum
- Tayllenborch*, p. 65, Tollenburch, town near the junction of the Maresch and the Danube
- Tecua*, p. 249, 258, city where Amos the prophet was born, about six Roman miles from Jerusalem—name is still Tekua
- Terme*, p. 148, town in Pisidia
- Theopoble*, p. 134, former name of Antioch
- Thessayle*, p. 70, 135, Thessaly
- Tinchebray*, p. 297, village in Normandy, near Domfront
- Torbesel*, p. 217, etc., the Tel-Bacher of the Arabian historians, to-day a little village called Tel Bacher or Tel Bchir, on the right bank of the Sadjur
- Tortuose*, p. 234, 236, etc., formerly called Antaradus, a large and beautiful city on the sea-side, between Arcas and Antioch
- Trace*, p. 70; *Thaarses*, p. 92, Thrace
- Trypple*, p. 233, etc., Tripoli
- Valerne*, p. 299, etc., Valenia, formerly called Balanea, between Giblet and Margat
- Venyse*, p. 243, etc., Venice

<i>Ybelyn</i> , p. 242, etc., the ancient Biblim, also called Gibelet, on the coast below Tripoli	<i>Ynde</i> , p. 22, India
<i>Ydronte</i> , p. 4, called Hydruntum by Livy and Pliny, an ancient Roman colony: to-day Otranto, in Italy	<i>Yrlond</i> , p. 4, Ireland
	<i>Zebus</i> , p. 250, mistranslation or corrup- tion for <i>Jebus</i>

RETURN CIRCULATION DEPARTMENT
TO → 202 Main Library

LOAN PERIOD 1 HOME USE	2	3
4	5	6

ALL BOOKS MAY BE RECALLED AFTER 7 DAYS
Renewals and Recharges may be made 4 days prior to the due date.
Books may be Renewed by calling 642-3405.

DUE AS STAMPED BELOW

MAR 2 1987		
AUTO DISC JUN 4 1987		
	Rec. Moffitt	MAY 17 '99
FEB 24 1995		
APR 08 1999		SEP 16 2002

GENERAL LIBRARY - U.C. BERKELEY



8000864168

